Mabel F. Watson
CAESAR

FROM A COLOSSAL BUST IN THE MUSEUM AT NAPLES.
Cæsar's Gallic War

COMPLETE EDITION, INCLUDING SEVEN BOOKS

EDITED BY

J. H. AND W. F. ALLEN AND H. P. JUDSON

WITH NOTES AND DISSERTATIONS, FULLY ILLUSTRATED, ON CÆSAR'S GALLIC CAMPAIGNS AND THE ROMAN MILITARY ART, PREPARED BY H. P. JUDSON; AND A SPECIAL VOCABULARY, BY J. B. GREENOUGH.

Οὔτω δὲ ὁ θεὸς Καῖσαρ ἐν τοῖς ὑπομνήμασιν εἰρήκεν.—ΣΤΡΑΒΟ, IV. 1.

BOSTON
GINN & COMPANY
1886
Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1886, by
J. H. AND W. F. ALLEN AND H. P. JUDSON,

J. S. CUSHING & CO., PRINTERS, BOSTON.
PREFACE.

In preparing this completed edition of Cæsar's Gallic War, the notes on the earlier portion have been diligently revised and largely re-written. In general, the plan and substance, approved by wide and satisfactory use for eleven years, have been retained. Besides the grammatical references to Allen & Greenough's Grammar, which have been carefully verified, references are given to the grammars of Gildersleeve and Harkness. The map of Gaul has been corrected according to the latest investigations, and a large number of illustrations, diagrams, and battle-plans have been introduced from the most recent and trustworthy sources.

A still more important feature is the elaborate study of the Roman military art as exemplified in the campaigns of Cæsar, carefully prepared from the most recent authorities by Mr. H. P. Judson, Professor of History in the University of Minnesota, to whom its plan and execution are solely due. The special value of these military notes is quite apparent. The Commentaries are little more than a military history, — a story of battle and siege, — and to read the book understandingly the student must have a definite notion of the Roman army and its methods. This edition aims to enable him, with each sentence, to place before his eye a picture, — the same picture it suggested to the intelligent Roman reader.

The Vocabulary, by Professor Greenough, is on the same plan as his Vocabulary to Virgil. It attempts to give, first, the etymological meaning of each word as far as is possible; second, the general meanings of the words, representing the
conceptions as they appeared to the Romans; third, such renderings as may be necessary to present the thought in a suitable English form. In the last case care is taken to indicate by the use of phrases and by notes the difference between the Roman and the English conceptions. In giving the etymologies, the actual mode of formation in each case, so far as it is known, is shown, and all the elements which have entered into the formation are noted. It is, of course, not intended that such etymological matter is to be studied as task-work by the pupil; but both teachers and students will do well to form the habit of analyzing words in this manner rather than content themselves with vague notions about roots, and with loose connections of words.

This edition of Cæsar follows, with slight change of orthography, the text of Nipperdey, the more important various readings being given in the notes. It is believed to be an advantage even to the youngest learner to deal with a standard text, and to know something of those variations which make the reading of an ancient classic differ from that of a modern author. In illustration of the narrative, constant use has been made of the more recent authorities, Mommsen, Kraner, Long, Merivale, and the "History of Julius Cæsar" by Napoleon III., with the excellent school edition of Moberley. Much care has been taken, with the earlier portion especially, to furnish in the notes a guide to the thorough study of syntactical construction, for which no author is, by general consent, so well adapted as Cæsar.

## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Book I</td>
<td>HELVETIAN WAR; CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book II</td>
<td>THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book III</td>
<td>ALPINE CAMPAIGN; NAVAL CAMPAIGN; SOUTHERN GAUL</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book IV</td>
<td>CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE GERMANS; FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book V</td>
<td>SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN; FRESH RISINGS OF THE GAULS</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book VI</td>
<td>SECOND EXPEDITION INTO GERMANY; ACCOUNT OF GAUL AND GERMANY; DEFEAT OF THE EBURONES AND SIGAMBRI</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book VII</td>
<td>UPRISING OF GAUL UNDER VERCINGETORIX</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## NOTES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Military Notes</th>
<th></th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Legionary</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Roman Legion</td>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortifications on the Rhone</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Personal Baggage</td>
<td></td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Cavalry</td>
<td></td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Order of Battle</td>
<td></td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Gallic Array and Arms</td>
<td></td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Military Standards</td>
<td></td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Rank of the Centurions</td>
<td></td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Camp</td>
<td></td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MILITARY NOTES (continued)</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Legati</em>..........................</td>
<td>64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cæsar’s Legions .................</td>
<td>66, 102, 117, 136, 149, 165, 192</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangement of the Cohorts in Camp</td>
<td>70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camp Duties......................</td>
<td>71</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Tormenta</em>.......................</td>
<td>75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Siege........................</td>
<td>77</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Baggage Train...............</td>
<td>85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The March.......................</td>
<td>86</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tactics of the Cavalry.........</td>
<td>92</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Martial Music...............</td>
<td>94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Winter Camp.................</td>
<td>104</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siege of the Coast Towns.......</td>
<td>110</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Mines.......................</td>
<td>115</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bridge over the Rhine..........</td>
<td>125</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The British Chariots...........</td>
<td>134</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strength of the Legion..........</td>
<td>135</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Circle (<em>Orbis</em>) ..........</td>
<td>136</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The <em>Agger</em> in Britain..........</td>
<td>140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Council of War.............</td>
<td>145</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Turrest</em>.......................</td>
<td>147</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position at Avaricum...........</td>
<td>170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Agger</em> at Avaricum............</td>
<td>173</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position at Gergovia...........</td>
<td>177, 179</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position at Alesia...............</td>
<td>185</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Works at Alesia..........</td>
<td>188–192</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Illustration</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frontispiece</td>
<td>Map of Gaul</td>
<td>after page xvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>The Legionary</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Scutum</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Gladius</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Pilum</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Centurio</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Plan I. Fortifications on the Rhone</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Fig. 5. Roman Soldiers</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>&quot; 6. Eques&quot;</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>&quot; 7. The Maniple</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Plan II. Battle with the Helvetians</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Fig. 8. Aquila</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>&quot; 9. Vexillum</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>&quot; 10. Signum</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>&quot; 11. Aquilifer</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>&quot; 12. Fossa Punica</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>&quot; 13. Fossa directis lateribus</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>&quot; 14. Wall and Ditch</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>&quot; 15. Castra Romana</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>&quot; 16. Fortifying the Camp</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Plan III. Battle with Ariovistus</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>&quot; 17. Catapulta</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>&quot; 18. Scorpio</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>&quot; 19. Ballista</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>&quot; 20. Pluteus</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>&quot; 21. Pluteus</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>&quot; 22. Pluteus</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>&quot; 23. Portion of Agger</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure</td>
<td>Illustration</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fig. 24</td>
<td>Vertical Section of <em>Agger</em> and Wall</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 25</td>
<td>General View of Siege Operations</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 26</td>
<td><em>Oppugnatio</em></td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 27</td>
<td>Cohort in Line of Battle</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 28</td>
<td>Legion in Line of Battle</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 29</td>
<td>Cohort in Column of Maniples</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 30</td>
<td>Cohort in Column of Centuries</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 31</td>
<td>Cohort in Column of Centuries, 5 Files</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 32</td>
<td>Legion marching by the Right Flank</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 33</td>
<td>Legion marching to the Front</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 34</td>
<td>Legion marching in Square</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan V</td>
<td>Battle on the Sambre</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fig. 35</td>
<td><em>Litus</em></td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 36</td>
<td><em>Tuba</em></td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 37</td>
<td><em>Buccina</em></td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan VI</td>
<td>Siege of Aduatuca</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; VII</td>
<td>Campaign against the Veneti</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fig. 38</td>
<td>Bridge over the Rhine</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 39</td>
<td>The Attack with Chariots</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 40</td>
<td>Ground Plan of Gallic Wall</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 41</td>
<td>Vertical Section of Gallic Wall</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 42</td>
<td>Section of Roman <em>Agger</em> at Avaricum</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan VIII</td>
<td>Siege of Avaricum</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; IX</td>
<td>Siege of Gergovia</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fig. 43</td>
<td>Sections of the Double Trench at Gergovia</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan X</td>
<td>March of Labienus against Lutetia</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan XI</td>
<td>Defeat of Vercingetorix on the Vingeanne</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; XII</td>
<td>Siege of Alesia</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fig. 44</td>
<td>Section of Contravallation at Alesia</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 45</td>
<td><em>Lilium</em></td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE LIFE OF CAESAR.

Caius Julius Caesar was born, by the common account, July 12, B.C. 100; or, by a probable reckoning, two years earlier.¹ When "almost a boy," he was made a priest of Jupiter by Marius, his uncle by marriage. When still a youth of 18 or 20, he boldly refused to divorce his wife Cornelia, a daughter of Cinna, and barely escaped the proscription of Sulla, who "saw many a Marius in that young man."

Though of patrician birth, Cæsar was thus early allied with the popular party, which began to make head directly after the dictator's death. He went through the usual course of political honors to which a Roman of the higher ranks felt himself entitled. At the age of 35 (assuming the earlier date) he was Quæstor in Further Spain. Two years later he was Curule Ædile, an office which gave great opportunity to court popular honor, in its charge of public games and exhibitions.² By this time he was recognized as a party leader who would not scruple at the most daring and

¹ The common date rests on the statement of Plutarch, Suetonius, and Appian, that he died at the age of 56. On the other hand: 1. Marius, who died B.C. 86, would hardly have given a priesthood to a child of 13; 2. he received the usual honors, by the common reckoning, each two years earlier than the legal age; 3. certain coins struck by him in B.C. 49 have the date LII., apparently the years of his age.

² In Cæsar's games, "all the equipments, even the cages of the wild beasts, appeared of massive silver; and by a liberality which was all the more princely, that it was based solely on the contraction of debt" (in Latin phrase, "paid by other men's money").
questionable measures, and was even suspected of having a hand in the schemes of Catiline.

In B.C. 63 he was elected Pontifex Maximus,—that is, official head of the state religion,—in opposition to the leader of the aristocracy, Quintus Catulus. This was an open declaration of war against the governing aristocracy. Cæsar, it is said, refused a large offer made by Catulus to buy him off the course; and when the day of election came, said to his mother, who would have kept him out of the struggle, “To-day shall see me pontifex maximus or an exile.” The holy office alone could protect him from his creditors.

At this period Cæsar was chiefly known as a dissolute debtor and demagogue. Before leaving for his province, he was obliged to find security to the amount of 800 talents—more than a million dollars. He is reported to have said, in his reckless way, that he wanted four million sestertes to be worth just nothing at all. But in Further Spain, as pro- praetor (B.C. 62), he displayed the civil and military ability which afterwards made him famous, as well as the financial ability which enabled him to pay off his debts in one campaign.

He returned to Rome the following year, and soon formed a political coalition with Pompey and Crassus, his contribution to the common stock being his influence in the political clubs and control of votes. This coalition is sometimes called “the first triumvirate.”¹ One part of the bargain was that Cæsar should have the consulship for the next year (B.C. 59), and after that the government of Gaul for five years.² This

¹ The term “triumvirate” means properly a commission or board of three men, invested by law with special powers and functions. This was the case with the triumvirate of Octavianus (Augustus), Antony and Lepidus; but this earlier one was only a private knot of political aspirants.

² It was a law that both consuls and prætors should have their power (imperium) continued for a year after their term of office, and, under the
embraced the three provinces of Gallia Narbonensis, Gallia Cisalpina (North Italy), and Illyricum. Crassus and Pompey received no special authority at first, but remained in the city, ostensibly as private persons, to look after the interests of the coalition. This was further strengthened by the marriage of Pompey with Caesar's young and beautiful daughter Julia.

After two successful campaigns in Gaul, in the spring of B.C. 56 Caesar met his two confederates at Luca, in Etruria, to arrange their future schemes. The conference was held with great display, almost like a royal court. More than 200 senators were present, and 120 lictors were in attendance, attached to the several magistrates. At this conference it was agreed that Pompey and Crassus should hold the consulship the following year, and, after their term of office, should receive by popular vote a similar command to that held by Caesar,—namely, that Pompey should command in Spain and Crassus in Syria for five years each; also that when Caesar's five years were up, he should receive in the same way a second term of five years. His ten years' administration would then close at the end of B.C. 49; after which time—an interval of ten years having elapsed—he would be eligible again as consul.

The programme was duly carried out. Crassus departed (B.C. 54) to his province, where he was defeated the next title proconsul or proprator, govern one of the military provinces. If the proconsul was not relieved at the end of the year, his power continued by the necessity of the case. In one instance, that of Pompey, an extraordinary power was conferred upon the proconsul by act of the people (the Manilian Law). Regularly, however, the assignment of provinces was reckoned a part of the administrative powers of the Senate; and a law of Caius Gracchus directed that the consular provinces should be determined before the election,—that is, a year and a half in advance,—and then that the consuls should draw lots which to have.
year by the Parthians in the battle of Carrhae, and shortly after entrapped and killed. Pompey put his province in the hands of one of his subordinates, and remained in the neighborhood of Rome, unwilling to remove from the seat of his personal influence. The death of his wife Julia (B.C. 54) soon sundered the ties which bound him to Cæsar. Jealous from the first, he gradually became openly hostile to him; and at last he found himself leader of the Senate and the aristocracy against his revolutionary schemes.

The remainder of Cæsar's life belongs to the general history of Rome. At the close of the Gallic war, the senatorial party required that he should disband his army. This he refused to do, unless Pompey should make an equal surrender of military force. From these demands grew the charge of false play on each side, until the Civil War broke out (B.C. 49), and Pompey fled to Greece, where he was defeated the following year at Pharsalia. After his death, and the complete destruction of his party, Cæsar returned to Rome;¹ where, under the title and authority of Perpetual Dictator, he laid the first foundations of the imperial constitution. His reforms—some of them necessary, some enlightened and wise far beyond the statesmanship of his time—provoked the hate of a fanatic party, who vainly thought to restore the Republic; and on the Ides of March, B.C. 44, he was murdered in the Senate-house, by a conspiracy under the lead of Marcus Brutus.

Gaul and Germany.

The district upon whose government Cæsar entered in the spring of B.C. 58 consisted primarily of the two Gallic

¹ It is a remarkable illustration of Roman feeling, that, on the day of his triumph, Cæsar, the epicurean rationalist, mounted on his knees the long flight of steps that led up to the Capitol, that by this act of ostentatious humility he might avert those divine judgments supposed to be provoked by inordinate felicity.
The Life of Caesar. xv

provinces, Cisalpine and Transalpine. Cisalpine Gaul was the northern portion of Italy, which had been several centuries earlier occupied by invaders from Gaul proper, and which was not yet reckoned as politically a part of Italy: it was a wealthy, populous, and orderly country, the proconsul's main dependence for troops and supplies, and his regular winter residence. Transalpine or Narbonnese Gaul received its name from its capital, the Roman colony Narbo. It contained some thriving cities and peaceful districts; but it had as a whole been only recently brought under the authority of Rome, and was still essentially a foreign country. It comprised the whole coast of the Mediterranean, from the Pyrenees to the Alps, its northern boundary being an irregular and uncertain line, separating the conquered nations of Gaul from those which were still free. To these two provinces was attached Illyricum, which was a source of strength, but did not receive much of his attention.

The authority of the governor over his province was that of a military commander, who was not amenable to the laws which protected the citizens of Rome. A few privileged cities or nations, as the old Greek city Massilia, and the allied tribe of the Ædui (after they were brought within the limits of the empire), were wholly exempted from his authority; but all other parts of the province, even Roman colonies like Narbo, were liable to tribute, and more or less under the jurisdiction of the governor. Each province had its financial officer, or quaestor, who ranked next the governor himself: the commander was likewise attended by staff-officers, legati (usually three in number), appointed by the Senate from persons of rank and position; and by an indefinite number of aids, contubernalis or comites, who composed what was sometimes, but incorrectly, called the praetorian cohort. A consular army consisted regularly of two legions (at this time of from 3,000 to 3,600 men); to these were added auxiliaries,
both foot and horse, while the governor had power to levy new legions as he required them. Thus we find that Cæsar had eight legions in his campaign against the Nervii.

The free territories adjoining a Roman province were in no respect under the authority of the governor; but they were regarded as a legitimate field for his ambition, and there was no lack of pretexts for war. The Roman policy was to enter into friendly relations with one of the parties or tribes in the free territory, load this with favors and privileges, and make use of it to overcome their rivals; in Gaul the Ædui were the favored nation.

Cæsar’s province, at its western extremity, touched Spain, a country which had belonged to the empire for more than 150 years. North of it lay three great nationalities, with all of which he was brought in contact. There were the Gauls, the Germans, and the Britons.

Free Gaul (Libera Gallia) consisted of all the unsubdued territory between the Pyrenees on the one side, and the Rhine and the Alps on the other, thus comprising, in general, modern France and Belgium, with parts of Holland, Germany, and Switzerland. The central portion of this territory, fully a half in extent and population, was occupied by Gauls proper, or, as they called themselves, Celts. Southwest of these were the Aquitani, of Iberian race, cognate to the Spanish. Northeast were the Belgians, whose ethnic affinities are much disputed; all that can be considered certain is that they were largely mixed with the Germans.

The Gauls were an intellectual and prosperous people, far more civilized than either Germans or Britons. The country, though extensively covered with forests, especially towards the north, was well provided with roads and bridges. The entire population has been reckoned at about seven millions. The people of the Gallic race were tall, fair-complexioned, of restless, sanguine temperament, and addicted to fighting; but
skilled in many arts,—some portions in weaving; the Aquitani, especially, in mining and engineering; and the Bretons (Veneti) in open-sea navigation, which they followed with stout high-built ships, leather sails, and iron chain-cables. Their dress included trousers and shirts with sleeves; they had a barbaric taste for gaudy ornament; their arms were showy, but clumsy and ineffective beside the tempered weapons of the Romans.

With their culture, however, had come degeneracy in many shapes. They were divided into violently hostile factions, through which they fell an easy prey to the invader. They had numerous flourishing cities; which, however, had no political power, like those of Greece and Italy, but were merely places of residence and trade. Their government had fallen under the control of an arrogant and luxurious aristocracy, and their religion under a cruel and domineering priesthood. Of the two great factions into which they were divided, the Ædui were the leaders in one, and they had thought to gain supremacy by entering into alliance with Romans. Their antagonists, the Sequani, had naturally looked in the opposite direction for allies, and found them in the Germans.

The Germans occupied nearly the same territory as at the present day; not so far west as now, but on the other hand extending farther to the east. Less advanced in civilization than the Gauls, they were still far from being savages. They appear to have been just emerging from what is known as the barbarous state,—beginning to acquire fixed habitations, and to cultivate the ground: they had no cities. They had brought with them from their migrations a remarkable political system, based upon an original community of origin, in which the patriarchal organization had already expanded into a multitude of petty nations, grouped into larger combinations of race. Their institutions were thoroughly democratic; they had noble families, but these possessed no political prerogatives; they elected
kings, whose power was hardly greater than that of their general magistrates.

"The tribes which descended upon Britain had entered Europe not as a set of savages or wandering pastoral tribes, or mere pirates and warriors, but as colonists, who, rude as they may have been in dress and manners, yet, in essential points, were already a civilized people." Various considerations, says a recent writer, make it probable "that the Germans had come down from the northeast not very long before the Christian era, and intruded themselves, as a wedge, between those two more anciently recorded nations (Scythians and Celts)... We shall see evidence of the continuous advance of a civilized race from the confines of India to these islands, and nothing indicative of a great rush from the North of wild hordes bent upon robbery and destruction, as it has been usually represented to have been. The gradual drying of the Caspian Sea left the interior of Asia more and more barren; the knowledge of the useful metals facilitated the conquest of the savages of the West; and predatory bands of Huns and Turks, and allied nomadic nations, are likely to have accelerated the movement, by rendering the labors of agriculture less remunerative. Thus the migration, being one that proceeded from constantly acting causes, extended over many centuries...

"In these mere names [of plants and fruits], setting aside all other sources of information, we discover that these people came from their home in the East with a knowledge of letters and the useful metals, and with nearly all the domestic animals; that they cultivated oats, barley, wheat, rye, and beans; built houses of timber, and thatched them; and what is important, as showing that their pasture and arable land was intermixed, and acknowledged as private property, they hedged their fields and fenced their gardens. Cæsar denies this; but the frontier tribes, with whom he was acquainted, were living under certain peculiar Mark laws, and were, in fact, little else than an army on its march. The unquestionably native, and not Latin or Celtic, origin of such names as Beach and Hawthorn, of Oats and Wheat, prove that although our ancestry may have been indebted to the provincials of the empire for their fruit-trees, and some other luxuries, for a knowledge of the fine
arts, and the Latin literature, and a debased Christianity, the more essential acquirements, upon which their prosperity and progress as a nation depended, were already in their possession." — PRIOR. Popular Names of British Plants. Introd. 1863.

The Britons were, like the Gauls, of Celtic race, and resembled them in every respect, except that, being further from the civilized world, they were ruder, freer, and more warlike.

It was the destiny of Julius Cæsar to bring the great Gallic people into the system of civilization and government represented by Rome: it was a definite and large extension of the bounds of civilized society. From him, too, we have the earliest authentic accounts of the other two nationalities, the Germans and the Britons.
CENTURY OF CIVIL WARS IN ROME.

B.C.
133. Tribunate and death of Tiberius Gracchus.
123. Tribunate of Caius Gracchus; 121. His death.
111–106. War with Jugurtha: Marius and Sulla.
107, 104–100. Six consuls of Marius.
102, 101. Defeat of Teutones and Cimbri by Marius.
90–88. War with Italian Allies (Social War).
88, 81: 74–63. Wars with Mithridates.
88–82. Civil War:—88. Sulla in Rome; flight of Marius. 87. Massacres of Marius and Cinna. 86. Seventh consulship and death of Marius. 82. Proscriptions and legislation of Sulla (Dictator, 81; his death, 78).
83–72. War with Sertorius in Spain.
73–71. Servile War (with Spartacus), ended by Crassus.
70. Pompey and Crassus, Consuls; Sulla's legislation repealed.
67. War with Pirates ended by Pompey; Cæsar, Questor in Spain (Curule Aedile, 65; Prætor, 62).
63. Cicero, Consul: Catiline's Conspiracy suppressed; Cæsar, Pontifex Maximus; Pro-pretor in Spain, 61.
60. First Triumvirate: coalition of Cæsar, Pompey, and Crassus (lasts till 54).
57. Destruction of Nervii. 56. Defeat of Veneti and Aquitani.
55. Passage into Germany and Britain. 54. Second invasion of Britain; risings in Northern Gaul. 53. Second passage into Germany. 52. War of Vercingetorix. 51. Southern Gaul reduced.
50. Civil order restored.
50. Cicero, Proconsul in Cilicia (returns to Italy in October).
THE GALLIC WAR.

BOOK I.

INTRODUCTION: Description of Gaul (Chap 1).

THE HELVETIAN WAR.—Orgetorix, an Helvetian chief, plans the invasion of Gaul: he conspires with the chiefs of several Gallic tribes; is brought to trial, escapes, and is put under the ban; soon afterwards dies (2–4). The Helvetians complete their preparations, and gather near the Rhone, requesting leave to pass peaceably through the Province. Cæsar delays them by pretexts, while he hastily throws up an earthwork to prevent their crossing the river. They attempt the passage, but are repulsed (5–8). Forming a league with the Sequani, they penetrate and ravage the territory of the Ædui, friends of Rome, who solicit protection. Cæsar, levying a force of upwards of 30,000, overtakes and cuts to pieces their rear-guard (Tigurini), at the crossing of the Arar (9–12). An embassy of the Helvetians, headed by the aged Divico, leads to no result. A cavalry skirmish, in which the Romans are worsted, together with the delay of supplies, shows the bad faith of a party among the Ædui, headed by Dumnorix; who is arrested, but spared on the intercession of his brother Divitiacus, and put under close guard by Cæsar (13–20). Cæsar makes preparations for attack, but is prevented by a false alarm, and moves towards Bibracte. The Helvetians, now well in advance, turn about for battle. They are forced to retreat to a hill, and attempt to flank the Romans; but are completely routed, and fly towards the north (21–26). They are at length forced to surrender. Six thousand escape, but are retaken, and put to death. The remainder are compelled to return to Helvetia, and rebuild the villages which they had destroyed (27–29).

THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS.—The chief populations of Gaul seek terms of amity, representing the condition of the country, especially under the invasions of the German Ariovistus, by whom the Sequani are chiefly oppressed (30–33). Cæsar sends envoys
to him, but receiving a haughty reply sets out on a forced march towards the German frontier (34–38). His men are greatly terrified, but are cheered by his assurances, especially of reliance on the tenth legion (39–41). At the request of Ariovistus, a conference is held, but is broken up by signs of bad faith among the Germans (42–46). A second conference, proposed by Ariovistus, is refused, and he throws into chains the messengers sent by Cæsar. After a cavalry skirmish, an indecisive battle follows, and the Germans fall back to their camp (47–50). Cæsar attacks the camp: the Germans, marshalled by tribes, defend their families and equipage. A close and furious engagement follows, in which the Germans are routed and driven to the Rhine. Ariovistus escapes, a part of his household is taken, and Cæsar returns to his winter quarters (51–54).

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partes tres; quarum
unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam
qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur.
Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt.
Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Ma-
tronā et Sequāna dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi
sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate
provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mer-
catores saepe commenat, atque ea quae ad effeminandos
animos pertinent important; proximique sunt Germa-
nis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continen-
ter bellum gerunt. Qua de causa Helvetii quoque
reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere quotidian-
ris proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis
finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum
gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere
dictum est, initium capi a flumine Rhodano; contine-
tur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum;
attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhei-
um; vergit ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis
Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiorem partem
fluminis Rheni, spectant in septentrionem et orientem
solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos
montes et eam partem Oceani quae est ad Hispam pertinet, spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.


Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci natura Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine Rheno latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex parte monte Jura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiiis dividit. 

3. His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur, et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; qua ex parte homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore adficiebantur. 

Pro multitudine autem hominum, et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem milia passuum ccxl, in latitudinem clxxx patebant. 

3. His rebus adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituerunt ea quae ad profiscendum pertinent comparare, jumentorum et carorum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sementes quam maxi- 

mas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. 

Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt, in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. 

Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat, et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Haeduo,
fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem con-
aretur persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium
dat. 4 Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere,
propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus
esset: non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum
Helvetii possent; se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis
regna conciliaturum confirmat. 5 Hac oratione adduc-
ti, inter se fidem et juvandum dant, et, regno occu-
pato, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos
totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

4. Ea res est Helvetiiis per indicium enuntiata.
Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere
coegerunt. Damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut
igni cremaretur. 2 Die constituta causae dictionis,
Orgetorix ad judicium omnem suam familiam, ad
hominum milia decem, undique coegit, et omnes
clientes obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum
habebat, eodem conduxit; per eos, ne causam diceret,
se eripuit. 3 Cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis
jus suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque homi-
num ex agris magistratus cogerant, Orgetorix mortuus
est; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur,
quid ipse sibi mortem conscient.

5. Post ejus mortem, nihil minus Helvetiis id quod
constituerant facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exequant.
Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt,
oppida sua omnia numero ad duodecim, vicos ad
quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt; fru-
mentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portaturi
erant, comburunt, ut — domum reditionis spe sublata—
paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium
mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre ju-
bent. 2 Persuadent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis.

35 finitimis, uti, eodem usi consilio, oppidis suis vicis-
que exustis, una cum iis proficiscantur; Boiosque, qui
trans Rhenum incoluerant, et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnarant, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.


7. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, naturat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad Genuam pervenit. 2 Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militem numerum imperat — erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una; pontem, qui erat ad Genuam, jubet rescindi. 8 Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos civitatis, cujus legationis Nammeius et Verudoctius principem locum obtinbant, qui dicerent 'sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habereent nullum: rogare, ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat.' 4 Caesare, quod memoria tenebat L. 35 Cassium consulem occisum, exercitumque ejus ab Hel-
vetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putabat; neque homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciundi, temperatuos ab injuria et maleficio existimabat. 5 Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites quos imperaverat convenirent, legatis respondit diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum; si quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.

8. Interea ea legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque qui ex provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem, murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim, fossamque perducit. 2 Eo opere perfecto, praesidia disponit, castella communit, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit. 3 Ubi ea dies quam constituerat cum legatis venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare; et, si vim facere contentur, prohibiturum ostendit. 4 Helvetii, ea spe dejecti, navibus junctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdum, saepius noctu, si perrumpere possent conati, operis munitione et militiae concursu et telis repulsi, hoc conatu destiterunt.

9. Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua, Sequanis invitis, propter angustias ire non possent. His cum sua sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Haeduum mittunt, ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis impetrarent. 2 Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetii erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat; et cupiditate regni adductus novis rebus studebat, et quam plurimas civitates suo beneficio habere obstrictas volebat. 3 Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequanis impetrat ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patientur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent perficit: Sc-
quani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant; Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuria transeant.

10. Caesar is renuntiatur Helvetios esse in animo per agrum Sequanorum et Haeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in Provincia. 2 Id si fieret, intellegebat magno cum periculo provinciae futurum, ut homines bellicosos, populi Romaní inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. 3 Ob eas causas, ei munitioni quam fecerat T. Labienum legatum praefecit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit, duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres, quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit, et, qua proximum iter in ulteriorum Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. 4 Ibi 15 Centronès et Graioceli et Caturiges, locis superioribus occupatis, itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his proeliiis pulsis, ab Ocelo, quod est citerioris provinciae extremum, in fines Voucitorum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit; inde in 20 Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusivos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

11. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant, et in Haeduorum fines per 25 venerant, eorumque agros populabantur. Haeduí, cum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: 2 Ita se omni tempore de populo Romano meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi eorum 3 in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint. 8 Eodem tempore Haeduí Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Haeduorum, Caesarem certiorem faciunt, sese, depopulatis agris, non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere. 4 Item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se ad
Caesarem recipiunt, et demonstrant sibi praeter agrisolum nihil esse reliqui. 6 Quibus rebus adductus, Caesar non exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis, in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.
Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisse atque esse voluisse; sin bello sequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani, et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. 5 Quod improviso unum pagum adoptus esset, cum ii, qui flumen transissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret, aut ipsos despicere; se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didisse, ut magis virtute quam dolo contendere rent, aut insidiis niterentur. 6 Quare ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitisset, ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet, aut memoriam proderet.'

14. His Caesar ita respondit: 'Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidisset: 2 qui si alicujus injuriae sibi conscius fuisse, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum, quod neque commissum a se intellegaret quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. 4 Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod eo invito iter per provinciam per vim temptasset, quod Haeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexasset, 25 memoriam deponere posse? 4 Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, quodque tam diu se impune injurias tulisse admirarentur, eodem pertinere. 6 Consuesse enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiores interdum res et diuturno impunitatem concedere. 6 Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea quae policeantur facturos intellegat, et si Haeduis de injuriis quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satis- 35 faciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum.' 7 Divico
respondit: 'Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare consuerint; ejus rei populum Romanum esse testem.' Hoc responso dato, discissit.

5 '15. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni provincia et Haeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant. 2 Qui, cupi- dius 'novissimum agmen insecuti, alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. 3 Quo proelio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equi- tum propulerant, audacios subsistere nonnunquam, et novissimo agmine proelio nostros laccessere coeperunt.'

4 Caesar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in praeuentia hostem rapinis, pabulationibus, populationibusque prohibere. 5 Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nos- trum primum non amplius quinfs aut senis milibus passuum interesset.

16. Interim cotidie Caesar Haeduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus (ut ante dic- tum est) posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat: eo autem frumento, quod flumine Arare navibus subvexerat, propterea minus uti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat. 2 Diem ex die ducere Haeduï: conferri, com- portari, adesse, dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit, et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum mag- nam copiam in castris habebat, — in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratui praecerat quem vergo- bretum appellant Haeduï, qui creator annuus, et vitae
necisque in suos habet potestatem,—graviter eos accusat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sumi possit, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevetur; praesertim cum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit, multo etiam gravius quod sit destitutus queritur.

17. Tum demum Liscus, oratone Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat proponit: 'Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditos atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrire, ne frumentum conferant, quod praestare debeant: si jam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallo- rum quam Romanorum imperia praeverre; neque dubitare [debeant] quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Haedu libertatem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem nostra consilia, quaeque in castris gerantur, hostibus enuntiari; hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam, quod necessario rem coactus Caesar enuntiari, intellegere sese quanto id cum periculose fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse.'

18. Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentiebat; sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex solo ea quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit libcrius atque audacios. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum. Complures annos portoria reliquaque omnia Haeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audiat nemo. IIis rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse, et facultates ad largiendum magnas com- parasse; magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu.
semper alere et circum se habere, neque solum domi,
sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse; atque
hujus potentiae causa matrem in Biturigibus homini
illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse, ipsum ex
Helvetiis uxorem habere, sororem ex matre et propin-
quas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse. | 5 Fa-
vere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam adfinitatem, odisse
etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum
adventu potentia ejus deminuta, et Divitiacus frater in
antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus.
6 Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Hel-
vetios regni obtinendi venire; imperio populi Romani
non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea quam habeat
gratia, desperare. | 7 Reperiebat etiam in quaerendo
15 Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante
diebus esset factum, initium ejus fugae factum a Dum-
norige atque ejus equitibus, — nam equitatum, quem
auxilio Caesari Haeduui miserant, Dumnorix praecerat:
eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.
20 19. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspiciones
certissimae res accederent, — quod per fines Sequa-
norum Helvetios traduxisset, quod obsides inter eos
dandos curasset, quod ea omnia non modo in jussu suo
et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod a
25 magistratu Haeduorum accusareitur, — satis esse causae
arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadvertere,
ant civitatem animadvertere juberet. 2 His omnibus
rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris sum-
mum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se
30 voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam
cognoverat: nam ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci ani-
mum offenderet verebatur. 3 Itaque prius quam quic-
quam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet, et
quotidianis interpretibus remotis, per C. Valerium
35 Procillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem
suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat,
cum eo colloquitor; simul commonefacit quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta; et ostendit quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit; petit atque hortatur, ut sine ejus offensione animi vel ipse de eo causa cognita statuat, vel civitatem statuere jubeat.

20. Divitiacus, multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obscureare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescetiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur; sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commovere. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. Haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prendit; consolatus rogat, finem orandi faciat; tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et reipublicae injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit, quae ipse intellegat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspitiones vitet; praeterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.

21. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent misit. Renuntiatum est facilem esse. De tertia vigilia T. Labienum, legatum pro praetore, cum duabus legionibus et iis
ducibus qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis
ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit ostendit. Ipse
de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad
eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. 8 P.
5 Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur, et
in exercitu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum
exploratoribus praemittitur.

22. Prima luce, cum summus mons a Labieno tene-
retur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et
10 quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex capti-
vis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus
esset, Considius equo admissus ad eum accurrat; 2 dicit
montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hos-
tibus tenei; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus
15 cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem
subducit, aciem instruit. 3 Labienus, ut erat ei praec-
ceptum a Caesare, ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsius
copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique
uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato
20 nostros exspectabat, proelioque abstinebat. 4 Multo
denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit et mon-
tem a suis tenei, et Helvetios castra movisse, et Con-
sidium, timore perterritum, quod non vidisset pro viso
sibi renuntiasse. Eo die, quo consuerat intervallo,
25 hostes sequitur, et milia passuum tria ab eorum castris
castra ponit.

23. Postridie ejus diei, quod omnino biduum super-
crat, cum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et
quod a Bibracte, oppido Haeduorum longe maximo et
30 copiosissimo, non amplius milibus passuum xviiii ab-
crat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit: iter
ab Helvetiis avertit, ac Bibracte ire contendit. 2 Ea
res per fugitivos L. Aemilii, decurionis equitum Gallo-
rum, hostibus nuntiatur. 8 Helvetii, seu quod timore
35 perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo
magis quod pridie, superioribus locis occupatis, proc-
gium non commisissent, sive (eo quod re frumentaria intercludi) posse confiderent, commutato consilio atque itinere converso, nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere coeperunt.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Cae- sar in proximum collem subducit, equitatumque, qui sustineret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplex aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum [ita uti supra]; sed in summo jugo duas legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore proxime con- scripserat, et omnia auxilia conlocari, ac totum montem hominibus complevi, et interea carcinas in unum locum conferri, et eum ab his qui in superiore acie constiterant muniri jussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris securi, impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi con- tissima acie, rejecto nostro equitatu, phalange facta, sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

25. Caesar primum suo, deinde omnium ex con- spectu remotis equis, ut aequato omnium periculo spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos proelium com- misit. Milites e loco superiore, pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfregerunt. Ea disjecta, gladiis dextris in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis magnis ad pugnam erat impedimento, quod pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et conligatis, cum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque sinistra impedita satis commodo pugnare poterant, multi ut, diu jactato brachio, praeoptarent scutum manu emit- tere, et nudum corpore pugnare. Tandem vulneribus defessi, et pedem referre et, quod mons superat circi- ter mille passuum, eo se recipere coeperunt. Capto monte et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium clade- bant, et novissimis praesidio erant, ex itinere nostros latere aperto adgressi circumvenire; et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare
et proelium redintegrare coeperunt. Romani conversa
signa bipartito intulerunt: prima et secunda acies, ut
victis ac summótis resisteret; tertia, ut venientes sus-
tineret.

5 1 26. Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum
est. Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non
possent, alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt,
alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt.
Nam hoc toto proelio, cum ab hora septima ad ves-
perum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo
potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta
pugnatum est, propter a quod pro vallo carros objec-
rant, et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela
coniciebant, et nonnulli inter carros rotasque mataras
ac tragulas subiciebant, nostrosque vulnerabant. 3 Diu
-cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri
potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis
captus est. 4 Ex eo proelio circiter hominum milia
xxxx superfuerunt, eaque tota nocte continenter
ierunt: nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso, in
fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, cum et pro-
pter vulnera militum, et propter sepulturam occisorum,
nostri triduum morati eos sequi non potuissent. 5 Cae-
sar ad Lingonas litteras. nuntiosque misit, ne eos fru-
25 mento neve alia re juvarent: qui si juvissent, se eodem
loco quo Helvetios habiturum. Ipse, triduo intermisso,
cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

27. Helvetii, omnium rerum inopia adducti, legatos
de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui cum eum in
30 itinere convenissent, seque ad pedes projecissent, sup-
pliciterque locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in
eo loco, quo tum essent, suum adventum exspectare
jussisset, paruerunt. 2 Eo postquam Caesar pervenit,
obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, po-
35 poscit. 1 Dum ea conquiritur et conferuntur, nocte
intermissa, circiter hominum milia vi ejus pagi qui
Verbigenus appellatur, sive timore perterriti, ne armis
traditis supplicio adficercntur, sive spe salutis inducti, quod in tanta multitudine dediticorum suam fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent, prima nocte e castris Helvetiorum egressi, ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenderunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quorum per fines ierant, his, uti conquererent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse vellent, imperavit: reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquos omnes, obsidibus, armis, per fugis traditis, in deditionem accepit. 2 Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos, unde erant protecti, reverti jussit; et quod, omnibus fructibus amissis, domi nihil erat quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit, ut iis frumenti copiam facerent; ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incenderant, restitueret jussit. 3 Id ea 15 maxime ratione fecit, quod noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent, et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. 4 Boios, penticibus Haeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque condicionem atque ipsi erant receperunt.

29. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem refertae, quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numeros domo exisset eorum qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim pueri, senes mulieresque. 2 Quorum omnium rerum summa erat capitum Helvetiorum milia 39 cclxiii, Tulingorum milia xxxvi, Latobrigorum xiii, Rauracorum xxiii, Boiorum xxxii; ex his qui arma ferre possent, ad milia xcii. 3 Summa omnium fuerunt ad milia ccclxviii. Eorum qui domum redierunt, censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x.
30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto, totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt: \textquoteleft Intellegere sese, tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum iuriis populi Romani ab his poenas bello repetisset, tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse; \textquoteleft propterea quod eo consilio, florentissimis rebus, domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent, imperioque potirentur, locumque domicilio ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum judicassent, reliquasque civitates stipendiarias haberent.\textquoteleft. \textsuperscript{3} Petierunt, uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntate facere liceret: sese habere quasdam res, quas ex communi consenso ab eo petere vellent. \textsuperscript{4} Ea re permissa, diem concilio constituerunt, et jurejurando, ne quis enuntiaret, nisi quibus communi consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt. \textsuperscript{7}

31. Eo concilio dimisso, idem principes civitatum, qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem reverterunt, petieruntque, uti sibi secreto in occulto de sua omniumque salute. cum eo agere liceret. \textsuperscript{2} Ea re impetrata, sese omnes flentes Caesari ad pedes projecerunt: \textquoteleft Non minus se id contendere et laborare, ne ea quae dixissent enuntiarentur, quam uti ea quae vellent impetrarent; propterea quod, si enuntiatum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent.\textquoteleft. \textsuperscript{3} Locutus est pro his Divitiacus Haeduus: \textquoteleft Galliae totius factiones esse duas; harum alterius principatum tenere Haeduos, alterius Arvernos. Hi cum tantopere de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse, uti ab Arvernis Sequanisque Germani mercede acesserentur. \textsuperscript{4} Horum primo circiter milia xv Rhenum transisse; posteaquam agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homines feri ac barbari adamassen, traductos plures; nunc esse in Gallia ad centum et xx milium numerum.
Cum his Haeduos eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amississe. 6 Quibus proeliis calamitatisque fractos, qui et sua virtute et populi Romani hospicio atque amicitia plurimum ante in Gallia potuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsides dare nobilissimos civitas, et jurejurando civitatem obstringere, sese neque obsides repetituros, neque auxilium a populó Romano imploraturos, neque recusáturos quo minus perpetuo sub illorum dicione atque imperio essent. 7 Unum se esse ex omni civitate Haeduorum, qui adduci non potuerit ut juraret, aut liberos suos obsides daret. Ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse, et Romam ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque jurejurando neque obsidibus teneretur. 8 Sed pejus victoribus Sequanis quam Haeduis victis accidisse, propter quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset, tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupavisset, et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos decedere juberet, propter quod paucis mensibus ante Harudum milia hominum ad eum venissent, quibus locus ac sedes pararentur. 9 Futurum esse paucis annis, uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur, atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent; neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro, neque hanc consuetudinem victus cum illa comparandam. 10 Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallorum copias proelio vicerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae; superbe et crudeliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cujusque liberares poscere, et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem ejus facta sit. 11 Hominem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium: non posse ejus imperia diutius sustinere. Nisi si quid in Caesare populoque Romano sit auxilii,
omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium alias sedes, remotas a Germanis, petant, fortunamque, quae-cumque accidat, experiantur. 12 Haec si enuntiata 5 Ariovisto sint, non dubitare, quin de omnibus obsidi- bus, qui apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sumat. Caesarem vel auctoritate sua atque exercitus, vel recenti victoria, vel nomine populi Romani, deter- rere posse, ne major multitudo Germanorum Rhenum 10 traducatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti injuria posse defendere.'

132. Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habita, omnes qui aderant magno fletu auxilium a Caesare petere coe- perunt. Animadvertit Caesar unos ex omnibus Sequa- 15 nos nihil earum rerum facere quas ceteri facerent, sed tristes, capite demissio, terram intueri. 2 Eius rei quae causa esset miratus, ex ipsis quasi. Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem tristitia taciti permanere. Cum ab his saepius quaerenter, neque ullam omnino 20 vocem exprimere posset, idem Divitiacus Haeduus respondit: 3 'Hocesse miseriorem et graviorem fortu- nam Sequanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri neque auxilium implorare aude- rent; absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram 25 adesset, horrerent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daret, Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potes- tate ejus essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.'

33. His rebus cognitis, Caesar Gallorum animos 30 verbis confirmavit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem curae futuram; magnam se habere spem, et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem injuriiis facturum. 1 Hac oratione habita, concilium dimisit. 2 Et secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur, quare. 35 sibi eam rem cogitandum et suscipiendum putaret: imprimis, quod Haeduos, fratres consanguineosque
saepenumero a senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in
dicione videbat Germanorum teneri; eorumque obsides
esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intellegebat; quod
in tanto imperio populi Romani turpissimum sibi et
republicae esse arbitrabatur. 8 Paulatim autem Ger-
manos consuecere Rhenum transire, et in Galliam
magnam eorum multitudinem venire, populo Romanio
periculosum videbat; neque sibi homines feros ac
barbaros temperaturos existimabat, quin, cum omnem
Galliam occupavissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique 10
fecissent, in provinciam exirent, atque inde in Italian
contenderent; 4 praeertim cum Sequanos a provincia
nostra Rhodanus divideret: quibus rebus quam ma-
turrimse occurrencium putabat. Ipse autem Ariovistus
tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumpserat, ut 15
ferendus non videretur.

34. Quamobrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legatos
mitteret, qui ab eo postularent, uti aliquem locum
medium utriusque conloquio deligeret: velle sese de
re publica et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. 20
2 Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: 'Si quid ipsi a
Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; si
quid ille se velit, illum ad se veniere oportere. 3 Prae-
terea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae
venire audere, quas Caesar possideret, neque exerci-
tum sine magno commeatu atque molimento in unum
locum contrahere posse. 4 Sibi autem mirum videri,
quid in sua Gallia, quam bello vicisset, aut Caesari aut
omnino populo Romano negotii esset.'

35. His responsis ad Caesarem relatis, iterum ad 30
eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit: 'Quo-
niam tanto suo populeque Romani beneficio adfectus,
cum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a senatu appel-
latus esset, hanc sibi populoque Romano gratiam
referret, ut in conloquium venire invitus gravaretur, 35
neque de communi re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum
putaret, haec esse quae ab eo postularet: ² primum, nequam multitudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traduceret; deinde obsides, quos haberet ab Haeduis, redderet, Sequanisque permitteret, ut quos illi haberent, voluntate ejus reddere illis liceret; neve Haeduos injuria lacerasset, neve his sociisque eorum bellum inferret. ³ Si id ita fecisset, sibi populoque Romano perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futuram: si non impetraret, sese,—quoniam, 10 M. Messala M. Pisonis consulibus, senatus censuisset uti quicumque Galliam provinciam obtineret, quod commodo reipublicae facere posset, Haeduos ceterosque amicos populi Romani defenderet,—se Haeduorum injurias non neglecturum.’

15 ³6. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: ‘Jus esse belli, ut qui vicissent, iis quo vicissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperarent: item populum Romanum victis non ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium, imperare consuessa. ² Si ipse populo Romano non praebisset quem ad modum suo jure uteretur, non oportere sese a populo Romano in suo jure impediri. ³ Haeduos sibi, quoniam bellis fortunam temptasset, et armis congressi ac superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Caesarem injuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret. ⁴ Haeduis se obsides redditurum non esse, neque iis neque eorum sociis injuria bellum inlaturum, si in eo manerent quod convenisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent; si id non fecissent, longe iis fraternum nomen populi Romanorum afuturum. ⁵ Quod sibi Caesar denuntiaret se Haeduorum injurias non neglecturum, neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse. Cum vellet, congregedere tur: intellecturum quid invicti Germani, exercitatisimi in armis, qui inter annos xiv tectum non 35 subissent, virtute possent.’

37. Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata refere-
bantur, et legati ab Haeduis et a Treveris veniebant: Haedui questum, quod Harudes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur: sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; Treveri autem, pagos centum Suevorum ad ripam Rheni consedisse, qui Rhenum transire conarentur; his praeesse Nasuam et Cimerium fratres. Quibus rebus Caesar vehementer commotus, matu randum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Suevorum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese conjunxisset, minus facile resi sti posset. Itaque, re frumentaria quam celerrime potuit comparata, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cum tridui viam processisset, nuntiatum est ei Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Yesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, contendere, triduique viam a suis finibus profecisse. Id ne accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimabat. Namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum usui erant, summa erat in eo oppido facultas; idque natura loci sic muniebatur, ut magnam ad ducendum bellum darem facultatem, propterea quod flumen [alduas] Dubis ut circino circumductum paene totum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum sexcentorum, qua flumen intermittit, mons continet magna altitudine, ita ut radices montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingant. Hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficit, et cum oppido conjungit. Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupatoque oppido, ibi praesidium conlocat.

39. Dum paucos dies ad Yesontionem rei frumentariae commeatusque causa moratur, ex percontatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exercitacione in armis esse praedicabant,
—saepenumero sese cum his congressos ne vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum dicebant fère potuisset, —tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animoque perturbaret. 2 Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefectis, reliquisque, qui, ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem securi, non magnum in re militari usum habebant: quorum alius alia causa inlata, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessarium esse diceret, petebat ut ejus voluntate discedere liceret; nonnulli pudore ad ducti, ut timoris suspitionem vitarent, remanebant. 8 Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur, aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur. Volgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. 4 Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ii qui magnum in castris usum habe bant, milites centurionesque quique equitatui praerant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris, magnitudinem silvarum quae intercederent inter ipsos atque Arioivistum, aut rem frumentariam, ut satis commodo supportari posset, timere dicebant. 5 Nonnulli etiam Caesari nuntiabant, cum castra moveri ac signa ferri jussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites, neque propter timorem signa laturos.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato consilio, omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis centurionibus, vehementer eos incusavit: primum quod aut quam in partem aut quo consilio ducerentur sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent. 2 Arioivistum se consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse: cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum judicaret? Sibi quidem persuaderi, cog nitis suis postulatis atque aequitate condicionum perspecta, eum neque suam neque populi Romani gratiam
repudiaturum. 8 Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? 4 Factum ejus hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, cum, Cimbris et Teutonis a Gaio Mario pulsis, non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus videbatur; factum etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina, quae a nobis accepissent, sublevarent. 5 Ex quo judicari posse, quantum haberet in se boni constantia, prop. terea quod, quos aliquamdiu inermos sine causa timuissent, hos postea armatos ac victores superassent. 6 Denique hos esse eosdem, quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi, non solum in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus, plerumque superarint; qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non potuerint. 7 Si quos adversum proelium et fuga Gallorum commoveret, hos, si quaererent, reperire posse, diurnitate belli defetigatis Gallis, Ariovistum, cum multis menses castris se ac paludibus tenuisset, neque sui potestatem fecisset, 20 desperantes jam de pugna et dispersos subito adortum, magis ratione et consilio quam virtute vicisse. 8 Cui rationi contra homines barbaros atque imperitos loquus fuisset, hac ne ipsum quidem sperare nostros exercitus capi posse. 9 Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae 25 simulationem angustiasque itineris conferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut de officio imperatoris desperare aut praescribere viderentur. 10 Haec sibi esse curae: frumentum Sequanos, Leucos, Lingones subministrare, jamque esse in agris frumenta matura; de itinere ipsos brevi tempore judicaturos. 11 Quod non fore dicto audientes neque signa laturi dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri: scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, aut male re gesta fortunam defuisse, aut aliquo facinore comperto avaritiam esse convictam: 35 suam innocentiam perpetua vita, felicitatem Helvetio-
rum bello esse perspectam. \textsuperscript{12} Itaque se quod i
longiorem diem conlaturus fuisset repraesentaturum et
proxima nocte de quarta vigilia castra moturum, v.
quam primum intellegere posset, utrum apud eos pudor
5 atque officium an timor valeret. \textsuperscript{18} Quod si praetere
nemo sequatur, tamen se cum sola decima legione
iturum, de qua non dubitaret, sibique eam praetori
cohortem futuram.\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{1}} Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat
praecipue, et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.

41. Hac oratione habita, mirum in modum con
versae sunt omnium mentes, summaque alacritas et cu
piditas belli gerendi innata est; princepsque decima
legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit, quod de se
optimum judicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum
15 gerendum paratissimam confirmavit. \textsuperscript{2} Deinde reliqua
legiones cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinum
centurionibus egerunt, uti Caesaris satisfacerent: se
neque umquam dubitasse, neque timuisse, neque de
summa belli suum judicium, sed imperatoris esse existi
20 mavisse. \textsuperscript{3} Eorum satisfactio accepta, et itinere exquisi
to per Divitiacum, quod ex aliis ei maximam fidem
habebat, ut milium amplius quinquaginta circuitt locis
apertis exercitum duceret, de quarta vigilia, ut dixerat,
profectus est. \textsuperscript{4} Septimo die, cum iter non inter
25 mitteret, ab exploratoribus certior factus est, Ariovisti
copias a nostris milibus passuum quattuor et viginti
abesse.

42. Cognito Caesaris adventu, Ariovistus \textsuperscript{5} regatos ad
eum mittit: quod antea de conloquio postulasset, id
30 per se fieri licere, quoniam proprius accessisset, seque
id sine periculo facere posse existimare. \textsuperscript{2} Non respuit
condicionem Caesar, jamque eum ad sanitatem reverti
arbitrabatur, cum id, quod antea petenti denegasset,
ultro polliceretur; magnamque in spem veniebat, pro
35 suis tantis populique Romani in eum beneficiis, co
gnitis suis postulatis, fore uti pertinacia desisteret.
8 Dies conloquio dictus est ex eo die quintus. Interim saepe ultra citroque cum legati inter eos mitterentur, Ariovistus postulavit, ne quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar adduceret: vereri se, ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur; uterque cum equitatu veniret; alia ratione sese non esse venturum. 4 Caesar, quod neque conloquium interposita causa tolli volebat, neque salutem suam Gallorum equitatu committere audebat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis, eo legionarios milites legionis decimae, cui quam maxime confidebat, imponere, ut prae sidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus facto esset, haberet. 5 Quod cum fieret, non inridicule quidam ex militibus decimae legionis dixit, plus quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere: pollicitum se in cohortis prae toriae loco decimam legionem habiturum; ad equum rescribere.

43. Planities erat magna, et in ea tumulus terrenus satis grandis. Hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. Eo, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium venerunt. 2 Legionem Caesar, quam equis deixerat, passibus ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo constiterunt. Ariovistus ex equis ut conloquerentur, et praeter se denos ut ad conloquium adducerent, postulavit. 3 Ubi eo ventum est, Caesar initio orationis sua senatusque in eum beneficia commemoravit, quod rex appellatus esset a senatu, quod amicus, quod munera amplissime missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse, et pro magnis hominum officiis consuesse tribui docebat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi justum habe ret, beneficio ac liberalitate sua ac senatus ea praemia consecutum. 4 Docebat etiam, quam veteres quamque justae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Haeduis intercederent, quae senatus consulta, quotiens quamque honorifica, in eos facta essent, ut omni tempore totius
Galliae principatum Haedui tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam appetissent. Populi Romani hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed gratia, dignitate, honore auctiores velit esse; quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani adtulissent, id iis eripi quis pati posset? Postulavit deinde eadem quae legatis in mandatis dederat: ne aut Haeduis aut eorum sociis bellum inferret; obsides redderet; si nullam partem Germanorum domum remittere posset, at ne quos amplius Rhenum transire pateretur.

44. Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris paucà respondit; de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: 'Transisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum a Gallis; non sine magna spe magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sedes habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datas; stipendium capere jure belli, quod victores victis imponere consuerint. Non sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse, ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proelio pulsas ac superatas esse. Si iterum experiri velint, se iterum paratum esse decertare; si pace uti velint, interim esse de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad id tempus pependerint.' Amicitiam populi Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse oportere, idque se ea spe petisse. Si per populum Romanum stipendium remittatur, et dediticii subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese recusaturum populi Romani amicitiam quam adpetierit. Quod multiudinem Germanorum in Galliam traducat, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causa facere: ejus rei testimonium esse, quod nisi rogatus non vene-rit, et quod bellum non intulerit, sed defenderit. Se prius in Galliam venisse quam populum Romanum.
Nunquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Romani Galliae provinciae finibus egressum. Quid sibi vellet? cur in suas possessiones veniret? Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concedì non oporteret, si in nostros fines impetum faceret, sic item nos esse iniquos, quod in suo jure se interpellaremus. Quod fratres Haeduos appellatos diceret, non se tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum, ut non sciret neque bello Allobrogum proximo Haeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos, in his contentionibus quas Haedui secum et cum Sequanis habuissent, auxilio populi Romani usos esse.

Debere se suspicari simulata Caesarem amicitia, quod exercitum in Gallia habeat, sui opprimendi causa habere. Qui nisi decedat, atque exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amico, sed hoste habiturum. Quod si eum interfecerit, multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Romani gratum esse facturum: id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam ejus morte redimere posset. Quod si discessisset, et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneraturum, et quae cumque bella geri vellet, sine ullo ejus labore et periculo confec turum.

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset; et Neque suam neque populi Romani consuetudinem pati, uti optime merentes socios desereret, neque se judicare Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Romani. Bello superatos esse Arvernos et Rutenos ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus populus Romanus ignovisset, neque in provinciam redegisset, neque stipendium impossisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oporteret, populi Romani justissimum esse in Gallia imperium; si judicium senatus observari opor-
teret, liberam debere esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluisset.'

46. Dum haec in conóquo geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est equites Ariovisti propius tumulum accedere, et ad nostros adequitare, lapides telaque in nostros conicere. 2 Caesare loquendi finem facit, seque ad suos recipit, suisque imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes reicerent. 3 Nam etsi sine ullo periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat, ut pulsis hostibus dici posset eos ab se per fidem in conloquio circumven- tos. 4 Posteaquam in vulgus militum elatum est, qua adrogantia in conloquio Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset, impetumque in nostros ejus equites fecissent, eaque res conloquium ut diremisset, molto major alacritas studiumque pugnandi majus exercitui injectum est.

47. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit: 'Velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eo: uti aut iterum conloquio diem constitueret, aut, si id minus vellet, e suis legatis aliquem ad se mitteret.' 2 Conloquendi Caesari causa visa non est; et eo magis, quod pridie ejus diei Germani retineri non poterant, quin in nostros tela conicerent. Legatum e suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum missurum, et hominibus feris objecturum existimabat. 8 Commodissimum visum est Gaium Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri Caburi filium, summa virtute et humanitate adolescetem, — cujus pater a Gaio Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguæ Gallicae scientiam, qua multa jam Ariovistus longinquà consuetudine utebatur, et quod in eo peccandi Germanis causa non esset, — ad eum mittere, et M. Metium, qui hospitio Ariovisti utebatur. 4 His mandavit, ut quae diceret Ariovistus cognoscerent, et ad se referrent. Quos cum
apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo praesente clamavit: 'Quid ad se venirent? an speculandi causa?' Conantes dicere prohibuit, et in catenas coniicit.

48. Eodem diē castra promovit, et milibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris sub monte consedit. Postridie ejus diei praeter castra Caesaris suas copias traduxit, et milibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit, eo consilio, uti frumento commeatuque, qui ex Sequanis et Haeduis supportaretur, Caesarem intercluderet. 10 Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit, et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deēsset. 8 Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitu castris continuat, equestri proelio cotidie contendit. 15 Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo se Germani exercuerant. 7 Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numero pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copia singuli singulos suae salutis causa delegerant: cum his in proeliis versabantur. 6 Ad eos se equites recipiebant: 20 hi, si quid erat durius, concurrebant; si qui, graviore vulnere accepto, equo deciderat, circumsistebant; si quo erat longius prodeundum, aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitacione celeritas, ut jubis equorum sublevati cursum adaequarent.

49. Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intelleξit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter passus sexcentos ab iis, castris idoneum locum delegit, acieque triplici instructa ad eum locum venit. 2 Primam et secundam 30 aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire jussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos, uti dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sedecim milia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros perterrerent et munitione prohibe- 35 rent. 8 Nihilo secius Caesar, ut ante constituerat,
duas acies hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere jussit. Munitis castris, duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum, quattuor reliquas in castra majora reduxit.

5 150. Proximo die, instituto suo, Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit, paulumque a majoribus castris progressus, aciem instruxit, hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit. 2 Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit.

10 Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quae castra minora oppugnaret, misit. 3 Acriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu, suas copias Ariovistus, multis et inlatis et acceptis vulneribus, in castra reduxit. 4 Cum ex captivis quae reret Caesar, quamobrem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc reperiebat causam, quod apud Germanos ea consuetudo esset, ut matresfamiliae eorum sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent, utrum proelium committi ex usu esset necne; eas ita dicere: 'Non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.'

51. Postridie ejus diei Caesar praesidium utrisque castris quod satis esse visum est reliquit, omnes alarios in conspectu hostium pro castris minoribus constituit, 25 quod minus multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium numero valebat, ut ad speciem alariis uteretur; ipse, triplici instructa acie, usque ad castra hostium accessit. 2 Tum demum necessario Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt, generatimque constituerunt paribus intervallis, Harudes, Marcomannos, Triboces, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suevos, omnemque aciem suam rhedis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga relinqueretur. 3 Eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae in proelium proficiscentes passis manibus flentes implorabant, ne se in servitutem Romanis traderent.
452. Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quaestorem praefectum, uti eos testes suae quisque virtutis haberet; ipse a dextra cornu, quod eam partem minime firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. 2 Ita nostri acriter in hostes, signo dato, impetum fecerunt, ita-que hostes repente celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes coniciendi non daretur. Rejictis pilis, cominus gladiis pugnatum est. 3 At Germani celeriter, ex consuetudine sua phalange facta, impetus gladiatorum exceperunt. 4 Reperti sunt complures nostri milites, qui in phalangas insilirent, et scuta manibus revellerent, et desuper vulnerarent. Cum hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextra cornu vehementer multitudine suorum nostram acēm preme-15 bant. 5 Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulescens, qui equitatu praerat, quod expeditior erat quam ii qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

53. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga verterunt, neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum, milia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinquaginta pervenerunt. 2 Ibi perpauci aut viribus confisi tranare contenderunt, aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem pepererunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, qui navi culam deligatam ad ripam nactus ea profugit: reliquis omnes equitum consecuti nostri interfecerunt. 3 Duas fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueva natione, quam domo secum duxerat, altera Norica, regis Vactionis soror, quam in Gallia duxerat a fratre missam: utrae-30 que in ea fuga perierunt. 4 Duae filiae harum altera occisa, altera capta est. Gaius Valerius Proculus, cum a custodibus in fuga trinis catenis vincitus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem, hostes equitato perseverentem, incidit. 5 Quae quidem res Caesari non minorem quam ipsa victoria voluptatem adtulit, quod hominem hones-
tissimum provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum e manibus hostium, sibi restitutum videbat; neque ejus calamitate de tanta voluptate et gratulatione quicquam fortuna deminuerat. 6 Is se praesente de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat, utrum igni statim necaretur, an in aliud tempus reservaretur: sortium beneficio se esse incolumem. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

54. Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato, Suevi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt; quos Ubii, qui proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos [senserunt;] insecuti, magnum ex his numerum occiderunt. 2 Caesar una aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis, maturius paulo quam tempus anni postulat, in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit; hibernis Labienum praeposuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est.
BOOK II.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY.—A league of the Belgian tribes is reported to Caesar, who moves rapidly to the north, and accepts the submission of the Remi (1-3). Account of the Belgians and their tribes. Caesar advances to the Axona, relieves the siege of Bibrass, the chief place of the Remi, and establishes a camp, strongly fortified (4-8). The Belgians attempt to cross the Axona, but are driven back, and pursued with great slaughter (9-11). Surrender of the Suessiones and Bellovaci: report of the Nervii, who wait to give battle across the Sabis (12-16). Position of the two forces: the Nervii attack with great fury, and throw the Romans into confusion, which is partly overcome by their admirable discipline (17-20). After various fortune, the Nervii assault the camp, which is saved, after a desperate struggle, by the personal address and courage of Caesar (21-22). Labienus comes up with the tenth legion, and the tide is turned; the Nervii are crushed and almost exterminated (26-28). The Aduatuci: after sundry skirmishes they sue for peace; but renewing the fight after their surrender, are subdued, and upwards of 50,000 are sold as slaves (29-33). Meanwhile Crassus secures the submission of the coast population of the Veneti, etc.; Gaul appears wholly reduced to peace, and embassies are sent to Caesar even from beyond the Rhine (34, 35).

Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia [in hibernis], ita uti supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur, litterisque item Labieni certior fiebat, omnes Belgas (quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus), contra populum Romanum conjurare, obsidesque inter se dare. 2 Conjurandi hab esse causas: primum quod vererentur ne, omni pacata Gallia, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde quod ab nonnullis Gallis solicitantur,—partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Gallia versari noluerant, ita populi Romani exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Gallia moleste ferebant; 3 partim qui, mobilitate et levitate animi, novis imperiiis studebant; ab nonnullis
etiam, quod in Gallia a potentioribus atque iis qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, vulgo regna occupabantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperio nostro consequi poterant.

5 2. His nuntiis litterisque commotus, Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscrisit, et inita aestate, in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret, Q. Pedium legatum misit. 2 Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia esse inscriberet, ad exercitum venit. Dat negotium Se-10 nonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea quae apud eos gerantur cognoscant, seque de his rebus certiorem faciant. 3 Hi constantem omnes nuntiaverunt manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduci. 4 Tum vero dubitandum non existimavit quin 15 ad eos proficisceretur. Re frumentaria comparata, castra movet, diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

3. Eo cum de improviso celeriusque omni opinione venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, 20 ad eum legatos ICCium et Andocumborium, primos civitatis, miserunt, qui dicerent: Se suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittere, neque se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse, neque contra populum Romanum conjurasse, paratos-25 que esse et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus juvare; 3 reliquis omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque, qui cis Rhenum incolant, sese cum his conjunxisse, tan- tumque esse eorum omnium fuorem, ut ne Suessiones 30 quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem jure et isdem legibus utantur, unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, deterrere potuerint quin cum his consentirent.'

4. Cum ab his quaeeret, quae civitates quantaeque 35 in armis essent, et quid in bello possent, sic reperie- bat: 2 plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis,
Rhenumque antiquitus traductos propter loci fertilitatem ibi consedisse, Gallosque qui ea loca incolerent expulisse, solosque esse qui, patrum nostrorum memoria, omni Gallia vexata, Teutones Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingredi prohibuerint; qua ex re fieri uti, earum rerum memoria, magnam sibi auctoritatem magnosque spiritus in re militari sumerent. 3 De numero eorum omnia se habere explorata Remi dicebant, propterea quod propinquitatis adfinitatisbusque conjuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem in communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognoverint. 4 Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos et virtute et auctoritate et hominum numero valere: hos posse conficere armata milia centum, pollicitos ex eo numero electa sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. 15 Suessiones suos esse finitimos: latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere. 5 Apud eos fuisse regem nostra etiam memoria Divitiacum, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse 20 regem Galbam; ad hunc propter justitiam prudentiamque suam totius belli summam omnium voluntate deferri: 6 oppida habere numero xii, polliceri milia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervios, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habeantur, longissimeque absint; quindecim milia Atrebatres, Ambianos decem milia, Mornos xxv milia, Menapios vii milia; Caletos x milia; Velocasses et Veromanduos totidem; Aduatucos decem et novem milia; Condrusos, Eburones, Caeroesos, Paemanos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrali ad xl milia.

5. Caesar Remos cohortatus liberaliterque oratione prosecutus, omnem senatum ad se convenire, principumque liberos obsides ad se adduci jussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. 2 Ipsa 35 Divitiacum Haeduum magnopere cohortatus, docet
quanto opere rei publicae communisque salutis intersit manus hostium distineri, ne cum tanta multitudine uno tempore confingendum sit. 1 Id fieri posse, si suas copias Haedui in fines Bellovacorum introductorint, et eorum agros populari coeperint. His mandatis, eum ab se dimittit. 4 Postquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidit, neque jam longe absesse ab iis quos miserat exploratoribus et ab Remis cognovit, flumen Axonam, quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exercitum traducere maturavit, atque ibi castra posuit. 5 Quae res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat, et post eum quae essent tuta ab hostibus reddebat; et, commeatus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus, ut sine periculo ad eum portari posset efficiebat. 6 In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit, et in altera parte fluminis Q. Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus reliquit; castra in altitudinem pedum xii vallo fossaque duodeviginti pedum munire jubet.

6. Ab his castris oppidum Remorum nomine Bibrax aberat milia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magno impetu Belgae oppugnare coeperant. Aegre eo die sustentatum est. 2 Gallorum eadem atque Belgarum oppugnatio est haec. Ubi circumjuncta multitudine hominum totis moenibus undique in murum lapides jaci coepti sunt, murusque defensoribus nudatus est, testudine facto, portas succedunt murumque subruunt.

Quod tum faeile fiebat. Nam cum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conicerent, in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli. 4 Cum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius Remus, summa nobilitate et gratia inter suos, qui tum oppido praefuerat, unus ex iis qui legati de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

7. Eo de media nocte Caesar, isdem ducibus usu
qui nuntii ab Iccio venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios et funditores Baleares subsidio oppidanis mittit; quorum adventu et Remis cum spe defensionis studium propugnandi accessit, et hostibus eadem de causa spes potiundi oppidi discessit. 2 Itaque, paulisper apud 5 oppidum morati, agrosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis aedificiisque quos adire poterant incensis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contenderunt, et ab milibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabatur, amplius 10 milibus pasuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

8. Caesar primo, et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opinionem virtutis, proelio superse-dere statuit; cotidie tamen, equestribus proeliiis, quid hostis virtute posset et quid nostri auderent periclitata 15 batur. 2 Ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris ad aciem instruendam natura opportuno at-que idoneo,—quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planicie editus, tantum adversus in latitudinem patebat quantum loci acies instructa occupare 20 poterat, atque ex utraque parte lateris dejectus habe-bat, et in frontem leniter fastigatus paulatim ad plani-ciem redibat,—3 ab utroque latere ejus collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum quadringentorum et ad extremas fossas castella constituit, ibique tor-25 menta conlocavit, ne, cum aciem instruxisset, hostes (quod tantum multitudine poterant) ab lateribus pug-nantes suos circumvenire possent. 4 Hoc facto, duabus legionibus quas proxime conscripserat in castris relinc-tis, ut, si quo opus esset, subsidio duci possent, reliquas 30 sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.

9. Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hos-tium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent, hostes exspectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transes-35 undi fieret, ut impeditos adgrederentur, parati in armis
érant. ²Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundioire equitum proelio nostris, Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. ³Ibi vadis repertis, partem sua-rum copiarum traducere conati sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent, castellum, cui praerat Q. Titurius legatus, expugnarent, pontemque interscinderent; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum popularentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatuque nostros prohiberent.

10. Caesar, certior factus ab Titurio, omnem equi-tatum et levis armaturae Numidas, funditores sagit-tariosque pontem traducit, atque ad eos contendit. ²Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine adgessi, magnum eorum numerum occiderunt: per eorum corpora reliquos, audacissime transire conantes, multitudine telorum repulerunt; 20 primos, qui transierant, equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. ³Hostes ubi et de expugnando oppido et de flumine transeundo spem se fellelisse intellexerunt, neque nostros in locum iniquiorem proegredi pugnandi causa viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere 25 coepit, concilio convocato, constituerunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, et, quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in alienis finibus decertarent, et domesticis copiis rei frumentariae uterentur. ⁴Ad eam senten-tiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eos de-duxit, quod Divitiacum atque Haeduos finibus Bello-vacorum adpropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi ut diutius morarentur, neque suis auxilium ferrent, 35 non poterat.

11. Ea re constituta, secunda vigilia magnocum
strepetu ac tumultu castris egressi, nullo certo ordine neque imperio, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. 2 Hac re statim Caesar per speculatores cognita, insidias veritus, quod 5 qua de causa discederent nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuat. 3 Prima luce, confirmata re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum qui novissimum agmen moraretur praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculeium Cottam legatos præfecit; 10 T. Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi jussit. 4 Hi, novissimos adorti, et multa milia passuum prosecuti, magnam multitudo eorum fugientium conciderunt; cum ab extremo agmine, ad quos ventum erat, consisterent, fortiterque impetum nostrorum 15 militum sustinerent, priores, quod abesse a periculo viderentur, neque ulla necessitate neque imperio continenterent, exaudito clamore, perturbatis ordinibus, omnes in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent. 5 Ita sine ullo periculo tantam eorum multitudinem nostri inter- 20 fecerunt, quantum fuit diei spatium; sub occasumque solis destiterunt, seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

12. Postridie ejus diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga recipierent, in fines Suessionum, 25 qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit, et magno itinere [confecto] ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. 2 Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem, paucis defendentibus, expugnare non potuit. 3 Castris munitis, vineas agere quaese ad oppugnandum usui erant comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. 4 Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere jacto turribusque constitutis, magnitudine 35 operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audie-
rant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti, legatos ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt, et petentibus Remis, ut conservarentur impetrant.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis, atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditione Suessiones accept, exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. 2 Qui cum se suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter milia passuum quinque abesset, omnes majores natu, ex oppido egressi, manus ad Caesarem tendere, et voce significare coeperunt sese in ejus fidem ac potestatem venire, neque contra populum Romanum armis contendere. 3 Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset, castraque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque ex muro passis manibus suo more pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

14. Pro his Divitiaci — nam post discessum Belgarum, dimissis Haeduorum copiis, ad eum revertetur — facit verba: 'Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Haeducae fuisse: 2 impulsos a suis principibus, qui dicerent Haeduos, ab Caesare in servitutem redactos, omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, et ab Haeduis defecisse, et populo Romano bellum intulisse. 8 Qui ejus consilii principes fuissent quod intellegenter quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. 4 Petere non solum Bellovacos, sed etiam pro his Haeduos, ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. 5 Quod si fecerit, Haeduorum auctoritate apud omnes Belgas amplificaturum, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint.'

15. Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Haeduorum causa sese eos in fidelm recepturum et conservaturum dixit; quod erat civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritate, atque hominum multitudine praestabat, sexcentos obsides poposcit. 2 His traditis, omnibusque armis ex oppido
conlatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suaque omnia sine mora dediderunt. Eorum fines Nerviī attingebant; quorum de natura moribusque Caesar cum quae reret, sic reperiebat: Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus; nihil pati vini reliquarumque rerum inferri, quod iis rebus relanguescere animos [eorum] et remitti virtutem existimarent: 4 esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis; incipitare atque incusare reliquos Belgas, qui se populo Romano dedissent patriamque virtutem projeassent; confirmae 10 sese neque legatos missuros, neque ullam condicionem pacis accepturos.

16. Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, invieniēbat ex captivis Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius milia passuum x abesse: 2 trans id flumen 15 omnes Nervios consedisse, adventūmque ibi Romanorum exspectare, una cum Atrebatis et Veromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his utrisque persuaserant, uti eandem belli fortunam experientur); 8 exspectati etiam ab his Aduatucorum copias atque esse in itinere; mulieres quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur in eum locum conjecisse, quo propter paludes exercitus aditus non esset.

17. His rebus cognitis, exploratores centurionesque praemittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant. Cum 25 ex dediticiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesaris secuti una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitionem est, eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus specta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt; 2 atque his demonstrarunt inter singulas 30 legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quicquam negotii, cum prima legio in castra venisset, reliquaeque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri; qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis, futurum ut reliquae contra 35 consistere non auderent. 3 Adjuvabat etiam eorum
consilium qui rem deferebant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatu nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed, quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent copiis), quo facilius finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causa ad eos venissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis, crebrisque in latitudinem ramis enatis, et rubis sentibusque interjectis, effecerant ut instar muri hae sepess munimenta praebarent, quo non modo non intrari, sed ne perspicui quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostri impediretur, non omissendum sibi consilium Nervii existimaverunt.

18. Loci natura erat haec, quem locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis ad flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebatur. Ab eo flumine pari adclivitate collis nascebatur adversus huic et contrarius, passus circiter ducentos infimus apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile introrsus perspici posset. Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant; in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo pedum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitatu praemissò subsequebatur omnibus copiis; sed ratio ordoque agminis aliter se habebat ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam quod ad hostis adpropinquabant, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat; post eas totius exercitus impedimenta conlocarat; inde duae legiones, quae proxume conscriptae erant, totum agmen cladebant, praesidioque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri, cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi, cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt. Cum se illi identidem in silvas ad suos recuperent, ac rursus ex silva in nostros impetum facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem porrecta loca aperta pertinebant cedentes inequi auderent, interim legiones sex, quae primae venerant, opere dimenso, castra
munire coeperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab iis qui in silvis abditi latebant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eos committendi proelii convenerat, ut intra silvas aciem ordinisque constituerant atque ipsi sese confirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt, impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt. 5 His facile pulsis ac proturbatis, incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucurrerunt, ut paene uno tempore et ad silvas et in flumine et jam in manibus nostris hostes videretur. Eadem autem celeritate adverso colle ad 10 nostra castra, atque eos qui in opere occupati erant, contenderunt.

20. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum (quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurri oporteret), signum tuba dandum, ab opere 15 revocandi milites, qui paulo longius aggeris petendi causa processerant arcessendi, acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas et successus hostium impediebat. 2 His difficultatibus duae res erant sub-20 sidio, — scientia atque usus militum, quod superioribus proeliiis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret, non minus commode ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis doceri poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere nisi munitis castris 25 vetuerat. 3 Hi, propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium, nihil jam Caesaris imperium exspectabant, sed per se quae videbantur administrabant.

21. Caesar, necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohorts milites quam in partem fors obtulit decucurrit, 30 et ad legionem decumam devenit. 2 Milites non longiore oratione cohortatus, quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent, neu perturbarentur animo, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant quam quo telum adici 35 posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. 3 Atque in
alteram partem item cohortandi causa prefectus, pugnabantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas, hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia adecommodanda, sed etiam ad 5 galeas induendas scutisque tegmenta detrudenda tempus defuerit. 4 Quam quisque ab opere in partem casu devenit, quaeque prima signa conspexit, ad haec constitit, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

22. Instructo exercitu, magis ut loci natura dejectusque collis et necessitas temporis, quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum diversis legionibus aliae alia in parte hostibus resisterent, sepibusque densissimis (ut ante demonstravimus) interjectis pro-15 spectus impediretur, neque certa subsidia conlocari, neque quid in quaque parte opus esset provideri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque, in tanta rerum iniquitate, fortuna quoque eventus variis sequebantur.

23. Legionis nonae et decimae milites, ut in sinistra parte acie constiterant, pilis emissis, cursu ac lassitudine examinatos vulneribusque confectos Atrebates—nam his ea pars obvenerat—celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen computerunt, et transire conantes 25 insecuti, gladiis magnam partem eorum impedirem interfecerunt. 2 Ipsi transire flumen non dubitaverunt, et in locum iniquum progressi, rursus resistentes hostes redintegrato proelio in fugam conjecerunt. 3 Item alia in parte diversae duae legiones, undecima et 30 octava, profligatis Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore inipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. 4 At totis fere a fronte et ab sinistra parte nudatis castris, quom in dextro cornu legio duo- decima et non magno ab ea intervallo septima con-35 stitisset, omnes Nervii confertissimo agmine, duce Boduognato, qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum
locum contenderunt; quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit. 

24. Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae pedites, qui cum iis una fuerant, quos primo hostium impetu pulsos dixeram, cum se in castra recipirent, adversis hostibus occurrebant, ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant; 2 et calones, qui ab decumana porta ac summum jugo collis nostris victores flumen transisse conspexerant, praedandi causa egressi, cum respexissent et hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, praecipites fugae sese mandabant. 3 Simul eorum, qui cum impedimentis veniebant, clamor fremitusque oriebatur, alique aliam in partem perterriti ferebantur. 4 Quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites 15 Treveri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis, qui auxilii causa ab civitate ad Caesarem missi venerant, cum multitudine hostium castra compleverunt, legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, calones, equites, funditores, Numidas diversos dissipatosque in omnes partes fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus, domum contenderunt; Romanos pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos, civitati renuntiaverunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu prefectus, ubi suos urgeri, signisque in unum locum conlatis, duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, — 2 quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis, signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus ferè centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo P. Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto, ut jam se sustinere non possat; 3 reliquos esse tardiores, et nonnullos ab, novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostis neque a fronte ex inferiore loco
subeuntes intermittere, et ab utroque latere instare, et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse subsidium quod summitti posset,—scuto ab novissimis uni militi detracto, quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat, in primam aciem processit; centurionibusque nominatim appellatis, reliquos cohortatus, milites signa inferre et manipulos laxare jussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent. Cujus adventu spe inlata militibus, ac redintegrato animo, cum pro se quisque in conspectu imperatoris etiam in extremis suis rebus operam navare cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardatus est.

26. Caesar, cum septimam legionem, quae juxta constiterat, item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum monuit, ut paulatim sese legiones conjungerent, et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, cum alius alii subsidium ferret, neque tимерent ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare coeperunt. Interim milites legionum duarum, quae in novissimo agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerant, proelio nuntiato, cursu incitato, in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur; et T. Labienus, castris hostium potitus, et ex loco superiore quae res in nostris castris gerentur conspicatus, decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit. Qui, cum ex equitum et calonum fuga, quo in loco res esset, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

27. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio est facta, ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubissent, scutis innixi proelium redintegrarent; tum calones, perterritos hostes conspicati, etiam inermes armatis occurrerent; equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute delerent, omnibus in locis pugnant, quo legionariis militibus praeferrent. At hostes etiam in extrema spe salutis tantam virtutem praestiterunt,
ut, cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi jacentibus insisterent, atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent; his dejectis, et coacervatis cadaveribus, qui superessent ut ex tumulo tela in nostros conicerent, et pilae intercepta remitterent: ut non nequiquam tantae virtutis homines judicari deberet ausos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilita ex difficillimis animi magnitudine redegerat.

28. Hoc proelio facto, et prope ad internecionem gentem ac nomine Nerviorum redacto, majores natu, quos una cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes conjec tors dixeramus, hac pugna nuntiata, cum victoribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tutum arbitrarentur, omnium qui supererant consensu, legatos ad Caesarem miserunt, seque ei dediderunt; et in commemoranda civitatis calamitate, ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quingen los, qui arma ferre possent, sese redactos esse dixerunt. Quos Caesar, ut in miseros ac supplices usus misericordia videretur, diligentissime conservavit, stisque finibus atque oppidis uti jussit, et finitimis imperavit, ut ab injuria et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.

29. Aduatuci, de quibus supra scrisimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio Nervii venirent, hac pugna nuntiata, ex itinere domum reverterunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis, sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie natura munition contulerunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, una ex parte leniter adclivis aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum relinquebatur; quem locum duplici altissimo muro munierant: tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacutas trabes in muro conlocabant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prognati, qui, cum iter in provinciam nostram atque
Italianam facerent, iis impedimentis, quae secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis, custodiam ex suis ac praesidium sex milia hominum una reliquerunt. 4 Hi post eorum obitum multos annos a finitimis exagitati, cum alias bellum inferrent, alias inlatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium pace facta, hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.

30. Ac, primo adventu exercitus nostri, crebras ex oppido excursiones faciebant, parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendebant; postea vallo pedum xii in circuitu xv milium crebrisque castellis circummuniti, oppido sese continebant. 2 Ubi vineis actis, aggere exstructo, turrim procul constituit vidērunt, primum inridere ex muro, atque increpitare vocibus, quod tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio instrueretur: 3 quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praeeritum homines tantulae staturae—nam plerumque hominibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum sumorum brevitas nostra contemptui est—tanti oneris turrim in muro sese consolare confiderent?

31. Ubi vero moveri et adpropinquare moenibus viderunt, nova atque inusitata specie commoti, legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum locuti: 2 Non existimare Romanos sine ope divina bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tanta celeritate promovere possent; se suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere’ dixerunt. 3 4 Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret. 4 Sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virtuti invidere; a quibus se defendere traditis armis non possent. 5 5 Sibi praestare, si in cum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a populo Romano pati, quam ab his per cruciatum interfici, inter quos dominari consuessent.'
32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: 'Se magis consue
tudine sua quam merito eorum civitatem conservatu-
rum, si prius quam murum aries attigisset se dedidis-
sent: sed deditio in nulla esse condicionem nisi
armis traditis. Se id quod in Nerviis fecisset factu-
rum, finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam dediticiis
populi Romani injuriam inferrent.' Re nuntiata ad
suos, quae imperarentur facere dixerunt. Armorum
magna multitudine de muro in fossam, quae erat ante
oppidum, jacta, sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque
altitudinem acervi armorum adaequarent, et tamen
circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, celata
atque in oppido retenta, portis patefactis, eo die pace
sunt usi.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque ex
oppido exire jussit, ne quam noctu oppidani ab
militibus injuriam acciperent. Ili, ante initio (ut in-
tellectum est) consilio, quod deditio facta nostros
praesidia deducturos aut denique diligentius serva-
turos crediderant,—partim cum iis quae retinuerant
et celaverunt armis, partim scutiis ex cortice factis aut
viminibus intextis, quae subito, ut temporis exigitas
postulabat, pellibus induxerant,—tertia vigilia, qua
minime arduus ad nostras munitiones ascensus vide-
batur, omnibus copiis repentino ex oppido eruptionem
fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, igni-
bus significatione facta, ex proximis castellis eo con-
cursum est, pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter est, ut
a viris fortibus in extremis spe salvatis, iniquo loco,
contra eos qui ex vallo turribusque tela jacerent, pug-
nari debuit, cum in una virtute omnis spes salvatis
consisteret. Occisio ad hominum milibus quattuor,
reliqui in oppidum rejecti sunt. Postridie ejus diei
refractis portis, cum jam defenderet nemo, atque in-
tromissis militibus nostris, sectionem ejus oppidi uni-
versam Caesar vendidit. Ab iis qui emerant, capitum
End of the Second Campaign.

numerus ad eum relatus est milium quinquagintatrum.

34. Eodem tempore a P. Crasso, quem cum legione una miserat ad Venetos, Unellos, Osismos, Curiosolitas, Esuvios, Aulercos, Redones, quae sunt maritimae civitates Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnes eas civitates in dicionem potestatemque populi Romani esse redactas.

35. His rebus gestis, omni Gallia pacata, tanta hujus belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est, uti ab iis nationibus, quae trans Rhenum incoherent, mitterentur legati ad Caesarem, qui se obsides daturas, imperata facturas pollicerentur. 2 Quas legationes Caesar, quod in Italianum Illyricumque properabat, inita proxima aestate ad se reverti jussit. 3 Ipse in Carnutes, Andes Turonesque, quae civitates propinquae his locis erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in hibernacula deductis, in Italianum pofectus est. 4 Ob easque res ex litteris Caesaris dies quindecim supplicatio decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.
BOOK III.

ALPINE CAMPAIGN.—A garrison, under the command of Servius Galba, had been set to guard the passes of the Upper Rhone, but is threatened by a formidable force, and brought into extreme danger (1-3). After sustaining an attack of some six hours, the garrison make a sudden sally, drive back the enemy, destroy the neighboring villages, and retire to the lower country, south of Lake Geneva, for the winter (4-6).

NAVAL CAMPAIGN.—The sea-faring tribes of Brittany form a strong league, under lead of the Veneti, and demand back their hostages from Crassus (7, 8). Cæsar prepares a fleet upon the Loire; the enemy fortify themselves on the coast. Labienus is sent to guard the north, and Crassus to the south; and Brutus is put in command of the Roman fleet (9-11). Situation of the Venetian strongholds; description of the fleets (12, 13). Engagement of the fleets: the enemies’ sailyards are cut away, and their ships dispersed; they surrender, their leaders are slain, and the rest sold as slaves (14-16). Meanwhile Sabinus, who is sent among the Unelli, on the Channel, a little further north, is attacked by them, but drives them back with great slaughter, and compels their surrender (17-19).

SOUTHERN GAUL.—Crassus, in Aquitania, after some skirmishing, is threatened by a strong league, relying chiefly on the soldurii; but attacks them in their camp, and secures the conquest of the whole region (20-27). Cæsar, meanwhile, proceeds against the Morini, &c., along the coast of Flanders; and, as they retire to their marshes, falls back to winter quarters near the mouth of the Seine (28, 29).

CUM in Italian proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam, cum legione duodecima et parte equitatus, in Nantuatis, Veragros Sedunosque misit, qui ab finibus Allobrogum et lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano ad summaz Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter per Alpes, quo magno cum periculo magnisique cum portoriis mercatores ire consuerant,
patefieri volebat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in his locis legionem hiemandi causa conlocaret. 3 Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis, castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis, obsidibusque datis et pace facta, constituit cohortes duas in Nantuatibus conlocare, et ipse cum reliquis ejus legiônis cohortibus in vico Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare; 4 qui vicus, positus in valle, non magna adjecta planicie, altissimis montibus undique continetur. 5 Cum hic in duas partes flumine divideretur, alteram partem ejus vici Gallis ad hiemandum concessit, alteram vacuum ab his relictam cohortibus adtribuit. Eum locum vallo fossaque munivit.

2. Cum dies hibernorum complures transissent, frumentumque eo comportari jussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discississe, montesque, qui impenderent, a maxima multitudine Sedunorum et Veragrorum teneri. 2 Id aliquot de causis acciderat, ut subito Galli belli renovandae legionisque oppressae consilium caperent: primum, quod legionem—neque eam plenissimam, detractis cohortibus duabus et compluribus singulatim, qui commatus petendi causa missi erant—propter paucitatem desperiebant; 3 tum etiam quod propter iniquitatem loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem decurrerent et tela conicerent, ne primum quidem posse impetum suum sustineri existimabant. 4 Accedebat, quod suos ab se liberos abstractos obi- dum nomine dolebant, et Romanos non solum itinerum causa, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis culmina Alpium occupare conari, et ea loca finitimae provinciae adjun- gere sibi persuasum habebant.

3. His nuntiis acceptis, Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum munitionesque plene essent perfectae, neque de frumento reliquoque commeatu satis esset
provisum, quod deditione facta obsidibusque acceptis nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato, sententias exquirere coepit. 2 Quo in consilio, cum tantum repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset, ac jam omnia fere superiora loca multitudo armatorum completa conspicerentur, neque subsidio veniri neque commeatus supportari interclusis itineribus possent, 3 prope jam desperata salute, nonnullae hujusmodi sententiae dicebantur, ut impedimentis relictis, eruptione facta, isdem itineribus quibus eo pervenissent, ad salutem contenderent. 4 Majori tamen parti placuit, hoc reservato ad extremum consilio, interim rei eventum experiri, et castra defendere.

14. Brevi spatio interjecto, vix ut iis rebus quas constituissent conlocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostes ex omnibus partibus signo dato decurrere, lapides gaesaque in vallum conicerent. 2 Nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare, neque ulla frustra telum ex loco superiore mittere, ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hoc superari, quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant: 3 quarum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac non modo defesso ex pugna excedendi, sed ne saucio qui dem ejus loci, ubi constiterat, relinquendi ac sui recipiendi facultas dabantur.

5. Cum jam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur, ac non solum vires sed etiam tela nostros deficerent, atque hostes, acrius instarent, languidioribusque nostris vallum scindere et fossas compleere coepissent, resque esset jam ad extremum perducta casum, 2 P. Sextius Baculus, primi pili centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Gaius Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam adcurrunt, atque unam
esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extremum auxilium experirentur. 3 Itaque, convocatis centurionibus, celeriter milites certiores facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium, ac tantummodo tela missa exciperent seque ex labore reficerent; post, dato signo, ex castris erupserent, atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent. 1

6. Quod jussi sunt faciunt, ac subito omnibus portis eruptione facta, neque cognoscedi quid fieret, neque sui colligendi hostibus facultatem relinquunt. 2 Ita commutata fortuna, eos qui in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant undique circumventos interficiunt; et ex hominum milibus amplius triginta, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat, plus tertia parte interfecta, reliquos perterritos in fugam coniciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. 3 Sic omnibus hostium copiis fusis, armisque exutis, se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. 4 Quo proelio facto, quod saepius fortunam temptare Galba nolebat, atque alio se in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rebus viderat, maxime frumenti commetatusque inopia permutus, postero die, omnibus ejus vici aedificis incensis, in provinciam reverti contendit, ac nullo hoste prohibente aut iter demorante, incoluem legionem in Nantuatis, inde in Allobroges perduxit, ibique hiemavit.

7. His rebus gestis, cum omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedunis, atque ita inita hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes adire et regiones cognoscere volebat, subitum bellum in Gallia coortum est. 2 Eius belii haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulescens cum legione septima proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemarat. 3 Is, 35 quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat, praefectos tribunosque militum complures in finitimis civitates

Hujus est civitatis longe amplissima auctoritas omnis orae maritimae regionum earum, quod et naves habent Veneti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt, et scientia atque usu nauticarum rerum reliquos antecedunt, et in magno impetu maris atque aperto paucis portibus interjectis, quos tenent ipsi, omnes fere, qui eo mari uti consuerunt, habent vectigales. 2 Ab his fit initium retinendi Silii atque Velanii, quod per eos suos se obsides, quos Crasso dedissent, reciperatos existimabant. 3 Horum auctoritate finitimi adducti (ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentina consilia), eadem de causa Trebium Terra-sidiumque retinent; et celeriter missis legatis, per suos principes inter se conjurant, nihil nisi communi consilio acturos, eundemque omnis fortunae exitum esse latus; 4 reliquaque civitates sollicitant, ut in ea libertate quam a majoribus acceperant permanere, quam Romanorum servitutem perferre mallent. 5 Omnini ora maritima celeriter ad suam sententiam perducta, communem legationem ad P. Crassum mittunt, si velit suos recipere, obsides sibi remittat.

9. Quibus de rebus Caesar ab Crasso certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, naves interim longas aedificari in flumine Ligere, quod influxit in Oceanum, remiges ex provincia institui, nautas gubernatoresque comparari jubet. His rebus celeriter administratis, ipse, cum primum per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. 2 Veneti reliquaeque item civitates, cognito Caesaris adventu [certiores facti], simul quod quantum in se facinus admisissent intellegebant, legatos—quod nomen ad omnes nationes sanctum inviolatumque semper fuisset—retentos ab se et in vincla conjec-tos, pro magnitudine periculi bellum parare, et maxime
ea quae ad usum navium pertinent providere instituunt, hoc majore spe, quod multum natura loci confidebant.  
Pedestria esse itinera concisa a estuariis, navigatio-
em impeditam propter inscientiam locorum paucita-
temque portuum sciebant, neque nostros exercitus
propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morari posse
confidebant: ac jam ut omnia contra opinionem acci-
derent, tamen se plurimum navibus posse, Romanos
neque ullam facultatem habere navium, neque eorum
locorum ubi bellum gesturi essent vada, portus, insulas
novisse; ac longe aliam esse navigationem in concluso
mari atque in vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceano
perspiciebant. His initis consiliis, oppida muniunt,
fruenta ex agris in oppida comportant, naves in
Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum esse bellum gestu-
rum constabat, quam plurimas possunt, cogunt. So-
cios sibi ad id bellum Osismos, Lexovios, Namnetes,
Ambliatos, Morinos, Diablintres, Menapios absci-
scent; auxilia ex Britannia, quae contra eas regiones
posita est, arcessunt.

10. Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi, quas supra
ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum
incitabant: injuriae retentorum equitum Romanorum,
rebellio facta post deditionem, defectio datis obsidibus,
tot civitatum conjuratio; imprimis ne, hac parte ne-
glecta, reliquae nationes sibi idem licere arbitrarentur.

2 Itaque cum intellexeret omnes fere Gallos novis rebus
studere, et ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitari,
omnes autem homines natura libertati studere et con-
dicionem servitutis odisse, priusquam plures civitates
conspirarent, partiendo sibi ac latius distribuendum
exercitum putavit.

11. Itaque T. Labium legatum in Treveros, qui
proximi fluminis Rheni sunt, cum equitatu mittit.
Huic mandat Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat, atque
in officio continentate Germanosque, qui auxilio a Belgis
arcessiti dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire consentur, prohibeat. 2P. Crassum, cum cohortibus legionariis duodecim et magno numero equitatus, in Aquitaniam proficisci jubebat, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur, ac tantae nationes con-
jungantur. 3Q. Titurium Sabinum legatum cum legionibus tribus in Unellos, Curiosolites Lexoviosque mittit, qui eam manum distinendam cuget. 4Decimum Brutum adulescentem classi Gallicosque navibus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pacatis regionibus convenire jussaret, praeeficit, et, cum primum posset, in Venetos proficisci jubebat. Ipse eo pedestribus copiis contendit.

12. Erant ejusmodi fere situs oppidorum, ut, posita in extremis lingulis promunturiisque, neque pedibus aditum haberent, cum ex alto se aestus incitavisset (quod [bis] accidit semper horarum xii spatio), neque navibus, quod rursus minuente aestu naves in vadis adfectarentur. 2Ita utraque re oppidorum oppugnatio impediebatur; ac si quando — magnitudine operis forte superati, extrusò mari aggerè ac molibus, atque his oppidi moenis bussa adaequatis — suis fortunis desperare coeperant, magni numero navium adpulso, cujus rei summam facultatem habeabant, sua deportabant omnia, sequent in proxima oppida recipiebant: ibi se rursus isdem opportunitatibus loci defendebant. 3Haec eo facilius magnam partem aestatis faciebant, quod nostrae naves tempestatis detinebantur, summque erat — vasto atque aperto mari, magnis aestibus, raris ac prope nullis portibus — difficutas navigandi. 30

13. Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant: carinae aliquanto planiores quam nostrarum navium, quo facilius vada ac decessum aestus excipere possent; 2prorae admodum erectae, atque item puppes ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempes-35 tatunque accommodatae; naves totae factae ex robore
ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam; transtra pedalibus in altitudinem trabibus confixa clavis ferreis digiti pollicis crassitudine; \textsuperscript{8}ancorae pro funibus ferreis catenis revinçtæ; pelles pro velis alutaeque tenui-\textsuperscript{5} ter confectæ, hae sive propter lini inopiam atque ejus usus inscientiam, sive eo (quod est magis verisimile) quod tantas tempestates Oceani tantosque impetus ventorum sustineri ac tanta onera navium regi velis non satis commode posse arbitrabantur. \textsuperscript{4}Cum his navibus nostræ classi ejusmodi congressus erat, ut una celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret; reliqua pro loci natura, pro vi tempestatum, illis essent aptiora et accommodatoria. \textsuperscript{5}Neque enim his nostræ rostro nocere poterant—tanta in iis erat firmitudo—neque propter altitudinem facile telum adiciebatur, et eadem de causa minus commode copulis continebantur. \textsuperscript{6}Accedebat ut, cum saevire venus coepisset et se vento dedissent, et tempestatem ferrent facilius, et in vadis consistenter tuitus, et ab aestu relictæ nihil saxa et cautes timerent; quarum rerum omnium nostris navibus casus erat extimescendus. \\

\textsuperscript{14.} Compluribus expugnatis oppidis, Caesar, ubi intellixit frustra tantum laborem sumi, neque hostium fugam captis oppidis reprimi neque iis noceri posse, \textsuperscript{2}Quae ubi convenit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ccxx naves eorum, paratissimæ atque omni genere armorum ornatisimæ, profectæ ex portu, nostris adversæ cons-titerunt; neque satis Bruto, qui classi praeerat, vel \textsuperscript{3}tribunis militum centurionibusque, quibus singulae naves erant adtributæ, constabat quid agerent, aut quam rationem pugnae insisterent. \textsuperscript{8}Rostro enim noceri non posse cognoverant; turribus autem excita-tis, tamen has altitudo puppion ex barbaris navigus \textsuperscript{35}superabat; ut neque ex inferiore loco satis commode tela adici possent, et missa ab Gallis gravius accide-
rent. 4 Una erat magno usui res praeparata a nostris, —falces praecutae insertae adfixaeque longuriis, non absimili forma muralium falcium. 5 His cum funes; qui antennas ad malos destinabant, comprehensi adductique erant, navigio remis incitato praerumpebantur. 6 Quibus abscisis antennae necessario concidabant; ut, cum omnis Gallicis navibus spes in velis armamentisque consistaret, his ereptis, omnis usus navium uno tempore eriperetur. 7 Reliquum erat certamen positum in virtute, qua nostri milites facile superabant, atque eo magis, quod in conspectu Caesaris atque omnis exercitus res gerebatur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum latere posset; omnes enim colles ac loca superi oria, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercitu tenebantur. 15

Disjectis (ut diximus) antennis, cum singulas binae ac ternaes naves circumsteterant, milites summa vi transcendere in hostium naves contendebant. 2 Quod postquam barbari fieri animadverterunt, expugnatis compluribus navibus, cum ei rei nullum reperiretur auxilium, fuga salutem petere contenderunt. 3 Ac jam, conversis in eam partem navibus quo ventus ferebat, tanta subito malacia ac tranquillitas exstitit, ut se ex loco commovere non possent. 4 Quae quidem res ad negotium conficiendum maxime fuit opportuna: 25 nam singulas nostri consecutati expugnaverunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numero noctis interventu ad terram pervenerint, cum ab hora fere quarta usque ad solis occasum pugnaretur.

16. Quo proelio bellum Venetorum totiusque orae maritimae confectum est. Nam cum omnis juventus, omnes etiam gravioris aetatis, in quibus aliquid consilii aut dignitatis fuit, eo conveni erant, tum navium quod ubique fuerat unum in locum coegerant; 2 quibus amissis, reliqui neque quo se recipierent, neque quem 35 ad modum oppida defenderent habebant. Itaque se
suaque omnia Caesar dediderunt. 3 In quos eo gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quo diligentius in reliquum tempus a barbaris jus legatorum conservaretur. Itaque, omni senatu necato, reliquos sub coro-
5 na vendidit.

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titurius Sabinus, cum iis copiis quas a Caesare acceperat, in fines Unellorum pervenit. His praerat Viridovix, ac summam imperii tenebat earum omnium civitatum 10 quae defeicerant, ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coëgerat; 2 atque his paucis diebus Aulerci, Eburovices, Lexoviiique, senatu suo interfector, quod auctores belli esse nolebant, portas clauserunt, seque cum Viridovice conjunxerunt; magnaque praeterea 15 multitudo undique ex Gallia perditorum hominum latronumque convenerat, quos spes praedandi studiumque bellandi ab agricultura et cotidiano labore revocabat. 3 Sabinus idoneo omnibus rebus loco castris sese tenebat, cum Viridovix contra eum duum milium 20 spatio consedisset, cotidieque productis copiis pugnandi potestatem faceret; ut jam non solum hostibus in contemptionem Sabinum veniret, sed etiam nostrorum militiae vocibus nonnihil carperetur; tantamque opinionem timoris praebuit, ut jam ad vallum castro-
25 rum hostes accedere auderent. 4 Id ea de causa faciebat, quod cum tanta multitudine hostium, praesertim eo absente qui summam imperii teneret, nisi aequo loco aut opportunitate aliqua data, legato dimicandum non existimabat.

30 18. Hac confirmata opinione timoris, idoneum quendam hominem et callidum delegit, Gallum, ex iis quos auxiliii causa secum habebat. Huic magnis praemissis polllicitationibusque persuadet, uti ad hostes transecat, et quid fieri velit edocet. 2 Qui ubi pro perfuga ad eos 35 venit, timorem Romanorum proponit; quibus angustiis ipse Caesar a Venetis prematur docet; neque longius
abesse quin proxima nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum educat, et ad Caesarem auxilii ferendi causa proficiscatur. 3 Quod ubi auditum est, conclamant omnes occasionem negotii bene gerendi amittendam non esse, ad castra iri oportere. 4 Multae res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur: superiorum dierum Sabini cunctatio, perfugae confirmatio, inopia cibariorum, cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat provisum, spes Venetici belli, et quod fere libenter homines id quod volunt credunt. 5 His rebus adducti, non prius Viridoviciem reliquoque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his sit concessum, arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. 6 Qua re concessa, laeti ut explorata victoria, sarmentis virgultisque collectis, quibus fossas Romanorum compleant, ad castra pergunt. /


3 Factum est opportunitate loci, hostium inscientia ac defeigatione, virtute militum et superiorum pugnarum exercitatione, ut ne unum quidem nostrorum impetu ferrent, ac statim terga verterent. 4 Quos impeditos integris viribus milites nostri consecuti, magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquis equites consectati paucos, qui ex fuga evaserant, reliquerunt. 5 Sic uno tempore et de navali pugna Sabinus et de Sabini victoria Caesar certior factus est; civitatesque omnes se statim Titurio dediderunt. 6 Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac minime resistens ad calamitates perferendas mens eorum est.

20. Eodem fere tempore P. Crassus cum in Aquita-
niam pervenisset,—quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regionum latitudine et multitudine hominum ex tertia parte Galliae est aestimanda,—cum intellegueret in iis locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis L. 5 Valerius Praeconinus legatus exercitu pulso interfectus esset, atque unde L. Mallius proconsul impedimentis amissis profugisset, non mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendum intellegebat. 2 Itaque re frumentaria provisa, auxiliis equitatuque comparato, multis praeterea viris fortibus Tolosa et Narbone (quae sunt civitates Galliae provinciae finitimae his regionibus) nominatiim evocatis, in Sontiatum fines exercitum introduxit. 3 Cujus adventu cognito, Sontiates magnis copiis coactus equitatuque, quo plurimum valebant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti, primum equestre proelium commiserunt; deinde equitatu suo pulso, atque insequentibus nostris, subito pedestres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis conlocaverant, ostenderunt. Hi nostros disjectos adorti, proelium renovarunt. 4

20 l21. Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sontiates, superioribus victoriis freti, in sua virtute totius Aquitaniae salutem positam putarent; nostri autem quid sine imperatore et sine reliquis legionibus adulescentulo duce efficere possent, perspici cuperent: tandem confessi vulneribus hostes terga vertere. 2 Quorum magno numero interfecit, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sonti- tum oppugnare coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus, vineas turresque egit. 3 Illi, alias eruptione temptata, alias cuniculis ad aggerem vineasque actis (cujus rei sunt longe peritissimi Aquitani, propterea quod multis locis apud cos aerariae †secturaeque sunt), ubi diligentia nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse intellexeerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt, seque in ditionem ut recipiat petunt. Qua re impetrata, arma tradere 35 jussi, faciunt.

22. Atque in ea re omnium nostrorum intentis ani-
mis, alia ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, qui summam imperii tenebat, cum sexcentis devotis, quos illi soldu-rios appellant,—quorum haec est condicio, uti omnibus in vita commodis una cum iis fruantur quorum se amicitiae dediderint; si quid his per vim accidat, aut eundem casum una ferant, aut sibi mortem consciscant; neque adhuc hominum memoria repertus est quisquam, qui eo interfecto, cujus se amicitiae devo- visset, mori recusaret,—cum his Adiatunnus, erup- tionem facere conatus, clamore ab ea parte munitionis sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen uti eadem deditiocondizione uteretur ab Crasso impetravit.

23. Armis obsidibusque acceptis, Crassus in fines Vocatium et Tarusatium pfectus est. Tum vero barbari commoti, quod oppidum et natura loci et manu munitum paucis diebus, quibus eo ventum erat, expugnatum cognoverant, legatos quoqueversum dimittere, conjurare, obsides inter se dare, copias parare cœpe- runt. 2Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitates legati, quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae finitimae Aquitaniae: inde auxilia ducesque accessuntur; quorum adventu, magna cum auctoritate et magna cum hominum multitudo bellum gerere conantur. 8Duces vero ii deliguntur, qui una cum Q. Sertorio omnes annos fuerant, summamque scientiam rei militaris habere existimabantur. Hi consuetudine populi Romani loca capere, castra munire, commeatibus nostros intercludere instituunt. 4Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit,—suas copias propter exiguatum non facile diduci, hostem et vagari et vias obsidere et castris satis praesidii reliquere, ob eam causam minus commode frumentum commeatumque sibi supportari, in dies hostium numerum augeri,—non cunctandum existimavit quin pugna decertaret. 5Hac re ad consilium delata, ubi
Crassus in Aquitania.

omnes idem sentire intellexit, posterum diem pugnae constituit. 

24. Prima luce, productis omnibus copiis, duplici acie instituta, auxiliis in medium aciem conjectis, quid hostes consilii caperent exspectabat. 2 Illi, etsi propter multitudinem et veterem belli gloriam paucitatemque nostrorum se tuto dimicatuos existimabant, tamen tutius esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, commeatu intercluso, sine ullo vulnere victoria potiri; et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariae Romani sese recipere coepissent, impeditos in agmine et sub sarcinis infirmiore animo adoriri cogitabant. Hoc consilio probato, ab ducibus productis Romanorum copiis, sese castris tenebant. 3 Hac re perspecta, Crassus, cum sua cunctatione atque opinione timoris hostes nostros milites alacriores ad pugnandum effecissent, atque omnium voces audirentur, exspectari diutius non oportere quin ad castra iretur, cohortatus suos, omnibus cupientibus, ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum alii fossas complerent, alii multis telis conjectis defensores vallo munitionibusque depellerent, auxiliaresque (quibus ad pugnam non multum Crassus confidebat) lapidibus telisque subministrandis et ad aggerem cespitibus comportandis speciem atque opini onem pugnantium praebentur; 2 cum item ab hostibus constanter ac non timide pugnaretur, tclaque ex loco superiore missa non frustra acciderent, equites circumités hostium castris Crasso renuntiaverunt, non eadem esse diligentia ab decumana porta castra munita, facilemque aditum habere.

26. Crassus, equitum praefectos cohortatus ut magnis praemiis polllicitationibusque suos excitarent, quid fieri velit ostendit. 2 Illi, ut erat imperatum, eductis iis cohortibus quae praesidio castris relietae intritae ab labore erant, et longiore itinere circumductis, ne ex hostium castris conspici possent, omnium oculis menti-
busque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad eas quas diximus munitiones pervenerunt, atque his prorutis, prius in hostium castris constiterunt quam plane ab his videri, aut quid rei gereretur cognosci posset. 

Tum vero, clamore ab ea parte audito, nostri redintegratis viribus, quod plerumque in spe victoriae accidentalis consuevit, acrius impugnare coeperunt. Hostes undique circumventi, desperatis omnibus rebus, se per munitiones deicere et fuga salutem petere intenderunt.

Quos equitatus apertissimis campis consectatus, ex milium quinquaginta numero, quae ex Aquitania Cantabrisque convenisse constabat, vix quarta parte relicta, multa nocte se in castra recipit.

27. Hac audita pugna, maxima pars Aquitaniae sese Crasso dedidit, obsidesque ultro misit; quo in numero fuerunt Tarbelli, Bigerriones, Ptianii, Vocates, Tarusates, Elusates, Gates, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzates, Cocosates: paucae ultimae nationes, anni tempore confisae, quod hiems suberat, hoc facere neglexerunt.

28. Eodem fere tempore Caesar, etsi prope exacta jam aestas erat, tamen quod, omni Gallia pacata, Morini Menapiique supererant qui in armis essent, neque ad eum unquam legatos de pace misissent, arbitratus id bellum celeriter confici posse, eo exercitu adduxit; qui longe alia ratione ac reliqui Galli bellum gerere coeperunt. Nam quod intellegebant maximas nationes, quae proelio contendissent, pulsas superatasse esse, continentesse silvas ac paludes habebant, eo se suaque omnia contulerunt. 

Ad quaram initium silvarum cum Caesar pervenisset, castraque munire instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subito ex omnibus partibus silvae evolaverunt, et in nostros impetum fecerunt. Nostri celeriter arma ceperunt, eosque in silvas repulerunt, et compluribus interfectis, longius impeditioribus locis secuti, paucos ex suis deperdiderunt.
Reliquis deinceps diebus Caesar silvas caedere instituit, et ne quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem conlocabat, et pro vallo ad utrumque latus exstruebat. Incredibili celeritate magno spatio paucis diebus confecto, cum jam pecus atque extrema impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ipsi densiores silvas peterent, ejusmodi sunt tempestaties consecutae, uti opus necessario intermitteretur, et continuatione imbrium diutius sub pellibus milites contineri non possent. Itaque vastatis omnibus eorum agris, vicis aedificiisque incensis, Caesar exercitum reduxit, et in Aulercis Lescoviiisque, reliquis item civitatibus quae proxime bellum fecerant, in hibernis conlocavit.
BOOK IV.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE GERMANS.—The Suevi (*Swabians*), the most powerful tribe of Germans: their customs and warlike habit. They expel the Usipetes and Tencteri, who in their turn invade Northern Gaul (1-4). Advancing to strengthen the Gauls, who are about to yield, Cæsar demands that the Germans withdraw: after some parley, they furiously attack the Roman cavalry (5-12). Detaining their envoys, Cæsar attacks their camp, defeats and drives them to the Rhine (13-15). He then resolves to cross the Rhine: description of the Bridge (16, 17). After a short campaign in Germany, he returns to Gaul (18, 19).

FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN.—Motives for the expedition: the reconnoissance and preparations (20-22). Arrival in Britain: resistance of the Britons; valor of a Roman centurion. Cæsar lands, and after a sharp battle drives back the natives, who sue for peace (23-27). Meanwhile the Roman cavalry are forced back by a storm, and the fleet is seriously injured; on which the Britons renew hostilities (28-32). They attack a foraging party: their mode of fighting from war-chariots. Gathering a large force, they attack the Roman camp: defeating them, Cæsar makes peace and returns to Gaul to avoid the stormy season (33-36). Suppressing some disturbances, he quarters his forces among the Belgians for the winter (37, 38).

---

*A quae secuta est hieme, qui fuit annus Gnaeo Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Germani et item Tencteri magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari quo Rhenus influit. *2 Causa transeundi fuit quod, *3 ab Suevis complures annos exagitati, bello premeabantur et agricultura prohibebantur. Suevorum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. *3 Hi centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, se atque illos alunt. *4 Hi rursus in vicem anno post in
armis sunt, illi domi remanent. Sic neque agricultura nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. 5 Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causa licet. 6 Neque multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in venationibus; quae res et cibi genere et cotidiana exercitacione et libertate vitae, quom a pueris nullo officio aut disciplina adsuefacti nihil omnino contra voluntatem faciant, et vires alit, et immani corporum magnitudine homines efficit. 7 Atque in cam se consuetudinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitus praeter pellis haberent quicquam, quorum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavarentur in flumi-nibus.

2. Mercatoribus est aditus magis eo, ut quae bello ceperint quibus vendant habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad se importari desiderent. 2 Quin etiam jumentis, quibus maxime Galli delectantur, quaeque impenso parant pretio, Germani importatis non utuntur; sed quae sunt apud eos nata, parva atque deiformia, haec cotidiana exercitacione summi ut sint laboris efficiunt. 3 Equestribus proeliiis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio adsuefecerunt, ad quos se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt; neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habetur quam ephippiis uti. 4 Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum quamvis pauci adire audent. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quod ea re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines atque effeminari arbitrantur.

73. Publice maximam putant esse laudem quam latissime a suis finibus vacare agros; hac re significari magnum numerum civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque una ex parte a Suevis circiter milia passuum sexcenta agri vacare dicuntur. 2 Ad alteram

4. In eadem causa fuerunt Usipetes et Tencteri, quos supra diximus, qui complures annos Suevorum vim sustinuerunt; ad extremum tamen, agris expulsi et multis locis Germaniae triennium vagati, ad Rhe-num pervenerunt: 2 quas regiones Menapii incolebant, et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros aedificia vicosque habebant; sed tantae multitudinis aditu perterriti, ex iis aedificiis quae trans flumen habuerant demigraverunt, et cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis Germanos transire prohibebant. 3 Illi omnia experti, cum neque vi contedere propter inopiam navium neque clam transire propter custodias Menapiorum possent, reverti se in suas sedes regionesque simulaverunt, et tridui viam progressi rursus reverterunt, atque omni hoc itinere una nocte equitatu confecto, inscios inopinan- tesque Menapios oppresserunt; qui de Germanorum discessu per exploratores certiores facti, sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. 4 His interfectis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra Rhenum erat, certior fieret, flumen transierunt; atque omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis, reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt.

5. His de rebus Caesar certior factus, et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his
committendum existimavit. 2 Est enim hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et viatores etiam invitos consistere cogant, et quid quisque eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit quaerant; et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant quasque ibi res cognoverint pronuntiare cogant. 3 His rebus atque auditionibus permoti de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos in vestigio paenitere necesse est, cum incertis rumoribus serviant, et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant.

6. Qua consuetudine cognita, Caesar, ne graviori bello occurreret, maturius quam consuerat ad exercitum profisciscitur. 2 Eo cum venisset, ea quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovi: missas legationes ab nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos, invitatosque eos uti ab Rheno discederent, omniaque quae postulassent ab se fore parata. 3 Qua spe adducit, Germani latius vagabantur, et in fines Eburonum et Condрусorum, qui sunt Treverorum clientes, pervererant. 4 Princi pulibus Galliae evocatis, Caesar ea quae cognoverat dissimulanda siti existimavit, eorumque animis perturdis et confirmatis, equitatuque imperato, bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit.
quidem immortales pares esse possint; rcliquum quidem in terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint.'

8. Ad haec quae visum est Caesar respondit; sed exitus fuit orationis: 'Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent; neque verum esse, quī suōs fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare; neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros, qui dari tantae præsertim multitūdini sine injuria possint; sed licere, si velit, in Ubiorum finibus considere, quorum sint legati apud se et de Suevorum injuriis querantur et a se auxilium petant: hoc se Ubii imperaturum.'

9. Legati haec se ad suos relatos dixerunt, et re deliberata post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros: interea ne propius se castra moveret petierunt. Ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit. 2 Cogno verat enim magnam partem equitatus ab ilius aliquot diebus ante praedandī frumentandique causa ad Ambivariros trans Mosam missam: hos exspectari equites, atque ejus rei causa moram interponi arbitrabatur.

10. Mosa profuit ex Monte Vosego, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quadem ex Rheno recepta, quae appellatur Vacalus t insulamque efficit Batavorum, in Oceanum influit, neque longius ab Oceano milibus passuum lxxx in Rhenum influit. 2 Rhenus autem 25 oritur ex Lepontis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Mediomatricum, Tribocorum, Treverorum citatus fertur; et, ubi Oceano adpropinquavit, in plures defluit partes, multis ingentiisque insulis effectis, quarum pars magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt qui piscibus atque ovis avium vivere existimantur, multisque capitis in Oceanum influit.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passum xii milibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati 35 revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi magnopere ne
longius progresseretur orabant. 2 Cum id non impe-
trassent, petebant uti ad eos equites qui agmen ante-
cessissent praemitteret, eosque pugna prohiberet,
sibique ut potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mit-
tendi; quorum si principes ac senatus sibi jurejurando
fidem fecisset, ea condicione quae a Caesare feretur
se usuros ostendebant: ad has res conficiendas sibi
tridui spatium daret. 3 Haec omnia Caesar eodem
illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut tridui mora interposita
10 equites eorum, qui abessent, reverteretur: tamen
se se non longius milibus passuum quattuor aquisitionis
causa processurum eo die dixit; huc postero die quam
frequentissimi convenièrent, ut de eorum postulatis
15 cognosceret. 4 Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni
equitatu antecesserant, mittit qui nuntiarent ne hostes
proelio lacesserent; et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustine-
rent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propriis accessisset.
12. At hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexe-
runt, quorum erat quinque milium numerus, cum ipsi
20 non amplius oetingentos equites haberent, quod ii qui
frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam nondum redie-
rant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod legati eorum paulo
ante a Caesare discesserant atque is dies indutiis erat
ab his petitus, impetu facto celeriter nostros pertur-
25 baverunt; 2 rursus resistentibus, consuetudine sua ad
pedes desiluerunt, subfossis equis compluribusque nos-
tris dejectis, reliquis in fugam conjecerunt, atque ita
perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent quam
in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. 3 In eo proe-
30 lio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quattuor et
septuaginta; in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquitanus,
amplissimo genere natus, cujus avus in civitate sua
regnium obtinuerat, amicus ab senatu nostro appel-
4 latus. 4 Hic cum fratri inclusu ab hostibus auxilium
35 ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit, ipse equo vulnerato
dejectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit: cum circum-

Digitized by Google
ventus, multis vulneribus acceptis, cecidisset, atque id frater, qui jam proelio exisserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equo se hostibus obtulit atque interfec-tus est.

13. Hoc facto proelio, Caesar neque jam sibi legatos audiendo neque condiciones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab iis, qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum intulissent:  2 exspectare vero, dum hostium copiae augerentur equitatusque reverteretur, summae dementiae esse judicabat; et cognita Gallorum infir-mitate, quantum jam apud eos hostes uno proelio aucto-ritatibus essent consecuti sentiebat; quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum existimabat.  3 His constitu-tutis rebus et consilio cum legatis et quaestore com-municato, ne quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, 15 opportunissima res accidit, quod postridie ejus diei mane, eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani frequentes, omnibus principibus majoribusque natu adhibitis, ad eum in castra venerunt:  4 simul, ut dice-batur, sui purgandi causa, quod (contra atque esset  20 dictum, et ipsi petissent) proelium pridie commississent; simul ut, si quid possent, de indutiis fallendo impetra-rent.  5 Quos sibi Caesar oblatos gavisus, illos retineri jussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit, equitatum-que, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat,  25 agmen subsequi jussit.

14. Acie triplici instituta, et celeriter viii milium itinere confecto, prius ad hostium castra pervenit quam quid ageretur Germani sentire possent.  2 Qui omni-bus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri et discessu suorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato, perturbantur; copiasne adversus hostem ducere, an castra defendere, an fuga salutem petere praestaret.  3 Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri, pristini diei perfidia incitati, in castra inruperunt.  4 Quo loco qui...
CELERITER ARMA CAPERE POTUERUNT, PAULISPER NOSTRIS RE-
STITERUNT, ATQUE INTER CARROS IMPEDIMENTAQUE PROELIUM
COMMISERUNT: AT RELIQUA MULTITUDO Puerorum Mulie-
RUMQUE—NAM CUM OMNIBUS SUIS DOMO EXCESSERANT
RHENUMQUE TRANSIERANT—PASSIM FUGERE COEPIT; AD
QUOS CONSECTANDOS CAESAR EQUITATUM MISIT.

15. GERMANI, POST TERGUM CLAMORE AUDITO, CUM SUOS
INTERFICI VIDERENT, ARMIS ABJECTIS SIGNISQUE MILITARI-
BUS RELICTIS, SE EX CASTRIS EJECERUNT, ET CUM AD CONFLUENTE
MOSAE ET RHENI PERVERSISSENT, RELIQUA FUGA DESPERATA,
MAGNO NUMERO INTERFECTO, RELIQUI SE IN FLUMEN PRAE-
CIPITAVERUNT; ATQUE IBI TIMORE, LASSITUDINE, VI FLUMINIS
OPRESSI PERIERUNT. 2 NOSTRI AD UNUM OMNES INCOLUMES,
PERPAUCIS VULNERATIS, EX TANTI BELLI TIMORE, CUM HOSTIUM
NUMEROS CAPITUM CCCXXX MILIUM FUisset, SE IN CAstra
RECEPERUNT. 3 CAESAR IIS, QUOS IN CASTRIS RETINUERAT,
DISCEDENDI POTESTATEM FECIT. ILLI SUPPLICIA CRUCIA-
TUSQUE GALLORUM VERITI, QUORUM AGROS VEXAVERANT,
REMANERE SE APUD EUM VELLE DIXERUNT. HIS CAESAR
20 LIBERTATEM CONCESSIT.

16. GERMANICO BELLO CONFECTO, MULTIS DE CAUSIS CAE-
SAR STATUIT SIBI RHENUM ESSE TRANSEUNDUM: QUARUM
ILLA FUIT JUSTISSIMA, QUOD, CUM VIDERET GERMANOS TAM
FACILE IMPELLI UT IN GALLIAM VENIRENT, SUIS QUOQUE REBUS
EOS TIMERE VOLUIT, CUM INTELLEGERENT ET POSSE ET AUDERE
POPOLI ROMANI EXERCITUM RHENUM TRANSIRE. 2 AC-
CESSIT ETIAM, QUOD ILLA PARS EQUITATUS USIPETUM ET
TENCTERORUM, QUAM SUPRA COMMENORAVI PRAEDANDI
FRUMENTANDIQUE CAUSA MOSAM TRANSISSE, NEQUE PROELIO
INTERFUINsse, POST FUGAM SUORUM SE TRANS RHENUM IN
FINES SUGAMBRRORUM RECEPERAT, SEQUE CUM IIS CONJUN-
XERAT. 3 AD QUOS CUM CAESAR NUNTIOS MISISSET, QUI
POSTULARENT, EOS QUI SIBI GALLIAEQUE BELLUM INTERLISSENT
SIBI DEDERENT, RESPONDERUNT: 'POPOLI ROMANI IM-
PERIUM RHENUM FINIRE: SI SE INVITO GERMANOS IN
GALLIAM TRANSIRE NON AECUlUM EXISTIMARET, CUR SUI
quicquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet? quod autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere orabant ut sibi auxilium feret, quod graviter ab Suevis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupationibus reipublicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret: id sibi ad auxillium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum. Tantum esse nomen atque opinionem ejus exercitus, Ariovisto pulso et hoc novissimo proelio facto, etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione et amicitia populi Romani tuti esse possint. Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum policebantur.

17. Caesar, his de causis quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat; sed navibus transire neque satis tutum esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque populi Romani dignitatis esse statuebat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis proponebatur propter latitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum, aut aliter non traducendum exercitum existimabat. Rationem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sesquipedalia, paulum ab imo praeacuta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallo pedum duorum inter se jungetabat. Haec cum machinationibus immissa in flumen defixerat, fistucisque adegerat, non sublicae modo directe ad perpendicularum, sed prone ac fastigate, ut secundum naturam fluminis procederent, his item contraria duo ad eundem modum juncta, intervallo pedum quadragenum, ab inferiore parte contra vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuebat. Haec utraque insuper bipedalibus trabibus immissis, quantum eorum tignorum junctura distabat, binis utrimque fibulis ab extrema parte distantebantur; quibus disclusis, atque in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitudo atque ea rerum natura, ut, quo major vis aquae se incitavisset,
hoc artius inligata tenerentur. 6 Haec directa materia injecta contexteabantur, ac longurii cratibusque cons-ternebantur; ac nihil secius sublicae et ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique agebantur, quae pro ariete 5 subjectae et cum omni opere conjunctae vim fluminis exciperent; 7 et aliae item supra pontem mediocri spatio, ut, si arborum trunci sive naves deiciendi operis essent a barbaris missae, his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur, neu ponti nocument.

10 18. Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat comportari, omni opere effecto, exercitus traducitur. Caesar, ad utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relictum, in fines Sugambrorum contendit. 2 Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt; quibus 15 pacem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondit, obsidesque ad se adduci jubes. 3 Sugambri, ex eo tempore quo pons institui coepit est, fuga comparata, hortantibus iis quos ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis exsserat, suaque 20 omnia exportaverant, seque in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

19. Caesar, paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus, omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis, frumentisque succisit, se in fines Ubiorum recipit; atque iis auxilium 25 suum pollicitus, si ab Suevis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: 2 'Suevos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri compersisset, more suo concilio habito, nuntios in omnes partes dimississe, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, uxores, suaque omnia in silvis 30 deponerent, atque omnes, qui arma ferre possent, unum in locum convenirent; hunc esse delectum me- dium fere regionum earum, quas Suevi obtinerent; hic Romanorum adventum exspectare, atque ibi de- certare constituisse.' 3 Quod ubi Caesar comperit, 35 omnibus rebus iis confectis, quarum rerum causa tra- ducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum
iniceret, ut Sugambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem pro-
fectum arbitratus, se in Galliam receptit, pontemque rescidit.

20. Exigua parte aestatis reliqua, Caesar, etsi in
his locis (quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit)
maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci
contendit: quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus
nostris inde sumministrata auxilia intellegebat; et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen mag-
no sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset
et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus
cognovisset; quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita.

3 Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quis-
quam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam
atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum
est. Itaque vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque
quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quan-
tae nationes incolenter, neque quem usum belli habe-
rent aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent
ad maiorum navium multitudinem idonei portus,
reperire poterat.

21. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum fa-
ceret, idoneum esse arbitratus, Gaium Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. Huic mandat, ut exploratis
omnia rebus ad se quam primum revertatur. Ipse
cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde
erat brevissimus in Britanniam trajectus. Huc naves
undique ex finitimis regionibus, et quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum effecerat ciassem, jubet
convenire. Interim, consilio ejus cognito, et per mer-
catores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus insulae
civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui pollicantur
obsides dare, atque imperio populi Romani otempe-
rare. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus, hortatus-
que ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit; et cum iis una Commium, quem ipse Atrebaticus superatis regem ibi constituerat, cujus et virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem sibi fidelem esse arbitrabatur, cujusque auctoritas in his regionibus magni habebatur, mittit. 5 Huic imperat, quas possit aede civitates; horteturque ut populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. 6 Volusenus, perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

22. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturos pollicerentur. 2 Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportune accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat, neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat, neque has tantuarum rerum occupationes Britanniae anteponendas judicabat, magnum iis numerum obsidium imperat. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recepit. 25 3 Navibus circiter LXXX onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quod praeterea navium longarum habebat, quae estori, legatis praefectisque distribuit. 4 Huc accedebant XVIII onerariae naves, quae ex eo loco ab milibus passuum VIII vento tenebantur, quo minus in eundem portum venire possent: has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Titurio Sabino et L. Aurunculeio Cotta legatis in Menapios, atque in eos pagos Morinorum ab quibus ad eum legati non vene-35 rant, ducendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rufum legatum, cum eo praesidio quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere jussit.
23. His constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem, tertia fere vigilia solvit, equitesque in ulteriorum portum proegredi et naves conscendere et se sequi jussit. A quibus cum paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora circiter diei quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cujus loci haec erat natura, atque ita montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adigi posset. Hunc ad egrediendum ne quaquam idoneum locum arbitratus, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris exspectavit. Interim, legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex Voluseno cognosset et quae fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent (ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent), ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublatis ancoris, circiter milia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

24. At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, praevisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti, nos suis navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves propter magnitudinem nisi in alto constitui non poterant; militibus autem, ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi onere armorum oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illi aut ex arido, aut paulum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris expeditis, notissimis locis, audacter tela conicerent, et eques insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque hujus omnino generis pugnae imperiti, non eadem alacritate
ac studio quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consuerant nitebantur.  

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitator, et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus, et remis incitari, et ad latus apertum hostium constitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes propelli ac summoveri jussit; quae res magnus usui nostris fuit.  

Nam, et navium figura et remorum motu et inusitato generi tormentorum permoti, barbari constiterunt, ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt.  

3 Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret:  

4 Desilite, inquit, miliitis, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe meum rei publicae atque imperatori officium praestitero. Hoc cum voce magna dixisset, se ex navi proiect, atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit.  

5 Tum nostri, cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt. Hos item ex proximis [primis] navibus cum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus adpropinquarent.  

26. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insis-

25 tere neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se adgregabat, magnopere perturbabantur;  

2 hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos circumsistebant, alii ab latere aperto in universos tela coniciebant.  

3 Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus completri jussit, et quos laborantes conspexerat, his subsidia submittebat.  

4 Nostri simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consecutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque
eos in fugam dederunt; neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.  

27. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace mise- runt; obsides datus quaeque imperasset facturos esse polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum.  

2 Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos oratoris modo Caesaris mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula conjece- rant: tum, proelio facto, remiserunt; et in petenda pace ejus rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur petiverunt.  

3 Caesar questus, quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiæ dixit, obsidesque imperavit; quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquis in locis accessitam paucis diebus sese datus dixerunt.  

4 Interea suos remigrare in agros jussurunt, principesque undique convenire, et se civitalesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.  

28. His rebus pace confirmata, post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves xviii, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt.  

2 Quae cum adpropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset; sed aliae eodem, unde erant pro-fectae, referrentur, aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo deicerentur: quae tamen, ancoris jactis, cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum pro-vectae continentem petierunt.  

29. Eadem nox accidit ut esset luna plena, qui
dies marimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat, quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus compleverat; et onerarias, quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas afflictabat, neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur. 2Compluribus navibus fractis, reliquae cum essent — funibus, ancoris reliquisque armamentis amissis — ad navigandum inutiles, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) totius exercitus perturbatio facta est. 3Neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent; et omnia deërant quae ad reficiendas naves erant usui; et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

30. Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convenerant, inter se conlocuti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deëse intellegerent, et paucitatem militum ex castro-20 rum exiguitate cognoscerunt, — quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, — optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione facto, frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere, et rem in hiemem producere; quod his superatis, aut reeditu interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque rursus conjuratione facta, paulatim ex castris discedere ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

31. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum, et ex eo quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. 2Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie in castra conferebat, et quae gravissime afflictae erant 35 naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur; et quae ad eas res erant usui ex con-
[War Chariots of the Britons.]


tinenti comportari jubebat. 8 Itaque cum summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commodate posset eccit.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, — cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, — ii qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant Caesari nuntiaverunt pulverem majorem quam consuetudo ferret in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. 2 Caesar, id quod erat suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes quae in stationibus erant secum in cam partem pro ficisci, ex reliquis duas in stationem cohortes succedere, reli quas armari et confestim sese subsequi jussit. 8 Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi, atque aegre sustinere, et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus tela conici animadvertit. 4 Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos, noctu in silvas delitucrant; tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo occupatos, subito adorti, paucis interfectis, reliquis incertis ordinibus perturbav erunt, simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

33. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primo per omnes partes perequitant, et tela coniciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant; et cum se inter equitum turmas insinua verunt, ex essedis desiliunt, et pedibus proeliantur. 2 Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excessunt, atque ita currus conlocant, uti si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. 8 Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proelii praestant; ac tantum usu cotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti in declivi ac praeципiti loco incita tos equos sustinere, et brevi moderari ac flectere, et
per temonem percurrere, et in jugo insistere, et se inde in currus citissime recipere consuerint.


35. Caesar, etsi idem quod superioribus diebus acciderat fore videbat, — ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent, — tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius Atrebas (de quo ante dictum est) secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commissio proelio, diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt, ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio securi, {quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt; deinde, omnibus longe lateque aedificis incensis, se in castra receperunt.

36. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidium, quem antea imperaverat, duplicavit, eosque in continentem adduci jussit; quod, propinquu die aequinoctii, infirmis navibus hiemi navigationem subiciendam non existimabat. Ipse, idoneam tempestatem nactus,
paulo post medium noctem naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt: sed ex iis onerariae duaè eosdem quos reliqui portus capere non potuerunt, et paulo infra delatae sunt.

37. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter trecenti, atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti, primo non ita magno suo rum numero circumsteterunt, ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere juss erunt. Cum illi, orbe facto, sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter milia sex convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata, Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt, atque amplius horis quattuor fortissime pugnaverunt, et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex his occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abjectis armis terga verterunt, magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

38. Caesar postero die T. Labienum legatum, cum iis legionibus quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum, propter siccitates paludum, quo se recuperent non haberent (quo superiore anno perfugio fuerant usi), omnes fere in potestatem Labieni pervenerunt. At Q. Titurius et L. Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissmas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis, ex litteris Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a senatu decreta est.
BOOK V.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN. — After providing for his fleet, and quieting disturbances in Illyria, Cæsar returns to Gaul (1, 2). Troubles on the northern frontier; treachery, flight, and death of Dumnorix (2–7). Cæsar’s expedition lands in Britain, where the natives are driven back by the Roman cavalry (8, 9). The fleet is damaged by a storm, and hastily repaired (10, 11). Description of the island and its inhabitants (12–14). Attacks of the Britons under Cassivellaunus, who is driven beyond the Thames (15–19). Several tribes submit, and Cæsar returns to Gaul (20–23).

FRESH RISINGS OF THE GAULS. — As the Roman garrisons are widely scattered, the opportunity is seized for a sudden rising in the north, under Ambiorix (24–26). The camp of Sabinus is attacked, and imprudently forsaken; the force is attacked on the retreat, and both its commanders, Sabinus and Cotta, are slain (27–38). Ambiorix next, aided by the Nervii, attacks the camp of Quintus Cicero; he, however, holds his ground steadily, until relieved by Cæsar, who crushes the force of the Belgians (39–52). The Treveri, under Indutiomarus, attack the quarters of Labienus, but are at length repulsed, with the loss of their leader (53–58).

L. DOMITIO Ap. Claudio consulibus, discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuerat, legatis imperat quos legionibus praefecerat, uti quam plurimas possent hieme naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demonstrat. ² Ad celeritatem onerandi subdutionesque, paulo facit humiliores quam quibus in nostro mari uti consuevimus; atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commutationes aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat; ad onera, ad multitudinem jumentorum transportandum, paulo latiores quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. ³ Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam-ad rem multum humilitas adjuvat. Ea quae sunt usui ad armandas naves ex Hispania appor-
tari jubet. 4 Ipse, conventibus Galliae citerioris peractis, in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in locum convenire jubet. 5 Qua re nuntiata, Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de injuriis satisfacere. 6 Percepta oratione eorum, Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem adduci jubet: nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. 7 Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque constituant.

2. His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis, in citeriore Galliam revertitur, atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. 2 Eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis, singulari militiae studio, in summa omnium rerum inopia, circiter sexcentas ejus generis cujus supra demonstravimus naves et longas xxviii invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possent. 3 Collaudatis militibus atque iis qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire jubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam trajectum esse cognoverat circiter milium passuum triginta a continenti. 4 Huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum reliquit: ipse cum legionibus expeditis iv, et equitibus dccc, in fines Treverorum proficiscitur; quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant, neque imperio parebant, Germanosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

3. Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet, magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut supra demonstravimus, tangit. 2 In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et Cingetorix; ex quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legio- numque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit; se suoque
omnes in officio futuros, neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos, confirmavit; quaeque in Treveris gererentur ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere, iisque qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant in silvam Arduennam additis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed, posteaquam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate, et familia-ritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti, ad Caesarem venerunt, et de suis privativis rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent; veritus ne ab omnibus desereretur, Indutiomarus legatos ad Caesarem mittit: 'Sese idcirco ab suis dispersione atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam laberetur; itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunas ejus fidei permissurum.'

4. Caesar, etsi intellegebat qua de causa ea dicentur, quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne aetatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire jussit. His adduc-tis, iis filio propinquisque ejus omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomarum, hortatusque est uti in officio permaneret; nihilò tamen secius, principibus Treverorum ad se convocatis, hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit; quod cum merito ejus a se fieri intellegebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur ejus auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere, cujus tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id tullit factum graviter Indutiomarum, suam gratiam inter suos minui; et, qui jam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

5. His rebus constitutis, Caesar ad portum Itium cum
legionibus pervenit. 2 Ibi cognoscit sexaginta naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate rejectas currsum tenere non potuisse, atque eodem unde erant prosectae rever-tisse; reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. 3 Eodem equitatus totius Galliae convenit, numero milium quattuor, principesque omnibus ex civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obs-dum loco secum ducere decreverat, quod, cum ipse ab-sset, motum Galliae venebatur.

6. Erat una cum ceteris Dumnorix Haeduus, de quo ante ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in pri-mis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, cognoverat. 2 Accedebat huc, quod in 15 concilio Haeduorum Dumnorix dixerat, sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri: quod dictum Haedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant. 8 Id factum ex suis hos-pitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo precibus 20 petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur: partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religioni-bus impediri sese diceret. 4 Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi adempta, principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare singulos, hortarique coepit, 25 uti in continenti remanerent; metu territare, non sine causa fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur; 6 id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae inter-ficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret; fidem reliquis interponere, jusjurandum pos-cere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, com-muni consilio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

7. Qua re cognita, Caesar, quod tantum civitati Haeduae dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum atque deterrendum 35 quibuscumque rebus posset Dumnorigem statuebat.
quod longius ejus amentiam progresi videbat, prospiciendum ne quid sibi ac reipublicae nocere posset. 2 Itaque, dies circiter xxv in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediebat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret; nihil tamen secius omnia ejus consilia cognosceret. 3 Tandem, idoneam nactus tempestatem, miles equitesque conscendere in naves jubet. At, omnium impeditis animis, Dumnorix cum equitibus Haedorum a castris, insciente Caesare, domum discedere coepit. 4 Qua re nuntiata, Caesar, intermissa profectione, atque omnibus rebus postpositis, magnam partem equitatus ad eum sequendum mittit, retrahique imperat; si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici jubet; nihil hunc se absente pro sando facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. 6 Ille enim, revocatus, resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans, liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis. 6 Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt: at equites Haedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

8. His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum milibus duobus relictis, ut portus tuetur et rem frumentarium provideret, quaeque in Gallia gerentur cognosceret, consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, 2 ipse cum quinque legionibus, et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit; et leni Africo provectus, media circiter nocte vento intermisso, cursum non te- 30 nuit; et, longius delatus aestu, orta luce, sub sinistra Britanniam relictam conspexit. 3 Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus, remis contendit ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. 4 Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis, non intermisso remigandi labore, longarum navium, cursum
adaequarunt. 5 Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore: neque in eo loco hostis est visus, sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

9. Caesar, exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis, et equitibus ccc, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit, — eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, — et praesidio navibus Q. Atrium praefecit. 15 Ipse, noctu progressus milia passuum circiter xii, hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi, equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi, ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. 3 Repulsi ab equitatu, se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nantci egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli (ut videbantur) causa jam ante praeparaverant; nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praecusi. 4 Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant, nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis septimae, testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adjecto, locum cepserunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt, paucis vulneribus acceptis. 5 Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod, magna parte diei consumpta, munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat. 50

10. Postridie ejus diei, mane, tripartito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos qui fugerant perseverentur. 2 His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum jam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Q. Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent superiore nocte, 35 maxima coörta tempestate, propc omnes naves afflictas.
atque in litore ejectas esse; quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernatoresque vim tempestatis pati possent. 3 Itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

11. His rebus cognitis, Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque in itinere desistere jubebat; ipsa ad naves revertitur: eadem fere, quae ex huentibus litterisque cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut, amissis circiter XL navibus, reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. 2 Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit, et ex continenti alios accessi jubebat; Labienus scribit ut quam plurimas possent, iis legionibus quae sunt apud eum, naves instituant. 5 Ipse, etsi res erat multae opera ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnes naves subducit et cum castris una munitione conjungi.

In his rebus circiter dies decem consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie munitis, easdem copias quas ante praesidio navibus reliquit; ipse eodem unde redierat proficiscitur. 6 Eo cum venisset, majores jam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convercert; summa imperii bellique administrandi, communi consilio, permissa Cassivellauno, cujus fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter milia passuum LXXX. 6 Hunic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella interesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insula ipsi memoria proditum dicunt; maritima pars ab iis qui, praedae ac belli inferendi causa, ex Belgis transierunt (qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellabantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt) et bello illato ibi remanserunt, atque agros colere cœpe- runt. 2 Hominum est infinita multitudo, creberrimaque aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia; pecorum magnus nu-
merus. 8 Utuntur aut aere [aut nummo aereo] aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed ejus exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. 4 Materia cujusque generis ut in Gallia est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatoria quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

13. Insula natura triqueta, cujus unum latus est contra Galliam. Hujus lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia navés appelluntur, ad orientem solem; inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter milia passuum quingenta. 2 Alterum vergit ad Hispanicam atque occidentem solem; qua ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor (ut aestimatur) quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. 3 In hoc medio cursu est insula quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores subjectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripsérunt, dies continuos xxx sub bruma esse noctem. 4 Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Hujus est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, dccc milium. 5 Tertium est contra septentriones, cui parti nulla est objecta terra; sed ejus angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc milia passuum dccc in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum milium passuum.

14. Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi qui Cantium incolunt (quae regio est maritima omnis), neque multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. 2 Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt, pellibusque sunt vestiti. 3 Omnes vero se Britannii vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem.
atque hoc horridiores sunt in pugna aspectu; capilloque sunt promisso, atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius. 4 Uxores habent deni duode-

nique inter se communes, et maxime fratres cum fratri

5 bus, parentesque cum liberis; sed qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque de-
ducta est.

15. Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conlixerunt, [ita] tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint; sed, compluribus inter-

fectis, cupidius insecedi, nonnullus ex suis amiserunt.

2 At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum, subito se ex silvis 15 ejecerunt, impetuque in eos facto qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt; 8 duabusque

missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare, atque his primis legionum duarum, cum hae, perexiguo intermisso [loci] spatio inter se, constitissent, novo genere pugnae per-

territis nostris, per medios audacissime perruperunt, seque inde incolumes receperunt. 4 Eo die Q. Laberius Durus tribunus militum interficitur. Illi, pluribus sub-

missis cohortibus, repelluntur.

16. Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis 25 omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est nostros, propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque inse-

qui cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad hujus generis hostem; 2 equites autem magno cum periculo dimicare, propterea quod

30 illi etiam consulto plerumque cederent, et cum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. 8 Equestris au-
tem proelii ratio et cedentibus et inequentibus par

atque idem periculum inferebat. 4 Accedebat huc, ut 35 nunquam conferti sed rari magnisque intervallis proe-

liarentur, stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios
alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentes defati-
gatis succederent.

17. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus
constiterunt, rarique se ostendere, et lenius quam pridie
nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. 2 Sed meri-
die, cum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones atque
omnem equitatum cum C. Trebonio legato misisset,
repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolave-
runt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent.

3 Nostri, acriter in eos impetu facto, repulerunt, neque
finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confusi equites,
cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes ege-
runt; magnoque eorum numero interfecit, neque sui
colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi
facultatem dederunt. 4 Ex hac fuga protinus quae un-
dique convenerant auxilia discesserunt; neque post id
tempus umquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes con-
tenderunt.

18. Caesar, cognito consilio eorum, ad flumen Tamesi-
in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen
uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri
potest. 2 Eo cum venisset, animum advertit ad alteram
fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas;
ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, ejus-
demque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tege-
bantur. 3 His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque,
Caesar, praemisso equitatu, confestim legiones sub-
sequi jussit. 4 Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu mili-
tes ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua exstarent, ut hostes
impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non pos-
sent, ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni
deposita spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis,
milibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera
nostra servabat; paululumque ex via excedebat, locisque
impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat, atque iis re-
gionibus quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat; 2 et cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causa se in agros ejecerat, omnibus viis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat; et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat, atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. 3 Relinquebatur ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus nocere-tur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites effi-cere poterant.

20. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum re-gionum civitas, ex qua Mandubracius adulescens, Caes-aris fidem secutus, ad eum in continentem Galliam 15 venerat,—cujus pater [Imanuentius] in ea civitate reg-num obtinuerat, interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno; ipse fuga mortem vitaverat,—legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, pollicenturque sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos: 2 petunt ut Mandubracium ab injuria Cassivellauni defen-dat, atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. 3 His Caesar imperat obsides XL frumentum-que exercitui, Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum fru-mentumque miserunt.

25 21. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum injuria prohibitis, Icani, Cangi, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi, legationibus missis, sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassi-vellauni abesse, silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis 30 magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. 2 Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitan-dae causa convenire consuerunt. 3 Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus; locum reperit egregie natura atque 35 opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus opp-pugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum
nostrorum impetum non tulerunt, seseque alia ex parce oppidi ejecerunt. 4 Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus; multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

22. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad 5 Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagus, Segovax, nuntios mittit, atque his imperat uti, coactis omnibus copiis, castra navalia de improviso adoriantur atque oppugnent. 6 Ii cum ad cas tra venissent, nostri, eruptione facta, multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolu mes reduxerunt. 8 Cassivellaunus, hoc proelio nuntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem 15 Commium de deditione ad Caesarem mittit. 4 Caesar cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentina Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellegaret, obsides imperat; et quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano 20 Britannia penderet constituit. 5 Interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubracio neu Trinobantibus bellum faciat.

23. Obsidibus acceptis, exercitum reduct ad mare, naves invent refectas. His deductis, quod et captivo- 25 rum magnum numerum habebat, et nonnullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. 2 Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero, tot navigationibus, neque hoc neque superiore anno illa omnino navis quae milites portaret desideraret; 30 at ex iis quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, et prioris commeatibus expositis militibus, et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero LX, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae fere omnes reicerentur. 4 Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra ex- 35 spectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur,
quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit, ac, summa tranquillitate consecuta, secunda inita cum solvisset vigilia, prima luce terram attigit, omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.


Ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat, nec civitas eorum
impulsu deficeret, L. Plancum cum legione ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci jubet ibique hiemare; quorumque opera cognoverit Tasgetium interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittere. 4 Interim ab omnibus legatis quaestoreque, quibus legiones tradiderat, certior 5 factus est in hiberna perventum, locumque hibernis esse munitum.

26. Diebus circiter quindecim, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentina tumultus ac defensionis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolco; qui, cum ad fines regni 10 sui Sabino Cottaque praesto fuissent, frumentumque in hiberna conportassent, Indutiomari Treveri nuntiis impulsi, suos concitaverunt, subitoque oppressis lignatoribus, magna manu castra oppugnatum venerunt. 2 Cum celeriter nostri arma cepissent vallumque ascendentissent, 15 atque, una ex parte Hispanis equitibus emissis, equestri proelio superiores fuissent, desperata re hostes suos ab oppugnatione reduxerunt. 3 Tum suo more conclamaverunt, uti aliqui ex nostris ad conloquium prodiret; habere sese quae de re communi dicere vellent, quibus 20 rebus controversias minui posse sperarent.

27. Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causa C. Arpineius, eques Romanus, familiaris Q. Titurii, et Q. Junius ex Hispania quidam, qui jam ante missu Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitare consueverat; 2 apud quos Ambiorix 25 ad hunc modum locutus est: ‘Sese pro Caesaris in se beneficiis plurimum ei confiteri debere, quod ejus opera stipendio liberatus esset quod Aduatucis, finitimis suis, pendere consuisset, quodque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Caesare remissi essent quos Aduatuci, obsidum numero missos, apud se in servitute et catenis tenuissent; 3 neque id quod fecerit de oppugnatione castrorum, aut judicio aut voluntate sua fecisse, sed coactu civitatis; suaque esse ejusmodi imperia, ut non minus haberet juris in se multitudo quam ipse in multitudinem. 4 Civitati porro hanc fuisset belli causam, quod repentinae
Gallorum conjurationi resistere non potuerit; id se facile ex humilitate sua probare posse, quod non adeo sit imperitus rerum ut sui copiis populum Romanum se superare posse confidat. 6 Sed esse Galliae commune consilium; omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio alterae legioni subsidio venire posset; non facile Gallos Gallis negare potuisse, praesertim cum de recuperanda communi libertate consilium initiun videretur. 6 Quibus quoniam pro pietate satisfecerit, habere nunc se rationem officii pro beneficiis Caesaris; monere, orare Titurium pro hospitio, ut suae ac militum saluti consulat. Magnam manum Germanorum conductam Rhenum transisse; hanc adfore biduo. 7 Ipsorum esse consilium, velintne prius quam finitimi sentiant, eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Ciceronem aut ad Labienum deducere, quorum alter milia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter paulo amplius ab iis absit. 8 Illud se polliceri et jurejurando confirmare, tutum iter per fines suos daturum; quod cum faciat, et civitati sese consulere quod hibernis levetur, et Caesari pro ejus meritis gratiam referre.' Hac oratione habita, discedit Ambiorix.

28. Arpinctius et Junius quae audierunt ad legatos deferunt. Illi repentina re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, tamen non neglegenda existimabant; maximeque hac re permovebantur, quod civitatem ignobilem atque humilem Eburonum sua sponte populo Romano bellum facere ausam vix erat credendum. 2 Itaque ad consilium rem deferunt; magnaque inter eos existit controversia. L. Aurunculeius compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil temere agendum, neque ex hibernis injussu Caesaris discernendum existimabant; 8 quantasvis magnas etiam copias Germanorum sustineri posse munitis hibernis docebant; rem esse testimonio, quod primum hostium impetum, multis ultro vulneribus illatis, fortissime sustinuerint. 4 re fru-
mentaria non premi; interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare conventura subsidia; postremo, quid esse levius aut turpius, quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?"

29. Contra ea Titurius 'sero facturos' clamitabat, 'cum majores manus hostium, adjunctis Germanis, convenisset; aut cum aliud calamitatis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum. Brevem consulendi esse occasionem: Caesarem arbitrari prefctum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos, neque Eburones, si ille adesset, tanta contemptione nostrī ad castra venturos esse. Non hostem auctorem sed rem spectare; subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germanis dolori Ariovisti mortem et superiores nostras victorias; ardere Gallam, tot contumeliis acceptis, sub populi Romani imperium redactam, superiore gloria rei militaris extincta. Postremo, quis hoc sibi persuaderet, sine certa re Ambiorigem ad ejusmodi consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nihil esset durius, nullo cum periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros; si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiret, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem. Cottae quidem, atque eorum qui dissentirent, consilium quem habere exitum? in quo si non praesens periculum, at certe longinquam obsidione fames esset timenda.'

30. Hac in utramque partem disputatione habita, cum a Cotta primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur; "Vincite," inquit, "si ita vultis," Sabinus, et id clariore voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret: "neque is sum," inquit, "qui gravissime ex vobis mortis periculo terrear: hi sapient; si gravius quid acciderit, abs te rationem reposcent; qui, si per te liceat, perendino die cum proximis hibernis conjuncti, communem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, non rejecti et relegati longe ab ceteris aut ferro aut fame intereant."
31. Consurgitum ex consilio; comprehendunt utrumque, et orant, ‘Ne sua dissensione et pertinacia rem in summum periculum deducant; facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, si modo unum omnes sentiant ac probent; contra in dissensione nulam se salutem perspicere.’ 2 Res disputacione ad medium noctem perducitur. Tandem dat Cotta permutus manus; superat sententia Sabini. Pronuntiatur prima luce ituros. 3 Consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid secum portare posset, quid ex instrumento hibernorum relinquere cogeretur. Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine periculo maneatur, et languore militum et vigiliis periculum augeatur. 4 Prima luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur ut quibus esset persuasum, non ab hoste sed ab homine amicissimo Ambiorige consilium datum, longissimo agmine maximisque impedimentis.

32. At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu vigiliisque de profectione eorum senserunt, collocatis insidiis bipartito in silvis opportuno atque occulto loco, a militibus passuum circiter duobus, Romanorum adventum exspectabant; 2 et cum se major pars agminis in magnum convallem demisisset, ex utraque parte ejus vallis subito se ostenderunt, novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu, atque iniquissimo nostris loco proelium committere coeperunt.

33. Tum demum Titurius, qui nihil ante providisset, trepidare et concursare cohortesque disponere; haec tamen ipsa timide atque ut eum omnia deficerere viderentur; quod plerumque iis accidere consuevit, qui in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. 2 At Cotta, qui cogitasset haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectionis auctor non fuisset, nulla in re communi salutis deberat, et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperatoris, et in pugna militis officia prae stabat. 8 Cum propter longitudinem agminis minus fa-
cile omnia per se obire et quid quoque loco faciendum esset providere possent, jussurunt pronuntiare ut impedimenta reliquerent atque in orbem consisterent. 4 Quod consilium, et si in ejusmodi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen incommode accidit: nam et nostris militibus spem minuit, et hostes ad pugnam alacriores fecit, quod non sine summo timore et desperatione id factum videbatur. 5 Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgo milites ab signis discederent, quae quisque eorum carissima haberet ab impedimentis petere atque abripere properaret; clamore et fletu omnia compleverunt.

34. At barbaris consilium non defuit. Nam duces eorum tota acie pronuntiare jussurunt, ne quis ab loco discederet; illorum esse praedam, atque illis reservari quaecumque Romani reliquissent; proinde omnia in victoria posita existimarent. 2 Erant et virtute et numero pugnando pares nostri; tametsi ab duce et a fortuna deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant; et quotiens quaeque cohors procurrerat, ab ea parte magnus numerus hostium cedebat. 3 Qua re animadversa, Ambiorix pronuntiari jubet, ut procul tela coniciant neu propius accedant, et quam in partem Romani impetum fecerint cedant; levitate armorum et cotidiana exercitatione nihil iis noceri posse: rursus se ad signa recipientes inequantur.

35. Quo praeepto ab iis diligentissime observato, cum quaeipiam cohors ex orbe exsesserat atque impetum fecerat, hostes velocissime refugiebant. Interim eam partem nudari necesse erat, et ab latere aperto tela recipi. 2 Rursus, cum in eum locum unde erant egressi reverti coeperant, et ab iis qui cesserant et ab iis qui proximi steterant circumveniebantur; sin autem locum tenere vellent, nec virtuti locus relinquebatur neque ab tanta multitudine conjecta tela conferti vitare poterant. 35 Tamen tot incommodis conflictati, multis vulneribus
acceptis, resistebant; et, magna parte diei consumpta, cum a prima luce ad horam octavam pugnaretur, nihil quod ipsis esset indignum committebant. 4 Tum T. Balventio, qui superiore anno primum pilum duxerat, 5 viro forti et magnae auctoritatis, utrumque femur tragula traicitur; Q. Lucanius, ejusdem ordinis, fortissime pugnans, dum circumvento filio subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta legatus, omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans, in adversum os funda vulneratur.

10 36. His rebus permutans Q. Titurius, cum procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpretetum suum Cn. Pompeium ad eum mittit, rogatum ut sibi militibusque parcat. 2 Ille appellatus respondit: 'Si velit secum colloqui, licere; sperare a multitudine im- 15 petrari posse, quod ad militum salutem pertineat; ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem se suam fidem interponere.' 3 Ille cum Cotta saucio communicat, si videatur, pugna ut excedant et cum Ambiorige una colloquantur: sperare, ab eo de sua ac militum salutem impetrare posse. Cotta se ad armatum hostem iturum negat, atque in eo perseverat.

37. Sabinus, quos in praesentia tribunos militum circum se habebat, et primorum ordinum centuriones, se sequi jubes; et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, 25 jussus arma abicere, imperatum facit, suisque ut idem faciant imperat. 2 Interim, dum de condicionibus inter se agunt, longiorque consulto ab Ambiorige instituitur sermo, paulatim circumventus interficitur. 3 Tum vero suo more victorian clamant, atque ululatum tollunt; 30 impetuque in nostros facto ordines perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maxima parte militum. 4 Reliqui se in castra recipiunt unde erant egressi: ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magna multitudo hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum proiect, ipse 35 pro castris fortissime pugnans occiditur. 5 Illi aegre ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent: noctu ad unum
omnes, desperata salute, se ipsi interficiunt. Pauci, ex proelio lapsi, incertis itineribus per silvas ad T. Labienum legatum in hiberna perveniunt, atque eum de rebus gestis certiorem faciunt.

38. Hac victoria sublatus Ambiorix statim cum equitatu in Aduatucos, qui erant ejus regno finitimis, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditatumque subsequi jubet. Re demonstrata, Aduatucisque concitatis, postero die in Nervios pervenit, hortaturque ne sui in perpetuum liberandi, atque ulciscendi Romanos pro iis quas acceperint injuriis, occasionem dimittant; interfectos esse legatos duo, magnamque partem exercitus interisse demonstrat; nihil esse negotii subito oppressam legionem quae cum Cicerone hiemet interfici; se ad eam rem profitetur adjutorem. Facile hac oratione Nervii persuadet.

39. Itaque confestim dimissis nuntiis ad Ceutrones, Grudios, Levacos, Pleumoxios, Geidunos, qui omnes sub eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas manus possunt cogunt, et de improviso ad Ciceronis hiberna advolant, nondum ad eum fama de Titurii morte perlata. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milites, qui lignationis munitionisque causa in silvas discessissent, repentino equitum adventu interciperentur. His circumventis, magna manu Eburones, Nervii, Aduatuci, atque horum omnium socii et clientes legionem oppugnare incipiunt. Nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. Aegre is dies sustentatur, quod omnem spem hostes in celeritate ponebant, atque, hanc adepti victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victores considebant.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim ab Cicerone litterae, magnis propositis praemiis si pertulissent: obsessis omnibus viis, missi intercipiuntur. Noctu ex ea materia quam munitionis causa comportaverant, turres admodum cxx excitantur incredibili celeritate; quae
deesse operi videbantur perficiuntur. 3 Hostes postero
die, multo majoribus coactis copiis, castra oppugnant,
fossam complent. Eadem ratione qua pridie ab nostris
resistitur: hoc idem deinceps reliquis fit diebus. 4 Nulla
pars nocturni temporis ad laborem intermititur: non
aegris, non vulneratis, facultas quietis datur. 6 Quae-
cumque ad proximi diei oppugnationem opus sunt, noctu
comparantur: multae praestae sudes, magnus muralium
pilorum numerus instituitur; turres contabulantur;
10 pinnae loricaeque ex cratibus attexuntur. 4 Ipse Cicero,
cum tenuissima valetudine esset, ne nocturnum quidem
sibi tempus ad quietem relinquebat, ut ultero militum
concursu ac vocibus sibi parcerem cogeretur.

41. Tunc duces principesque Nerviorum, qui aliquem
15 sermonis aditus causamque amicitiae cum Cicerone
habebant, colloqui sese velle dicunt. 2 Facta potestate,
eadem quae Ambiorix cum Titurio egerat commemo-
rant: omnem esse in armis Galliam, Germanos Rhenum
transisse, Caesaris reliquorumque hiberna oppugnari.

3 Addunt etiam de Sabini morte; Ambiorigem osten-
tant fidei faciendoe causa. Errare eos dicunt, si quic-
quam ab his praesidii sperent qui suis rebus diffident;
sese tamen hoc esse in Ciceronem populumque Ro-


manum animo, ut nihil nisi hiberna recusent, atque hanc


25 inveterascere consuetudinem nolint; licere illis inco-
lumbibus per se ex hibernis discedere, et quascumque in
partes velint sine metu profiscisci. 4 Cicero ad haec
unum modo respondit: 'Non esse consuetudinem populi
Romani, accipere ab hoste armato condicionem; si ab

30 armis discedere velint, se adjutore utantur legatosque
ad Caesarem mittant; sperare, pro ejus justitia, quae
petierunt impetratus.'

42. Ab hac spe repulsi Nervii vallo pedum novem et
fossa pedum quindicim hiberna cingunt. 2 Haec et
35 superiorum annorum consuetudine ab nobis cognove-
rant, et quasdam de exercitu habebant captivos, ab his
docebantur: sed nulla ferramentorum copia quae esset ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis cespitem circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire nitebantur. 3 Qua quidem ex re hominum multitudo cognosci potuit: nam minus horis tribus milium passuum xv in circuitu munitionem perfecerunt; reliquisque diebus turres ad altitudinem valli, falces testudinesque, quas iidem captivi docuerant, parare ac facere coeperunt.

43. Septimo oppugnationis die, maximo coorso vento, ferventes fusili ex argilla glandes fundis et servefacta jacula in casas, quae more Gallico stramentis erant tectae, jacere coeperunt. 2 Hae celeriter ignem comprehendere, et venti magnitudine in omnem locum castrorum distulerunt. Hostes maximo clamore, sic uti parte jam atque explorata victoria, turres testudinesque agere et scalis vallum ascendere coeperunt. 3 At tanta militum virtus atque ea praesentia animi fuit ut, cum undique flamma torreren tur, maximaque telorum multitudine premerentur, suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrare intellegerent, non modo demigrandi causa de vallo decederet nemo, sed paene ne respiceret quidem quisquam; ac tum omnes acerrime fortissimeque pugnarent. 4 Hic dies nostris longe gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus numerus hostium vulneraretur atque interficeretur, ut se sub ipso vallo constipaverant recessumque primis ultimi non dabant. 5 Paulum quidem intermissa flamma, et quodam loco turri adacta et contingente vallum, tertiae cohortis centuriones ex eo quo stabant loco recesserunt, suoque omnes removerunt; nutu vocibusque hostes si introire vellent vocare coeperunt, quorum progrediv ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus conjectis deturbati, turrisque succisa est.

44. Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri centuriones, 35 qui primis ordinibus appropinquarent, T. Pulio et L.
Vorenus. Hi perpetuas inter se controversias habebant quinam anteferretur, omnibusque annis de locis summis simulatibus contendebant. 2 Ex his Pulio, cum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, "Quid dubitas," inquit, 5 "Vorene? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtutis exspectas? hic dies de nostris controversiis judicabit."

3 Haec cum dixisset, procedit extra munitiones, quaque pars hostium confertissima est visa, irruptit. Ne Vorenus quidem tum sese vallo continet, sed omnium veritus existimationem subsequitur. 4 Mediocris spatium relictum, Pulio pilum in hostes immittit, atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem traicit; quo percuesso et examinato, hunc scutis protegit, in hostem tela universi coniciunt, neque dant regrediendi facultatem. 5 Transfigitur scutum Pulioni, et verum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic casum vagina, et gladium educere conanti dextram moratur manum, impeditumque hostes circumcisunt. 6 Succurrit inimicus illi Vorenus et laboranti subvenit. Ad hunc se confestim a Pulione omnis multitudo convertit; illum veruto arbitrantur occisum. 7 Gladio comminus rem gerit Vorenus, atque uno interfecto reliquos paulum propellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum dejectus inferiorem condidit. 8 Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulio, atque ambo 25 incolumes, compluribus interfectis, summa cum laude sese intra munitiones recipiunt. 9 Sic fortuna in contentione et certamine utrumque versavit, ut alter alteri inimicus auxilio salutique esset, neque diiudicari posset uter utri virtute anteferendus videretur.

45. Quanto erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnatio, et maxime quod, magna parte militum confecta vulneribus, res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto crebriores litterae nuntiique ad Caesarlem mittebantur; quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostro-rum militum cum cruciato necabatur. 2 Erat unus intus Nervius, nomine Vertico, loco natus honesto, qui a
prima obsidione ad Ciceronem perfugerat, suamque ei fidem praestiterat. 8 Hic servo spe libertatis magnis-que persuadet præmiis, ut litteras ad Caesarem deferat. Has ille in jaculo illigatas effert; et Gallus inter Gallos sine ulla suspicione versatus ad Caesarem pervenit. 5 Ab eo de periculis Ciceronis legionisque cognoscitur.

46. Caesar, acceptis litteris hora circiter xi diei, statim nuntium in Bellovacos ad M. Crassum quaestorem mittit, cujus hiberna aberant ab eo milia passuum xxv; 4 jubet media nocte legionem proficisci, celeriterque ad se venire. 2 Exit cum nuntio Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium legatum mittit, ut in Atrebatium fines legionem adducat, qua sibi iter faciendum sciebat. 8 Scribit Labieno si reipublicae commodo facere posset, cum legione ad fines Nerviorum veniat: reliquam partem exercitus, 15 quod paulo aberat longius, non putat exspectandam: equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis colligit.

47. Hora circiter tertia ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die milia passuum viginti pro- cedit. 2 Crassum Samaroibrivae praeficit legionemque attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civi-tatum, litteras publicas, frumentumque omne quod eo tolerandae hiemis causa de dexerat, reliquiam. 8 Fabius, ut imperatum erat, non ita multum moratus, in 25 itinere cum legione occurrit. 4 Labienus, interitu Sa-bini et caede cohortium cognita, cum omnes ad eum Treverorum copiae venissent, veritus, si ex hibernis fugae similem professionem fecisset, ut hostium impe-tum sustinere posset, praesertim quos recenti victoria 30 efferri sciret, 6 litteras Caesari remittit, quanto cum periculo legionem ex hibernis educturus esset; rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit; docet omnes equi-tatus peditatusque copias Treverorum tria milia passuum longe ab suis castris consedisse.

48. Caesar, consilio ejus probato, etsi opinione trium
legionum dejectus ad duas redierat, tamen unum com-
munis salutis auxilium in celeritate ponebat. 2 Venit
magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis
cognoscit quae apud Ciceronem gerantur, quantoque in
5 periculo res sit. 3 Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis
magnis praemii persuadet uti ad Ciceronem epistolam
deferat. 4 Hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit, ne
intercepta epistola nostra ab hostibus consilia cognos-
cantur. 5 Si adire non possit, monet ut tragulam cum
10 epistola ad amentum deligata intra munitionem castro-
rum abiciat. In litteris scribit se cum legionibus pro-
fectum celeriter adiuvare; hortatur ut pristinam virtutem
retenat. 6 Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum,
tragulam mittit. Haec casu ad turrim adhaesit, neque
15 ab nostris biduo animadversa, tertio die a quodam milite
conspicitur; dempta ad Ciceronem desertur. 7 Ille per-
lectam in conventu militum recitat, maximaque omnes
laetitia afficit. Tum fumi incendiorum procul videban-
tur, quae res omnem dubitationem adventus legionum
20 expulit.

49. Galli, re cognita per exploratores, obsidionem re-
linquunt; ad Caesarem omnibus copiis contendunt:
haec erant armata circiter milia sexaginta. 2 Cicero,
data facultate, Gallum ab eodem Verticone quem supra
25 demonstravimus repetit, qui litteras ad Caesarem refe-
rat; hunc admonet iter caute diligenterque faciat; per-
scribit in litteris hostes ab se discessisse, omnemque ad
eum multitudinem convertisse. 8 Quibus litteris circi-
ter media nocte Caesar allatis, suos facit certiores, eos-
30 que ad dimicandum animo confirmat. 4 Postero die luce
prima movet castra, et circiter milia passuum quattuor
progressus, trans vallem et rivum multitudinem hostium
conspicatur. 5 Erat magni periculi res tantulis copiis
iniquo loco dimicare: tum, quoniam obsidione libera-
35 tum Ciceronem sciebat, aequo animo remittendum de
celeritate existimabat. 6 Consedit, et quam aequissimo
loco potest castra communit. Atque haec, etsi erant exigua per se, vix hominum milium septem, praesertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viarum quam maxime potest contrahit, eo consilio ut in summam contemptionem hostibus veniat. \textsuperscript{7} Interim, speculatoribus in omnes partes dimissis, explorat quo commodo dissimine itinere valles transiri possibilit.

50. Eo die, parvulis equestribus proeliiis ad aquam factis, utrique sese suo loco continent: Galli, quod ampliores copias quae nondum convenerant exspectabant; Caesar, si forte timoris simulatione hostes in suum locum elicere posset, ut citra vallem pro castris proelio contenderet; si id efficere non posset, ut, exploratis itineribus, minore cum periculo vallem rivumque transiret. \textsuperscript{2} Prima luce hostium equitatus ad castra accedit, proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar consulto equites cedere seque in castra recipere jubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo muniri, portasque obstrui, atque in his administrandis rebus quam maxime concursari et cum simulatione agi timoribus jubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati, copias traducunt, aciemque iniquo loco constituunt; nostris vero etiam de vallo deductis proprius accedunt, et tela intra munitionem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt, praeconibusque circummissis pronuntiari jubent, seu quis Gallus seu Romanus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire, sine periculo licere; post id tempus non fore potestatem. \textsuperscript{2} Ac sic nostros contempserunt, ut, obstructis in speciem portis singulis ordinibus cespitum, quod ea non posse inrorumpere videbantur, alii vallum manu scindere, alii fossas complere inciperent. \textsuperscript{3} Tum Caesar, omnibus portis eruptione facta equitatue emisse, celeriter hostes in fugam dat, sic uti omnino pugnandi causa resisteret nemo; magnumque ex iis numerum occidit, atque omnes armis exuit.
52. Longius prosequi veritus, quod silvae paludesque intercedebant, neque etiam parvulo detrimento illorum locum reliquio videbat, omnibus suis incolumibus copiis, eodem die ad Ciceronem pervenit. 2 Institutas turres, 5 testudines, munitionesque hostium admiratur: legione producta, cognoscit non decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere. 8 Ex his omnibus judicat rebus, quanto cum periculo et quanta cum virtute res sint administratae: Ciceronem pro ejus merito legionemque 10 collaudat; centuriones singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Ciceronis cognoverat. 4 De casu Sabini et Cottaee certius ex captivis cognoscit. Postero die contione habita, rem gestam proponit, milites consolatur et confirmat:

15 quod detrimentum culpa et temeritate legati sit acceptum, hoc aequiore animo ferendum docet, quod, beneficio deorum immortalium et virtute eorum expiato commodo, neque hostibus diutina laetatio neque ipsis longior dolor relinquatur.

53. Interim ad Labienum per Remos incredibili celeritate de victoria Caesaris fama perfertur; ut cum ab hibernis Ciceronis milia passuum abesset circiter sexaginta, eoque post horam nonam diei Caesar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrorum clamor oreretur, quo clamore significatio victoriae gratulatioque ab Remis Labieno fieret. 2 Hac fama ad Treveros perlata, Indutiomarus, qui postero die castra Labieni oppugnare decreverat, noctu profugit copiasque omnes in Treveros reducit. 3 Caesar Fabium cum sua legione remittit in hiberna, ipsae cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobriam trinis hibernis hiemare constituit; et, quod tanti motus Galliae exstiterant, totam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manere decrevit. 4 Nam, illo commodo de Sabini morte perlato, omnes fere Galliae civitates de bello consultabant; nuntios legationesque in omnes partes dimittebant; et quid reliqui consilii caperent atque unde
initium belli fieret explorabant, nocturnaque in locis desertis concilia habebant. 5 Neque ulla fere totius hiemis tempus sine sollicitudine Caesaris intercessit, quin aliquem de consiliis ac motu Gallorum nuntium acciperet. 6 In his ab L. Roscio [quaestore], quem legiones tertiaedecimae praefecerat, certior factus est, magnas Gallorum copias earum civitatum quae Armoricae appellantur oppugnandi sui causa convenisse, neque longius milia passuum octo ab hibernis suis abfuisse, sed, nuntio allato de victoria Caesaris, discississe adeo ut fugae similis discussus videretur.

54. At Caesar, principibus cujusque civitatis ad se evocatis, alias territando cum se scire quae fieren denuntiaret, alias cohortando, magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit. 2 Tamen Senones, quae est civitas imprimis firma et magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eos regem constituerat (cujus frater Moritasagus adventu in Galliam Caesaris, cujusque maiores regnum obtinuerant), interficere publico consilio conati, cum ille praesensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insecuti regno domoque expulerunt; 3 et, missis ad Caesarem satisfaciendi causa legatis, cum is omnem ad se senatum venire jussisset, dicto audientes non fuerunt. 4 Tantum apud homines barbaros valuit esse aliquos repertos principes inferendi belli, tantamque omnibus volutum commotionem attulit, ut—praeter Haeduos et Remos, quos praecipuo semper honore Caesar habuit, alteros pro vetere ac perpetua erga populum Romanum sile, alteros pro recentibus Gallici belli officiis—nulla fere civitas fuerit non suspecta nobis. 5 Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit, cum compluribus alius de causis, tum maxime quod ei qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus praeferebantur, tantum se ejus opinionis desperidisse ut a populo Romano imperia perferrent, gravissime dolebant.

55. Treveri vero atque Indutiomarus totius hiemis
nullum tempus intermiserunt, quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent, civitates sollicitarent, pecunias pollicerentur, magna parte exercitus nostri interfecta, multo minorem superesse dicerent partem. 2 Neque tamen ulli civitati Germanorum persuaderi potuit ut Rhenum transiret, cum se bis expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello, et Tenceterorum transitu: non esse amplius fortunam temp taturas. 8 Hac spe lapsus Indutiomarus, nihilo minus copias cogere, exercere, a finitimis equos parare, exsules damnatosque tota Gallia magnis praemiis ad se allicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi jam his rebus in Gallia auctoritatem comparaverat, ut undique ad eum legationes concurrerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice privatimque peterent.

56. Ubi intellexit ultero ad se veniri, altera ex parte Senones Carnutesque conscientia facinoris instigari, altera Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romanis parare, neque sibi voluntarium copias defore si ex finibus suis progresdi coepisset, armatum concilium indicet. 2 Hoc more Gallorum est initium belli, quo lege communi omnes puberes armati convenire consuerunt; qui ex iis novissimus venit, in conspectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. 8 In eo concilio Cingetorigem, alterius principem factionis, generum suum, quem supra demonstravimus Caesaris secutum fidem ab eo non discississe, hostem judicat bonaque ejus publicat. 4 His rebus confectis, in concilio pronuntiat, arcessitum se a Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque compluribus Galliae civitatibus; huc iturum per fines Remorum, eorumque agros populaturum; ac prius quam id faciat, castra Labieni oppugnaturum: quae fieri velit praecipit.

57. Labienus, cum et loci natura et manu munitissimis castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat; ne quam occasionem rei bene gerendae dimitteret cogitabat. 2 Itaque, a Cingetorige atque ejus propinquis oratione Indutiomari cognita, quam in concilio
habuerat, nuntios mittit ad finitimas civitates, equitesque undique evocat: his certum diem conveniendi dicit.

3 Interim prope cotidie cum omni equitatu Indutiomarus sub castris ejus vagabatur, alias ut situm castrorum cognosceret, alias colloquendi aut territandi causa: equites plerumque omnes tela intra vallum coniciabant.

4 Labienus suis intra munitionem continebat, timorisque opinionem quibuscumque poterat rebus augebat.

58. Cum majore in dies contemptione Indutiomarus ad castra accederet, nocte una, intromissis equibus omnium finitimarum civitatum, quos arcessendos curaverat, tanta diligentia omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit, ut nulla ratione ea res enuntiari aut ad Treveros perferri posset. 2 Interim ex consuetudine cotidiana Indutiomarus ad castra accedit, atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit; equites tela coniciunt, et magna cum contumelia verborum nostros ad pugnam evocant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est sub vespereum dispersi ac dissipati discedunt. 3 Subito Labienus duabus portis omnem equitatum emittit; praepicit atque interdicit, proterritis hostibus atque in fugam conjectis (quod fore sicut accidit videbat), unum omnes puerent Indutiomarum; neu quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfecum viderit, quod mora reliquorum spatium nactum illum effugere nolebat: magna proponit iis qui occiderint praemia; submittit cohortes equitibus subsidio. 4 Comprobat hominis consilium fortuna; et cum unum omnes puerent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomarus interficitur, caputque ejus refertur in castra: redeundes equites quos possunt consectantur atque occidunt. Hac re cognita, omnes Eburonum et Nervorum quae convenecerant copiae discedunt; pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar quietiorem Galliam.
BOOK VI.

SECOND EXPEDITION INTO GERMANY.—Disturbances continue, and are evidently kept up by understanding with the Germans. Cæsar accordingly, having disarmed the Nervii, the Treveri also being defeated by Labienus, decides again to cross the Rhine (1-10). Here follows a long and interesting description of the people and customs of Gaul (11-20); and a very curious account of the Germans, with descriptions, half fabulous, of the Hercynian Wood and the wild beasts there inhabiting, the reindeer, elk, and buffalo (21-28). Finding the country mostly a wilderness, Cæsar returns to Gaul, where the force of Ambiorix is crushed, and the territory of the Eburones ravaged (29-34). A dangerous attack by the Sigambri, a German tribe from over the Rhine, is repelled by Cæsar’s advance (35-42). After inflicting military severities upon the resisting tribes, he returns to Italy, leaving the Province, as he thinks, fully subdued (43, 44).

MULTIS de causis Cæsar, majorem Galliae motum exspectans, per M. Silanum C. Antistium Reginum T. Sextium legatos delectum habere instituit: 2 simul ab Cn. Pompeio proconsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio reipublicae causa remaneret, quos ex Cisalpina Gallia consulis sacramento rogavisset, ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci juberet; 3 magni interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opinione Galliae existimans, tantas videri Italiae facultates, ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non modo id brevi tempore resarciri, sed etiam majoribus adaugeri copiis posset. 4 Quod cum Pompeius et reipublicae et amicitiae tribuisset, celeriter confecto per suos dilectu, tribus ante exactam hiemem et constitutis et adductis legionibus, duplicatoque earum cohortium numero quas cum Q. Titurio amiserat, et celeritate et copiis docuit quid populi Romani disciplina atque opes possent.
2. Interfecto Indutiomaro, ut docuimus, ad ejus propinquos a Treveris imperium defertur. Illi finitimos Germanos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt. Cum ab proximis impetrare non possent, ulteriores temptant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus, jurejurando inter se confirmant, obsidibusque de pecunia cavent: Ambiorigem sibi societate et foedere adjungunt.

3. Quibus rebus cognitis, Caesar, cum undique bellum parari videret, Nervios, Aduatucos ac Menapios, adjunctis Cisrhenanis omnibus Germanis, esse in armis, Senones ad imperatum non venire et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus consilia communicare, a Treveris Germanos crebris legationibus sollicitari, maturius sibi de bello cogitandum putavit.

3. Itaque, nondum hieme confecta, proximis quattuor coactis legionibus, de improviso in fines Nerviorum contendit, et prius quam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent, magno pecoris atque hominum numero capto atque ea praeda militibus concessa, vastatisque agris, in deditionem venire atque obsides sibi dare coēgit.

2. Eo celeriter confecto negotio, rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit. Concilio Galliae primo vere, uti instituerat, indicto, cum reliqui praeter Senones, Carnutes, Treverosque, venissent, initium belli ac defectionis hoc esse arbitratus, ut omnia postponere videretur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiorum transfert. Confines erant hi Senonibus, civitatemque patrum memoria conjunxerant; sed ab hoc consilio abfuisse existimabantur. Hac re pro suggestu pronuntiata, eodem die cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur, magnisque itineribus eo pervenit.

4. Cognito ejus adventu, Acco, qui princeps ejus consilii fuerat, jubet in oppida multitudinem convenire: conantibus, prius quam id effici posset, adesse Romanos nuntiātur. Necessario sententia desistunt, legatosque deprecandi causa ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Haeduos, quorum antiquitus erat in fide civitas.
ter Caesar, petentibus Haeduis, dat veniam excusationemque accipit, quod aestivum tempus instantis belli, non quaestionis, esse arbitrabatur; obsidibus imperatis centum, hos Haeduis custodiendos tradit. 8 Eodem Car-nutes legatos obsidesque mittunt, usi deprecatoribus Remis, quorum erant in clientela: eadem ferunt responsa. Peragit concilium Caesar, equitesque imperat civitatibus.

5. Hac parte Galliae pacata, totus et mente et animo in bellum Treverorum et Ambiorigis insistit. Cavari-num cum equitatu Senonum secum proficisci jubes, ne quis aut ex hujus iracundia, aut ex eo quod meruerat odio, civitatis motus existat. 2 His rebus constitutis, quod pro explorato habebat Ambiorigem proelio non esse concertaturum, reliqua ejus consilia animo circum-spiciebat. 8 Erant Menapii propinqui Eburonum finibus, perpetuis paludibus silvisque muniti, qui uni ex Gallia de pace ad Caesarem legatos numquam miserant. Cum his esse hospitium Ambiorigi sciebat: item per Treveros venisse Germanis in amicitiam cognoverat. 4 Haec prius illi detrahenda auxilia existimabat quam ipsum bello lacesseret; ne, desperata salute, aut se in Menapios abderet aut cum Transrhenanis congregi cogeretur. 8 Hoc initio consilio, totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labienum in Treveros mittit, duasque legiones ad eum proficisci jubes; ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. 6 Illi, nulla coacta manu, loci praesidio freti, in silvas paludesque confugiunt suaque eodem conferunt.

6. Caesar, partitis copiis cum C. Fabio legato et M. Crasso quaestore, celeriterque effectis pontibus, adit tri-partito, aedificia vicosque incendit, magno pecoris atque hominum numero potitur. 2 Quibus rebus coacti Menapii legatos ad eum pacis petendae causa mittunt. Ille, obsidibus acceptis, hostium se habiturum numero confirmat, si aut Ambiorigem aut ejus legatos finibus suis
recepissent. 3 His confirmatis rebus, Commium Atrebatem cum equitatu custodis loco in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Treveros proficiscitur.

7. Dum haec a Caesare geruntur, Treveri, magnis coactis peditatus equitatusque copiis, Labienum cum una legione quae in eorum finibus hiemaverat adoriri parabant: jamque ab eo non longius bidui via aberant, cum duas venisse legiones missu Caesaris cognoscunt. 2 Positis castris a milibus passuum quindecim, auxilia Germanorum exspectare constituunt. Labienus, hos tium cognito consilio, sperans temeritate eorum fore aliquam dimicandi facultatem, praesidio quinque cohortium impedimentis relictus, cum xxv cohortibus magnisque equitatu contra hostem proficiscitur; et, mille passuum intermisso spatio, castra communit. 8 Erat inter Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen ripisque praeruptis. Hoc neque ipse transire habebat in animo, neque hostes transituros existimabat. Augebatur auxilliorum cotidie spes. 4 Loquitur in concilio palam: Quoniam Germani appropinquare dicantur, sese suas exercitusque fortunas in dubium non devocaturum; et postero die prima luce castra moturum. 5 Celeriter haec ad hostes deferuntur, ut ex magno Gallorum equitum numero nonnullos Gallicis rebus favere natura cogebat. 6 Labienus, noctu tribunis militum primisque ordinibus convocatis, quid sui sit consilii proponit, et, quo facilius hostibus timoris det suspicacionem, majore strepitu et tumultu quam populi Romani fert consuetudo castra moveri jubet. 7 His rebus fugae similem profectionem efficit. Haec quoque per exploratores ante lucem in tanta propinquitate castrorum ad hostes deferuntur.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiones processerat, cum Galli — cohortati inter se ne speratam praedam ex manibus demitterent; longum esse, per territis Romanis, Germanorum auxilium exspectare; neque suam
pati dignitatem, ut tantis copiis tam exiguum manum praesertim fugientem atque impeditam adoriri non audeant—flumen transire et iniquo loco committere proelium non dubitant. ² Quae fore suspicatus Labienus, ut omnes citra flumen eliceret, eadem usus simulatione itineris, placide progrediebatur. ³ Tum, praemissis pau-

lum impedimentis atque in tumulo quodam collocatis, "Habetis," inquit, "milites, quam petistis facultatem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco tenetis: praestate eandem nobis ducibus virtutem quam saepenuero imperatori praestitistis; atque adesse illum et haec coram cernere existimaste." ⁴ Simul signa ad hostem converti aciemque dirigere jubet; et, paucis turmis praesidio ad impedimenta dimissis, reliquos equites ad latera disponit. Celeriter nostri, clamore sublato, pila in hostes immittunt. ⁵ Illi, ubi praeter spem quos fugere credebant infestis signis ad se ire viderunt, impetum modo ferre non potuerunt, ac primo concursu in fugam conjecit proximas silvas petierunt. ⁶ Quos Labienus equitatu consectatus, magno numero interfecit, complexibus captis, paucis post diebus civitatem receptit. Nam Germani, qui auxilio veniebant, percepta Treverorum fuga, sese domum receperunt. ⁷ Cum his pro-pinqui Indutiomari, qui defectionis auctores fuerant, comitati eos ex civitate excesserunt. Cingetorigi, quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstravimus, principatus atque imperium est traditum.

⁹ Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treveros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit: quorum una erat quod auxilia contra se Treveris miserant; al- tera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet. ² His constitutis rebus, paulum supra eum locum quo ante exercitum traduxerat facere pontem instituit. Nota atque instituta ratione, magno militum studio, paucis diebus opus efficur. ³ Firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio relict, ne quis ab his subito motus oreretur,
Caesar crosses the Rhine.

reliquas copias equitatumque traducit. 4 Ubii, qui ante obsides dederant atque in deditionem venerant, purgandi sui causa ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant, neque auxilia ex sua civitate in Treveros missa, neque ab se fidem laesam: 5 petunt atque orant ut sibi parcat; ne, communi odio Germanorum, innocentes pro nocentibus poenas pendant; si amplius obsidum vellet, dare pollicentur. 6 Cognita Caesar causa, reperit ab Suevis auxilia missa esse; Ubiorum satisfactionem accipit; aditus viasque in Suevos perquirit.

10. Interini, paucis post diebus, fit ab Ubiiis certior Suevos omnes in unum locum copias cogere, atque iis nationibus, quae sub eorum sint imperio, denuntiare, ut auxilia peditatus equitatusque mittant. 2 His cognitis rebus, rem frumentarium providet, castris idoneum locum 15 deligit, Ubiiis imperat ut pecora deducant, suaque omnia ex agris in oppida conferant,—sperans barbaros atque imperitos homines, inopia cibariorum adductos, ad iniquam pugnandi condicionem posse deduci; mandat ut crebros exploratores in Suevos mittant, quaeque apud eos gerantur cognoscant. 3 Illi imperata faciunt; et, paucis diebus intermissis, referunt: 'Suevos omnes, posteaquam certiores nuntii de exercitu Romanorum vene- rint, cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis quas coegissent, penitus ad extremos fines se recepisse; 4 silvam esse ibi infinita magnitudine, quae appellatur Bacenis; hanc longe introrsus pertinere, et pro nativo muro objectam, Cheruscos ab Suevis, Suevosque ab Cheruscis, injuriis incursionibusque prohibere; ad ejus initium silvae Suevos adventum Romanorum exspectare constituisset.'

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non alenum esse videtur, de Galliae Germaniaeque moribus, et quo different hae nationes inter se, proponere.

2 In Gallia non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis [partibusque], sed paene etiam in singulis 35 domibus, factiones sunt; earumque factionum principes
sunt, qui summam auctoritatem eorum judicio habere existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium judicumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat. 8 Itaque ejus rei causa antiquitus institutum videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiorem auxilii egeret; suos enim quisque opprimi et circumveniri non patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ullam inter suos habet auctoritatem. 4 Haec eadem ratio est in summa totius Galliae; namque omnes civitates in partes divisa sunt duas.

10 12. Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Haedu, alterius Sequani. Hi, cum per se minus valerent (quod summa auctoritas antiquitus erat in Haedu, magnaeque eorum erant clientelae), Germanos atque Ariovistum sibi adjunxerant, eosque ad se magnis jacturis polliciationibusque perduxerant. 2 Proelii vero compluribus factis secundis, atque omni nobilitate Haeduorum interfecta, tantum potentia antecesserant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Haedu ad se traducerent, obsidesque ab iis principum filios acciperent, et publice jurare cogerent nihil se contra Sequanos consilii inituros, et partem finitimi agri per vim occupatam possiderent, Galliaeque totius principatum obtinerent. 8 Qua necessitate adductus, Divitiacus, auxilii petendi causa Romam ad Senatum profectus, infecta re redierat. 4 Adventu Caesaris facta commutatione rerum, obsidibus Haeduis redditis, veteribus clientelis restitutis, novis per Caesarem comparatis, quod hi, qui se ad eorum amicitiam aggregaverant, meliore condicione atque aequiore imperio se uti videbant, reliquis rebus eorum gratia dignitateque amplificata, Sequani principatum dimiserant. 6 In eorum locum Remi successe-rant: quos quod adaequare apud Caesarem gratia intellegebatur, ii qui propter veteres inimicitias nullo modo cum Haedu conjungi poterant se Remis in clientelam dicabant. 6 Hos illi diligenter tuebantur: ita et novam et repente collectam auctoritatem tenebant.
B. G. VI. 13. ] Customs of the Gauls. 125

Eo tum statu res erat, ut longe principes haberentur Haedui, secundum locum dignitatis Remi obtinerent.

13. In omni Gallia eorum hominum qui aliquo sunt numero atque honore genera sunt duo. Nam plebes paene servorum habetur loco, quae nihil audet per se, et nullo adhibetur consilio. 2 Plerique, cum aut aere alieno aut magnitudine tributorum aut injuria potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant nobilibus. In hos eadem omnia sunt jura quae dominis in servos.

3 Sed de his duobus generibus alterum est Druidum, alterum Equitum. Illi rebus divinis intusunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur. 4 Ad eos magnus adolescentium numerus disciplinae causa concurrit, magnoque hi sunt apud eos honore. Nam fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt; et, si quod est admissum facinurus, si caedes facta, si de hereditate, de finibus controversia est, idem decernunt; praemia poenasque constituunt: si qui, aut privatus aut populus, eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. 5 Haec poena apud eos est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hi numero impiorum ac sceleratorum habentur; his omnes decedunt, aditum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagione incommodi accipient: neque his potentibus jus redditur, neque honos ullus communicatur. 6 His autem omnibus Druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit; aut, si sunt plures pares, suffragio Druidum, nonnunquam etiam armis de principatu contendunt. 7 Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, considunt in loco consecrato: huc omnes undique qui controversias habent conveniunt, eorumque decreatis judiciisque parent. 8 Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur; et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem cognosce,_principes haberentur Haedui, secundum locum dignitatis Remi obtinerent. In omni Gallia eorum hominum qui aliquo sunt numero atque honore genera sunt duo. Nam plebes paene servorum habetur loco, quae nihil audet per se, et nullo adhibetur consilio. Plerique, cum aut aere alieno aut magnitudine tributorum aut injuria potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant nobilibus. In hos eadem omnia sunt jura quae dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus generibus alterum est Druidum, alterum Equitum. Illi rebus divinis intusunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur. Ad eos magnus adolescentium numerus disciplinae causa concurrit, magnoque hi sunt apud eos honore. Nam fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt; et, si quod est admissum facinurus, si caedes facta, si de hereditate, de finibus controversia est, idem decernunt; praemia poenasque constituunt: si qui, aut privatus aut populus, eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec poena apud eos est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hi numero impiorum ac sceleratorum habentur; his omnes decedunt, aditum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagione incommodi accipient: neque his potentibus jus redditur, neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem omnibus Druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit; aut, si sunt plures pares, suffragio Druidum, nonnunquam etiam armis de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, considunt in loco consecrato: huc omnes undique qui controversias habent conveniunt, eorumque decreatis judiciisque parent. Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur; et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem cognosce,
cere volunt, plerumque illo discendi causa proficiscuntur.

14. Druides a bello abesse consuerunt, neque tributa una cum reliquis pendunt; militiae vacationem omnium que rerum habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati prae-miis, et sua sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt, et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versusum ediscere dicuntur. Itaque annos nonnulli vicenos in disciplina permanent. Neque fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare, cum in reliquis fere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Graecis litteris utantur. Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur: quod neque in vulgum disciplinam efferri velint, neque eos qui discunt, litteris confisos, minus memoriae studere,—quod fere plerisque accidit, ut praesidio litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant. In primis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios; atque hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa praeterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant et juventuti tradunt.

15. Alterum genus est Equitum. Hi, cum est usus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod fere ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solebat, uti aut ipsi injurias inferrent aut illatas propulsarent), omnes in bello versantur; atque eorum ut quisque est genere copiosissimi amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientesque habet. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque noven-runt.

16. Natio est omnis Gallorum admodum dedita religionibus; atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, quique in proeliiis periculosique versantur, aut pro victimis homines immolant, aut se immolature vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia Druidibus utun-
tur,—quod, pro vita hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse deorum immortalium numen placari arbitruntur; publiceque ejusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. 2 Alii immani magnitudine simulacra habent, quorum contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus 5 complent; quibus successis, circumventi flamma examinantur homines. 3 Supplicia eorum qui in furto aut in latrocinio aut aliqua noxa sint comprehensi, gratiora diis immortalibus esse arbitruntur; sed, cum ejus generis copia defecit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

17. Deum maxime Mercurium colunt: hujus sunt plurima simulacra; hunc omnium inventorem artium ferunt, hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestus pecuniae mercaturasque habere vim maximam 15 arbitruntur. 2 Post hunc, Apollinem et Martem et Jovem et Minervam. De his eandem fere quam reliquae gentes habent opinionem: Apollinem morbos depellere; Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia tradere; Jovem imperium caelestium tenere; Martem bella regere. 20 Huic, cum proelio dimicare constituerunt, ea quae bello ceperint plerumque devoent: quom superaverunt, animalia capta immolant, reliquasque res in unum locum conserverunt. 4 Multis in civitatibus harum rerum extructos tumulos locis consecratis conspiciari licet. 5 Neque 25 saepe accidit, ut neglecta quispiam religione, aut capta apud se occultare aut posita tollere auderet; gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciato constitutum est.

18. Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognatos praedicant, idque ab Druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam 30 causam spatia omnis temporis non numero dierum sed noctium finiunt; dies natales et mensium et annorum initia sic observant, ut noctem dies subsequatur. 2 In reliquis vitae institutis hoc fere ab reliquis differunt, quod suos liberos, nisi cum adoleverunt, ut munus mili- 35 tiae sustinere possint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur;
filiumque puerili aetate in publico in conspectu patris adsistere turpe ducunt.

19. Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomine acceperunt, tantas ex suis bonis, aestimatione facta, cum dotibus communicant. 2 Hujus omnis pecuniae conjunctim ratio habetur, fructusque servantur: uter eorum vita superarit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. 3 Viri in uxores, sicut in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestatem; et cum patterfamiliae illustriore loco natus decessit, ejus propinqui conveniunt, et de morte, si res in suspicionem venit, de uxoribus in servilem modum quaestionem habent, et si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt. 4 Funera sunt pro cultu Gallorum magnifica et sumptuosa; omniaque, quae vivis cordi fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia: ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes, quos ab iis dilectos esse constabat, justis funeribus confectis, una cremabantur.

20. Quae civitates commodius suam rem publicam administrare existimantur, habent legibus sanctum, si quis quid de republica a finitimis rumore aut fama acceperit, uti ad magistratum deferat, neve cum quo alio communicet: 2 quod saepe homines temerarios atque imperitos falsis rumoribus terreri, et ad facinus impelli, et de summis rebus consilium capere, cognitum est. 3 Magistratus quae visa sunt occultant; quaeque esse ex usu judicaverunt multitudini produnt. De republica nisi per concilium loqui non conceditur.

21. Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. Nam neque Druides habent qui rebus divinis praesint, neque sacrificiiis student. 2 Deorum numero eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt et quorum aperte opibus juvantur, Solem et Vulcanum et Lunam; reliquos ne fama quidem acceperunt. 3 Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit: ab parvulis labori ac du-
ritiae student. 4 Qui diutissime impuberes permanse-
run, maximam inter suos ferunt laudem: hoc ali statu-
ram, ali vires nervosque confirmari, putant. 5 Intra
annum vero vicesimum feminae notitiam habuisse, in
turpissimis habent rebus: cujus rei nulla est occultatio, 5
quod et promiscue in fluminibus perluuntur, et pellibus
aut parvis rhenonum tegimentis utuntur, magna corpo-
ris parte nuda.

22. Agriculturae non student; majorque pars eorum
victus in lacte, caseo, carne consistit. 2 Neque quis-
quam agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios; sed
magistratus ac principes in annos singulos gentibus
cognitionibusque hominum, qui una coierunt, quantum
et quo loco visum est agri attribuunt, atque anno post
alio transire cogunt. 3 Eius rei multas afferunt causas: 15
ne, assidua consuetudine capti, studium belli gerendi
agricultura commutent; ne latos fines parare studeant,
potentioresque humiliores possessionibus expellant; ne
accuratius ad frigora atque aestus vitandos aedificent;
ne qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, qua ex re factiones 20
dissensionesque nascentur; ut animi aequitate plebem
contineant, cum suas quisque opes cum potentissimis
eaquari videat.

23. Civitatibus maxima laus est, quam latissime cir-
cum se vastatis finibus solitudines habere. Hoc pro-
primum virtutis existimant, expulsos agris finitimos
cedere, neque quemquam prope audere consistere:
simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur, repentinae in-
cursionis timore sublato. 2 Cum bellum civitas aut
illatum defendit aut infert, magistratus qui ei bello 30
praesint, ut vitae necisque habeant potestatem, deli-
guntur. 3 In pace nullus est communis magistratus,
sed principes regionum atque pagorum inter suos jus
dicunt, controversiasque minuunt. 4 Latrocinia nullam
habent infamiam quae extra fines cujusque civitatis 35
funt, atque ea juventutis exercendae ac desidiae minu-
endae causa fieri praedicant. 6 Atque ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit 'se ducem fore, qui sequi velint profiteantur,' — consurgunt ii qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ab multitudine collaudantur; qui ex his secuti non sunt, in desertorum ac proditoris numero ducuntur, omniumque his rerum postea fides derogatur. 6 Hospitem violare fas non putant: qui quaque de causa ad eos venerunt, ab injuria prohibent sanctosque habent; hisque omnium domus patent, victusque communicatur.

24. Ac fuit ante tempus, cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultero bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agricile inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mitterent. 2 Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germaniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratostheni et quibusdam Graecis fama notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosages occupaverunt atque ibi consederunt. 3 Quae gens ad hoc tempus his sedibus sese continet, summamque habet justitiae et bellicae laudis opinionem. 4 Nunc quidem in eadem inopia, egestate, patientiaque Germani permanent, eodem victu et cultu corporis utuntur; Gallis autem provinciarum propinquitas et transmarinarum rerum notitia multa ad copiam atque usum largitur. 5 Paulatim adsuefactus superari, multisque victi proelii, ne se quidem ipsi cum illis virtute comparant.

25. Hujus Hercyniae silvae, quae supra demonstrata est, latitudo novem dierum iter expedito patet: non enim aliter finiri potest, neque mensuras itinerum nove-runt. 2 Oritur ab Helvetiorum et Nemetum et Rauracorum finibus, rectaque fluminis Danubii regione pertinet ad fines Dacorum et Anartium; hinc se flectit sinistrorsus diversis ab flumine regionibus, multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit. 3 Neque quisquam est hujus Germaniae, qui se [aut audisse] aut adisse ad initium ejus silvae dicat, cum dierum iter
sexaginta processerit, aut quo ex loco oriatur acceperit. 4 Multaque in ea genera ferarum nasci constat, quae reliquis in locis visa non sint: ex quibus quae maxime differant ab ceteris et memoriae prodenda videantur, haec sunt.

26. Est bos, cervi figura, cujus a media fronte inter aures unum cornu existit, excelsius magisque directum his quae nobis nota sunt cornibus. 2 Ab ejus summo sicut palmae ramique late diffunduntur. Eadem est feminae marisque natura, eadem forma magnitudinoque cornuum.

27. Sunt item, quae appellantur Alces. Harum est consimilis capris figura et varietas pellium; sed magnitudine paulo antecedunt, mutilaeque sunt cornibus, et crura sine nolis articulisque habent; neque quietis causa procumbunt, neque, si quo afflictae casu concide-runt, erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. 2 His sunt arbores pro cubilibus: ad eas se applicant, atque ita paulum modo reclinatae quietem capiunt. 3 Quorum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a venatoribus quo se recipere consuerint, omnes eo loco aut ab radicibus sub-ruunt, aut accidunt arbores, tantum ut summa species earum stantium relinquatur. 4 Huc cum se consuetudine reclinaverunt, infimas arbores pondere affligunt atque una ipsae considunt.

28. Tertium est genus eorum qui Uri appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra elephantos; specie et colore et figura tauri. 2 Magna vis eorum est et magna velocitas; neque homini neque ferae quam conspexerunt parcunt. Hos studiose foveis captos interficiunt. 3 Hoc se labore durant adolesentes, atque hoc genere venationis exercent; et qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum cornibus, quae sint testimonio, magnam ferunt laudem. 4 Sed adsuescere ad homines et mansueti ne parvuli quidem excepti possunt. 35 6 Amplitudo cornuum et figura et species multum a
Caesar returns to Gaul.

nostrorum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiose con-
quista ab labris argento circumcludunt, atque in amplis-
simis epulis pro pocolis utuntur.

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores compe-
rit Suevos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti
veritus (quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime omnes
Germani agriculturae student), constituit non progradi
longius; 2 sed, ne omnino metum reditus sui barbaris
tolleret, atque ut eorum auxilia tardaret, reducto exer-
citu, partem ultimam pontis, quae ripas Ubiorum con-
tingebat, in longitudinem pedum ducentorum rescindit,
atque in extremo ponte turrim tabulatorum quattuor
constituit, praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis
tuendi causa ponit, magnisque eum locum munitionibus
firmat. 3 Et loco praesidioque C. Volcacium Tullum
adulescentem praefecit; ipse, cum maturescere frumenta
inciperent, ad bellum Ambioriginis profectus, per Ardu-
ennam silvam—quae est totius Galliae maxima, atque ab
ripis Rheni finibusque Treverorum ad Nervios pertinet,
milibusque amplius quingentis in longitudinem patet—
4 L. Minucium Basilum cum omni equitatu praemittit,
si quid celeritate itineris atque opportunitate temporis
proficere possit; monet ut ignes in castris fieri prohibe-
beat, ne qua ejus adventus procul significatio fiat: sese
confestim subsequi dicit.

30. Basilus ut imperatum est facit: celeriter contra-
que omnium opinionem concocto itinere, multos in agris
inopinantes deprehendit; eorum indicio ad ipsum Am-
biorigenem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitibus
esse dicebatur. 2 Multum cum in omnibus rebus tum
in re militari potest fortuna. Nam sic ut magno accidit
casu, ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imperatum in-
cideret, priusque ejus adventus ab omnibus videretur
quam fama ac nuntius adferretur, sic magnae fuit for-
tunae, omni militari instrumento quod circum se habe-
bat erepto, rhedis equisque comprehensis, ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hoc quoque factum est, quod, aedificio circumdatu silva, ut sunt fere domicilia Gallorum, qui vitandi aestus causa plerumque silvarum ac fluminum petunt propinquitates, comites familiaresque ejus angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. His pugnantibus, illum in equum quidam ex suis intulit; fugientem silvae texerunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum et ad vitandum, multum fortuna valuit.

31. Ambiorix copias suas judicione non conduxerit, quod proelio dimicandum non existimarit, an tempore exclusus et repentino equitum adventu prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequi crederet, dubium est. Sed certe, dimissis per agros nuntiis, sibi quemque consulere jussit. Quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentes paludes profugit; qui proximi Oceano fuerunt, his insulis sese occultaverunt quas aestus efficere consuerunt; multi ex suis finibus egressi se suaque omnia alienissimis crediderunt. Catuvolcus, rex dimidiae partis Eburonum, qui una cum Ambiorige consilium inierat, aetate jam confectus, cum laborem aut belli aut fugae ferre non posset, omnibus precibus detestatus Ambiorigem, qui ejus consilii auctor fuisset, taxo (cuju magns in Gallia Germaniaque copia est) se examinavit.

32. Segni Condrusique, ex gente et numero Germanorum, qui sunt inter Eburones Treverosque, legatos ad Caesarem miserunt, oratum, 'ne se in hostium numero duceret, neve omnium Germanorum qui essent citra Rhenum, unam esse causam judicaret; nihil se de bello cogitavisse, nulla Ambiorigis auxilia misisse.' Caesar, explorata re quae stione captivorum, si qui ad eos Eburones ex fuga convenissent ad se ut reducerentur imperavit: si ita fecissent, fines eorum se violaturum negavit. Tum copiis in tres partes distributis, impedimenta omi-
nium legionum Aduatucam contulit. Id castelli nomen est. Hoc fere est in mediis Eburonum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius hiemandi causa consedere-rant. 4 Hunc cum reliquis rebus locum probarat, tum quod superioris anni munitiones integrae manebant, ut militum laborem sublevaret. 5 Praesidio impedimentis legionem quartam decimam reliquit, unam ex his tribus quas proxime conscriptas ex Italia traduxerat. 6 Ei legioni castrisque Q. Tullium Ciceronem praeificit, ducens, toque equites attribuit.

33. Partito exercitu, T. Labienum cum legionibus tribus ad Oceanum versus in eas partes quae Menapios attingunt proficiisci jubet; C. Trebonium cum pari legionum numero ad eam regionem quae ad Aduatucos ad- jacet depopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flumen Scaldem, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennae partes ire constituit, quo cum paucis equitisibus profectum Ambiorigem audiebat. 2 Discedens post diem septimum sese reversurum confirmat; quam ad diem ei legioni quae in praesidio relinquebatur deberei frumentum sciebat. 3 Labienum Treboniumque hortatur, si reipublicae commodo facere possint, ad eum diem revertantur; ut, rursus communicato consilio, exploratisque hostium rationibus, alius initium belli capere possint.

34. Erat, ut supra demonstravimus, manus certa nulla, non oppidum, non praesidium, quod se armis defendere-ret; sed omnes in partes dispersa multitudo. 2 Ubi cuique aut vallis abdita aut locus silvestris aut palus impedita spem praesidii aut salutis aliquam offerebat, consederat. 3 Haec loca vicinitatibus erant nota, magnamque res diligentiam requirebat, non in summa exercitus tuenda (nullum enim poterat universis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus conservandis; quae tamen ex parte res ad salutem exercitus pertinebat. 4 Nam et praedae cupiditas multos
longius evocabat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus confertos adire prohibebant. 5 Si negotium confici stir-pemque hominum sceleratorum interfici vellet, dimitten-
dae plures manus diducendique erant milites: si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut instituta ratio et 5 consuetudo exercitus Romanis postulabat, locus ipse erat praesidio barbaris, neque ex occulto insidiandi et dis-
persos circumveniendo singulis deerat audacia. 6 Ut in
ejusmodi difficultatibus, quantum diligentia provideri
poterat, providebatur; ut potius in nocendo aliquid 10 praetermitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum
ardebant, quam cum aliquo militum detrimento nocere-
tur. 7 Dimittit ad finitimas civitates nuntios Caesar: om-
nes ad se vocat spe praedae ad diripiendos Eburones,
Ut potius in silvis Gallorum vita quam legionarius miles 15 periclitetur; simul ut, magna multitudine circumfusa,
pro tali facinore stirps ac nomen civitatis tollatur.
Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

35. Haec in omnibus Eburonum partibus gerebantur,
diesque appetebat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad 20 impedimenta legionemque reverti constituerat. 2 Hic
quantum in bello fortuna possit, et quantos adferat casus,
cognosci potuit. Dissipatis ac perterritis hostibus, ut
demonstravimus, manus erat nulla quae parvam modo
causam timoris afferret. 3 Trans Rhenum ad Germanos 25
pervenit fama, diripi Eburones atque ultras omnes ad
praedam evocari. 4 Cogunt equitum duo milia Sugam-
 bri, qui sunt proximi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fuga
Tencteros atque Usipetes supra docuimus. 6 Transeunt
Rhenum navibus ratibusque, triginta milibus passuum 30
infra eum locum ubi pons erat perfectus praesidiumque
ab Caesare relictum. Primos Eburonum fines adeunt;
multos ex fuga dispersos excipiunt, magnno pecoris nu-
mero, cujus sunt cupidissimi barbari, potiuntur. 6 In-
vitati praeda longius procedunt: non hos palus, in bello 35
latrociniisque natos, non silvae morantur. Quibus in
locis sit Caesar ex captivis quærunt; profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cognoscunt. 7 Atque unus ex captivis: "Quid vos," inquit, "hanc miseram ac tenuem sectamini praedam, quibus licet jam esse fortunatissimis? Tribus horis Aduatucam venire potestis: huc omnes suas fortunas exercitus Romanorum contulit. Praesidii tantum est, ut ne murus quidem cingi possit, neque quisquam egredi extra munitiones audeat." 8 Oblata spe, Germani quam nacti erant praedam in occulto relinquunt; ipsi Aduatucam contendunt, usi eodem duce cujus haec indicio cognoverant.

36. Cicero (qui omnes superiores dies praeeptis Caesaris summa diligentia milites in castris continuisset, 15 ac ne calonem quidem quemquam extra munitionem egredi passus esset) septimo die, diffidens de numero dierum Caesarem fidem servaturum, quod longius progressum audiebat, neque ulla de reeditu ejus fama afferebatur; 2 simul eorum permotus vocibus, qui illius patientiam paene obsessionem appellabant, siquidem ex castris egredi non liceret; nullum ejusmodi casum exspectans, quo, novem oppositis legionibus maximoque equitatu, dispersis ac paene deletis hostibus, in milibus passuum tribus offendi posset,— quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas segetes mittit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. 8 Complures erant ex legionibus aegri relict.i; ex quibus qui hoc spatio die-rum convaluerant, circiter trecenti, sub vexillo una mittuntur; magna praeterea multitudo calonum, magna vis jumentorum, quae in castris subsederant, facta po-testate sequitur.

37. Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germani equites interveniunt, protinusque eodem illo quo venerant cursu ab decumana porta in castra irrupere conantur; nec prius sunt visi, objectis ab ea parte silvis, quam castris appropinquarent, usque eo ut qui sub vallo tenderent
mercatores recipiendi sui facultatem non haberent. Inopinantes nostri re nova perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statione sustinet. Circumfunduntur ex reliquis hostes partibus, si quem aditum reperire possent. Aegre portas nostri tuentur, reliquos aditus locus ipse per se munitioque defendit. Totis trepidatur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus quae rit; neque quo signa feruntur neque quam in partem quisque conveniat provident. Alius jam castra capta pronuntiat; alius, deleto exercitu atque imperatore, victores barbaros venisse contendit; plerique novas sibi ex loco religiones fingunt, Cottaequae et Titurii calamitatem, qui in eodem occiderint castello, ante oculos ponunt. Tali timore omnibus perterritis, confirmatur opinio barbaris, ut ex captivo audierant, nullum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nituntur, seque ipsi adhortantur, ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.

38. Erat aeger cum praesidio relictus P. Sextius Ba-culus, qui primum pilum ad Caesarem duxerat, cujus mentionem superioribus proeliiis fecimus, ac diem jam quintum cibo caruerat. Hic, diffusus suae atque omnium saluti, inermis ex tabernaculo prodit; videt immi- nere hostes atque in summo rem esse discrimine; capit arma a proximis atque in porta consistit: consequuntur hunc centuriones ejus cohortis quae in statione erat; paulisper una proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium, gravibus acceptis vulneribus: aegre per man- nus tractus servatur. Hoc spatio interposito, reliqui sese confirmant tantum, ut in munitionibus consistere audeant speciemque defensorum praebent.

39. Interim, confecta frumentatione, milites nostri clamorem exaudient: praecurrunt equites; quanto res sit in periculo cognoscunt. Hic vero nulla munitio est quae perterritos recipiat: modo conscripti atque usus militaris imperiti, ad tribunum militum centurionesque 35 ora convertunt; quid ab his praecipiat praecipiant;
nemo est tam fortis quin rei novitate perturbetur. 

3 Barbari, signa procul conspicati, oppugnatione desistunt: redisse primo legiones credunt, quas longius discussisse ex captivis cognoverant: postea, despecta paucitate, ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

40. Calones in proximum tumulum procurrunt. Hinc celeriter dejecti se in signa manipulosque coniciunt: eo magis timidos perterrent milites. 2 Alii, cuneo facto, ut celeriter perrumpant censent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra; et si pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquos servari posse confidunt; aliut ut in iugo consistant atque eundem omnes ferant casum. 3 Hoc veteres non probant milites, quos sub vexillo una prefectos docui mus. Itaque inter se cohortati, duce C. Trebonio, equite Romano, qui eis erat praepositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt, incolumesque ad unum omnes in castra perveniunt. 4 Hos subsecuti calones equitesque eodem impetu militum virtute servantur. At ii qui in iugo constiterant, nullo etiam nunc usu rei militaris percepto, neque in eo quod probaverant consilio permanere, ut se loco superiore defenderent, neque eam quam prodesse alis vim celeritatemque viderant imitari potuerunt; sed se in castra recipere conati, iniquum in locum demiserunt. 5 Centuriones, quorum nonnulli ex inferi ribus ordinibus reliquam legionum virtutis causa in superioris erant ordines hujus legionis traducti, ne ante partam rei militaris laudem amitterent, fortissime pug- nantes conciderunt. 6 Militum pars, horum virtute submotis hostibus, praeter spem incolumis in castra pervenit; pars a barbaris circumventaperiit.

41. Germani, desperata expugnatione castrorum, quod nostros jam constitisse in munitionibus videbant, cum ea praeda quam in silvis deposuerant trans Rhenum sese receperunt. 2 Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror, ut ea nocte, cum C. Volusenus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset, fidem non faceret adesse
cum incolumi Caesarem exercitu. 8 Sic omnino animos
timor praeoccupaverat, ut, paene alienata mente, deletis
omnibus copiis, equitatum tantum se ex fuga recepisse
dicerent, neque incolumi exercitu Germanos castra op-
pugnaturos fuisse contenderent. Quem timorem Caes-
saris adventus sustulit.

42. Reversus ille,—eventus belli non ignorans, unum
quod cohortes ex statione et praesidio essent emissae
questus, ne minimo quidem casu locum relinqui debuisse,
—multum fortunam in repentino hostium adventu po-
tuisse judicavit; multo etiam amplius, quod paene ab
ipso vallo portisque castrorum barbaros avertisset.
2 Quorum omnium rerum maxime admirandum videbatur,
quod Germani, qui eo consilio Rhenum transierant ut
Ambiorigis fines depopularentur, ad castra Romanorum 15
delati, optatissimum Ambiorigi beneficium obtulerunt.

43. Caesar, rursus ad vexandos hostes profectus,
magnus coacto numero ex finitimis civitatibus, in omnes
partes dimittit. 2 Omnes vici atque omnia aedificia quae
quisque conspexerat incendebantur; praeda ex omnibus 20
locis agebatur; frumenta non solum tanta multitudine
jumentorum atque hominem consumebantur, sed etiam
anni tempore atque imbribus procubuerant; ut, si qui
etiam in praesentia se occultassent, tamen his, deducto
exercitu, rerum omnium inopia pereundum videretur. 25
3 Ac saepe in eum locum ventum est, tanto in omnes
partes diviso equitatu, ut modo visum ab se Ambiorigem
in fuga circumspicerent captivi, nec plane etiam abisse
ex conspectu contenderent; ut, spe consequendi illata
atque infinito labore suscepta quae se summam ab Caes-
sare gratiam initius putarent, paene naturam studio
vincenter, semperque paulum ad summam felicitatem
defuisse videretur; 4 atque ille latebris aut saltibus se
eriperet; et noctu occultatus alias regiones partesque
peteret, non majore equitum praesidio quam quattuor, 35
quibus solis vitam suam committere audebat.
44. Tali modo vastatis regionibus, exercitum Caesar duarum cohortium damno Durocortorum Remorum reductit; concilioque in eum locum Galliae indicto, de conjuratione Senonum et Carnutum quaestionem habere instituit, et de Accone, qui princeps ejus consilii fuerat, graviore sententia pronuntiata, more majorum supplicium sumpsit. \(^2\) Nonnulli judicium verit profugerunt: quibus cum aqua atque igni interdixisset, duas legiones ad fines Treverorum, duas in Lingonibus, sex reliquas in Senonum finibus Agendici in hibernis collocavit; frumentoque exercitui proviso, ut instituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.
BOOK VII.

Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix. — News of tumults in Rome following the murder of Clodius move the Gauls to another effort for independence: their rising begins in the south (Auvergne) under Vercingetorix (1-5). Rapid and perilous march of Cæsar upon the Arverni (6-8). Difficulties of his advance; he crosses the Loire (9-11); he captures several towns and advances upon Avaricum (Bourges), which is hard pressed by the Gauls (12-19). Suspicions against Vercingetorix, who is enthusiastically acquitted by his countrymen (20, 21). The siege and storming of Avaricum (23-28). Vercingetorix gallantly maintains the war (29-31). Cæsar composes troubles arising among the Āedui, and lays siege to Gergovia (32-36). Appeal of Litavicus to the Āedui: they submit to Cæsar, and Litavicus takes flight (37-40). Attack on the Roman camp at Gergovia; new troubles among the Āedui (41-43). Cæsar attempts the storming of Gergovia, but is repelled, and raises the siege (44-53). Actions in central Gaul; revolt of the Āedui, and able conduct of Labienus (54-62). Vercingetorix is recognized chief throughout Gaul; but is worsted by the Roman and German cavalry, and takes refuge in Alesia, whence he calls for a general levy of the Gauls (63-71). Siege and distress of Alesia; relief is sent to the besieged, but repulsed by Cæsar (72-80). The Gauls attack the Roman camp on both sides, and a desperate struggle ensues; they are at length wholly subdued, and Vercingetorix surrenders (81-89). The pacification of Gaul is completed by Cæsar's officers (90).

QUIETA Gallia, Caesar, ut constituerat, in Italian ad conventus agendos proficiscitur. Ibi cognoscit de Clodii caede; senatusque consulto certior factus ut omnes juniores Italiae conjurarent, delectum tota provincia habere instituit. 2 Eae res in Galliam Trans alpinam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsi et affingunt rumoribus Galli (quod res poscere videbatur) retineri urbano motu Caesarem, neque in tantis dissensionibus ad
exercitum venire posse. 3 Hac impulsi occasione, qui jam ante se populi Romani imperio subjectos dolerent, liberius atque audacios de bello consilia inire incipiunt. 4 Indictis inter se principes Galliae conciliis silvestribus ac remotis locis, queruntur de Acconis morte; posse hunc casum ad ipsos recidere demonstrant; miserantur communem Galliae fortunam; omnibus pollicionibus ac praemiiis deposcunt qui belli initium faciant, et sui capitibus periculo Galliam in libertatem vindicent. 5 Imprimis rationem esse habendam dicunt, priusquam eorum clandestina consilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitu intercludatur. 6 Id esse facile, quod neque legiones auderant absente imperatore ex hibernis egredi, neque imperator sine praesidio ad legiones pervenire possit; postremo, in acie praestare interfici, quam non veterem belli gloriam libertatemque quam a majoribus acceperint recuperare.

2. His rebus agitatis, profitentur Carnutes se nullum periculum communis salutis causa recusare, principesque ex omnibus bellum facturos pollicientur; 2 et, quoniam in prae sentia obsidibus cavere inter se non possint, ne res efferatur, ut jurejurando ac fide sanctatur petunt, collatis militaribus signis (quo more eorum gravissima caeremonia continetur), ne, facto initio belli, ab reliquis deserantur. 3 Tum, collaudatis Carnutibus, dato jurejurando ab omnibus quiaderant, tempore ejus rei constituto, ab concilio disciditur.

3. Ubi ea dies venit, Carnutes, Coğuato et Conetodunno ducibus, desperatis hominibus, Genabum signo dato concurrent, civesque Romanos, qui negotianti causa ibi constiterant, in his C. Fufium Citam, honestum equitem Romanum, qui rei frumentariae jussu Caesaris praerat, interficiunt bonaque eorum diripiunt. 2 Celeriter ad omnes Galliae civitates fama perfertur. Nam ubi cumque major atque illustrior incidit res, clamore per agros regionesque significant; hunc alii deinceps ex-
cipiunt et proximis tradunt: ut tum accidit. ⁸ Nam quae Genabi oriente sole gesta essent, ante primam con-
fectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernorum audita sunt;
quod spatium est milium passuum circiter CLX.

4. Simili ratione ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius, Ar-
vernus, summae potentiae adulescens,—cujus pater
principatum Galliae totius obtinuerat, et ob eam causam,
quod regnum appetebat, ab civitate erat interfectus,
—convocatis suis clientibus, facile incendit. ² Cognito
ejus consilio, ad arma concurririt. Prohibetur ab Go-
bannitione, patruo suo, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc
temptandam fortunam non existimabant; expellitur ex
oppido Gergovia: non destitit tamen, atque in agris habet
delectum egetium ac perditorum. ³ Hac coacta manu,
quoscumque adit ex civitate, ad suam sententiam perdu-
cit; hortatur ut communis libertatis causa arma capiant;
magnisque coactis copiis, adversarios suos, a quibus paulo
ante erat ejectus, expellit ex civitate. ⁴ Rex ab suis
appellatur. Dimittit quoque versus legationes; obtesta-
tur ut in fide maneant. ⁵ Celeriter sibi Senones, Pari-
sios, Pictones, Cadurcos, Turonos, Aulercos, Lemovices,
Andos, reliquosque omnes qui Oceanum attingunt, ad-
jungit: omnium consensu ad eum defertur imperium.
⁶ Qua oblata potestate, omnibus his civitatibus obsides
imperat; certum numerum militum ad se celeriter adduci
jubet; armorum quantum quaeque civitas domi, quodque
ante tempus efficiat, constituit. ⁷ Impr̆imis equitatui
studet; summae diligentiae summam imperii severita-
tem addit; magnitudine supplicii dubitantes cogit: nam,
majore commisso delicto, igni atque omnibus tormentis
necat; leviore de causa, auribus desectis aut singulis
effossis oculis, domum remittit, ut sint reliquis docu-
mento, et magnitudine poenae perterreant alios.

5. His supplicis celeriter coacto exercitu, Lucterium
Cadurcum, summae hominem audaciae, cum parte copi-
arum in Rutenos mittit; ipse in Bituriges proficiscitur.
Ejus adventu Bituriges ad Haeduos (quorum erant in fide) legatos mittunt subsidium rogatum, quo facilius hostium copias sustinere possint. Haedui de consilio legatorum, quos Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, copias equitatus peditatusque subsidio Biturigibus mittunt.

Qui cum ad flumen Ligerim venissent, quod Bituriges ab Haeduis dividit, paucos dies ibi morati, neque flumen transire ausi, domum revertuntur; legatisque nostris renuntiant, se Biturigum perfidiam veritos revertisse, quibus id consilii fuisse cognoverint, ut, si flumen transissent, una ex parte ipsi, altera Arverni se circumsisterent.

Id eane de causa quam legatis pronuntiarunt, an perfidia adducti fecerint, quod nihil nobis constat, non videtur pro certo esse proponendum. Bituriges, eorum discessu, statim cum Arvernis junguntur.

6. His rebus in Italianam Caesar nuntiatis, cum jam ille urbanas res virtute Cn. Pompeii commodiorem in statum pervenisse intellexeret, in Transalpinam Galliam profectus est. Eo cum venisset, magna difficultate afficiebatur, qua ratione ad exercitum pervenire posset.

Nam si legiones in Provinciam arcesseret, se absente in itinere proelio dimicaturas intellegebat: si ipse ad exercitum contenderet, ne iis quidem eo tempore qui quieti viderentur suam salutem recte committi videbat.

8. His rebus comparatis, represso jam Lucterio et remoto, quod intrare intra praesidia periculosum putabat, in Helvius profiscitur. 2 Etsi mons Cevenna, qui Arvernos ab Helviis discludit, durissimo tempore anni altissima nive iter impediebat; tamen, discussa nive sex in altitudinem pedum, atque ita viis patefactis, summo militum sudore ad fines Arvernorum pervenit. 3 Quibus oppressis inopinantibus, quod se Cevenna ut muro munitos existimabant, ac ne singulari quidem umquam homini eo tempore anni semitae patuerant, equitibus imperat, ut quam latissime possint vagentur, et quam maximum hostibus terrore inferant. 4 Celeriter haec fama ac nuntiis ad Vercingetorigem perferuntur; quem perterriti omnes Arverni circumstistunt, atque obsecrant ut suis fortunis consulat, neve ab hostibus diripiantur; praesertim cum videat omne ad se bellum translatum. 5 Quorum ille precibus permutus, castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernos versus.

9. At Caesar, biduum in iis locis moratus, quod haec de Vercingetorige usu ventura opinione praecesperat, per causam supplementi equitatusque cogendi ab exercitu discedit; Brutum adolescentem his copiis praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnes partes equites quam latissime pervagentur; daturn se operam ne longius triduo ab castris absit. 2 His constitutis rebus, suis inopinantibus, quam maximis potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. 3 Ibi nactus recentem equitatum, quem multis ante diebus eo praemiserat, neque diurno neque nocturno itinere intermisso, per fines Haeduorum in Lingones contendit, ubi duae legiones hiemabant; ut, si quid etiam de sua salute ab Haeduis iniretur consili, celeritate praecurret. 4 Eo cum pervenisset, ad reliquas legiones mittit, priusque omnes in unum locum cogit quam de ejus adventu Arvernis nuntiari posset. 5 Hac re cognita, Vercingetorix rursus in Bituriges exercitum reducit, atque inde prefectus Gorgobinam, Boiorum oppidum, quos ibi
Helvetico proelio victos Caesar collocaverat Haeduisque attribuerat, oppugnare instituit.

10. Magnam haec res Caesarí difficultatem ad consilium capiendum afferebat: si reliquam partem hiemis uno loco legiones contineret, ne, stipendiariis Haeduorum expugnatis, cuncta Gallia deficeret, quod nullum amicis in eo praesidium videretur positum esse: si matu­rius ex hibernis educeret, ne ab re frumentaria duris subvectionibus laboraret. ² Praestare visum est tamen omnes difficultates perpeti, quam, tanta contumelia accepta, omnium suorum voluntates alienare. ³ Itaque cohortatus Haeduos de supportando commeatu, praemittit ad Boios, qui de suo adventu doceant, hortenturque ut in fide maneant, atque hostium impetum magno animo sustineant. ⁴ Duabus Agedici legionibus atque impedimentis totius exercitus relictis, ad Boios proficiscitur.

11. Altero die, cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodunum venisset, ne quem post se hostem relinqueret, quo expeditiore re frumentaria uteretur, oppugnare instituit, idque biduo circumvallavit; tertio die, missis ex oppido legatis de deditione, arma conferri, jumenta produci, sexcentos obsides dari, jubet: ea qui confiscaret, C. Trebonium legatum relinquit. ² Ipse, ut quam pri­mum iter faceret, Genabum Carnutum proficiscitur; qui, tum primum allato nuntio de oppugnatione Vellaunoduni, cum longius eam rem ductum iri existimarent, praesidium Genabi tuendi causa, quod eo mitterent, comparabant. ³ Huc biduo pervenit. Castris ante oppidum positis, diei tempore exclusus in posterum oppugnationem differt, quaeque ad eam rem usui sint militibus imperat; et, quod oppidum Genabum pons fluminis Ligeris continebat, veritus ne noctu ex oppido profugeren, duas legiones in armis excubare jubet. ⁴ Genabenses, paulo ante medium noctem silentio ex oppido egressi, flumen transire coeperunt. ⁵ Qua re per exploratores
nuntiata, Caesar legiones, quas expeditas esse jussaret, portis incensis, intromittit atque oppido potitur, perpaucis ex hostium numero desideratis quin cuncti vivi caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitudinis fugam intercluserant. 6 Oppidum diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus donat; exercitum Ligerem traducit, atque in Biturigum fines pervenit.

12. Vercingetorix, ubi de Caesaris adventu cognovit, oppugnatione destitit atque obviam Caesaris proficiscitur. Ille oppidum Biturigum posuit in via Noviodunum oppugnare instituerat. 2 Quo ex oppido cum legati ad eum venissent, oratum ut sibi ignosceret suaque vitae consuleret, ut celeritate reliquas res conficeret qua pleraque erat consecutus, arma conferri, equos produci, obsides dari, jubet. 3 Parte jam obsidum tradita, cum reliqua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis militibus intromissis qui arma jumentaque conquiserent, equitatus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. 4 Quem simul atque oppidani conspexerunt atque in spem auxilii venerunt, clamore sublato, arma capere, portas claudere, murum compleere coeperunt. 5 Centuriones in oppido, cum ex significacione Gallorum novi aliquid ab his iniri consilii intellexissent, gladiis destrictis, portas occupaverunt suosque omnes incolumes receperunt.

13. Caesar ex castris equitatum educi jubet, proeliumque equestre committit: laborantibus jam suis Germanos equites circiter cccc submittit, quos ab initio habere secum instituerat. 2 Eorum impetum Galli sustinere non potuerunt, atque in fugam conjecit, multis amissis, se ad agmen receperunt; quibus proligatis, rursus oppidani perterriti comprehensos eos, quorum opera plebem concitatam existimabant, ad Caesarem perduxerunt seseque ei dediderunt. 3 Quibus rebus confectis, Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum munitissimumque in finibus Biturigum atque agri fertilissima regione,
profectus est; quod, eo oppido recepto, civitatem Biturigum se in potestatem redacturum confidebat.

14. Vercingetorix, tot continuis incommodis Vellanoduni, Genabi, Novioduni acceptis, suos ad concilium convocat. 2 Docet, 'longe alia ratione esse bellum gerendum atque antea gestum sit; omnibus modis huic rei studendum, ut pabulatione et commenatu Romani prohibeatur: id esse facile, quod equitatu ipsi abundent, et quod anni tempore subleventur; pabulum secari non posse; necessario dispersos hostes ex aedificiis petere: hos omnes cotidie ab equitibus deleri posse. 3 Praeterea, salutis causa, rei familiaris commoda neglegenda; vicos atque aedificia incendi oportere hoc spatio [a Boia] quoque versus, quo pabulandi causa adire posse videantur. 4 Harum ipsis rerum copiam suppetere, quodorum in finibus bellum geratur, eorum opibus subleventur: Romanos aut inopiam non laturos, aut magno periculo longius ab castris processuros; neque interesse, ipsosne interficiant impedimentisne exuant, quibus amissis bellum geri non possit. 5 Praeterea, oppida incendi oportere quae non munitione et loci natura ab omni sint periculo tuta: nee suis sint ad detractandum militiam receptacula, nee Romanis propius ad copiam conmeatus praedamque tollendam. 6 Haec si gravia aut acerba videantur, multo illa gravius aestimare, liberos, conjuges in servitute abstrahi, ipsos interfici; quae sit necesse accidere victis.'

15. Omnium consensus hac sententia probata, uno die amplius xx urbes Biturigum incenduntur. Hoc idem fit in reliquis civitatibus. 2 In omnibus partibus incendia conspiciuntur; quae etsi magno cum dolore omnes ferebant, tamen hoc sibi solatii proponebant, quod se, prope explorata victoria, celeriter amissa recuperatus confidebant. 8 Deliberatur de Avarico in communi concilio, incendi placeret an defendi. 4 Procumbunt omnibus Gallis ad pedes Bituriges, ne pulcherrimam prope to-
tius Galliae urbem, quae praesidio et ornamento sit civitati, suis manibus succedere cogentur; facile se loci natura defensuros dicunt, quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flumine et palude circumdata, unum habeat et perangustum aditum. 5 Datur petentibus venia, dissua-
dente primo Veringetorige, post concedente, et precibus ipsorum et misericordia volgi. Defensores oppido idonei deliguntur.

16. Veringetorige minoribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur, et locum castris deligit paludibus silvisque munitum, ab Avarico longe milia passuum xvi. 2 Ibi per certos exploratores in singula diei tempora quae ad Avaricum agerentur cognoscebat, et quid fieri vellet imperabat. 8 Omnes nostras pabulationes frumentationesque observabant, dispersosque, cum longius necessario procederent, adoribatur magnoque incommodo afficiebat; etsi, quantum ratione provideri poterat, ab nostris occurrebatur, ut incertis temporibus diversisque itineribus iretur.

17. Castris ad eam partem oppidi positis Caesar, quae intermissa a flumine et a palude aditum, ut supra diximus, angustum habebat, aggerem apparare, vineas agere, turres duas constituere coepit: nam circumvallare loci natura prohibebat. 2 De re frumentariae Boios atque Haeduos adhortari non destitit: quorum alteri, quod nullo studio agebant, non multum adjuvabant; alteri non magnis facultatibus, quod civitas erat exigua et infirma, celeriter quod habuerunt consumpserunt. 8 Summa difficultate rei frumentariae affecto exercitu, tenuitate Boiorum, indigentia Haeduorum, incendiis aedificiorum, — usque eo ut complures dies frumento militibus caruerint, et, pecore e longinquioribus vicis adacto, extremam famem sustentarent, — nulla tamen vox est ab iis audita populi Romani majestate et superioribus victoriis indigna. 4 Quin etiam Caesar cum in opere singulas le- giones appellaret, et, si acerbius inopiam ferrent, se
dimissurum oppugnationem diceret, universi ab eo ne id faceret petebant: 5 'sic se complures annos, illo imperante, meruisse, ut nullam ignominiam acciperent; nusquam infecta re discederent; hoc se ignominiae la-turos loco, si inceptam oppugnationem reliquisserent: 6 praestare omnes perferre acerbitates quam non civibus Romanis, qui Genabi perfidia Gallorum interissent, parentaret.' Haec eadem centurionibus tribunisque militum mandabant, ut per eos ad Caesarem deferrentur.

18. Cum jam muro turres appropinquassent, ex captivis Caesar cognovit Vercingetorigem, consumpto pabulo, castra movisse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum cum equitatu expeditisque, qui inter equites proeliari consuessent, insidiarum causa eo profectum, quo nostros postero die pabulatum venturos arbitaretur. 2 Quibus rebus cognitis, media nocte silentio profectus ad hostium castra mane pervenit. 3 Illi, celeriter per exploratores adventu Caesaris cognito, carros impedimentaque sua in artiores silvas abdiderunt, copias omnes in loco edito atque aperto instruxerunt. 4 Qua re nuntiata, Caesar celeriter sarcinas conferri, arma expediri jussit.

19. Collis erat leniter ab infimo acclivis. Hunc ex omnibus fere partibus palus difficilis atque impedita cingebat, non latior pedibus quinquaginta. 2 Hoc se colle, interruptis pontibus, Galli fiducia loci continebant, generatimque distributi in civitates, omnia vada ac † saltus ejus paludis obtinebant, sic animo parati ut, si eam paludem Romani perrumpere conarentur, haesitantes merent ex loco superiore: 3 ut, qui propinquitatem loci videret, paratos prope aequo Marte ad dimicandum existimaret; qui iniquitatem condicionis perspiceret, inani simulatione sese ostentare cognosceret. 4 Indignantes milites Caesar, quod conspectum suum hostes per ferre possent, tantulo spatio interjecto, et signum proelii expositentes, edocet quanto detrimento et quot virorum fortium morte necesse sit constare victoriam; 5 quos cum sic
animo paratos videat ut nullum pro sua laude periculum recusent, summae se iniquitatis condemnari debere, nisi eorum vitam sua salute habeat cariorem. 6 Sic milites consolatus eodem die reducit in castra; reliquaque quae ad oppugnationem pertinebant oppidi administrare in- 5 stuituit.

20. Vercingetorix, cum ad suos redisset, prodigionis insimulatus,—quod castra propius Romanos movisset, quod cum omni equitatu disc essisset, quod sine imperio tantas copias reliquistet, quod ejus discessu Romani in tanta opportunitate et celeritate venissent; non haec omnia fortuito aut sine consilio accidere potuisse; regnum illum Galliae malle Caesaris concessu quam ipsorum habere beneficio,—tali modo accusatus, ad haec respondit: 2' Quod castra movisset, factum inopia pabuli, 15 etiam ipsis hortantibus; quod propius Romanos accessisset, persuasum loci opportunitate, qui se ipsum munitione defenderet; equitum vero operam neque in loco palustri desiderari debuisse, et illic fuisse utilem quo sint profecti. 8 Summam imperii se consulto nulli discedentem tradidisse, ne is multitudinis studio ad dimicandum impelleretur; cui rei propter animi mollitiem studere omnes videret, quod diutius laborem ferre non possent. 4 Romani si casu intervenerint, fortunae; si alicujus indicio vocati, huic habendam gratiam, quod et 25 paucitatem eorum ex loco superiore cognoscere et virtutem despicere potuerint; qui dimicare non ausi turpiter se in castra receperint. 6 Imperium se ab Caesare per prodigionem nullum desiderare, quod habere victoria posset, quae jam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis explora- 30 tata: quin etiam ipsis remittere, si sibi magis honorem tribuere quam ab se salutem accipere videantur.’ 6 “Haec ut intelligatis,” inquit, “a me sincere pronuntiari, audite Romanos milites.” Producit servos, quos in pabulatione paucis ante diebus exceperat, et fame vinculisque excri- 35 ciaverat. 7 Hi, jam ante edocti quae interrogati pro-
nuntiarent, milites se esse legionarios dicunt; fame et
inopia adductos clam ex castris exisse, si quid frumenti
aut pecoris in agris reperire possent; simili omnem ex-
ercitum inopia premi, nec jam vires sufficere cujusquam,
nec ferre operis laborem posse: itaque statuisse impe-
ratorem, si nihil in oppugnatione oppidi profecissent,
triduo exercitum deducere. 8 "Haec," inquit, "a me,"
Vercingetorix, "beneficia habetis, quem proditionis insi-
mulatis; cujus opera sine vestro sanguine tantum exer-
citum victorem fame consumptum videtis; quem turpiter
se ex hac fuga recipientem, ne qua civitas suis finibus
recipiat, a me provisum est."
21. Conclamat omnis multitudes, et suo more armis
concrepat,—quod facere in eo consuerunt cujus ora-
tionem approbant; summum esse Vercingetorigem du-
cem, nec de ejus fide dubitandum, nec majore ratione
bellum administrari posse. 2 Statuunt, ut decem milia
hominum delecta ex omnibus copiis in oppidum mittan-
tur, nec solis Biturigibus communem salutem commit-
tendam censent; quod paene in eo, si id oppidum re-
tinuissent, summam victoriae constare intellegebant.
22. Singulari militum nostrorum virtuti consilia cu-
jusque modo Gallorum occurrebant, ut est summae genus
sollertiae, atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae ab
quoque traduntur aptissimum. 2 Nam et laqueis falces
avertebant, quas, cum destinaverant, tormentis introrsus
reducebant; et aggerem cuniculis subtrahebant, eo scien-
tiis quod apud eos magnae sunt ferrariae, atque omne
genus cuniculorum notum atque usitatum est. 8 Totum
autem murum ex omni parte turribus contabulaverant,
atque has corii interexerant. 4 Tum crebris diurnis noc-
turnisque eruptionibus aut aggeri ignem inferebant, aut
milites occupatos in opere adoriebantur; et nostrarum
turrium altitudinem, quantum has cotidianus agger ex-
presserat, commissis suarum turrium malis adaequabant;
et apertos cuniculos praeusta et praeacuta materia, et
pice fervefacta, et maximi ponderis saxis morabantur, moenibusque appropinquare prohibebant.

23. Muri autem omnes Gallici hac fere forma sunt. Trabes directae perpetuae in longitudinem, paribus intervallis, distantes inter se binos pedes, in solo collo- cantur: hae revinciuntur introrsus, et multo aggere vestiuntur: ea autem quae diximus intervalla grandibus in fronte saxis effarciuntur. 2 His collocatis et coagmentatis, alius insuper ordo additur, ut idem illud intervallum servetur, neque inter se contingant trabes, sed paribus intermissae spatiis, singulae singulis saxis interjectis, arcte contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus contextur, dum justa muri altitudo expleatur. 3 Hoc cum in speciem varietatemque opus deforme non est, alternis trabibus ac saxis, quae rectis lineis suos ordines servant: tum ad utilitatem et defensionem urbium sum-mam habet opportunitatem; quod et ab incendio lapis, et ab ariete materia defendit, quae, perpetuis trabibus pedes quadragenos plerumque introrsus revincta, neque perrumpi neque distrahí potest.

24. His tot rebus impedita oppugnatione, milites, cum toto tempore frigore et assiduis imbris tardarentur, tamen continenti labore omnia haec superaverunt, et diebus xxv, aggerem latum pedes cccxxx, altum pedes lxxx, extruxerunt. 2 Cum is murum hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus consuetudine excubaret, militesque hortaretur ne quod omnino tempus ab opere intermitteretur,—paulo ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fumare aggerem, quem cuniculo hostes succenderant; eodemque tempore toto muro clamore sublato, duabus portis ab utroque latere turrium eruptio fiebat. 3 Alii faces atque aridam materiem de muro in aggerem eminus jaciebant; picem reliquasque rés quibus ignis excitari potest fundebant; ut, quo primum curreretur, aut cui rei ferretur auxilium, vix ratio iniri posset. 4 Tamen, quod instituto Caesaris semper duae
legiones pro castris excubabant, pluresque partitis temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut alii eruptionibus resisterent, alii turres reducarent, aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vero ex castris multitudo ad 5 restinguendum concurreret.

25. Cum in omnibus locis, consumpta jam reliqua parte noctis, pugnaretur, semperque hostibus spes victoriae redintegraretur,—eo magis, quod deustos pluteos turrium videbant, nec facile adire apertos ad auxiliarum animadvertendum,—semperque ipsi recentes defessis succederent, omnemque Galliae salutem in illo vestigio temporis positam arbitrarentur; accidit, inspectantibus nobis, quod dignum memoria visum praetereundum non existimavimus. ² Quidam ante portam oppidi Gallus per manus sevi ac picis traditas glebas in ignem et regione turris proiciebat; scorpionem ab latere dextro trajectory exanimatusque concidit. ³ Hunc ex proximis unus jacentem transgressus eodem illo munere fungebatur: eadem rationeictu scorpionis exanimato alteri successit tertius, et tertio quartus; nec prius ille est a propugnatoribus vacuus relictus locus, quam, restincto aggere atque omni parte submotis hostibus, finis est pugnandi factus.

26. Omnia experti Galli, quod res nulla successerat, 25 postero die consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere, hortante et jubente Vercingetorige. ² Id silentio noctis conati, non magna jactura suorum sese effecturos sperabant; propertia quod neque longe ab oppido castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palus, quae perpetua intercedebat, Romanos ad insequendum tardabat. ³ Jamque hoc facere noctu apparabat, cum matresfamiliae repente in publicum procurrerunt, flentesque, projectae ad pedes suorum, omnibus precibus petierunt, ne se et communesliberoshostibusad supplicium dederent, quos 35 ad capiendum fugam naturae et virium infirmitas impediret. ⁴ Ubi eos in sententia perstare viderunt, quod
plerumque in summo periculo timor misericordiam non recipit, conclamare et significare de fuga Romanis coeperunt. 6 Quo timore perterriti Galli, ne ab equitatu Romanorum viae praecoccuparentur, consilio destiterunt.

27. Postero die Caesar, promota turri directisque operibus quae facere instituerat, magno coorto imbre, non inutili hanc ad capiendum consilium tempestatem arbitratus est, quod paulo incautius custodias in muro dispositas videbat, suosque languidius in opere versari sussit, et quid fieri vellet ostendit. 2 Legionibusque intra vineas in occulto expeditis, cohortatus ut aliquando pro tantis laboribus fructum victoriae perciperent, iis qui primi murum adscendissent praemia propositum, militibusque signum dedit. 8 Illi subito ex omnibus partibus evolaverunt, murumque celeriter compleverunt.

28. Hostes re nova perterriti, muro turribusque dejecti, in foro ac locis patentioribus cuneatim constiterunt, hoc animo ut, si qua ex parte obviam contra veniretur, acie instructa depugnarent. 2 Ubi nomen in aequum locum sese demittere, sed toto undique muro circumfundii viderunt, veriti ne omnino spes fugae tolleretur, abjectis armis, ultimas oppidi partes continenti impetu petiverunt; parsque ibi, cum angusto portarum exitu se ipsi premerent, a militibus, pars jam egressa portis ab equitibus, est interfacta: nec fuit quisquam qui praedae studeret. 8 Sic et Genabi caede et labore operis incitati, non aetate confectis, non mulieribus, non infantibus pepercerunt: denique ex omni numero, qui fuit circiter milium XL, vix DCCC, qui primo clamore audito se ex oppido ejecerunt, incolumes ad Vercinge- 30 torigem pervenerunt. 4 Quos ille multa jam nocte silentio ex fuga exceptit, veritus ne qua in castris ex eorum concursu et misericordia volgi seditio oreretur, ut, procul in via dispositis familiaribus suis principibusque civitatum, disparandos deducendosque ad suos curaret, 35 quae cuique civitati pars castrorum ab initio obvenerat.
29. Postero die concilio convocato, consolatus cohor-tatusque est: ‘Ne se admodum animo demitterent, ne perturbarentur incommodo; 2 non virtute neque in acie vicisse Romanos, sed artificio quodam et scientia op-pugnationis, cujus rei fuerint ipsi imperiti; errare, si qui in bello omnes secundos rerum proventus exspec-tent; 8 sibi nunquam placuisse Avaricum defendi, cujus rei testes ipsos haberet, sed factum imprudentia Bituri-gum et nimia obsequentia reliquorum, uti hoc incom-modum acciperetur; id tamen se celeriter majoribus commodis sanaturum. 4 Nam, quae ab reliquis Gallis civitates dissentirent, has sua diligentia adjuncturum atque unum consilium totius Galliae effecturum, cujus consensui ne orbis quidem terrarum possit obsistere; idque se prope jam effectum habere. 6 Interea aequum esse, ab iis communis salutis causa impetrari, ut castra munire instituerent, quo facilius repentinus hostium im-petus sustineret.’

30. Fuit haec oratio non ingrata Gallis, et maxime quod ipse animo non defecerat tanto accepto incom-modo, neque se in occultum abdiderat et conspectum multitudinis fugerat; plusque animo providere et prae-sentire existimabatur, quod, re integra, primo incenden-dum Avaricum, post deserendum censuerat. 2 Itaque, ut reliquorum imperatorum res adversae auctoritatem minuunt, sic hujus ex contrario dignitas, incommodo accepto, in dies augebatur. 3 Simul in spem veniebant ejus affirmatione de reliquis adjungendis civitatibus; primumque eo tempore Galli castra munire instituerunt, et sic sunt animo confirmati, homines insueti laboris, ut omnia quae imperarentur sibi patienta existimarent.

31. Nec minus quam est pollicitus, Vercingetorix animo laborabat ut reliquas civitates adjungeret, atque eas donis pollcitationibusque alliciebat. 2 Huic rei ido-neos homines deligebat, quorum quisque aut oratione subdola aut amicitia facillime capere posset. Qui
Avarico expugnato refugenterant, armando vestiendosque curat. Simul, ut deminutae copiae redintegrarentur, imperat certum numerum militum civitatibus, quem, et quam ante diem, in castra adduci velit; sagittariosque omnes, quorum erat permagnus numerus in Gallia, conquiri et ad se mitti jubet. His rebus celeriter id quod Avarici deperierat expletur. Interim Teutomatus, Olovericonis filius, rex Nitiorrigum, cujus pater ab senatu nostro amicus erat appellatus, cum magno equitum suo rum numero et quos ex Aquitania conduxerat ad eum pervenit.

32. Caesar Avarici complures dies commoratus, summamque ibi copiam frumenti et reliqui commenatus nanc tus, exercitum ex labore atque inopia refecit. Jam prope hieme confecta,—cum ipso anni tempore ad ge rendum bellum vocaretur, et ad hostem proficisci constituisset, sive eum ex paludibus silvisque elicere sive obsidione premere posset,—legati ad eum principes Haeduorum veniunt, oratum, ut maxime necessario tempore civitati subveniat: summo esse in periculo rem; quod, cum singuli magistratus antiquitus creari atque regiam potestatem annum obtinere consuissent, duo magistratum gerant, et se uterque eorum legibus creatum esse dicat. Horum esse alterum Convictolitavem, florentem et illustrem adolescentem; alterum Cotum, antiquissima familia natum, atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et magnae cognitionis, cujus frater Val etiacus proximo anno eundem magistratum gesserit; civitatem omnem esse in armis, divisum senatum, divisionum populum, suas cujusque eorum clientelas. Quod si diutius alatur controversia, fore uti pars cum parte civitatis confligat; id ne accidat, positum in ejus diligentia atque auctoritate.

33. Caesar, etsi a bello atque hoste discedere detrimentosum esse existimabat, tamen non ignorans quanta ex dissensionibus incommoda oriri consueissent, ne tanta
et tam conjuncta populo Romano civitas, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rebus ornasset, ad vim atque ad arma descenderet, atque ea pars quae minus confideret auxilia a Vercingetorige arcesseret, huic rei praeventendum existimavit; et quod, legibus Haeduorum, iis qui summum magistratum obtinerent excedere ex finibus non liceret, ne quid de jure aut de legibus eorum deminuisset videretur, ipse in Haeduos proficisci statuit, senatumque omnem et quos inter controversia esset ad se Decetiam evocavit. Cum prope omnis civitas eo convenisset, docereturque, paucis clam convocatis, alio loco alio tempore atque oportuerit, fratrem a fratre renuntiatum, cum leges duo ex una familia, vivo utroque, non solum magistratus creari vetarent, sed etiam in se-natu esse prohiberent,—Cotum imperium deponere coégit; Convictolitavem, qui per sacerdotes, more civitatis, intermissis magistratibus, esset creatus, potestatem obtinere jussit.

34. Hoc decreto interposito,—cohortatus Haeduos ut controversiarum ac dissensionis obliviscerentur, atque, omnibus omissis rebus, huic bello servirent, eaque quae meruissent praemia ab se, devicta Gallia, exspectarent, equitatumque omnem et peditum milia decem sibi cele-riter mitterent, quae in praesidiis rei frumentariae causa disponeret,—exercitum in duas partes divisit: iv le- giones in Senones Parisiosque Labieno ducendas dedit; vi ipse in Arvernos, ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flumen Elaver, duxit; equitatus partem illi attribuit, partem sibi reliquit. Qua re cognita, Vercingetorix, omnibus interruptis ejus fluminis pontibus, ab altera fluminis parte iter facere coepit.

35. Cum uterque utrimque exisset exercitus, in con-spectu, fereque e regione castris, castra ponebant. Dis-positis exploratoribus, necubi effecto ponte Romani co-pias traducerent, erat in magnis Caesaris difficultatibus res, ne majorem aestatis partem flumine impeditetur;
quod non fere ante annum Elaver vado transiri solet. 2 Itaque, ne id accideret, silvestri loco castris positis, e regione unius eorum pontium quos Veringetorix rescindendos curaverat, postero die cum duabus legionibus in occulto restitit; reliquas copias cum omnibus impedimentis, ut consueverat, misit, † captis quibusdam cohortibus, uti numerus legionum constare videretur. 3 His quam longissime possent progrexi jussis, cum jam ex diei tempore conjecturam ceperat in castra perventum, iisdem sublicis, quorum pars inferior integra remanebat, 10 pontem reficere coepit. 4 Celeriter effecto opere legionibusque traductis et loco castris idoneo delecto, reliquas copias revocavit. Veringetorix, re cognita, ne contra suam voluntatem dimicare cogeretur, magnis itineribus antecessit.

36. Caesar ex eo loco quintis castris Gergoviam pervenit, equestri loco die proelio lev in facto, perspecto urbis situ, quae posita in altissimo monte omnes aditus difficiles habebat, de expugnatione desperavit; de obsessione non prius agendum constituit, quam rem frumentariae expedisset. 2 At Veringetorix, castris prope oppidum positis, mediocribus circum se intervallis separatim singularum civitatum copias collocaverat; atque, omnibus ejus jugi collibus occupatis qua despici poterat, horribilem speciem praebebat; principesque earum civitatum, quos sibi ad consilium capiendum delegerat, prima luce cotidie ad se convenire jubebat, seu quid communicandum seu quid administrandum videretur; neque ullum fere diem intermittebat, quin equestri proelio, interjectis sagittariis, quid in quoque esset animi ac virtutis suorum perspiceret. 3 Erat e regione oppidi collis sub ipsis radicibus montis, egregie munitus atque ex omni parte circumcisus, quem si tenerent nostri, et aquae magna parte et pabulatione libera prohibituri hostes videbantur; sed is locus præsidio ab his non nimis firme 35 tenebatur; 4 tamen silentio noctis Caesar ex castris egres-
sus, priusquam subsidio ex oppido veniri posset, dejecto praesidio, potitus loco, duas ibi legiones collocavit, fossamque duplicem duodenum pedum a majoribus castris ad minora perduxit, ut tuto ab repentino hostium in-cursu etiam singuli commeare possent.

37. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis Haeduus, qui magistratum adjudicatum a Caesare demonstravimus, sollicitatus ab Arvernis pecunia, cum quibusdam adolescentibus colloquitur, quorum erat princeps Litavicus atque ejus fratres, amplissima familia nati adolescentes. 2 Cum his praemium communicat, hortaturque ut se liberos et imperio natos meminerint: 4 'Unam esse Haeduorum civitatem, quae certissimam Galliae victoriam detineat; ejus auctoritate reliquas contineri; qua traducta, locum consistendi Romanis in Gallia non fore: esse nonnullo se Caesaris beneficio affectum, sic tamen ut justissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plus communi libertati tribuere. 4 Cur enim potius Haedui de suo jure et de legibus ad Caesa-rem disceptatorem, quam Romani ad Haeduos veniant?'

5 Celeriter adolescentibus et oratione magistratus et praemio deductis, cum se vel principes ejus consilii fore profiterentur, ratio perficiendi quaerebatur, quod civi-tatem temere ad suspiciendum bellum adduci posse non confidebant. 6 Placuit ut Litavicus decem illis milibus quae Caesari ad bellum mitterentur, praeficeretur, atque ea duenda curaret, fratresque ejus ad Caesarem prae-currerent. Reliqua qua ratione agi placeat constituunt.

38. Litavicus, accepto exercitu, cum milia passuum circiter xxx ab Gergovia abesset, convocatis subito militibus, lacrimans, "Quo proficiscimur," inquit, "milites? 2 Omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit; principes civitatis, Eporedorix et Viridomarus, insimulati prodigionis, ab Romanis indicta causa interfeci sunt. 3 Haec ab ipsis cognoscite qui ex ipsa caede fugerunt; nam ego, fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis inter-
fectis, dolore prohibeor quae gesta sunt pronuntiare.”  

4 Producentur hi quos ille edocuerat quae dici vellet, atque eadem quae Litavicus pronuntiaverat multitudini exponunt: equites Haeduorum interfector, quod collo- cuti cum Arvernis dicerentur; ipsos se inter multitudinem militum occultasse atque ex media caede fugisse.  


7 Ostendit cives Romanos, qui ejus praesidii fiducia una erant; magnum numerum frumenti commeatusque diripit; ipsos crudeliter excruciatus interficit.  

8 Nuntios tota civitate Haeduorum dimittit: eodem mendacio de caede equitum et principum permovet; hortatur, ut simili ratione atque ipse fecerit suas injurias persequantur.  

39. Eporedorix Haeduus, summo loco natus adules-cens et summae domi potentiae, et una Viridomarus, pari aetate et gratia sed genere dispari, quem Caesar ab Divitiaco sibi traditum ex humili loco ad summam dignitatem perduxerat, in equitum numero convenerant, nominatim ab eo evocati.  

2 His erat inter se de principatu contentio; et in illa magistratu controversia, alter pro Convictolitavi, alter pro Coto, summis opibus pugnaverant.  

3 Ex iis Eporedorix, cognito Litavici consilio, media fere nocte rem ad Caesarem defert; orat, ne patiatur civitate pravis adulescentium consiliis ab amicitia populi Romani deficere; 4 quod futurum provideat, si se tot hominum milia cum hostibus conjunxerint, quorum salutem neque propinquii neglegere neque civitas levi momento aestimare posset.  

40. Magna affectus sollicitudine hoc nuntio Caesar,
quod semper Haeduorum civitati praecipue indulserat, nulla interposita dubitatione, legiones expeditas quattuor equitatumque omnem ex castris educit; nec fuit spatium tali tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod res posita in celeritate videbatur. C. Fabium legatum cum legionibus duabus castris praedidio relinquit. Fratres Litavici cum comprehendi jussisset, paulo ante reperit ad hostes fugisse. Adhortatus milites ne necessario tempore itineris labore permaneantur, cupidissimis omnibus, progressus milia passuum xxv, agmen Haeduorum conspicious, immissus equitatu, iter eorum moratur atque impedit; interdicitque omnibus ne quemquam interficiant. Eporedorigem et Viridomarum, quos illi interfector existimabant, inter equites versari suosque appellare jabet. His cognitis, et Litavici fraudque perspecta, Haedui manus tendere, deditionem significare, et projectis armis mortem deprecari incipiunt. Litavicus cum suis clientibus, quibus more Gallorum nefas est etiam in extrema fortuna deserere patronos, Gergoviam profugit.

41. Caesar, nuntiis ad civitatem Haeduorum missis, qui suo beneficio conservatos docerent quos jure belli intersecere potuisset, tribusque horis noctis exercitui ad quietem datis, castra ad Gergoviam movit. Medio fere itinere, equites ab Fabio missi quanto res in periculo fuerit exponunt: summis copiis castra oppugnatae demonstrant, cum crebro integri defessis succecerent, nostrisque assiduo labore defatigarent, quibus propter magnitudinem castrorum perpetuo esset isdem in vallo permanendum; multitudine sagittarum atque omnis generis telorum multos vulneratos; ad haec sustinenda magno usui fuisse tormenta; Fabium discessu eorum, duabus relictis portis, obscurere ceteras, pluteosque vallo addere, et se in posterum diem similemque casum appara- rare. His rebus cognitis, Caesar summo studio militum ante ortum solis in castra pervenit.
42. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Haeduī primis nuntiis ab Litavico acceptis, nullum sibi ad cognoscendum spatium relinquunt. 2 Impellit alios avaritia, alios iracundia et temeritas, quae maxime illi hominum generi est innata, ut levem auditionem habeant pro re comperta: 5 bona civium Romanorum diripiunt, caedes faciunt, in servitutem abstrahunt. 3 Adjuvat rem proclimatam Convictolitavis, plebemque ad furorem impellit, ut, facinore admissō, ad sanitatem reverteri pudeat. 4 M. Aristium, tribunum militum, iter ad legionem facientem, fide data, 10 ex oppido Cabillonō educunt; idem facere cogunt eos qui negotiandi causa ibi constiterant. 5 Hos continuo in itinere adorti omnibus impedimentis exuunt; repugnantēs diem noctemque obsident; multis utrimque interfectis, majorem multitūdinem ad arma concitant.

43. Interim, nuntio allato omnes eorum milites in postestate Caesaris teneri, concurrunt ad Aristium; nihil publico factum consilio demonstrant; quaestionem de bonis direptis decernunt; Litavici fratrumque bona publicant; legatos ad Caesarem sui purgandi gratia mittunt. 20 Haec faciunt recuperandum suorum causa; sed contaminati facinore et capti compendio ex direptis bonis, quod ea res ad multos pertinebat, timore poenae exter- riti, consilia clam de bello inire incipiunt, civitatesque reliquas legationibus sollicitant. 3 Quae tametsi Caesar intellegebat, tamen quam mitissime potest legatos appellat: nihil se propter inscientiam levitatemque vulgi gravius de civitate judicare, neque de sua in Haeduos benevolentia diminuere. 4 Ipse majorem Galliae motum exspectans, ne ab omnibus civitatis circumsisteretur, 30 consilia inibat, quemadmodum ab Gergovia discederet ac rursus omnem exercitum contraheret; ne profectio nata ab timore defectionis similis fugae videretur.

44. Haec cogitanti accidere visa est facultas bene gerendae rei. Nam cum in minora castra operis perspi- 35 ciendi causa venisset, animadvertit collem, qui ab hosti-
bus tenebatur, nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus diebus vix praec multitudine cerni poterat. 2 Admiratus quaerit ex perfugis causam, quorum magnus ad eum cotidie numerus confluebat. Constabat inter omnes, quod jam ipse Caesar per exploratores cognoverat, dor-sum esse ejus jugi prope aequum, sed hunc silvestrem et angustum, qua esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidi: vehementer huic illos loco timere, nec jam aliter sentire, uno colle ab Romanis occupato, si alterum amissisent, quin paene circumvallati atque omni exitu et pabulatione interclusi viderentur; ad hunc muniendum omnes a Vercingetorige evocatos.

45. Hac re cognita, Caesar mittit complures equitum turmas: eis de media nocte imperat, ut paulo tumultuosius omnibus locis vagarentur. 2 Prima luce magnum numerum impedimentorum ex castris mulorumque produci, deque his stramenta detrahit, mulionesque cum cassidibus, equitum specie ac simulatione, collibus circumvehit jubesit. 3 His paucos addit equites, qui latius ostentationis causa vagarentur. Longo circuitu easdem omnes jubet petere regiones. 4 Haec procul ex oppido videbantur, ut erat a Gergovia despectus in castra; neque, tanto spatio, certi quid esset explorari poterat. 5 Legionem unam eodem juge mittit, et paulum progressam inferiore constituit loco, silvisque occultat. Auget tur Gallis suspicio, atque omnes illo munitionum copiae traducuntur. 6 Vacua castra hostium Caesar conspicatus, tectis insignibus suorum, occultatisque signis militariibus, raros milites (ne ex oppido animadverterentur) ex majoribus castris in minora traducit, legatisque, quos singulis legionibus praefecerat, quid fieri velit ostendit: 7 imprimit monet, ut continent milites, ne studio pugnandi aut spe praedae longae progrediantur; quid iniquitas loci habeat incommodi proponit; hoc una celeritate posse mutari; occasionis esse rem, non proelii. 8 His rebus expositis, signum dat,
et ab dextra parte alio adscensu eodem tempore Hæduos mittit.

46. Oppidi murus ab planicie, atque initio adscensus recta regione, si nullus am fractus intercederet, mccc passus aberat; quidquid huc circuitus ad molliendum cli- vum accesserat, id spatium itineris augebat. At medio fere colle in longitudinem, ut natura montis ferebat, ex grandibus saxis sex pedum murum, qui nostrorum im- petum tardaret, praeduxerant Galli; atque, inferiore omni spatio vacuo relictō, superiorem partem collis usque ad murum oppidi densissimis castris compleverant. Milites, dato signo, celeriter ad munitionem perveniunt, eamque transgressi trinis castris potiuntur. Ac tanta fuit in castris capiendis celeritas, ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrigum, subito in tabernaculo oppressus, ut meridie conquieverat, superiore corporis parte nudata, vulnerato equo, vix se ex manibus praedantium militum eriperet.

47. Consecutus id quod animo proposuerat, Caesar receptui cani jussit, legionique decimae, quamc erat, contionatus, signa constituit. At reliquarum legionum milites, non exaudito sono tubae, quod satis magna valles intercedebat, tamen ab tribunis militum legatisque, ut erat a Caesare praeeptum, retinebantur. Sed elati spe celeris victoriae et hostium fuga et superiorum tempo- rum secundis proeliiis, nihil adeo arduum sibi esse existimaverunt quod non virtute consequi possent; neque finem prius sequendi fecerunt quam muro oppidi portis- que appropinquarunt. Tum vero ex omnibus urbis partibus orto clamore, qui longius aberant, repentinum tumultu perterriti, cum hostem intra portas esse existi- marent, sese ex oppido ejecturunt. Matresfamiliae de muro vestem argentumque jactabant; et, pectore nudo prominentes, passis manibus obtestabantur Romanos, ut sibi parcerent; neu, sicut Avarici fecissent, nea mulie- ribus quidem atque infantibus abstinerent. Nonnullae,
de muris per manus demissae, sese militibus tradebant. L. Fabius, centurio legionis octavae, quem inter suos eo die dixisse constabat, excitari se Avaricensibus praemiis, neque commissurum, ut prius quisquam murum adscenderet, tres suos nactus manipulares, atque ab iis sublevatus, murum adscendit. Hos ipse rursus, singulos exceptans, in murum extulit.

48. Interim i qui ad alteram partem oppidi, ut supra demonstravimus, munitionis causa convenerant, primo exaudito clamore, inde etiam crebris nuntiis incitati, oppidum ab Romanis teneri, praemissis equitibus, magnō concursu eo contenderunt. 2 Eorum ut quique primus venerat, sub muro consistebat, suorumque pugnantium numerum augebat. Quorum cum magna multitudo convenisset, matresfamiliae, quae paulo ante Romanis de muro manus tendebant, suos obtestari, et more Gallico passum capillum ostentare, liberisque in conspectum proferre coeperunt. 3 Erat Romanis nec loco nec numero aqua contentio: simul et cursu et spatio pugnae defatigati, non facile recentes atque integros sustinebant.

49. Caesar cum iniquo loco pugnari hostiumque augeri copias viderat, praemetus suis, ad T. Sextium legatum, quem minoribus castris praesidio reliquerat, misit, ut cohortes ex castris celeriter educeret, et sub infimo colle ab dextro latere hostium constitueret; 2 ut, si nostros loco depulsos vidisset, quo minus libere hostes sequerentur terreret. Ipsi, paulum ex eo loco cum legione progressus ubi constiterat, eventum pugnae spectabat.

50. Cum acerrime comminus pugnaretur, hostes loco et numero, nostri virtute confiderent, subito sunt Hae- dui visi, ab latere nostris aperto, quos Caesar ab dextra parte alio adscensu manus distinendae causa miserat. 2 Hi similitudine armorum vehementer nostros perterrerunt; ac, tametsi dextris humeris exsertis animadver-
tebantur, quod insigne pacatum esse consuerat, tamen id ipsum sui fallendi causa milites ab hostibus factum existimabant. 3 Eodem tempore L. Fabius centurio, quique una murum adscenderant, circumventi atque interfeci, muro praecipitabantur. 4 M. Petronius, ejusdem legioni centurio, cum portas excidere conatus esset, a multitudine oppressus ac sibi desperans, multis jam vulneribus acceptis, manipularibus suis qui illum securant, "Quoniam," inquit, "me una vobiscum servare non possum, vestrae quidem certe vitae prospiciam, quos cupiditatem gloriae adductus in periculum deduxi. Vos, data facultate, vobis consulite." 5 Simul in medios hostes irrupit, duobusque interfectis, reliquos a porta paulum submovit. Conantibus auxiliari suis, "Frustra," inquit, "meae vitae subvenire conamini, quem jam san- guis viresque deficiunt. 6 Proinde abite dum est facultas, vosque ad legionem recipite." Ita pugnans post paulum concidit, ac suis saluti fuit.

51. Nostri, cum undique premerentur, quadraginta sex centurionibus amissis, dejecti sunt loco; sed intollerantius Gallos inequentes legio decima tardavit, quae pro subsidio paulo aequiore loco constiterat. 2 Hanc rursus decimae tertiae legionis cohortes exceperunt, quae, ex castris minoribus eductae, cum T. Sextio legato ceperant locum superiorem. 3 Legiones ubi primum planitiem attigerunt, infestis contra hostes signis constiterunt. Vercingetorix ab radicibus collis suos intra munitiones reduxit. Eo die milites sunt paulo minus septingenti desiderati.

52. Postero die Caesar, contione advocata, temeritatemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsi judicavissent quo procedendum aut quid agendum vide-retur, neque, signo reciprodati dato, constitissent, neque ab tribunis militum legatisque retineri potuissent. 2 Exposuit quid iniquitas loci posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum 35 sensisset, cum sine duce et sine equitatu deprehensis
hostibus exploratam victoriam dimisisset, ne parvum modo detrimentum in contentione propter iniquitatem loci accideret. 3 Quanto opere eorum animi magnitudinem admiraretur, quos non castrorum munitiones, non altitudo montis, non murus oppidi tardare potuisset: tanto opere licentiam arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plus se quam imperatorem de victoria atque exitu rerum sentire existimarent: nec minus se ab milite modestiam et continentiam quam virtutem atque animi magnitudinem desiderare.

53. Hac habitæ contione, et ad extremam orationem confirmatis militibus, ne ob hanc causam animo permoverentur, neu, quod iniquitas loci attulisset, id virtuti hostium tribuerent; eadem de profectione cogitans quae ante senserat, legiones ex castris eduxit, aciemque idoneo loco constituit. 2 Cum Vercingetorix nihil magis in aequum locum descendeter, levi facto equestri proelio atque secundo, in castra exercitum reduxit. 3 Cum hoc idem postero die fecisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentationem minuendam militumque animos confirmandos factum existimans, in Haeduos movit castra. Ne tum quidem insecutis hostibus, tertio die ad flumen Elaver pontes reficit, atque exercitum traducit.

54. Ibi a Viridomaro atque Eporedorige Haeduis appellatus, discit, cum omni equitatu Litavicum ad sollicitandos Haeduos profectum; opus esse ipsos antecedere ad confirmandam civitatem. 2 Etsi multis jam rebus perfidiam Haeduorum perspectam habebat, atque horum discessu admaturari defectionem civitatis existimabat; tamen eos retinendos non constituit, ne aut inferre injuriam videretur, aut dare timoris aliquam suspicacionem. 3 Discendentibus his breviter sua in Haeduos merita exposuit; quos et quam humiles accepisset, compulsos in oppida, multatios agris, omnibus ereptis copiis, imposito stipendio, obsidibus summa cum contumelia extortis; 4 et quam in fortunam quamque in amplitudinem de-
duxisset, ut non solum in pristinum statum redissent, sed omnium temporum dignitatem et gratiam antecessisse viderentur. His datis mandatis, eos ab se dimisit.

55. Noviodunum erat oppidum Haeduorum, ad ripas Ligeris opportuno loco positum. Huc Caesar omnès 5 obsides Galliae, frumentum, pecuniam publicam, suorum atque exercitus impedimentorum magnam partem contulerat; huc magnum numerum equorum, hujus belli causa in Italia atque Hispania coemption, miserat. 2 Eo cum Eporedorix Viridomarusque venissent, et 10 de statu civitatis cognovissent, Litavicum Bibracti ab Haeducis receptum, quod est oppidum apud eos maximae auctoritatis, Convictolitavim magistratum magnamque partem senatus ad eum convenisse, legatos ad Vercingetorigem de pace et amicitia concilianda publice missos; 15 non praeterrimitendum tantum commodum existimaverunt. 3 Itaque, interfectis Novioduni custodibus, quique eo negotiandi causa convenerant, pecuniam atque equos inter se partiti sunt; obsides civitatum Bibracte ad magistratum deducendos curaverunt; oppidum, quod a se 20 teneri non posse judicabat, ne quoi esset usui Romanis, incenderunt; 4 frumenti quod subito potuerunt navibus avexerunt, reliquum flumine atque incendio corruperunt; ipsi ex finitimis regionibus copias cogere, praesidia custodiasque ad ripas Ligeris disponere, 25 equitatumque omnibus locis iniciendi timoris causa ostentare coeperunt; si ab re frumentaria Romanos excludere aut adductos inopia in Provinciam expellere possent. 5 Quam ad sper multum eos adjuvabat, quod Liger ex nibus creverat, ut omnino vado non posse 30 transiri videretur.

56. Quibus rebus cognitis, Caesar maturandum sibi censuit, si esset in perficiendis pontibus periclitandum; ut, prius quam essent maiores eo coactae copiae, dimiseret. 2 Nam ne commutato consilio iter in Provinciam 35 converteret, ut nemo non tum quidem necessario faci-
endum existimabat, cum infamia atque indignitas rei et oppositus mons Cevenna viarumque difficultas impediebat; tum maxime, quod abjuncto Labieno atque iis legionibus quas una miserat, vehementer timebat. 5 Itaque, admodum magnis diurnis atque nocturnis itineribus confectis, contra omnium opinionem ad Ligerim venit; vadoque per equites invento, pro rei necessitate, opportuno, ut brachia modo, atque humeri ad sustinenda arma liberi ab aqua esse possent, disposito equitatu, qui vim fluminis refringeret, atque hostibus primo ad spectu perturbatis, incolorem exercitum traduxit; frumentumque in agris et pecoris copiam nactus, repleto his rebus exercitu, iter in Senones facere instituit.

57. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labienus, eo supplemento quod nuper ex Italia venerat relictum Agedici, ut esset impedimentis praesidio, cum quattuor legionibus Lutetiam proficiscitur: id est oppidum Parisorum, quod positum est in insula fluminis Sequanae. 2 Cujus adventu ab hostibus cognito, magnae ex finitimis civitatibus copiae convenerunt. Summa imperii traditur Camulogeno Aulerco, qui prope confectus aetate tamen propter singularem scientiam rei militaris ad eum est honorem evocatus. 3 Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse paludem quae influeret in Sequanam, atque illum omnem locum magnopere impediret, hic consedit, nostrosque transitu prohibere instituit.

58. Labienus primo vineas agere, cratibus atque aggere paludem explere, atque iter munire conabatur. Postquam id difficilius confieri animadvertit, silentio et castris tertia vigilia egressus, eodem quo venerat itinerem Melodunum pervenit. 2 Id est oppidum Senonum in insula Sequanae positum, ut paulo ante de Lutetia diximus. 3 Deprehensis navibus circiter quinquaginta celeriterque conjunctis, atque eo militibus injectis, et rei novitate perterritis oppidanis, quorum magna pars erat ad bellum evocata, sine contentione oppido potitur.
Refecto ponte, quem superioribus diebus hostes rec siderant, exercitum traducit, et secundo flumine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostes, re cognita ab iis qui a Meloduno fugerant, Lutetiam incendi, pontes que ejus oppidi rescindi jubent; ipsi, projecta palude, ad ripas Sequanae, e regione Lutetiae, contra Labieni castra considunt.

59. Jam Caesar a Gergovia discississe audiebatur; jam de Haeduorum defectione et secundo Galliae motu rumores afferebantur; Gallique in conloquiis, interclusum itinere et Ligeri Caesarem, inopia frumenti coactum, in Provinciam contendisse, confirmabant. Bellovaci autem, defectione Haeduorum cognita, qui ante erant per se infideles, manus cogere atque aperte bellum parare coeperunt. Tum Labienus, tanta rerum commutatione, longe aliud sibi capiendum consilium atque antea senserat intellegebat; neque jam ut aliquid acquireret proelioque hostes lacessaret, sed ut incolu mem exercitum Agedicum reduceret, cogitabat. Namque altera ex parte Bellovaci, quae civitas in Gallia maximam habet opinionem virtutis, instabant; alteram Camulogenus parato atque instructo exercitu tenebat; tum legiones a praesidio atque impedimentis interclusas maximum flumen distinebat. Tantis subito difficultatis objectis, ab animi virtute auxilium petendum videbat.

60. Sub vesperum consilio convocato, cohortatus ut ea quae imperasset diligenter industriueque administra rent, naves quas a Meloduno deduxerat singulas equi tibus Romanis attribuit; et, prima confecta vigilia, milia passuum secundo flumine silentio progradi, ibique se exspectari jubet. Quinque cohortes, quas minime firmas ad dimicandum esse existimabat, castris praesidio relinquit; quinque ejusdem legionis reliquas de media nocte cum omnibus impedimentis adverso flumine magno tumultu profiscisci imperat.
has magno sonitu remorum incitatas in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulo, silentio egressus cum tribus legionibus, eum locum petit quo naves appelli jussaret.

61. Eo cum esset ventum, exploratores hostium, ut omni fluminis parte erant dispositi, inopinantes, quod magna subito erat coorta tempestas, ab nostris opprimuntur; exercitus equitatusque, equitibus Romanis administrantibus quos ei negotio praefecerat, celeriter transmittitur. 2 Uno fere tempore sub lucem hostibus nuntiatur in castris Romanorum praeter consuetudinem tumultuari, et magnum ire agmen adverso flumine, somitumque remorum in eadem parte exaudiri, et paulo infra milites navibus transportari. 3 Quibus rebus auditis, quod existimabant tribus locis transire legiones, atque omnes perturbatos defectione Haeduorum fugam parare, suas quoque copias in tres partes distribuerunt. 4 Nam, praesidio e regione castrorum reicto, et parva manu Melodunum versus missa, quae tantum progrediatur quantum naves processissent, reliquas copias contra Labienum duxerunt.

62. Prima luce et nostri omnes erant transportati, et hostium acies cernebatur. 2 Labienus, milites cohortatus ut suae pristinae virtutis et secundissimorum proeliorum retinenter memoram, atque ipsum Caesarem, cujus ductu saepenumero hostes superassent, praesentem adesse existimarent, dat signum proelii. 3 Primo concursu, ab dextro cornu, ubi septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur atque in fugam coniciuntur; ab sinistro, quem locum duodecima legio tenebat, cum primi ordinis hostium transfixi pilis concidissent, tamen acerrime reliqui resistebant, nec dabat suspicionem fugae quisquam. 4 Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suisaderat, atque eos cohortabatur. Incerto nunc etiam exitu victoriae, cum septimae legionis tribunis esset nuntiatum quae in sinistro cornu gererentur, post tergum hostium legionem ostenderunt, signaque intulerunt 5 Ne eo quidem tem-
pore quisquam loco cessit, sed circumventi omnes interfectique sunt. Eandem fortunam tulit Camulogenus. 6 At ii qui praesidio contra castra Labieni erant relictii, cum proelium commissum audissent, subsidio suis ierunt, collegisque ceperunt, neque nostrorum milium victorum 5 impetum sustinere potuerunt. 7 Sic, cum suis fugientibus permixti, quos non silvae montesque texerunt, ab equitatu sunt interfecti. 8 Hoc negotio confecto, Labienus revertitur Agedicum, ubi impedimenta totius exercitus relictæ erant. Inde cum omnibus copiis ad 10 Caesarem pervenit.

63. Defectione Haeduorum cognita, bellum augetur. Legationes in omnes partes circummittuntur; quantum gratia, auctoritate, pecunia valent, ad sollicitandas civitates nituntur. 2 Nacti obsides, quos Caesar apud eos 15 deposuerat, horum supplicio dubitantes territant. Petunt a Veringetorige Haedi, ut ad se veniat rationesque belli gerundi communicet. 3 Re impetrata, contendunt ut ipsis summa imperii tradatur; et, re in controversiam deducta, totius Galliae concilium Bibracte 20 indicitur. Eodem conveniunt undique frequentes. 4 Multitudinis suffragiis res permittitur: ad unum omnes Veringetorigem probant imperatorem. 5 Ab hoc concilio Remi, Lingones, Treveri abfuerunt: illi, quod amicitiam Romanorum sequebantur; Treveri, quod 25 aberant longius et ab Germanis premebantur, quae fuit causa quare toto abessent bello et neutris auxilia mittebant. 6 Magno dolore Haedi ferunt se dejectos principatu; queruntur fortunae commutationem, et Caesaris in se indulgentiam requirunt; neque tamen, suscepto 30 bello, suum consilium ab reliquis separare audent. 7 Inviti summæae spei adulescentes, Eporedorix et Viridomarus, Veringetorigi parent.

64. Ipse imperat reliquis civitatibus obsides; 1 denique ei rei constituit diem huc. Omnes equites, quindecim 35 milia numero, celeriter convenire jubet; 2 peditatu quem
ante habuerat se fore contentum dicit, neque fortunam temptaturum, aut in acie dimicaturum; sed, quoniam abundet equitatu, perfacile esse factu frumentationibus pabulationibusque Romanos prohibere: 3aequo modo 5animo sua ipsi frumenta corrumpant, aedificiaque incendant; qua rei familiaris jactura perpetuum imperium libertatemque se consequat videant. 4His constitutis rebus, Haeduis Segusiavisque, qui sunt finitimis Provinciae, decem milia peditum imperat; huc addit equites octingentos. His praeficit fratrem Eporedorigis, bel-lumque inferri Allobrogibus jubet. 6Alter ex parte, Gabalos proximosque pagos Arvernorum in Helvios, item Rutenos Cadurcosque ad fines Volcarum Arecomicorum depopulandos mittit. 6Nihilo minus clandestinis 15nuntiis legationibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quorum mentes nondum ab superiore bello resedisse sperabat. Horum principibus pecunias, civitati autem imperium totius provinciae pollicitur.

65. Ad hos omnes casus provisa erant praesidia co-hortium duarum et viginti, quae ex ipsa Provincia ab L. Caesare legato ad omnes partes opponebantur. 2Helvii sua sponte cum finitimis proelio congressi pel-luntur, et, C. Valerio Donnotauro, Caburi filio, principe civitatis, compluribusque aliis interfectis, intra oppida ac 25muros compelluntur. 3Allobroges, crebris ad Rhodanum dispositis praesidiis, magna cum cura et diligentia suos fines tuentur. 4Caesar, quod hostes equitatu superiores esse intellegebat, et, interclusis omnibus in-neribus, nulla re ex Provincia atque Italia sublevari 30poterat, trans Rhenum in Germaniam mittit ad eas civitates quas superioribus annis pacaverat; equitesque ab his accessit, et levis armaturae pedites, qui inter eos proeliari consuerant. 5Eorum adventu, quod minus idoneis equis utebantur, a tribunis militum reliquisque 35[sed et] equitibus Romanis atque evocatis equos sumit, Germanisique distribuit
66. Interea, dum haec geruntur, hostium copiae ex Arvernis, equitesque qui toti Galliae erant imperati, conveniunt. 2 Magno horum coacto numero, cum Caesar in Sequanos per extremos Lingonum fines iter faceret, quo facilius subsidium Provinciae ferri posset, circiter 5 milia passuum decem ab Romanis trinis castris Vercingetorix consedit; convocatisque ad consilium praefectis equitum, venisse tempus victoriae demonstrat: 3 quae fugere in Provincia Romanos, Galliaque excedere; id sibi ad prae sentem obtinendum libertatem satis esse; ad reliqui 10 temporis pacem atque otium parum profici; majoribus enim coactis copiis reversuros, neque finem bellandi facturos. 4 Proinde in agmine impeditos adorirentur. Si pedites suis auxilium ferant, atque in eo morentur, iter facere non posse; si, id quod magis futurum confidat, 15 relictis impedimentis, suae saluti consulant, et usu rerum necessariarum et dignitate spoliatum iri. 6 Nam de equitibus hostium, quin nemo eorum progradi modo extra agmen audeat, et ipsos quidem non debere dubitare; et quo majore faciant animo, copias se omnes 20 pro castris habiturum, et terrori hostibus futurum. 6 Conclamant equites, Sanctissimo jurejurando confirmari oportere, ne tecto recipiatur, ne ad liberos, ne ad parentes, ad uxorem aditum habeat, qui non bis per agmen hostium perequitasset. 25

67. Probata re, atque omnibus jurejurando adactis, postero die in tres partes distributo equitatu, duas se acies ab duobus lateribus ostendunt, una primo agmine iter impedire coepit. 2 Qua re nuntiata, Caesar suum quoque equitatum, tripartito divisum, contra 30 hostem ire jubet. Pugnatur una omnibus in partibus. 3 Consistit agmen; impedimenta intra legiones recipiuntur. Si qua in parte nostri laborare aut gravius premi videbantur, eo signa inferri Caesar aciemque constitui jubebat: quae res et hostes ad insequendum 35 tardabat, et nostros spe auxilii confirmabat. 4 Tandem
Germani ab dextro latere, summum jugum nacti, hostes loco depellunt: fugientes usque ad flumen, ubi Vercingetorix cum pedestribus copiis consederat, persequuntur, compluresque interficiunt. Qua re animadversa, reliqui, ne circumirentur veriti, se fugae mandant. Omnibus locis fit caedes. Tres nobilissimi Haedui capti ad Caesarem perducuntur: Cetus, praefectus equitum, qui controversiam cum Convictolitavi proximis comitiis habuerat; et Cavarillus, qui post defectionem Litavici pedestribus copiis praefuerat; et Eporedorix, quo duce ante adventum Caesaris Haedui cum Sequanis bello contenderant.

68. Fugato omni equitatu, Vercingetorix copias, ut pro castris collocaverat, reduxit, protinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiorum, iter facere coepit; celeriterque impedimenta ex castris educi et se subsequi jussit. Caesar, impedimentis in proximum collem deductis, duabus legionibus praeidio relictis, secutus, quantum diei tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus hostium ex novissimo agmine interfectis, altero die ad Alesiam castra fecit. Perspecto urbis situ, perterritisque hostibus, quod equitatu (qua maxime parte exercitus confidebant) erant pulsi, adhortatus ad laborem milites, circumvallare instituit.

opportunis locis erant posita, ibique castella xxiii facta; quibus in castellis interdiu stationes ponebantur, ne qua subito eruptio fieret: haec eadem noctu excubitoribus ac firmis praevidis tenebantur.


71. Vercingetorix, priusquam munitiones ab Romanis perficiantur, consilium capít, omnem ab se equitatum noctu dimittere. Discéndentibus mandat, ut suam quique eorum civitatem adeat, omnesque qui per aetatem arma ferre possint ad bellum cogant. Sua in illos merita proponit; obtestaturque, ut suae salutis rationem habeant, neu se, optime de communi libertate meritum, in cruciatum hostibus dedant. Quod si indigentiores fuerint, milia hominum delecta lxxx una secum interitutur demonstrat. Ratione inita, se exiguë dierum triginta habere frumentum, sed paulo etiam longius tolerare posse parcendo. His datis mandatis, qua opus erat intermissum, secunda vigilia silentio equita-
Caesar presses the Siege.

tum dimittit; frumentum omne ad se referri jubet; capitis poenam iis qui non paruerint constituit; pecus, cujus magna erat copia, ab Mandubiis compulsa, viritim distribuit; frumentum parce et paulatim metiri insti- tuit; copias omnes, quas pro oppido collocaverat, in oppidum recepit. His rationibus auxilia Galliae ex- spectare et bellum parat administrare.

72. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis et captivis, Caesar haec genera munitionis instituit: fossam pe- dum viginti directis lateribus duxit; ut ejus fossae solum tantundem pateret, quantum summae fossae labra distarent. 2 Reliquas omnes munitiones ab ea fossa pedes quadrangentes reduxit: id hoc consilio (quoniam tantum esset necessario spatum complexus, nec facile totum corpus corona militum cingeretur), ne de improviso aut noctu ad munitiones hostium multitudo advo- laret, aut interdui tela in nostros operi destinatos conicerem possent. 3 Hoc intermisso spatio, duas fossas, xv pedes latas, eadem altitudine perduxit; quarum interiorem, campestribus ac demissis locis, aqua ex flumine derivata complevit. 4 Post eas aggerem ac vallum xii pedum extruxit: huic loricam pinnasque adjecit, grandibus cervis eminentibus ad commissuras pluteorum atque aggeris, qui adscensum hostium tardarent; et turres toto opere circumdedit, quae pedes LXXX inter se distarent.

73. Erat eodem tempore et materiari et frumentari et tantas munitiones fieri necesse, deminutis nostris copiis, quae longius ab castris progrediebantur; ac nonnumquam opera nostra Galli temptare, atque eruptionem ex oppido pluribus portis summa vi facere conabantur. 2 Quare ad haec rursus opera addendum Caesar putavit, quo minore numero militum munitiones defendi possent. Itaque truncis arborum admodum firmis ramis abscisis, atque horum delibratis ac praeacutis cacuminibus, perpetuae fossae quinos pedes altae ducebantur. 3 Huc illi stipites demissi, et ab infimo revincti, ne revelli possent,
ab ramis eminebant. Quini erant ordines conjuncti inter se atque implicati; quo qui intraverant, se ipsi acutissimis vallis induebant. Hos Cippos appellabant. 4 Ante quos, obliquis ordinibus in quincuncem dispositis, scrobès tres in altitudinem pedes fodiebantur, paulatim angustiorem ad infimum fastigio. 5 Huc teretes stipites feminis crassitudine, ab summo praeacuti et praeusti, demittebantur, ita ut non amplius digitis quattuor ex terra eminerent: simul, confirmandi et stabiliendi causa, singuli ab infimo solo pedes terra exculcabantur; reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandas insidias viminibus ac virgultis integebatur. 6 Hujus generis octoni ordines ducti, ternos inter se pedes distabant. Id ex similitudine floris lilium appellabant. Ante haec taleae pedem longae, ferreis hamis infixis, totae in terram infodiebantur, mediocribusque internissis spatii, omnibus locis disserebantur, quos stimulos nominabant.

74. His rebus perfectis, regiones secutus quam potuit aequissimas pro loci natura; xiv milia passuum complexus, pares ejusdem generis munitiones, diversas ab his, contra exteriorem hostem perfecit, ut, ne magna quidem multitudine, si ita accidat ejus † discessu, munitionum praesidia circumfundii possent; ac ne cum periculo ex castris egredi cogantur, dierum xxx pabulum frumentumque habere omnes convectum jubet. 25

75. Dum haec apud Alesiam geruntur, Galli, concilio principum indicto, non omnes eos qui arma ferre possent, ut censuit Vercingetorix, convocandos statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique ex civitate imperandum; ne, tanta multitudine confusa, nec moderari nec discernere suos, nec frumentandi rationem habere possent. 2 Imperant Haeduïs, atque eorum clientibus, Segusiavis, Ambajuaretis, Aulercis, Brannovicibus, Brannoviis, milia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernis, adjunctis Eleutheris Cadurcis, Gabalis, Vellaviis, qui sub imperio Arverno-orum esse consuerunt; Sequanis, Senonibus, Biturigibus,
Santonis, Rutenis, Carnutibus duodena milia; Bello-
vacis x; totidem Lemovicibus; octona Pictonibus et
Turonis et Parisiis et Helvetiis; Senonibus, Ambianis,
Mediomatricis, Petrorcoriis, Nerviis, Morinis, Nitiobrigi-
bus quina milia; Aulercis Cenomanis totidem; Atreba-
tibus iv; Veliocassis, Lexoviis, et Aulercis Eburovicibus
terna; Rauracis et Boiis. . .; xxx universis civitati-
bus quae Oceanum attingunt, quaeque eorum consue-
tudine Armoricae appellantur, quo sunt in numero
Curiosolites, Redones, Ambibarii, Caleses, Osismi, Le-
movices, Unelli. 3 Ex his Bellovaci suum numerum non
compleverunt, quod se suo nomine atque arbitrio cum
Romanis bellum gesturos dicebant, neque cujusquam
imperio obtemperatos; rogati tamen ab Commio
pro ejus hospitio, duo milia una miserunt.

76. Hujus opera Commii, ut antea demonstravimus,
fideli atque utili superioribus annis erat usus in Bri-
tannia Caesar: quibus ille pro meritis civitatem ejus
immunem esse jusserat, jura legesque reddiderat, atque
ipsi Morinos attribuerat. 2 Tamen tanta universae Gal-
liae consensio fuit libertatis vindicandae, et pristinae
belli laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiis neque
amicitiae memoria moverentur, omnesque et animo et
opibus in id bellum incumberent. 3 Coactis equitum viii
milibus, et peditum circiter ccl, haec in Haeduorum
finibus recensebantur, numerosque inibatur, praefecti
constituebantur: Commio Atrebatii, Viridomaro et Epo-
redorigi Haeduis, Vercassivellauno Arverno, consobrino
Vercingetorigis, summa imperii traditur. 4 His defecti
ex civitatibus attribuuntur, quorum consilio bellum ad-
ministraretur. 5 Omnes alacres et fiduciae pleni ad
Alesiam profisciscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam,
qui adspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustineri posse
arbitaretur, praesertim ancipiti proelio, cum ex oppido
eruptione pugnaretur, foris tantae copiae equitatus pedi-
tatusque cernerentur.
77. At ii qui Alesiae obsidebantur, praeterita die qua suorum auxilia exspectaverant, consumpto omni frumento, inscii quid in Haeduis gereretur, concilio coacto, de exitu suarum fortunarum consultabant. ² Ac variis dictis sententiis, quarum pars deditio, pars, dum ⁵ vires suppeterent, eruptionem censebant, non praeterundae oratio Critognati videtur, propter ejus singularem ac nefarium crudelitatem. ³ Hic, summo in Arvernis ortus loco, et magnae habitus auctoritatibus: “Nihil,” inquit, “de eorum sententia dicturus sum, qui turpissimam servitutem deditis nomine appellant; neque hos habendos civium loco, neque ad consilium adhibendos censeo. ⁴ Cum his mihi res sit, qui eruptionem probant; quorum in consilio, omnium vestrum consensu, pristinae residere virtutis memoria videtur. Animi est ¹⁵ ista mollitites, non virtus, paulisper inopiam ferre non posse. ⁵ Qui se ultro morti offerant facilius reperiuntur, quam qui dolorem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probarem (tantum apud me dignas potest), si nullam praeter quam vitae nostrae jacturam fieri videorem; sed, in consilio capiendo, omnem Galliam respiciamus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitavimus. ⁶ Quid, hominum miliibus LXXX uno loco interfecitis, propinquus consanguineisque nostris animi fore existimatis, si paene in ipsis cadaveribus proelio decertare cogentur? ⁷ No- ²⁵ lite hos vestro auxilio exspoliare, qui vestrae salutis causa suum periculum neglexerunt; nec stultitia ac temeritate vestra, aut animi imbecillitate, omnem Galliam prosternere et perpetuae servituti subicere. ⁸ An, quod ad diem non venerunt, de eorum fide constantia dubitatis? ⁹ Quid ergo? Romanos in illis ulterioribus munitionibus animine causa cotidie exerceri putatis? ⁹ Si illorum nuntiis confirmari non potestis, omni aditu praesepto, his utimini testibus, appropinquare eorum adventum; cujus rei timore exterriti, diem nocem temque in opere versantur. ¹⁰ Quid ergo mei consili
Arrival of the Relief.

est? Facere, quod nostri majores nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum Teutonumque fecerunt; qui, in oppida compulsi, ac simili inopia subacti, eorum corporibus, qui aetate ad bellum inutiles videbantur, vitam toleraverunt, neque se hostibus tradiderunt. 11 Cujus rei si exemplum non haberemus, tamen libertatis causa institui, et posteris prodi, pulcherrimum judicarem. Nam quid illi simile bello fuit? Depopulata Gallia, Cimbrì, magna-que illata calamitate, finibus quidem nostris aliquando exisserunt, atque alias terras petierunt; jura, leges, agros, libertatem nobis reliquerunt. 12 Romani vero quid petunt aliu, aut quid volunt, nisi invidia adducti, quos fama nobilis potentesque bello cognoverunt, horum in agris civitatisque considere, atque his aeternam in-jungere servitutem? Neque enimulla alia condicione bella gesserunt. 13 Quod si ea quae in longinquius na-tionibus geruntur ignoratis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae, in provinciam redacta, jure et legibus commutatis, securibus subjecta, perpetua premitur servitute!"

78. Sententiis dictis, constituunt ut ii qui valetudine aut aetate inutiles sunt bello, oppido excedant, atque omnia prius experiantur, quam ad Critognati sententiam descendunt: illo tamen potius utendum consilio, si res cogat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut deditionis aut pacis subeundam conditionem. 2 Mandubii, qui eos oppido receperant, cum liberis atque uxoribus exire coguntur. Hi, cum ad munitiones Romanorum accessissent, flentes, omnibus precibus orabant ut se, in servitutem receptos, cibo juvarent. At Caesar, dispositis in vallo custodiis, recipi prohibebat.

79. Interea Commissius reliquique duces, quibus summa imperii permissa erat, cum omnibus copiis ad Alesiam perveniunt; et, colle exteriore occupato, non longius mille passibus ab nostris munitionibus considunt. 2 Pos-
tero die, equitatu ex castris educto, omnem eam plani-tiem, quam in longitudinem tria milia passuum patere
demonstravimus, complent; pedestresque copias, paulum ab eo loco abditas, in locis superioribus constituunt. 3 Erat ex oppido Alesia despectus in campum. Concurrunt his auxiliis visis; fit gratulatio inter eos, atque omnium animi ad laetitiam excitantur. 4 Itaque, prodūctis copiis, ante oppidum considunt, et proximam fossilam cratibus integunt atque aggere explent, seque ad eruptionem atque omnes casus comparant.

80. Caesar, omni exercitu ad utramque partem munitionum disposito, ut, si usus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et noverit, equitatum ex castris educi et proelium committi jubeat. 2 Erat ex omnibus castris, quae summum undique jugum tenebant, despectus; atque omnes milites intenti pugnae proventum exspectabant. 3 Galli inter equites raros sagittarios expeditosque levis armaturae interjeceanter, qui suis cedentibus auxilio succurrerent, et nostrorum equitum impetus sustinerent. 4 Ab his complures, de improviso vulnerati, proelio exceedebant. Cum suos pugna superiores esse Galli confiderent, et nostros multitudine premi viderent, ex omnibus partibus, et ii qui munitionibus continebantur, et hi qui ad auxilium convenerant, clamore et ululatu suorum animos confirmabant. 5 Quod in conspectu omnium res gerebatur, neque recte ac turpiter factum celari poterat; utrosque et laudis cupiditas et timor ignominiae ad virtutem excitabant. 6 Cum a meridie prope ad solis occasum dubia victoria pugnaretur, Germani una in parte confertis turmis in hostes impetum fecerunt, eosque propulerunt. 7 Quibus in fugam conjectis, sagittarii circumventi interfactique sunt. Item ex reliquis partibus nostri, cedentes usque ad castra insecuri, sui colligendi facultatem non dederunt. At ii qui ab Alesia processerant, maestì, prope victoria desperata, se in oppidum receperunt.

81. Uno die intermisso, Galli, atque hoc spatio magno cratium scalarum harpagonum numero effecto, media
nocte silentio ex castris egressi, ad campestres munitiones accedunt. 2 Subito clamore sublato, qua significatione qui in oppido obsidebantur de suo adventu cognoscere possent, crates proicere, fundis, sagittis, lapidibus, nostros de vallo proturbare, reliqua quae ad oppugnationem pertinent parant administrare. 3 Eodem tempore, clamore exaudito, dat tuba signum suis Vercingetorix, atque ex oppido educit. 4 Nostri, ut superioribus diebus, ut cuique erat locus attributus, ad munitiones accedunt; fundis, librilibus, sudibusque quas in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallos proterrent. 5 Prospectu tenebris adempto, multa utrimque vulnera accipiantur; complura tormentis tela conciuntur. 6 At M. Antonius et C. Trebonius legati, quis hae partes ad defendendum obvenerant, qua ex parte nostros premi intellexerant, his auxilio ex ulterioribus castellis deductos submittebant.

82. Dum longius ab munitione aberant Galli, plus multitudine telorum proficiebant; posteaquam propius successerunt, aut se stimuli inopinantes induebant, aut in scrobes delati transfodiebant, aut ex vallo ac turribus trajecti pilis muralibus interibant. 2 Multis undique vulneribus acceptis, nulla munitione perrupta, cum lux appeteret, veriti ne ab latere aperto ex superioribus castris eruptione circumvenirentur, se ad suos receperunt. 8 At interioris, dum ea quae a Vercingetorige ad eruptionem praeparata erant proferunt, priores fossas explet; diutius in his rebus administrandis morati, prius suos discississe cognerunt, quam munitionibus appropinquarent. Ita, re infecta, in oppidum reverterunt.

83. Bis magno cum detrimento repulsi, Galli quid agant consulunt. Locorum peritos adhibent; ex his superiorum castrorum situs munitionesque cognoscunt. 2 Erat a septentrionibus collis, quem, propter magnitudinem circuitus, opere circumplecti non potuerant nostri; necessario paene iniquo loco et leniter declivi
castra fecerant. 3 Haec C. Antistius Reginus et C. Caninius Rebilus, legati, cum duabus legionibus obtinebant. Cognitis per exploratores regionibus, duces hostium LX milia ex omni numero deligunt, earum civitatum quae maximam virtutis opinionem habebant; quid, 5 quoque pacto, agi placeat, occulte inter se constituunt; adeundi tempus definiunt, cum meridies esse videatur. 4 His copiis Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, unum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeeficiunt. Ille, ex castris prima vigilia egressus, prope 10 confecto sub lucem itinere, post montem se occultavit, militesque ex nocturno labore sese reficere jussit. 6 Cum jam meridies appropinquare videretur, ad ea castra quae supra demonstravimus contendit; eodemque tempore equitatus ad campestres munitiones accedere, et reliquae 15 copiae pro castris sese ostendere coeperunt.

84. Vercingetorix, ex arce Alesiae suos conspicatus, ex oppido egreditur: crates, longurios, musculos, falces, reliquaque quae eruptionis causa paraverat, profert. 2 Pugnatur uno tempore omnibus locis, atque omnia 20 temptantur: quae minime visa pars firma est, huc curritur. 3 Romanorum manus tantis munitionibus distinctetur, nec facile pluribus locis occurrit. 4 Multum ad terrendos nostros valet clamor, qui post tegum pugnantibus exstitit, quod suum periculum in aliena vident salute constare; omnia enim plerumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentes perturbant.

85. Caesar, idoneum locum nactus, quid quaque ex parte geratur cognoscit; laborantibus submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit, unum esse illud tempus, quo 30 maxime contendi conveniat: 2 Galli, nisi perfregerint munitiones, de omni salute desperant; Romani, si rem obtinuerint, finem laborum omnium expectant. Maxime ad superiores munitiones laboratur, quo Vercassivellaunum missum demonstravimus. 3 Iniquum 35 loci ad declivitatem fastigium magnum habet momen-
tum. Alii tela coniciunt, alii testudine facta subeunt; defatigatis in vicem integri succedunt. 4 Agger, ab universis in munitionem conjectus, et ascensum dat Gallis, et ea quae in terra occultaverant Romani con tegit; nec jam arma nostris nec vires suppetunt.

86. His rebus cognitis, Caesar Labienum cum cohortibus sex subsidio laborantibus mittit. Imperat, si sustinere non posset, deductis cohortibus, eruptione pugnaret; id nisi necessario ne faciat. 2 Ipse adit reliquis; cohortatur ne labori succumbant; omnium superiorum dimicacionum fructum in eo die atque hora docet consistere. 3 Interiores, desperatis campestribus locis propter magnitudinem munitionum, loca praerupta ex ascensu temptant: huc ea quae paraverant conserunt. Multitudine telorum ex turribus propugnantes deturbant; aggere et cratibus fossas explent; falcibus val lum ac loricam rescindunt.

87. Mittit primo Brutum adolescentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium legatum; postremo ipse, cum vehementius pugnaretur, integros subsidio adductit. 2 Restituto proelio ac repulsis hostibus, eo quo Labienum miserat contendit; cohortes quattuor ex proximo castello deductit, equitum partem sequi, partem circumire exteriiores munitiones et ab tergo hostes adoriri jubet. 3 Labienus, postquam neque aggeres neque fossae vim hostium sustinere poterant, coactis una quadraginta cohortibus, quas, ex proximis praesidiis deductas, fors obtulit, Caesarem per nuntios facit certiorem quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proelio intersit.

88. Ejus adventu ex colore vestitus cognito, quo insigni in proeliis uti consuerat, turmisque equitum et cohortibus visis quas se sequi jusscrat, ut de locis superioribus haec declivia et devexa cernebantur, hostes proelium committunt. 2 Utrimque clamore sublato, excipit rursus ex vallo atque omnibus munitionibus clamor.
Nostri, omissis pilis, gladiis rem gerunt. Repente post
tergum equitatus cernitur; cohortes aliae appropinquant:
hostes terga vertunt; fugientibus equites occurrunt;
fit magna caedes. 3 Sedulius, dux et princeps Lemovi-
cum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fuga
comprehenditur; signa militaria LXXIV ad Caesarem refe-
runtur; pauci ex tanto numero se incolumes in castra
recipiunt. 4 Conspicati ex oppido caedem et fugam suo-
rum, desperata salute, copias a munitionibus reducunt.
5 Fit protinus, hac re audita, ex castris Gallorum fuga. 10
Quod nisi crebris subsidiis ac totius diei labore milites
essent defessi, omnes hostium copiae deleri potuissent.
6 De media nocte missus equitatus novissimum agmen
consequitur: magnus numerus capitur atque interfici-
tur; reliqui ex fuga in civitates discendunt. 15

80. Postero die Vercingetorix, concilio convocato, id
bellum se suscepisse non suarum necessitatum sed
communis libertatis causa demonstratur; et, quoniam sit
fortunae cedendum, ad utramque rem se illis offerre, seu
morte sua Romanis satisfacere, seu vivum tradere ve-
lint. 2 Mittuntur de his rebus ad Caesarem legati.
Jubet arma tradi, principes produci. Ipse in munitione
pro castris consedit: eo duces producuntur. Vercinget-
orix deditur; arma proiciuntur. 3 Reservatis Haeduis
atque Arvernis, si per eos civitates recuperare posset, 25
ex reliquis captivis toto exercitui capita singula praedae
nomine distribuit.

90. His rebus confectis, in Haeduos proficiscitur;
civitatem recipit. Eo legati ab Arvernis missi quae
imperaret se facturos pollicentur. Imperat magnum 30
numerus obsidium. Legiones in hiberna mittit; captivi-
orum circiter XX milia Haeduis Arvernisque reddit.
2 T. Labienum duabus cum legionibus et equitatu in
Sequanos proficisci jubet; huic M. Sempronium Rutii-
num attribuit. C. Fabium legatum et L. Minucium 35
Basilum cum legionibus duabus in Remis collocat, ne quam

ARGUMENT OF BOOK VIII.

Note. — This Book is understood, by general consent, to have been written as a continuation by Aulus Hirtius, an officer of Cæsar, who also wrote the history of the campaigns in Africa and Spain. Hirtius was killed near Mutina (Modena), in battle against Mark Antony, in the year following Cæsar’s death, B.C. 43.

Final Conquest and Pacification of Gaul. — Scattered uprisings quelled (1–5). War of the Bellovaci, who at length submit (6–22). After a series of scattered and petty actions (23–35), UXeloddunum is besieged by Cæsar (37, 38). Its defenders, being prevented from access to water, are compelled by distress to surrender: Cæsar orders the hands to be cut off of all who have borne arms (39–44). Aquitania is recovered, the Treveri are subdued, and the last resistance is overcome by the defeat of Commius (45–48). Cæsar deals generously with the vanquished, and proceeds to Italy, where he is magnificently welcomed (49–51). Outbreak of the jealousies at Rome which led to the Civil War (52–55).
NOTES.
The Legionary.
THE LEGIONARY.

The core of the Roman army was the legionary infantry. This was composed entirely of Roman citizens; while the auxiliary infantry, the archers and slingers, and the cavalry, were of various barbarian nationalities. These other troops were used for subordinate purposes only. It was intended that the weight of the battle should be borne by the legions.

The recruit must be over 17 and under 46 years of age, of sound bodily health and of suitable size. What the limits of height were in the Roman army, we do not know.* From the fact that the legionary fought with sword and spear, and not with the breech-loading rifle of modern wars, we may infer that he must have been more muscular and agile than is now necessary; but we cannot infer that he was of unusual size. On the contrary, there is little doubt that the soldiers who conquered the world for Cæsar were, as a rule, rather under-sized. The historians always emphasized the bigness of the Germans, and Cæsar expressly mentions the small stature of his troops.† The Romans had learned the lesson of civilization, — that victories in war are gained, not by huge bones and big bodies, but by the trained skill of scientific organization and tactics. Any one of the German giants might perhaps have been more than a match for any individual of his puny Italian enemies. But the barbarian mob of Ariovistus was shattered when hurled against the spears of the legions.

All the legionaries were clothed, armed and equipped alike. Next the skin was worn a sleeveless woollen shirt (tunica). Over this was a leathern coat strengthened by bands of metal across breast and back and on the shoulders (lorica). The troops in Trajan’s column are represented with tight-fitting trowsers (braccae) extending below the knee. It seems likely, however, that these did not come into use among the Romans until after Cæsar’s time.‡ Possibly strips of cloth were worn wound around the thighs (feminalia) and around the shins (cruralia). The feet were protected by sandals (calei), or by strong shoes not unlike those worn at the present time. Then, in cold or wet weather, the person was covered by the military cloak (sagum), a sort of woollen blanket. Of course, this was laid aside in battle.

The defensive armor consisted of helmet, greaves and shield. The helmet was either of iron (cassis), or of leather or cork strengthened with brass (galea). That of the officer was distinguished by a plume of red or black feathers (crista). The greaves (ocreae) were of bronze. They were used to protect the leg below the knee, and were held in place sometimes by straps, sometimes by their own stiffness. Usually but one was worn, on the right leg, as this was the one advanced in the fight. (The greaves may be seen in the picture of the centurion, Fig. 4.) The shield (scutum) was

* In our infantry, no one is received whose height is less than 5 ft. 4 in., or more than 5 ft. 10 in.
‡ The trowsers in the picture of the legionary (p. 2) are without doubt of a later age.
of wood, covered with leather or with iron plates. In the centre was a boss (sumbo), which was merely a knob designed to strengthen and bind all together. The shield was about 4 ft. long and 2 ft. wide. Often it was curved, so as partially to encircle the body. On the outside was painted the badge of the cohort,—a wreath, or a winged thunderbolt, for instance. On the inside was the name of the soldier, with the number of the cohort and maniple; perhaps also the number of the legion.

The offensive weapons were the sword and spear. The sword (gladius Hispanicus) had a blade about 2 ft. long and several inches wide. It was two-edged and pointed, being thus adapted either for cutting or thrusting. The latter, however, was its customary use. It hung seldom from a body-belt, generally from a shoulder-belt (baltæus) passing over the left shoulder. Thus the sword was on the right side, this being more convenient since the shield was carried in the left hand. As the higher officers had no shields, they wore their swords on the left side. The spear (pilum) was the characteristic weapon of the legionary. Its entire length was between 6 and 7 ft. The shaft was of wood, round or square, and was upwards of 4 ft. long. Into this was fitted the slender iron shank (ferrum) of the spear, which terminated in a steel head. When the pilum was hurled into some object of attack, the soft iron of the shank bent under the impetus of the blow, and the weapon was thus unfitted to be drawn out and cast back by the enemy. At the bottom of the shaft was an iron shoe, so that in camp, or during a rest on the march, the spear might be set up in the ground. The weight of the entire weapon must have been about 9 pounds. In early times the legionary had two pilæ. In the army of Cæsar, however, we have reason to believe that each soldier had but one.

Cæsar fixed the pay of his legionaries at 225 denarii a year (about $45). A day laborer in Rome at that time earned ⅔ of a denarius a day; or, in a year of 300 working days, just as much as a legionary. Thus the soldier was better off than the laborer merely by his shelter and by certainty of employment. For food and equipments, so far as they were provided by the state, a deduction from the pay was made. As provision, each man was allowed per month 4 measures (the measure, modius, = 8.67 litres, or a little over a peck) of wheat. The measure may be estimated to be worth at the highest ⅔ of a denarius. Thus the amount deducted for food cannot have exceeded 36 denarii a year. However, in the provinces, the food, if not given outright, was reckoned at a very low price; and the same must have been true of clothing and equipments. Moreover, the soldier in active service always expected an increase to his income from booty and from the gifts of his general.
TO THE STUDENT.

As Caesar, though in many respects a book for advanced students, is often the first Latin classic put into the learner's hands, it may be well to give a few hints as to the method of study.

1. Before beginning to read, the learner should be familiar with the forms of Inflection, the simpler rules of Agreement and Construction of Cases (Grammar, pp. 256, 257; see Rules 1–10, 14, 21, 26), and the Definitions contained on pages 119–122.

2. In every sentence, begin by finding the leading verb with its subject, and its direct object if it has one; and so make the main thought clear before trying to bring in the subordinate parts.

3. Always look first at the inflectional terminations, so that the number, case, tense, person, &c., will instantly occur upon seeing a Latin word. The great fault of most learners is carelessness about inflections. It is much better to guess at the meaning of the word and know its form, than to neglect the form and be careful of the meaning.

4. In the use of Notes, it is generally best not to consult them till you have fairly tried without their aid; but, even if the sentence seems quite clear, never neglect to consult them afterwards. Sometimes they will give you information; generally they will put the matter in a new or clearer light.

5. Until you are quite familiar with the Syntax, consult all the references to the Grammar. These at first are more numerous and elementary; but further on—especially in "Indirect Discourse"—they should be carefully studied, with the examples, and the more difficult points explained by the teacher.

6. Many references at first are to the short Rules for Parsing (Grammar, pp. 256, 257): it may be well to have most of these Rules quite familiar before going into the details of Syntax.

7. Lastly, remember that Caesar was a man of action and great intelligence; that he always had a plain story to tell, and knew just what he meant to say. He is often awkward; he may be crafty, unscrupulous, insincere; but he is never obscure. And one should never be satisfied until he sees, or thinks he sees, exactly what his meaning is.
Notes: Caesar.

Book First.—B.C. 58.

Helvetic War.—Early in the year 58 B.C., the whole population of Helvetia (northern Switzerland), amounting to about 360,000, attempted to pass by an armed emigration through the heart of Gaul, in order to settle somewhere near the shore of the Bay of Biscay, possibly with the hope of being masters of the whole country. They were hemmed in by the great natural barriers of the Alps, the Lake of Geneva, and the Jura Mountains on the south and west; and pressed on the north by great hordes of Germans, who kept up a continual border war. Their fields were scant, their harvests insufficient, their people hardy and fearless. Their ambitious chief, Orgetorix, had prepared them so well for this enterprise, that his flight and death—when he was charged with guilty conspiracy, and put on trial for his life—caused no delay. The attempt was held in check by Caesar, during a fortnight’s parley, till sufficient earthworks had been thrown up along the Rhone to withstand their advance; the advance was then made in force along the narrow pass between that river and the Jura. But the Helvetians did not succeed in getting more than fifty miles beyond the frontier, when they were overtaken by Caesar; who, by a few light skirmishes and two bloody battles, forced them back to their own territories, with the loss of more than 200,000 lives. This brief campaign, lasting only from March to June, is called the Helvetic War.

N.B. References are made by chapters and sections. The Grammars cited are those of Allen & Greenough (§), Gildersleeve (G.), and Harkness (H.).

Page 2. Chap. 1. Gallia, that is, independent Gaul, excluding the Roman province (Provincia) in the south-east, as well as Gallia Cisalpina, now northern Italy. It occupied the territory of France, including to the Rhine boundary, with most of the Netherlands and Switzerland (see Map).

omnis (predicate), as a whole.—est divisa, is divided: the adjective use of the participle, not the perfect passive (§ 291. b; G. 439. r.; H. 438).

Belgae, probably of the Cymric branch of the Celtic race, allied to the Britons and the modern Welsh: they inhabited the modern Belgium and northern France, and were considerably mixed with Germans (see ii. 1).—Aquitani, of the Spanish Iberians (the modern Basques), inhabiting the districts of the south-west (see iii.
20). — Celsae, probably of the Gaelic branch, represented by the Irish and the Highland Scotch.

aliam: alteram would be more usual, as meaning the second in the list. — tertiam qui . . . appellantur, the third [those inhabit] who are called, &c. It would read in full, tertiam [partem ii incolunt] qui, &c. (§ 200. c; G. 621; H. 445. 6). — ipsorum linguā, in their own tongue. — nostrā, sc.* linguā.

linguā (abl. of specification, § 253 (R. 26); G. 398; H. 424) . . . different [Et. 344],† differ in language, customs, and laws. The language of the Aquitani was Basque; of the Gauls proper, Celtic; of the Belgians, probably Celtic mixed with German. (Observe that when three words, as linguā, &c., are used together, by Latin use there should be no conjunction at all, as here; or both conjunctions should be expressed; or that between the first two words may be omitted, and que annexed to the last.)

inter se = from one another: the preposition inter may be used to show any reciprocal relation, see § 196. f; G. 212; H. 448. n.

dividit: the verb is singular, because the two rivers make one boundary (§ 205. b; G. 202. R.1; H. 463. ii. 3); as we should say, is divided by the line of the Seine and Marne.

2. horum, part. gen. with fortissimi, § 216. a (R. 10); G. 370; H. 397. 3. — propterea quod, because; lit. because of this, that, &c. These adverbial phrases, which are numerous in Latin, should always be carefully analyzed, though generally rendered by a single word in English. (Beginners constantly confound propterea, for that reason, with praeterea, besides.)

cultu, civilisation, as shown by outward signs; humanitate, refinement, of mind or feeling. The two, taken together, make a kind of hendiadys (see Glossary, Gr. p. 298; G. 695; H. 636. iii. 2): the refined mode of life.

provinciae: the province of Gallia Narbonensis, organized about B.C. 120. Its chief cities were Massilia (Marseilles), an old Greek free city, and the capital, Narbo (Narbonne), a Roman colony. The name Provincia has come down in the modern Provence.

minime saepe commenient, least often penetrate. The verb

*Understand (scilicet).

†The abbreviation “Et.” refers to Halsey’s “Etymology of Latin and Greek” (Ginn, Heath, & Co.).
commeo means, especially, to go back and forth in the way of traffic. The main line of trade lay across the country, by the river Loire. — mercatores: these were traders or pedlers, mostly from the seaport of Massilia; they travelled with pack-horses, mules, and wagons. A very common article of traffic (as with our Indian traders) was intoxicating drinks, — wines from the southern coast; which, especially, as Cæsar says, 'tend to debauch the character.' These people, it is said, would give the traders a boy for a jar of wine.

ea, object of important. — effeminandos, § 300; G. 428; H. 544.
— Germanis, dat. of nearness, &c. (§ 234. a; G. 356; H. 391. i).

trans Rhenum: the Rhine was, in general, the boundary between Gauls and Germans; though, as we shall see, a few German tribes had settled on the hither side.

continenter (adverb from the participle of contineo, hold together), incessantly; strictly, without any interruption.

quoque: i.e. just as the Belgians. — reliquos, rest of: § 193; G. 287. r.; H. 440.

3. qua de causa, and for this reason (§ 180. f; G. 612; H. 453): explained by quod . . . contendunt.

Helvetii, here, it will be noticed, reckoned as Gauls. — praecedunt, excel; lit. walk before.

proeliis, abl. of means; finibus, abl. of separation. — cum prohibent, while they keep them off (pro-habeo). Observe that this conjunction is not properly spelled quum, on account of the old rule forbidding u to follow u or v in the same syllable (§§ 7, 156; G. 7; H. p. 15, foot-note 1); but cum or quom. — ipsi (emphatic), themselves, the Helvetians; eos and eorum refer to the Germans. — bellum, Et. 231.

4. eorum una pars, one division of them (the Gauls), the people being put for the country. — quam . . . dictum est, which (it has been [already] said) the Gauls hold. [Notice that in direct discourse it would be Galli obtinent: the subject-nom. is changed to acc., and the indic. to the infin. after the verb of saying, dictum est, § 272. r.² (R. 39); G. 527; H. 535. i.] Here quam is the object and Gallos the subject of obtinere; while the clause is the subject of dictum est (§§ 329, 330. a²; G. 528; H. 538). — initium, Et. 493. — obtinere (ob-teneo), not obtain, but occupy:
strictly, hold against all claimants; what is called in law adverse possession. (Ob in composition almost always has the sense of opposing or coming in the way of any thing.)—continetur, is bounded.

ab Sequanis, on the side of, &c.—vergit, &c., slopes to the north; that is, the highlands (Cevennes) are along the southern boundary, and the rivers flow in their main course northerly.

septentriones (septem triones, "the seven plough-oxen"), i.e. the constellations of the great and little Bear. The word is used both in the singular (as a compound) and in the plural.

5. Galliae, i.e. Celtic Gaul (the country just described), not Gallia omnis.—inter occasum, &c., north-west, i.e. from the Province.

3. ad Hispaniam, next to Spain, i.e. the Bay of Biscay (§ 259.f; H. 433. 1).

Chap. 2. nobilissimus (root gno, know), of highest birth. Popular revolutions had, among the Gauls as among the Greeks and Romans, mostly dispossessed the old chiefs, or kings; and they had established an annual magistrate called Vergobret (ch. 16). But the heads of the ruling families would naturally be ambitious to recover what they could of the old class power; and Orgetorix is represented as aspiring to create a monarchy in Gaul.

Orgetorix: this name, by a probable derivation, means the slayer.

Messala, &c. (Gr. p. 294): this was B.C. 61, three years before Cæsar’s first campaign in Gaul. The construction of consulibus is abl. absolute (§ 255 & a (R. 35); G. 408; H. 431): not so formal as while Messala and Piso were consuls, but merely in their consulship. This was the usual way of denoting the year.—inductus, Et. 12.

conjurationem, a league, sworn to fidelity by oath (juro).—nobilitatis: from the account given in ch. 4, we see how immense was the class power still held by the nobles.

civitati persuasit, § 227 (R. 16); G. 345; H. 385. ii.: the direct object of persuasit is the clause ut...exirent (§ 331. a; G. 546. r. 1; H. 498); compare id, two lines below [Et. 493]. Votes were easily "persuaded" by such means as Orgetorix possessed. (For the sequence of tenses in exirent, see § 286. Rem.; G. 510; H. 495. ii.).
perfacile (predicate with esse, while its subject is the infinitive clause with potiri): that it was quite easy, since they exceeded all men in valor, to win the empire of all Gaul. — esse, indirect disc., depending on some such word as he said (§ 330 e; G. 652. R. 2.; H. 523. 1. N.).

cum praestarent, subjunctive after cum, meaning since, §§ 325, 326; G. 587; H. 517. — imperio, § 249 (R. 31); G. 405; H. 421.

2. hoc facilius, all the easier: § 250 (R. 33); G. 400; H. 423.
— id, obj. of persuasit (§ 225. c; G. 344; H. 384. 2): we should say, persuaded them of it. Usually with persuadere the dat. and acc. are both used only when the latter is a pronoun. See Madvig, 242. Obs. 1. — loci naturā, by the nature of the country. — continetur, are hemmed in.

una ex parte, on one side: as in undique, on (lit. from) all sides, hinc, on this side, &c. The effect on the senses is supposed to come from the direction referred to. — latissimo, very broad (§ 93. b; H. 444. 1). — qui refers not to flumine, but to Rheno.

3. his rebus, by these causes. — fletbat (imperf.) = it was coming about more and more (§ 277; G. 222; H. 468–9): the subject is the clause ut . . . possent (see § 332. a; G. 558; H. 501. i.).

qua ex parte, on which ground: some editions have qua de causa. — homines (a sort of apposition) = being (as they were) men eager for war. — bellandi [Et. 231], § 218. a (R. 12); G. 374; H. 542. i.

adficiebantur = affliciebantur: for the rule as to assimilation of consonants, compare § 111. f 3. In this edition the unchanged form of the preposition is usually preferred.

4. pro, in proportion to. — multitudo: their numbers, including some small dependent populations, were 368,000 (see ch. 29). — angustos fines = too narrow limits: those here given are about 40 miles each way larger than the present boundaries of Switzerland.

milia passuum, miles (1000 paces), the regular way of stating this measure, milia being acc. of extent of space (R. 23), and passuum partit. genitive. The passus was the stretch from heel to heel, i.e. from where the heel is raised to where it is set down again; and is reckoned at five Roman feet. A Roman mile (mille passuum) was about 400 feet less than ours; it measures the distance which a soldier would march in “a thousand paces.”
patebant: throughout the latter part of this chapter notice the use of the imperfect of description or general statement, compared with the perfect of simple narrative in persuasit above, and constituerunt, &c., below.

Chap. 3. adducti: Et. 12.—permoti: this word seems to show something more than mere "persuasion" on the part of Orgitorix, cf. ch. 21. — quae pertinere. dependent clause in indir. disc., § 341. a; G. 653; H. 524.

Observe that Latin employs different moods for the two forms of quotation, one for what is called Direct and the other for Indirect Discourse. Whenever the writer or speaker takes the responsibility of the statement, it is put in the Indicative, with commands in the Imperative. These are the moods of direct discourse. When anything is told not simply as a fact, but that some one perceived, thought, or said so, the leading statement is put in the Infinitive, and all subordinate parts (including commands) in the Subjunctive. These are the moods of indirect discourse. The narrative in this chapter will require a careful attention to the above distinction. Let the learner here study attentively the introductory paragraph and Remark of § 335 (G. 651; H. 522). In Caesar, nearly all the speeches are given in the form of narrative: that is, in Indirect Discourse.

comparare . . . confirmare: these infinitives are construed as the direct object of the leading verb constituerunt, § 271. a; G. 424; H. 533, i. 1.

quam maximum, as great as possible (§ 93. b, 207; G. 317; H. 170. 2). — jumentorum, beasts of burden, properly, yoke-animals (root yu, kindred with jug in jungo, jugum); carorum, two-wheeled carts, suited to the narrow and rough roads.

2. conficiendas (fac: Et. 256), completing: con in composition generally means together; or, as here, may be simply intensive. — lege: probably passed in a public assembly, which is what a Roman would understand by lex. — in tertium annum confirmant, fix for the third year.

3. sibi suscept, took on himself. Observe the force of sub, as if he put his shoulders under the load. — civitates, clans, such as the Ædui, Sequani, &c., — about 60 in all, — whose territory had no local name, but was known only by that of the clan, which was sovereign and wholly independent, except for voluntary alliances (see ch. 30). The name Gallia itself — as was said of Italy
a few years ago — was only "a geographical expression," implying no political sovereignty.

persuadet, prevails on: suadet would be, simply, urget. — ob-
tinuerat, had held. — amicus, an honorary title given by the
Roman Senate to friendly powers. — ut . . . occuparet, to lay
hands on. This clause is the object of persuadet (§ 331. a;
G. 546; H. 499. 3; for the sequence of tenses, see § 287. e; G.
511. r.¹; H. 492), which in English would be expressed by the in-
finite. — regnum, here, not hereditary authority, but personal
rule: what the Greeks called tyranny. — ante, here an adverb; in
English we should say before him.

Dumnorici (dat. after persuadet, p. 4), Dumnorix, a younger
brother, restless, ambitious, and strongly attached to the old aristoc-
raty of the clan: therefore a bitter enemy of the Roman supremacy.
He afterwards headed a desertion of Cæsar’s cavalry, just before the
second invasion of Britain, but was pursued and killed (v. 6).

4. Divitiaci: this Æduan chief was of the order of Druids; he
had been in Rome, where he made the acquaintance of Cicero and
other eminent Romans. He was thoroughly impressed with the
power and superiority of the Romans, and was a faithful friend and
ally of Cæsar.

The name is by some thought to be a Druid title. The party of Druids,
represented by Divitiacus and Liscus (chap. 16), was the popular
party, strong especially in the large towns: it was opposed by the old clan feel-
ing kept up by military or tribal chiefs (principes), such as Orgetorix and
Dumnorix. The former, or popular party, was headed by the Ædui; the
latter, or aristocratic, by the Sequani and Arverni. The Druids were a
religious or priestly order, jealous of the aristocracy (civitates) of the tribe
or clan, which represented what may be called the patriotic or “native-
Celtic” party (see vi. 12–17). A knowledge of this division helps clear
up many of the events of Cæsar’s campaigns. Divitiacus was a name well
known at Rome. A later writer gives an interesting picture of the Gallic
chief standing and leaning on his shield while he made his appeal before
the senate, declining (as a suppliant) the seat which was in courtesy
offered him.

qui, i.e. Dumnorix. — principatum, highest rank, as distinct
from political power. — plebi acceptus, a favorite with the people
The Helvetic War.

(acceptable to the people). — *ut idem conaretur*, to make the same attempt (lit. attempt the same thing); i.e. put down the constitutional authority, and establish a rule of military chiefs.

4. *perfacile factu* (§ 303. R.; G. 437. R.¹; H. 547), very easy to do: in predicate agreement with *conata perficere*, which is subj. of *esse*, depending on *probat*. — *illis probat*, undertakes to show them, i.e. to Casticus and Dunnorix (conative present, § 276. b; G. 218. R.²; H. 467. 6).

non *esse dubium quin*, there is no doubt (he says) that: here *esse* is infin. of indirect disc.; for the construction of *quin*, see § 319. d; G. 551; H. 501. ii. 2. — *Galliae*, partitive gen. with *plurimum*. — *plurimum possent* = were the strongest. — confirmat, asserts (confidently).

5. *oratione, plea*, or argument (abl. of means). — *fidem et ius-jurandum*, i.e. assurance confirmed by oath (hendiadys). — *regno occupato* (abl. absolute, expressing condition, see §§ 255, 310. a; G. 408. R., 670; H. 431. 2 (3)), in case they should get in their hands the royal power: = *si occupaverimus*. — per tres populos, i.e. Helvetii, Ædui, and Sequani; a league between these, they hope, will secure their power over all Gaul. — *posse*, equivalent to a future infinitive (see § 288. f; G. 240. R.³; H. 537. N. 1); Madvig, 410. Obs. 1). — *Galliae*, governed by *potiri*; see § 249. a; G. 405; H. 410. v. 3.

CHAP. 4. *ea res, this thing* (i.e. conspiracy). The word *res* would often be best rendered by some more specific word in English, as *action, fact, event, estate, &c.*, according to the passage. The Helvetians were prepared to emigrate in a body, and subdue the rest of Gaul; but not to surrender to Orgetorix the power thus acquired. His act was treason,—a conspiracy within a conspiracy.

*moribus suis*, according to their custom (abl. of specification). — *ex vinculis* (= *vinculis*; so hindrance for hinderance in English), out of chains, i.e. standing in chains. A Latin idiom, cf. *ex equo, on horseback*. — *causam dicere* [Et. 10], to plead his cause, a technical expression for being brought to trial.

*damnatum* (sc. *eum*, object of *sequi*), *if condemned*. (In this sentence the subject of *oportebat* is the clause *damnatum . . . sequi*; the subject of *sequi* is *poenam*; and *ut . . . cremaretur* is in apposition with *poenam*, defining the punishment: § 332. f; G.)
559; H. 501. iii.) Translate, *it must needs be that the penalty should overtake him, if condemned, of being burned with fire.* (For the ablative in 1, see § 57. b¹; G. 60. 3. a; H. p. 35, foot-note 2. This form is often used by Cæsar and earlier writers.) Observe that *urere* would mean merely *to burn*, while *cremare* is *to burn to ashes.*

2. *die constituta, on the day appointed,* § 256 (R. 34); G. 392; II. 429: for the gender of *die*, see § 30. a. 73; G. 70; H. 123. — *causae dictionis,* [Et. 10], of the *pleading of the cause* (it would be more usual to say *dicenda*); *dictionis* depends on *die*, and *causae* is the obj. gen. after *dictionis.*

*ad judicium* [Et. 125, 10], near the [place of] judgment. — *familiam,* clansmen: by Roman use this would mean slaves; but it is more probable that it here means all who bore his name or regarded him as their chief. — *ad . . . decem milia,* to [the number of] 10,000. — *clientes, retainers,* volunteer or adopted followers; *obaeatos, debtors,* the only class of slaves that seems to have been known in Gaul, see vi. 13, 2. — *conduxit;* Et. 12. — *per eos, by their means* (§ 246. b; G. 403; H. 415. i. 1, N. 1).

3. *cum . . . conaretur,* when the state attempted: relative time, § 323. N.¹; G. 586; H. 521. ii. 2. — *neque . . . suspicio* (the true spelling of this word), *and the suspicion is not wanting.* The negative *neque* (= and not) is often best translated by dividing in this way.

*quin . . . consciverit* (conscisco), that he decreed death to himself (his own death), i.e. committed suicide. Observe that *ipse, self,* agrees in Latin rather with the subject; not, as in English, with the object. “Orgetorix (it will be noticed) was never in the power of the magistrates, he was not put in chains, nor did he die in prison.”

**Chap. 5. nihil minus** (often written in one word, as in English), *nevertheless.* — *constituerant, had resolved:* observe the pluperfect, as following the historical present. — *ut . . . exsant,* in apposition with *id:* as we should say, “namely, to go forth.”

*ubi arbitratii sunt,* when they judged: observe the regular use of the perfect indicative with *ubi, postquam,* &c., § 324; G. 563; H. 518. — *rem, enterprise.* — *oppida, towns,* fortified and capable of defence; *vicos, villages,* i.e. groups of houses about a single spot. (In a city, *vicus* is a street, considered as the houses occupied; *via* is the travelled way between them.) The villages and houses were
burned, partly to cut off hope of return; partly to prevent their being occupied by their enemies, the Germans. — incendunt, set fire to.

praeterquam [id] quod, excepting what (that which): observe that in this phrase quam means than, and praeter is the comparative of praes: lit. further than what. — domum, § 258. b; G. 410; H. 380. 21, following reditionis. — comburunt, burn up. — subeunda, Et. 493. — molita cibaria, ground corn (flour): every man to take his own supply for three months’ use.


Boles (from whom the name Bohemia is derived): a Celtic tribe, whom the great German advance had cut off from their kins-people towards the west, and who were now wandering homeless, some of them within the limits of Gaul.

5. Noricum, &c., now eastern Bavaria and upper Austria. — receptos . . . adsciscunt: in English, in a sentence like this, we should use a separate verb instead of the participle (§ 292; G. 667; H. 549. 5). Translate, they receive the Boii into their own number (ad se), and vote them in as allies to themselves.

Chap. 6. omnino, in all, i.e. only. — itinera, itineribus [Et. 493]: observe the form of this relative sentence (common in Cæsar), which gives the antecedent noun in both clauses. It is usually omitted in one or the other (see § 200; G. 617; H. 453. 2): in English, almost always in the relative clause; in Latin, quite as often in the other. — possent (potential subj. § 311. a; G. 602; H. 485), i.e. they might go out [if they desired].

Sequanos, i.e. the region now called Franche Comté, north of the Rhone. — inter . . . Rhodanum: the pass now guarded by the Fort l’Ecluse, about nineteen Roman (eighteen and a half English) miles below Geneva (compare note, chap. 8: 1). The Rhone at this part was the boundary of the Roman province. The choice was between crossing the river, and proceeding along its northern bank.

— flumen: Et. 345. — vix qua, &c., where carts could scarcely be hauled in single file (see § 95. a; G. 95; H. 174. 2). — autem (a mild adversative), now.
2. *multo facilius*, *much easier* in itself; but it required them to crush the Roman legion at Geneva, and force their way through about 50 miles of territory occupied by the Roman arms.—*prop-terea quod*, see note to Chap. 1.². — *nuper pacati erant*, *had been lately subdued* (reduced to peace). A rebellion "of despair" (B.C. 61), had been subdued by C. Pomptinus.

*locis*, loc. abl. (§ 258. f; G. 385; H. 425. II. 2). — *vado, by ford* (*wading, vadendo*). The bed of the Rhone has changed somewhat since Cæsar’s time. There is now but one ford between Geneva and the *Pas-de-l’Ecluse*.

*Genua* (*Genoa*) is nearest to the modern German name (*Genf*); it is also spelled *Genava* and *Geneva*.

3. *sexe persuasuros* [*esse*] (notice that in the future infinitive, used in indirect discourse, *esse* is usually omitted; in direct disc. it would be *persuadebimus*), *they thought they should persuade*; its object is *Allobrogius*. — *bono animo* = *well disposed*: five years before, their envoys in Rome had intrigued with Catiline’s agents, whom they at length betrayed (see Cicero, Cat. iii. § 22).

4. a. d. v. Kal. Apr., nominally March 28 (§§ 376, 259. e; G. App.; H. 642. 3). According to the astronomer Leverrier, the true date was March 24, the day of the spring equinox; Mommsen makes it as late as April 16. The calendar was in a state of great confusion at this time, and till Cæsar’s reform, 12 years later.

**CHAP. 7. Cæsari**: he was at this time at Rome, having laid down his consulship, preparing to set out for his province. Every consul was entitled to the governorship of a province for one year after his term of office, and by a special law Cæsar’s government (consisting of the three *provinces* of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum) had been conferred for a term of five years. This news hastened his movements.

*id*, in appos. with *eos . . . conari* (*the real subject of esset*), *that they were attempting to force a march, &c.* — *maturat, hastens*; travelling, his biographers say, 100 miles in a day, and reaching the Rhone in a week, according to Plutarch. The subject, *Cæsar*, is here omitted with the leading verb, being expressed in the relative clause. — *ab urbe*: this word, unless some other place is indicated, always means Rome, the city. Cæsar was *near*, but not in the
city, not being permitted to enter it while holding the military authority (imperium) of proconsul. Hence he says ab, not ex.

quam maximis potest itineribus (§ 93. b; G. 317; H. 170. 2); potest is usual with Cæsar in this phrase, which is elliptical. In full it would be, tam magnis quam maximis, as great as the greatest; i.e. the greatest possible (Chap. 10.3).

ulteriorem, i.e. beyond the Alps. The northern part of modern Italy was still called Gallia Cisalpina, and was a part of Cæsar's province.

2. provinciae (dat.) imperat, makes requisition on the province; i.e. Transalpine Gaul.

The Roman Legion. — The normal strength of the legion has been variously estimated up to 6000 men. We have reason to believe that in Cæsar's army it did not exceed 5000 (see note on Bk. IV. Chap. 37). As to a far more important fact, the actual strength in the field, we are much better informed. It seems quite clear that the average field strength of Cæsar's legion did not vary far from about 3600 men; and that number we will consider the basis of our estimates. This legion, or brigade, as we should perhaps call it, was divided into 10 cohorts, or small battalions, of about 360 men each. The cohort consisted of 3 maniples or companies, about 120 strong. As the cohort was the tactical unit of the legion, so the maniple was the tactical unit of the cohort. Each of these military units contained from day to day essentially the same men, under the same officers. The maniple, however, was divided, on a different principle, into two equal parts, called ordines, or centuriae (centuries). When the men fell in for morning roll-call, for instance, the maniple was formed according to height. The taller soldiers would thus form the first ordo, the rest, the second. Thus some men might one day be in one ordo, and another day in the other, as on successive days different squads might be detailed from the maniple for guard duty or other special service. The ordo corresponded exactly to the platoon in an American company.

The officers of the legion were the tribunes (tribuni militum) and the centurions (centuriones). Of the former, each legion had six, who had charge in turn, two at a time. They did not command the legion in battle unless specially detailed for that purpose. Their duties were what is called administrative, i.e. having to do with the levying and discharge, the equipment and supplies of the troops; and judicial, i.e. they tried and punished offenders against military law. Of the centurions, the real leaders of the legion, there were two to each maniple. The senior (prior)
commanded the first platoon, and the junior (posterior), the second. The cohorts and their centurions were graded in rank from the tenth up to the first. Thus the centurions of the first cohort were of the first rank (primorum ordinum). The centurions occupied a place about midway between that of a commissioned officer and that of a non-commissioned officer in a modern army. They commanded the maniples, and in battle the first centurion of the first cohort may almost be said to have commanded the legion (but see note on Chap. 52). On the other hand, their duties were much like those of a sergeant. They were chosen from the ranks for their experience and skill, and were seldom appointed to a higher position. The tribunes, together with the officers in the general staff of the army, were usually appointed from the noble families at Rome through some political influence.

3. certiores facti sunt, were informed (made more certain). — qui dicerent, who were [instructed] to say (§ 317; G. 544; H. 497. 1.)—sibi . . . liceat: observe carefully the construction of the indirect discourse (§ 336. a and b; G. 653; H. 523-531): in direct discourse it would be, "Nobis est in animo ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propere qua quod alius iter habemus nullum; rogamus, ut tua voluntate id nobis facere liceat." A little attention to this in the beginning will relieve this construction, very frequent in Cæsar, of all difficulty.
sibi, dat. of possession (§ 231; G. 349; H. 387); of esse, the subj. is the clause iter . . . facere, while the whole passage sibi . . . liceat, is the object of dicerent. Render, that they had [it was to them] in mind to make, &c. — aliu — . . . nullum, like the English, other passage had they none. — rogare: of this verb the subject is se, understood; and the object is the clause ut . . . liceat (§ 331. a; G. 546, and R.¹; H. 498. 1); they begged it might be allowed them to do this with his consent.

4. L. Cassium . . . occisum [esse], object of memoria tenebat, as a phrase of knowing (§ 272. R.¹; G. 527; H. 371. IV. 535. 1). This defeat happened B.C. 107, in the terrible invasion of the Cimbri or Teutons, the Helvetians being their allies. "The army of Cassius was one of six swept away by these barbarians."

6. sub jugum [Et. 125] under the yoke (hence the word subjugate). The jugum was made by sticking two spears in the ground, and laying another across them above. To pass under this was equivalent to laying down arms by a modern army.

concedendum [esse], depending on putabat, impersonal: thought that no concession should be made, lit. "that it must not be yielded."

homines, subj. of temperaturos [esse], depending on existimabant: he judged that men of hostile temper (abl. of quality, § 251; G. 402; H. 419. II.), if the opportunity were given (abl. absolute) of making a march (gerundive, §§ 297, 298; G. 429; H. 544. 1) through the province, would not (neque) refrain from wrong and mischief.

5. dum . . . convenirent (§ 328; G. 574; H. 519), until the men should muster. — diem se sumpturum [esse], he would take time. si quid . . . reverterentur (subj. for imperat. § 339; G. 655; H. 523. III.): in direct discourse, if you wish anything (said he), return on the 13th of April.

CHAP. 8. eā legione, with that legion (abl. of instrum.). In this sentence, observe how all the qualifying clauses come first, and the direct objects, murum, fossam, come next before the leading verb perducit (§ 343; G. 676; H. 560); while each relative belongs to the verb which comes next after it unless another relative intervenes, — a very convenient rule in analyzing a long and difficult sentence.
Notes: Cæsar.

*decem novem, nineteen,* following the windings of the river (see note, Chap. 6). — *murum:* this rampart, or earthwork, was on the south side of the river, leaving the passage undisputed along the northern bank.

The banks of the Rhone in this part are generally rugged and steep, with sharp ravines; there are only five short reaches — a little over three miles in all — in this course of eighteen miles requiring defences. The current is in general quite rapid. Some remains of Cæsar’s works can still be traced, according to the French engineers who surveyed the ground under the orders of Napoleon III. According to Cæsar’s statement, the work was continuous (this is the meaning of *perducit*). This undoubtedly means that, after the five accessible points were strengthened by artificial defences, the entire left bank of the Rhone, from Geneva to *Pas-de-l’Ecluse,* formed a continuous barrier against the Helvetians. The construction of any one of the fortifications may be described as follows: —

Along the crest of the ridge facing the river, the slope was cut so as to be vertical, or nearly so, and then a trench was hollowed. The earth dug out was partly thrown up to increase the height of the wall, and quite likely

![](image)

**Plan I. Fortifications on the Rhone.** Bk. I. Ch. 8.

The dotted lines indicate wall and trench; the dotted squares, redoubts. In the lower corner at the right is a vertical section of *murus* and *fossa.* From Genf (Geneva, see note on Chap. 6) to *Pas-de-l’Ecluse* (or *Pas-d’Ecluse*), 18½ (English) miles by the river, is only half that distance in a straight line.

In part thrown down the hill. At all events, it seems probable that the measure of 16 feet is the distance from the bottom of the ditch to the top
of the wall. Thus the work formed really little more than a trench with
scarp higher than the countercarp. Then the crest was fortified with a
breastwork of palisades, behind which the soldiers were protected while
hurling their missiles at the enemy. This entire series of works, with the
force at Cæsar’s command, could not have occupied more than two or
three days.

2. castella (literally “little fortifications”), redoubts. These were
constructed on the same plan as the camp, but were much smaller.
They were rectangular, and surrounded by wall and ditch. In them
were stationed guards (praesidia). The redoubts were sufficiently
numerous, so that the guard from one or another could quickly
reach any point in the lines that might be threatened.—quod facilius
possit, that he may the more easily: the usual construction (§ 317.
b; G. 545. 2; H. 497. II. 2).—se invito (abl. abs.), against his will.

3. negat se posse, says he cannot. —si conetur, future condition
in indirect discourse: direct, it would be si conabimini.—
prohibiturum [se esse] ostendit, shows that he shall stop them.

4. dejecti [Et. 493], cast down: de in composition generally has
the meaning down.—nonnunquam, sometimes (§ 150 and a; G. 448 and
r.4; H. 553. 1).—si . . . possent, an indirect question
(§ 334. f; G. 603, 462. 2; H. 529. 1. n.1), depending on conati:
trying if they could break through.—conatu, abl. of separation,
following destiterunt, desisted.

CHAP. 9. Sequanis invitis (abl. abs. of condition), in case the
Sequani should refuse.—sua sponte, by their own influence: a rare
meaning of this phrase, which is generally, of their own accord.—
eo deprecatore (abl. absolute denoting means), by his means as
advocate.—impetrarent, they might obtain [it].

2. gratiā, personal influence; largitio ele, lavish gifts and hospi-
talities, like those of old chiefs of the clan.—duxerat: this word
is used of the man who marries a wife, i.e. he leads her to his own
house; of the woman it is said, nubit viro (dat.), i.e. she puts on
the veil for him. This refers to the flame-colored veil (flammum)
worn by the bride during the wedding ceremonies.—novis rebus
(dat. § 227. e; G. 346. R.2; H. 384. I.), revolution, change in the
state.—studebat, eagerly favored.—habere obstrictas, to keep
close bound.
3. *impetrat* has for obj. *ut... patiantur*; and *perfectit*, uti ...
*dent*: obtains (from their good will) *that they will allow*
the *Helvetii* to go, &c., *and brings it about that they exchange*
hostages.

7. **Chap. 10. renuntiatur**, *word is brought back*, i.e. from messengers sent to ascertain: the subject is the clause *Helvetii esse*, &c. (see note Chap. 7 ³).—*Tolosatum*, the people of *Tolosa*, the modern *Toulouse*.

The Santones give the name to the modern province of *Saintonge*, on the Bay of Biscay. This is so far from the borders of the Province, as to show that Cæsar was only searching for a pretext; for of course he had no authority to interfere, unasked, with a passage through the territory of the Sequani. One motive in writing the Commentaries, we must remember, was to produce political effect in Rome.

2. *sieret*: Et. 256. — *futurum* [esse] *ut haberet*, &c., *it would be to the great peril of the province* (§ 329. N.; G. 507; H. 501. 1) *that it should have*: the clause *ut... haberet* being subject of *futurum* [esse], a kind of periphrastic future (§ 288. f; G. 240; H. 537. 3) carried into the past by sequence of tenses (*intellegebat*).—*locis* (loc. abl.) *patentibus, in an open country*: the S. W. part of Gaul is a broad river valley, giving easy access to the province.

3. *munitioni praefecit*, *he put in command of the fortification*. *Labienum*: this was Cæsar's best officer, a prominent and influential politician, of strongly democratic sympathies. He served Cæsar faithfully through the Gallic wars, but when the Civil war broke out, he joined what he conceived to be the party of the republic, went over to Pompey, and was killed at Munda.

*legatum, legate, lieutenant*: no English word exactly translates this. The *legatus* was employed by the commander as his trusted assistant in the most important duties,—to negotiate treaties, to lead independent armies, to command single legions. His place was thus entirely distinct from the what is known in modern armies as the general staff, or from the commander's aides-de-camp. There were generally three *legati* assigned to the commander by the Senate, his wishes being considered in the selection. Cæsar (who was
now, through the triumvirate, all-powerful in Rome) had ten. — in Italian: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul, now coming to be regarded as a part of Italy.

magnis itineribus, as in Chap. 7. It is also the usual phrase for forced marches of an army. The ordinary day’s march of the Romans was about 15 miles; a magnum iter was from 20 to 25 miles.

Each legionary carried, besides his arms and armor, a portion of the entrenching tools (spades, saws, baskets, etc.), spare clothing, material for repairing dress or equipments, his blanket (sagum), hand-mills, cooking utensils, and rations. On a long march, these last would be carried by the pack animals. As Cæsar was making a forced march in pursuit of the Helvetians, however, it seems likely in the present case that his men had to carry a good share of their food. Additional supplies followed the army in boats on the Saône (see Chap. 16). The ration for one day was about 2 pounds, and consisted of coarse flour, or unground grain which the soldier must grind for himself. The various articles of baggage were made
up into bundles (sarcinae), and these were bound to the upper end of a pole (furca) some 5 or 6 ft. long. On the march this pole was carried on the shoulder. During a halt it could be rested on the ground, and the soldier could lean on it for support. These poles (forked at the top) were a device of the ingenious Marius, and hence were called by the soldiers "Marius's mules" (muli Mariani). The entire weight carried by each man could not have been less than 60 pounds; not very different from the load a modern soldier has on the march.

Aquileiam: an important Roman colony at the head of the Adriatic. It continued to be the chief port of trade for this region till outgrown by Venice. —educit: Et. 12.

qua proximum iter, i.e. by way of Susa and Turin, by Mt. Genèvre. Ocelum is identified with Oulx (or Houix), a little south-west of Turin. The more direct way by Mt. Cenis began to be used under Augustus.

4. compluribus . . . pulsis, interlocked order, his agreeing with pulsis (§ 344. h). —ab Ocelo pervenit, came through from Ocelum. —trans Rhodanum, towards the west, as the Rhone, at Lyons, turns abruptly to the south. His object was to head off the Helvetians, who had advanced westwardly, north of the upper course of the river, and had now reached the territory of the Āedui. Cæsar's army by this time amounted to nearly 25,000 men; the Helvetians had between 80,000 and 100,000 warriors to oppose him, with (probably) at least 8500 wagons.

Chap. 11. jam traduxerant [Et. 12], had already brought across; per angustias, i.e. through the Pas de l'Ecluse, before described. The emperor Napoleon III. enters into a calculation to show that Cæsar's absence cannot have occupied less than two months; so that the following events took place in the latter part of June. —rogatum (supine), to ask.

2. ita se, understand dicentes or some such word. In direct discourse, this will be, "Ita [nos] . . . meriti sumus, ut pæne in conspectu exercitus tui, . . . liberi nostri . . . non debuerint": We have so deserved . . . that our fields ought not to have been wasted, &c.

meritos: "Alone among the Gauls," says Tacitus, "the Āedui claim the name of brotherhood with the Roman people" (Ann. xi.
The Helvetian War.

25. There was even a later fiction of a common descent from Troy for the Arverni (Lucan, i. 427). So it was an old notion that Britain had its name from Brutus, a grandson of Ascanius.

3. Haedui Ambarri, the Ædui near the Arar (or Saône), occupying the angle between that river and the Rhone. (Some editions omit Haedui in this title; others write, eodem tempore quo Ædui, Ambarri quoque.)

necessarii, close connections (bound by necessitudo, or community of interests of any kind); consanguinei, blood-kindred.

depopulatis agris . . . prohibere, their fields were already wasted, and they were with difficulty attempting to keep off, &c. (see § 292. R.; G. 667. R.1; H. 549. 5).

8. 4. nihil esse reliqui (part. gen.), there is nothing left to them, except the very soil of the fields.

5. non exspectandum (esse), must not wait (lit. it was not to be waited). — sociorum: the Helvetians would be sure to levy upon the allies of the Romans wherever they found them.

Chap. 12. flumen, &c., the Arar (Saône) is a river which flows through, &c.; not between, which would be expressed by dividit. The Saône joins the Rhone about 75 miles south-west of Lake Geneva. — lenitate, not so much slowness as smoothness; contrasting not only with the Rhone, but with the swiftness and turbidness of the rivers in Italy.

ratibus, raftis of logs; lintribus, canoes of hollowed logs, joined, perhaps, two and two, with a broad deck covering them. The swift streams of the south of Europe are often crossed by boats swung from moorings at some distance up-stream, and carried across either way by the force of the current. — in . . . fluat, indir. question following judicari.

2. exploratores, scouts; a detachment of cavalry always preceded the army and scoured the country in every direction to get news of the enemy. — partes, object of duxisse; flumen governed by trans in composition (§ 239. b; G. 330. R.1; H. 376), had conveyed three-fourths . . . across this river. — Ararim: for the acc. in im, see §§ 55. d, 56. a1 (names of rivers); H. 62. III. i. — reliquam = relictam: in fact this adjective is, from its meaning, a kind of participle.
de tertia vigilia: the night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four equal watches, the third beginning at midnight. This movement took place directly after (de) the watch began.

3. concidit (con, caedo), cut to pieces. — mandarunt = mandaverunt (§ 128. a; G. 191); H. 235), abandoned (lit. gave in hand, manu, do); abdiderunt, hid (lit. put away).

pagus: this "district" (Tigurinus) is about the modern Zürich. The inhabitants of the pagus probably composed a clan, and formed a division of the force.

4. L. Cassium, see Chap. 7.—deorum: this reference to a special providence is noticeable in so stern a realist as Cæsar, and was probably for political effect. Compare his curious account of the divine omens which accompanied his victory over Pompey, B.c. iii. 105.

quae pars intulerat . . . ea persolvit, render that part which, &c. (see § 200. b. n.; G. 622; H. 445. 9).

poenas persolvit, paid the penalty. Punishment was regarded among the ancients, not as suffering to be inflicted, but as of the nature of a fine or penalty to be paid; hence sumere, to inflict, and dare or solvere, to suffer.

In 1862, numerous remains were discovered buried in two trenches, probably of those slain in this battle, — "pell-mell, skeletons of men, women, and children." — Hist. of Julius Caesar.

5. injurias [Et. 125], wrongs, not simply damage, as the word came to mean afterwards. From Cæsar's point of view, an offensive war against Rome is necessarily wrong. Besides, hostility or friendship towards a foreign state might become a family tradition, and so a bounden duty. — ultus est, avenged.

soceri: L. Calpurnius Piso, father of Shakespeare's Calphurnia, and consul of the present year (see end of Chap. 6).

Chap. 13. consequit, overtake (hence the frequent meaning acquire). — pontem faciendum curat, has a bridge made (§ 294. d; G. 431; H. 544). — pontem; with the van of the army marched a body of engineers, who could rapidly bridge any ordinary river. This was very likely a bridge of boats. It must be observed, however, that the Romans always preferred a ford to a bridge, whenever practicable. They had no powder to keep dry. — in, upon, not simply over.
2. cum . . . intellegent, clause of relative time (§§ 323, 325; G. 586; H. 521. II. 2). — id, object of fecisse, and in appos. with ut . . . transirent. — diebus viginti, in the course of 20 days (§ 256; G. 392; H. 429).

legatos, a participle of lego (depute), used as a noun; hence, diplomatically, envoy or ambassador, and in military affairs lieutenant. — legationis, a collective noun, and so answering (by synesis) to the plural legatos. — Divico, now an old man, since the battle in which he was commander took place 49 years before.

9. 3. si pacem, &c.: compare the form of direct discourse given to this address, Grammar (A. & G.), p. 251. — in eam partem . . . ubi, to whatever part, i.e. of Gaul. They were not, however, to be turned back from their migration. — reminiscertur (subj. for imperative): remember [said he]. — incommodi, disaster (lit. inconvenience; cf. "the late unpleasantness," for our civil war): for the government of the genitive, see § 219; G. 375; H. 406. II.

4. improviso, unexpectedly, by surprise (properly abl. abs. § 255. b; G. 438. r.²; H. 431. n.²). — suis, to their own people (§ 190. a; G. 195. r.¹; H. 441. 1). — ne tribueret (for imperative), he should not ascribe it. — dolo, craft: insidiis, ambuscade.

5. ne committeret ut, &c., i.e. let him not commit the error, &c. (§ 332. e; G. 557; H. 498. II. n.²). — ubi constitissent, where they had taken their stand (notice the intensive force of con).

CHAP. 14. eo (abl. of cause) minus . . . quod, . . . teneret, he had all the less hesitation because he kept in mind, &c.

eo gravius . . . quo minus (§§ 106. c, 250. r.; G. 400; H. 423); he was the more incensed, in proportion as the Roman people had less deserved, &c.

2. qui si fuisset, now if they (the Roman people) had been. — non fuisse (for fuit of dir. disc.), it would not have been. — eo deceptum [esse], they had been deceived by this.

quare timeret = propter quod, referring to id (understood), subject of commissum [esse], in the sense of anything that should give them fear, and follows intellegent: because they (the Roman people) did not know what they had done to be afraid of.

3. quod si (§ 240. b; G. 331. r.² 612. r.¹; H. 453. 6) . . . vellet, but if they should consent to forget, &c. — num posse = could they, &c.
injuriarum, obj. of memoriam. — eo invito = against his will. — quod ... vexassent is a clause of fact, properly indicative, § 333; G. 525; H. 516, but subj. by indirect discourse.

4. sua, their own (the Helvetians); so se tulisse (= intulisse), that they had committed. The clause quod ... admirarentur is subj. of pertinere: As for their boasting [because they boasted] so insolently of their victory, &c., it comes (amounts) to the same thing (lit. to the same place).

5. quos ... his, to grant an interval of prosperity and longer impunity to those whom they wish to punish for their guilt: the relative clause, as usual, preceding the demonstrative (§ 201. c; G. 622; H. 572. II. n.). "Divico had not said anything in the way of direct boasting. This eloquent passage was perhaps an answer to his manner, or to the fact that he was the same Divico who had slain Lucius Cassius." Observe the change to primary tenses, when the language of Cæsar expresses a general truth.


10. Chap. 15. equitatum: the cavalry was wholly made up of contingents furnished by subjects (of the provinces) or allies (as the ÄEdui). — coactum habebat, lit. had collected (§ 292. c; G. 230; H. 388. I. n.): more strictly held (had in hand) after being collected.

2. cupidius, too eagerly (§ 86. b, 93. a; G. 312; H. 444. 1). — novissimum agmen, the rear: agmen is the army in line of march (ago); and its newest part is that which comes along last. — alieno loco, an unfavorable ground ("another’s"); so suo would be favorable ("one’s own").

3. sublati (tollo), elated. — equitibus, abl. of means. — subsistere, to make a stand. — novissimo agmine (loc. abl.), at their rear.

4. satis habebat, held it sufficient. — hostem ... prohibere, in appos. with satis, as object of habebat.

5. ita, uti, in such a way that (correl.). — quinis, senis, distributives, implying that this was the constant or average distance between the two armies. The country here is very irregular and broken; so that it was impossible for Cæsar to get any advantage by a rapid march, or by an attack on the Helvetic rear.
**Chap. 16.** cotidie = quotidie (see § 7; G. 7). — Haeduos frumentum, demanded corn of the Āeduī (§ 239. c; G. 333; H. 374). — flagitāre, historical infinitive (§ 275. r.; G. 650; H. 536. 1). — flagitāre means an earnest and repeated demand accompanied with reproaches. — frigora, the cold seasons, or spells of cold: not the cold in general. The climate of Gaul in Cāsar's day was much colder than that of France now (see Parke Godwin's Hist. of France, p. 11). The change has come from clearing away the forests, and draining the marshes which then covered much of the country. — frumenta, the plural is regularly used of standing grain. — pabuli, green fodder (root in pasco). The crops of grain (frumenta) were not ripe because it was too early in the season (about the last of June); the green fodder was scarce because Cāsar was following in the path of the Helvetians, whose thousands of cattle had swept the country bare. — frumento, object of uti. — flumine, § 258. g; but G. 387 and H. 420. — navibus, § 248; G. 403; H. 414. 4. — propterea . . . quod, see Chap. i. 3. — ab Arare: i.e. towards the valley of the Loire, westerly.

2. ducere (histor. infin.), dragged on. — conferri, &c. [frumentum]: as English has no present passive form, translate, "said it was getting together, was coming in, was close by." — metiri, measure out: the allowance was about 30 pounds a fortnight. — Divitiaco, Lisco, abl. in appos. with principibus. — summo magistratui, praeerat, held the chief office, of which the Celtic title was guerg breth, "executor of judgment," represented in Latin by vergobretus. — in suos, over his people.

**I. 14-17.** 3. necessario (attrib.), at so urgent a time; propinquis (not attrib., but pred.), with the enemy so near.

**Chap. 17.** privatim plus possint, have more power in private station: some copies read privati, as private men.

2. improba oratione, reckless talk. — ne (§ 331. c; G. 548; H. 505. II.) . . . praeferre, from bringing (lest they bring) the corn which they were bound to furnish; [representing that] if they could no longer hold the chief rank in Gaul, they prefer the rule of Gauls to [that of] Romans.

This sentence gives a good example of what is called a Various Reading. It must be remembered that these Commentaries were first written as rough
notes, or memoranda, and were afterwards copied by hand for centuries before their form was fixed by printing. The sentence as it stands is that given in the best editions; some of which, however, have preferre, bear, for præferre, prefer. In the above rendering, praestare has the active meaning, to furnish: and quam the meaning than, after the comparative implied in præferre. This makes the sense clear, but is awkward and hard. To remedy it, the neatest and best conjecture is to put the pause after conserant, read debeat for the plural debeat, and perferre for praeferre, thus: "dettorre ne frumentum conserant; quod praestare debeat, si jam principatum Galliae obtinerem non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperium perferre." Here quod is because, and quam follows the comparative in praestare, taken in the neuter sense of excel: and the passage reads, from bringing in the corn, since it must be better (praestare debeat) to bear, &c. But there is no manuscript authority for debeat. Some would read dicant for debeat: since, they say, it is better, &c.; but this is mere conjecture. Others, again, put satius esse after perferre; but this is only an explanatory note, written by some early editor.

neque dubitare quin, § 319. d; G. 551. 2; H. 505. I. — debeat: a word given thus in brackets is one of which the authority is doubtful; it may sometimes require to be omitted in translation. — superaverint, perf. subjunctive for fut. perf. ind. (same form) of direct disc. — Haeduis, dative, § 229; G. 346; H. 385. II. 2.

3. a se, i.e. by Liscus, as chief magistrate. — quin etiam, nay even: often written as one word. — quam diu, as long as. — necessario, unavoidably; coactus, on compulsion (being forced).

Chap. 18. pluribus præsentibus (abl. abs.), in the presence of several. — jactari, bandied about (freq. of jacio). — Liscum retinet, [but] keeps Liscus. The omission of the conjunction (asyndeton) is very common in Cæsar's rapid narrative.

2. ex solo, from him apart. — secreto (secerno), each by himself. — summa audacia, [a man] of the utmost boldness.

3. portoria, customs-dues, levied at the frontier, collected (apparently) as by the Romans through publicani, who bid for the contract at public auction. The other vectigalia, farmed out for collection in the same way, were tithes on farm produce, rent of public pastures, &c. — redempta, agreeing with vectigalia, and taken with habere, had bought in (see Chap. 15). — illo licente, when he bid.

4. ad largiendum, for gifts, to buy political support.
12. largiter posse, had extensive power. — causā, for the sake: as always when thus following a genitive. — potentiae, power, as an attribute of the person: potestas is power to do anything; facultas, opportunity; imperium, military authority. — Biturigibus, near the modern Bourges. — ex matre, on the mother's side (a half-sister). — collocasse, had contracted in marriage (nuptum).

5. favere . . . Helvetii (dat.), he favored and wished well to the Helvetians. — adfinitatem, family alliance. — suo nomine, on his own account (a mercantile phrase applying to business debts, &c.).

6. si quid accidat (a mild phrase), in case of any disaster. — imperio (abl. of time and cause), under the rule.

7. quod . . . factum, a kind of adverbial phrase = in regard to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish fought the other day.

Chap. 19. res, facts. — accederent, were added: accedo, approach, is used as a kind of passive of addo. — inter eos, i.e. the Helvetii and Sequani. — injussu suo, &c., without his authority (see § 71. b; G. 76. B; H. 134) or that of the state: here suo is equivalent to a genitive. — inscientibus ipsis, without his own knowledge or that of the Æduli. magistratu: Liscus was vergobret. — in eum animadverteret; should proceed against or punish him (see vocab.).

2. quod . . . cognoverat, that he well knew, &c. (the present inceptive, cognosco, having the meaning to learn). This clause, in apposition with unum, might in English be introduced by some such word as namely. — studium, attachment as partisan; voluntatem, good will as friend. — supplicio, punishment or execution. This word is derived from the adjective supplex, down-bent, signifying on the bended knee; i.e. either as a suppliant for mercy, or (as here) to receive the blow of the executioner.

3. prius quam conaretur, before he should attempt; see § 327; G. 579; H. 520. — per connects Procillum with colloquitur. — principem, a leading man. — cuī, &c.: an easier construction would be cuius fidei omnes res credebant; summam fidem, full confidence.

13. commonefācit, warns or notifies (see vocab.). — ipso, i.e. Divitiacus. — apud se, in his (Cæsar's) presence. — offensione animi, displeasure (of Divitiacus); ipse, which follows, refers to
Notes: Cæsar.

Cæsar: he hopes, in what steps he takes or orders to be taken against Dumnorix, not to incur the resentment of his brother.

Chap. 20. ne quid gravius (a common phrase), no severe measures. Notice that gravius is an adjective. What does it modify?

2. scire se, &c., "I know," said he, "that this is true, and no one can be more pained at it than I."—plus doloris: except as an adverb, this comparative is mostly used, as here, with the participle genitive.—capere [Et. 33].—ipse se, suam, sese, all refer to Divitiacus; ille to Dumnorix, which is also the subject of crevisset and uteretur.—opibus ac nervis = sinews of power, obj. of uteretur.—gratiam, as well as perniciem, takes suam.—amore fraterno (§ 190. b; G. 363. r.; H. 395. n.²), love to his brother.

3. si quid accidisset = if anything should happen (a Euphemism); plur. representing fut. perf. ind. (acciderit) by sequence of tenses: a future condition (§ 307. f; G. 659; H. 525. 2).—futurum [esse] uti . . . averterentur (periphrastic future infin., § 147. e. 288. f; G. 240; H. 537. 3), the heart of all Gaul would be turned from him.

4. rogat [ut] faciat, see § 331. f. r.; G. 546. r.³; H. 499. 2.—tanti, of so great account (§ 252. a; G. 379; H. 405).—condonet: "Cæsar pretended to yield to the prayers of the Druid, but in fact he yielded to necessity. He was in great straits, with a warlike enemy in front and doubtful allies around him, on whom his army was dependent for food" (Long: compare Bk. v. Chap. 6).

praeterita [Et. 493], things bygone ("the past").—Dumnorigi ponit (= adponit), sets over him.—custodes, spies.

Chap. 21. qualis esset, &c., indir. question after cognoscere- rent. —natura, character; qualis . . . ascensus = the chance of ascending it [what kind of an ascent there was] at [various points of] its circuit.—qui cognoscerent (§ 317; G. 632; H. 497. 1): the antecedent of qui is quosdam, or some such word, as object of misit, he sent men to ascertain.

2. facilem, sc. ascendum. —pro praetore, with powers of praetor. The praetor, like the consul, held the imperium or power to command; a legatus, not possessing this in his own right, might be temporarily invested with it by his commander. Labienus, and
perhaps others of Cæsar’s lieutenants, had the *imperium* in their own right, by special grant.

14. *ducibus* (pred.), *as guides.* — *qui . . . cognoverant*, i.e. of the party of reconnoissance. — *consilii*, part. gen. limiting *quid.* — *de quarta vigilia*, about 2 A.M., the sun at this season rising here about 4 o’clock. — *contendit*, pushed on.

3. *Sullae, Crassi*: Sulla (the dictator) had conducted the war against Mithridates about 30 years before (B.C. 88–84), and Crassus that against Spartacus some years later (B.C. 71). — *captive*: Et. 33.

CHAP. 22. aut Labieni, or Labienus’s: this predicate use of the genitive is rare in Latin. — *equo admiss* = at full speed (with reins thrown loose).

2. *insignibus*, i.e. *devices* on shields and helmets, — stags’ horns, eagles’ plumes, &c., — the origin of modern heraldry. The inference from this report would be that Labienus had been cut to pieces, and Cæsar must expect an attack at once. This accounts for his next movement, which was to fall back and wait in line of battle, while Labienus was vainly expecting him.

3. *ut, as.* — ne . . . *committeret . . . essent*, subject of *erat praeceptum*. — *ut . . . fieret*, so that the attack might be made on all sides at once. — *monte occupato*, &c., having seized the height, continued to look out for our men.

4. *muito die* (loc. abl.), late in the day. — *quod non vidisset*, what he had not seen, sc. *id*, obj. of *renuntiasse*. — *pro viso*, as if seen (*viso* is used here as a noun). — *quo*, sc. *eodem*, at the same interval as usual; *milia* (acc.), § 257. b; G. 335; H. 379.

CHAP. 23. *diei*, § 214. g; G. 371. r.4; H. 398. 5. — *omnia*, in all (only). — *supererat*: Et. 459. — *cum = within which*. — *Bibracte*, the modern *Mont Beuvray*, a considerable hill, about 10 miles west of *Autun* (Augustodunum). — *rei frumentariae* (dat.), the supply of corn.

2. *fugitivos*, runaways. The regular word would be *transfugas*: the term which generally means fugitive slaves is here
applied, contemptuously, to deserters from the cavalry of the Gallic allies.

**decurionis:** the auxiliary cavalry (the entire cavalry force) was divided into *alae,* or battalions, consisting each of 10 *turmae,* or troops, and these again into three *decuriae,* of probably 10 men, each originally commanded by a *decurio.* In Cæsar’s time, however, the *decurio* commanded the *turma.* Aemilius was the senior officer.

3 *eo magis* (abl. of difference), *all the more.*

— *locis,* &c., *though holding higher ground.* — *occupatis:* Et. 33.

15. *eo quod . . . confiderent* (abl. of cause), *for this reason because they felt sure that they (the Romans) could be cut off from their supplies.*

*itinere converso:* the fatal step which led to their complete destruction.

The Helvetians were now well in advance of Cæsar, and might probably have continued their march unmolested to the coast, had not their vain confidence turned them back. Cæsar’s army was at this time not far from 60,000 men, including about 20,000 auxiliaries, mostly “Gaulish mountaineers”; so that he was a full match, in a fair field, for the Helvetians, who had now about 70,000 fighting men.

**Chap. 24. animum advertit (= vertit animum ad:** usually written as one word, *animadvertit*: *to turn the mind* upon any thing is to *notice* it; hence this phrase takes a direct object (*id*) like a single transitive verb. — *qui sustineret = to sustain* (§ 317. r.; G. 544; H. 497. 1).

2. *in collo medio, half way up the hill.* — *triplicem aciem* (Et. 2), &c. — *four veteran legions in triple line.* — *in summo jugo,* i.e.
on the level top of the hill. — *ac* = and thus. — *sarcinas*, packs (personal baggage). — *eum, this* [place]. — *his qui*, &c., those who stood (had taken their stand) in the upper (i.e. rear) ranks: these were the two new legions, opposed to *veteranarum*, above.

**The Order of Battle.** — The favorite position of the Romans, the *locus superior*, was a hillside, not too steep, with the enemy below. The line of battle was formed across the slope, and here the Romans awaited the attack. If at the foot of the hill there was a morass, a stream, or other obstacle likely to confuse the hostile ranks, it was so much the better.

In the triple order of battle, the first line contained four cohorts, and each of the others contained three (see Fig. 28). Between each cohort and the next one in the same line was left an interval equal in extent to the front of a cohort. Behind these intervals in the first and second lines were placed the cohorts of the second and third lines respectively. The distance from the rear of either line to the front of the one behind it was also equal to the front of a cohort. We may consider the front of a cohort in battle array to have been (on an average) about 120 ft. in extent, and the depth to have been 40 ft. Then 1 legion extended 840 ft. in front and 600 ft. in depth; and the entire front of Caesar's line of battle of 4 legions, including the intervals between the legions, was 3720 ft., or about \( \frac{3}{4} \) of a mile.

As the 3 maniples of a cohort were placed side by side, the front of each would occupy 40 ft. Allowing 4 ft. for the interval between the maniples, in which interval stood the centurions, and 3 ft. room for each man, the maniple would consist of 12 files. The distance from breast to breast in the files was quite likely 4 ft. Thus the file would contain 10 men, and the maniple would form a square of 40 ft. on a side. The first 5 ranks formed the first *ordo* (or century), and the remainder were the second. The first centurion stood at the right of the front rank of the first ordo, and the second centurion had a like station in the second.

When the enemy had reached the right distance, the bugle sounded the charge, and the legions rushed down hill to meet them, sword in sheath, and the first two ranks with spears uplifted (*pilis infestis*) ready to hurl.
**Plan II. Battle with the Helvetians. Bk. I. Ch. 24-26.**

1. The new legions and auxiliaries.
2. Caesar's camp.
3. The Helvetians' baggage, parked.
4. The Boii and Tulingi.

The heavy lines show the first position of the two armies. The mountain to which the Helvetians fled lies immediately west of the modern village of Las. Just south of that village, the light dotted lines show the position of the Helvetians at their second attack, and, facing them, the second position of the first two lines of the Romans. The third line has wheeled to the right, to meet the flank attack of the Boii and Tulingi.
When within 25 to 50 ft. of the opposing phalanx, the two ranks hurled their heavy spears in a shower, and immediately drew their short swords and charged fiercely upon the disordered mass of the foe. The odd numbers of the front rank sprang forward to gain room (3 ft. would answer for marching or for using the spears, but at least 6 ft. would be required to give space enough for the swords). The even numbers and the entire second rank followed as a support.

Along the front of the cohort exists now a series of single combats. The third, fourth, and fifth ranks press close up, to aid their comrades and to take the place of any that fall, and meanwhile throw their spears over the heads of the combatants among the throng of the enemy behind. The remaining five ranks of the cohort follow slowly, as a reserve.

In the meantime the second line is advancing, and, if the enemy do not at once give way, the first line is withdrawn, and the cohorts of the second rush through the intervals and attack with spear and sword. The wearied first line is now occupied in re-forming and getting breath for a new onset, which is made after a lapse of from ten to fifteen minutes.

We see that we must imagine the legion in battle as in almost constant motion. The two lines are hurled successively against the enemy, giving the latter no rest, and wearing them out by the incessant blows of the cohorts. The third line, however, is held in reserve, and is only brought into action in case the other two prove insufficient to cause the enemy to break.

The cavalry are drawn up in the rear or on the flanks of the army, ready, should the hostile array be broken and routed, to plunge into the flying mass and cut them to pieces.

**The Gallic Array and Arms.** — The Macedonian phalanx had a front of about 500 men and a depth of 16. That of the Gauls and Germans was doubtless of similar form, but of varying numbers. The men stood close together, forming a compact mass. The shields of the front rank formed a vertical wall, and those of the rest were held overhead, lapping over one another like the shingles on a roof, only in the reverse order. It will be seen that the phalanx depended for its success on the momentum of its mass. However, only those on its outer edges could use their weapons, while the rest were practically imprisoned in the crowd. Here the Romans had a great advantage; for, from their open and pliable order of battle, nearly every man sooner or later was in action. Hence, although they might be greatly inferior in number, they could bring into use more swords and spears at a given point than could their enemies.
The Gallic sword was very long, two-edged, and sheathed in an iron scabbard that was suspended at the right side by an iron or bronze chain. This sword had no point, and hence was adapted rather for cutting than thrusting. The spear had a blade at least 2 ft. long and 6 to 8 in. wide, sometimes of an undulated form. As missile weapons, light javelins, bows and slings were used. The helmet was of metal, adorned with the horns of animals, having a crest representing a bird or savage beast, and surmounted by a high and bushy plume of feathers. The shield was of plank, at least 5 ft. long, and very narrow. The body was guarded besides by an iron or bronze breastplate, or by a coat of mail. This last was a Gallic invention.

Chap. 25. suo [equo], having sent back his own and all the others' horses. This was often done before an engagement (cf. Sall. Cat. 59). He is reported to have said to his men, "I will mount again when the enemy run."

2. impedimento, dat. of service, § 233; G. 350; H. 390.—pluribus, several. For the whole of this description, compare what is said above of the form of this javelin and the close order of the phalanx.—evellere, pull them out.—sinistra impedita (parenthesis), since the left hand was shackled.—multi ut, many [to such a degree] that.—nudo, unshackled.

3. pedem referre, fall back: not retreat, which would be terga vertere.—mille, acc. of distance, the idea of distance being implied in suberat.

4. agmen claudebant, brought up their rear. The Boii or Tulingi, with about 15,000 men, had been in front of the Helvetician line of march, and were consequently in the rear when they faced round to attack Cæsar. They now struck at his exposed right flank (latere aperto) as they came on the field from the road (ex itinere).

16. conversa signa intulerunt, faced about (lit. "bore their reversed ensigns upon" the enemy), and charged in two divisions. The divisions stood not back to back, but at an angle, facing outward; the two front lines facing forward, while the third met the flank attack of the new-comers (venientes). The phrase conversa signa refers only to the movement of the third line, while intulerunt denotes the action of the entire army.
THE MILITARY STANDARDS. — The term signa (signa militaria), in a general sense, applied to all the standards of the army. That of the legion was an eagle (aquila), usually of silver, about the size of a dove, and carried on the top of a wooden staff. The staff was shod with iron so that it might be thrust into the ground. Often it was adorned with a vexillum, a little flag, or banner, suspended from a crossbar at the top. The vexillum was red or white, and was inscribed with the number or name of the legion. The eagle was intrusted to the first cohort, and especially to the care of its oldest centurion. Its bearer (aquilifer) was a soldier selected for his courage and fidelity.

The standard of the cohort was the signum, in the narrower sense of that word. It was usually the figure of an animal — a wolf or sheep, for instance — on a staff. Its bearer was the signifer. Vexilla were also carried on the flanks of the maniples to mark the alignment, performing the same office as “guidons” in a modern battalion. Thus there must have been at least four vexilla in a cohort, — perhaps eight, if each century required them for its alignment.

The cavalry and light troops and all separate detachments (see Bk. VI. Chap. 36) carried only the vexillum. Its bearer was called vexillarius. There was another standard called vexillum, the flag of the general. This was a large banner, white, with an inscription in red letters giving the general’s name, that of his army, &c. It was placed near the headquarters tent in the camp, and when displayed was the signal for march or battle (see Bk. II. Chap. 20).

CHAP. 26. ancipiti, two-headed, thus facing two ways at once. — alteri, the Helvetians; alteri, the Boii, &c.

2. ab hora septima, i.e. from a little past 1 P.M.; sunset was
about eight, so that each of the twelve daylight hours was about an hour and a quarter of our time.— aversum hostem = an enemy's back. — ad multam noctem, till late in the night. — pro vallo, as a barricade. — e loco superiore, from vantage-ground, i.e. the height of the carts, &c.— coniciebant, subiciebant, hurled (from above), thrust (from below). For the form of these words, see § 10. d; H. 36. 4 [Et. 493]. The semi-vowel ĵ is lost before ĵ: therefore in most dictionaries look for conicio, subjicio.— matarás, heavy Gallic pikes, thrown from the hand; tragula, light javelins, used by Gauls and Spaniards.

4. Lingōnum, i.e. the southern part of Champagne, towards the north. — propter, &c., gives the reason of morati.

5. Lingonas, Greek form of the accusative (§ 63. f, & 64; G. 73; H. 68), common in these names of tribes.— qui si juvissent = for if they should, &c.— eodem loco habiturum, would hold on the same footing.— sequi: Et. 497.

In the year 1860, numerous burial mounds near the place of this battle (in which considerably more than 100,000 human beings must have perished) were opened, and found to contain skeletons buried face downward, with knives, bracelets, rings, and hair-pins of bronze, very similar to the
Campaign against Ariovistus.

5 relics discovered shortly before in the lake-dwellings of Switzerland. It has been conjectured that these lake-dwellings were among those destroyed at the time of the Helvetian migration (see De Saulcy, Campaigns of Caesar in Gaul).

Chap. 27. qui...paruerunt; observe the change of subject in this sentence, from legati to Caesar, as well as the change of mood with the same subject, convenissent, paruerunt. The syntax will present no difficulty. — projecissent; Et. 493.

2. qui perfugissent, fugitive slaves from the Province.—conquiruntur, conferuntur: to express the passive in English, it is often better to use the active form, while they are hunting these up and bringing them together.—nocte intermissa, when the night was past: i.e. it was then ascertained what had happened early in the evening.—Verbigenus, from the parts between Berne and Lucerne.

17. occultari, be hid from Caesar; ignorari, unknown to anybody.—contenderunt ad, made (rapidly) for.

Chap. 28. quorum: the antecedent is his (dat.) following imperavit, the direct object of which is uti...reducerent.—sibi (dat. of reference), in his eyes — reductos...habuit, when brought back, he treated them as enemies, i.e. massacred them all: the phrase is regularly used in this signification.

in deditionem accepit: by this act they became formally the subjects of the Republic, and were entitled to its protection, as well as required to obey its requisitions and pay tribute.

2. reverti, turn back (from a march or journey; redire, go back, from a place of rest). — fructibus = frugibus (which is found in some copies), grain and other field produce. — tolerant: Et. 195.—copiam facerent, provide a supply. — ipso, the Helvetians.

3. ea ratione, with this view. — Allobrogibus: these were within the Province.

4. petentibus Haeduus, to the Ædui, at their request: dat. after concessit, of which the object is, ut Boios collocarent. (Boios is put first in the sentence for emphasis.) — parem atque ipsierant = equal with themselves (§ 156. a²; G. 646; H. 451. 5). — juris: Et. 125.—condicionem: for the form of this word, see § 12. a.
Chap. 29. tabulae, tablets, of the shape of a folding slate, with wax spread inside, written on with a pointed instrument called stilus. litteris Graecis; not in the Greek language, but in Greek letters. These were probably learned from colonists at Marseilles, as the Gauls had no alphabet of their own. Specimens of Gallic names on coins are in the names DUBNOREX, ΔΙΥΙΚΙΑΚΟΣ, VERCINGETORIX. — relatae: Et. 195. — ratio, an estimate, followed by the indir. question qui . . . exisset. — confectae, made out.

2. capitum [Et. 52], "souls." — ad milia xoi, about 92,000.

3. summa, the sum: fuerunt agreeing with the plural predicate. Deducting the Boii, who were adopted by the Aedui, this reckoning would show an actual loss, in slain or captives (slaves), in this short campaign, of about 250,000, including probably about 150,000 women and children, or other non-combatants.

German Campaign.—The latter half of this Book is taken up with the expulsion of a military settlement of Germans, which had been made a few years before, under Ariovistus, a chief of the Suevi.

The occasion of this new campaign was the following. The Aedui, jealous of the Sequani, who lived a little to the north, had laid excessive tolls on their trade, which consisted chiefly in the export of salted meats for the southern market.* This led to a war, in which the Sequani had invited the aid of the Germans under Ariovistus, about three years before the campaign of Cæsar. The Germans, once in Gaul, had exacted a large share of territory, and proved to be grasping and oppressive masters. Meanwhile the Helvetian war began to threaten. The Roman Senate, to make safe, passed the decrees before mentioned, promising favor and friendship to the Aedui (Chap. 11); and at the same time sent messengers to Ariovistus, saluting him as king and friend (Chap. 35), recognizing his claims on Gaul, and (it was said) inviting him to Rome. This was the year before, in Cæsar's consulsip. Now, however, that the fear of the Helvetians was passed, Cæsar found himself obliged to take sides in the old quarrel.

18. Chap. 30. principes: Et. 33; intelligere: id. 440. — populi Romani, against, &c. (obj. gen. after injuris). — ab his repetisset, had inflicted on them (see Chap. 12*). — ex usu, to the advantage.

* "From this region," says Strabo, "the best of pickled pork is sent to Rome" (iv. p. 192).
2. *eo consilio, with this design*, explained by the purpose-clause *uti . . . haberent.* — *florentissimis rebus,* i.e. with no plea of necessity. — *domicilio,* for *habitation.* — *ex magna copia = from a wide choice,* implied in *quem . . . judicassent.* — *stipendiarius,* *tributary:* *stipendium* is the tax paid by a subject community.

3. *uti sibi liceret, that it might be allowed them.* — *concilium totius Galliae:* of course Cæsar had no authority to allow or prohibit a congress of independent Gaul. But, considering his power and ambition, they thought it best to secure his countenance (*volutate,* not *auctoritate*) beforehand. They also had business that specially concerned him. — *petere:* Et. 173.

4. *jurejurando sanxerunt,* ordained under oath [of secrecy]: the object is *ne quis,* &c. — *enuntiaret,* inform of the proceedings. — *nisi quibus,* &c., except [to those] to whom some commission should be assigned (pluperf. for fut. perf.).

**Chap. 31.** *eo concilio dimisso,* i.e. when this assembly had been held and dissolved, after providing for the business now described. — *idem* (*iudem*), nom. plural. — *secreto,* *apart; in occulto,* in a secret place.

2. *Caesari,* dat. of reference (see § 235. *a;* G. 343. *r.*³; H. 384. 4. *n.*²) = *at Cæsar's feet.* — *id* (in apposition with *ne . . . enuntiarentur* contendere, &c., they no less urgently desired their account to be kept secret than to obtain the thing they sought (ind. disc. *dixissent,* for fut. perf. of direct).

3. *factiones duas,* see note, Chap. 3. — *principatum,* *leadership.* — *Arvernos:* these inhabited the mountainous country south-west of the *Ædui,* the modern *Auvergne.* — *factum esse uti, it came to pass that,* &c. — *Sequanis:* these were the rivals of the *Ædui* on the north.

4. *feri ac barbari:* as to the condition of the Germans, see introduction. — *adamassent* (= *adamavissent,* § 128. *a;* G. 191.⁶; H. 235), *had become attached.* — *horum* (emph.), *of the latter.* — *copias* (= *opes*), *resources.* — *plures,* notice the emphasis, also in nunc.

19. 5. *clientes,* the subject states of the Ambarri, Segusiavi, &c. — *omnem . . . equitatum,* of course an exaggeration: Dvitia-
cus was himself a noble, probably a senator; while his brother Dumnorix was a commander of the Æduan cavalry.

6. qui ... potuissent, [they] who had once, &c., were compelled. — repetituros, demand back. — quo minus, following a verb of refusing (§ 317. b; G. 547; H. 497. II. 2), seems originally to have been a phrase of courtesy, implying a less point-blank refusal than ne or quin. — dictone, i.e. to do their bidding.

7. potuerit, in direct discourse potuit, the perfect having a tendency to remain in the perfect (subjunctive), contrary to the rule.

juraret: Et. 125. — Romam venisse, see note, Chap. 3. His application was not successful. See Bk. VI. Chap. 12.

8. pejus accidisse, a worse thing had befallen. Observe that a misfortune is usually said accidere, as if it fell on one, while a good thing is said evenire. — Arloviustus, supposed to be the German word Heerfürst, "prince of the host."

tertiam partem, i.e. upper Alsace, a part of the German conquest of 1870. This was the same proportion of conquered land taken by the German invaders (Burgundians) in this very territory in the fifth century of the Christian era. It seems to have been the ancient common law of conquest (Liv. ii. 41). — optimus: this district (Franche Comté) is one of the most beautiful in France, and the "best wooded." The chief export was dried meat and hams. — nunc ... juberet: so too the Burgundians. — juberet, in direct disc., jube, he bids. — quibus ... pararentur = to be provided with a place for habitation (subj. of purpose). — venissent: Et. 509.

9. futurum esse uti (periphrastic future), the result would be. — neque enim introduces an explanation admitting no doubt. — hanc = nostram (§ 102. a; G. 290; H. 450), said with some feeling of superiority or contempt.

10. autem, again, a slight antithesis between the king and the things mentioned before. — ut ... vicerit, indir. disc. for ut vicit (§ 324; G. 563; H. 471. 4), once conquered. — Magetobriam, a little west of Vesontio (Besançon). — in eos ... edere, gave forth (i.e. wreaked) all sorts of torments on them (observe the hendiadys).

11. barbarum, &c., rude, passionate, and hasty. — nisi si (see § 315. a; G. 592; H. 507. 3. N. 4'), &c., unless they find some aid.
20. idem, in appos. with ut ... experiantur. — ut emigrent, that is, to forsake their home.

12. haec, notice the emphasis. — quin sumat, that he will inflict upon ($332. g. r.; G. 551. 2; H. 501. II. 2); lit. take a penalty of.
— Rhenum, acc. after trans in traducatur ($239. b; G. 330. R.1; H. 372).

CHAP. 32. oratione: Et. 459. — habita, having been spoken (the usual word). — magno: Et. 387. — unos, alone. This whole scene is "most illustrative of the Gallic character."

2. quae esset, indir. question after miratus. — respondere, historical infinitive.

3. hoc, in this respect. — soli, they alone. — ne ... quidem, not even secretly. — absentis (pred.), even when absent. — crudelitatem, obj. of horrerent ($177. c; G. 329. R.1; H. 371. III. N.').
— tamen, after all, whatever they might have to suffer. — Sequanis, dat. of agent with perferendi ($232; G. 353; H. 388), the Sequani must endure (changing the voice).

CHAP. 33. sibi curae (dat. of service, § 233; G. 350; H. 390), a care to him. — et ... et, construe after adductum, induced by both ... and.

2. secundum, in accordance with: lit. following ($153; G. 417; H. 433). — quare putaret, indir. question, following hortabantur. — Haeduos, obj. of videbat and subj. of teneri (below).

21. appellatos (pred.), who had been often called. — quod: the antecedent is the preceding clause Haeduos ... Sequanos.

3. periculolum, pred., agreeing with Germanos consuescere, &c., he saw it was dangerous to the Roman people for the Germans, little by little, to get in the way of crossing the Rhine, &c. — sibi temperaturas quin exirent, would check themselves [refrain] from going forth. — ut, as; fecissent being subjunctive as dependent on exirent, § 342 (R. 47); G. 666; H. 529. II. N. I. I; Cimbrorum Teutonique: these German tribes had been crushed by Marius (B.C. 102, 101), after having been for several years a terror upon the Italian frontier.

4. Rhodanus = only the Rhone. — rebus, dat. following occurrendum [sibi], § 228 (R. 18); G. 346; H. 386: which things he
thought must be met at once. — tantos spiritus, such temper.—
non ferendus, unendurable.

CHAP. 34. ab eo, of him (§ 239. c. R.; G. 333. R.²; H. 374. N.⁸).
— medium utriusque, between the two. — conloquio (dat.), for
a conference. — de republica agere, to treat on public business
[Et. 104].

2. si quid, &c., if he needed anything from Caesar. — opus:
§ 243. e. R.; G. 390; H. 414. iv. N.⁴; ipsi, dat. of poss. (§ 231;
G. 390; H. 387). Observe in this sentence that the reflexives
ipse and se refer to Ariovistus (§ 195. k; G. 521. R.⁸; H. 452. 5),
and the demonstratives is, ille, to Caesar. — se velit, wants of him:
the secondary accus. is in analogy with that after verbs of asking.
The acc. of neuter pronouns is often used with intransitive verbs
or as a second object.

4. mirum quid . . . esset, a sort of indir. question: it seemed
strange to him what business, &c. — in sua Gallia, in his [part of]
Gaul. — negotii, part. gen. with quid (§ 216. a⁸; G. 371; H. 397. 3).

CHAP. 35. tanto . . . adfectus, distinguished by so great favor,
&c. (see note before Chap. 30): beneficio is explained by cum . . .
esset, and gratiam referret by ut . . . putaret; the first sibi
refers to Cæsar and the second to Ariovistus. In this sentence the
causal clause is quoniam . . . putaret, and the leading verb is
esse: Since, though so greatly favored by the Romans, he made such
an [ill] return (hanc gratiam referret) as to grudge coming to a
conference when invited, and did not consider that he ought to speak
or hear about the common business, [therefore] these were the de-
mands he made (the things he required) of him, &c. Observe that
in Latin the significant word is the verb; in English the noun.
"Ariovistus knew as well as any one how much gratitude he owed
to Rome for these beneficia."

22. 2. ne quam, not any. — voluntate, consent. — ejus refers
to Ariovistus, and illis to the Sequani.

3. si non impeetraret, if he (Cæsar) should not get [this pledge].
— Messala, &c., i.e. B.C. 61. M. Messala, &c., simply in the
consulship, &c., only to indicate the year. — obtineret, should hold
(as governor). — censuisset, had voted. — quod = so far as.
Campaign against Ariovistus.

 commodo (abl. of specif.) reipublicae, to the advantage of the state. — defenderet: see the reasons, in the note referred to above. — se, a repetition of sese above, to bring it nearer to its verb. — neglecturum: Et. 440.

 Chap. 36. jus, a right. — vicissent for vicerint (fut. perf.), following ut. — iis, obj. of imperarent: that those who conquer shall rule those they conquer as (quem ad modum) they will. The verbs are in the past by sequence of tenses (§§ 285, 287. d; G. 518; H. 495. iv.). — item, in like manner. — viotis, obj. of imperare. — alterius, any one’s else. — arbitrium: Et. 509; praescriberet: id. 122.

 3. sibi stipendiarios, tributary to himself. — qui faceret = in making (§ 320. e; G. 636; H. 517).

 4. non . . . neque: [on the one hand] he would not restore, &c., but [on the other] he would not wrongfully (injuriā), &c. — convenisset = had been agreed. — longe . . . a futurum, the name of brothers would be a great way off from them, i.e. too far to help them.

 5. quod, &c., the whole clause is construed as an adverbial accusative: as to Cæsar’s threat, &c. — secum, sua, observe that these refer one to Ariovistus, the other to his antagonist. — congrederetur (for imperat.), he might come on when he would; he would know, &c. — inter refers to something coming between two extremes. Hence, when applied to time, it means the entire interval between the beginning and the end of a given period, and may be rendered during. — quid possent, what their strength was.

 Chap. 37. eodem tempore, et = at the same time [when] this message, &c.

23. Treveris, from the region of Trèves in the valley of the Moselle. — questum, to complain (supine). — qui . . . essent, who (they said) had just come over (§ 341. a; G. 509; H. 524).

 2. ne . . . datis, not even by giving hostages. — pagos (see note, Chap. 12*): these divisions were those known as hundreds, meaning not only the people, but the district they occupied (see Bk. iv. Chap. 1).

 3. maturandum sibi, that he must hasten. — minus facile, not
very easy: i.e. would be impossible; but this would be a word of ill omen.

resisti (impers., § 230; G. 208; H. 384. 5) posset, they could not be so easily resisted.—ad, towards. — contedit: Et. 186.

Chap. 38. viam, § 257; G. 335; H. 379. — Vesontionem, the modern Besançon, about ninety miles E. N. E. of the former battle-ground.—quod relates to Vesontionem, but agrees in gender with oppidum: § 199; G. 616. 3. II.; H. 445. 4.—profe-
cisse, had advanced.

2. ne, following praecavendum (§ 331. e; G. 548; H. 497. II.). —facultas = facility for obtaining, hence, supply (see note, Chap. 31). —daret: Et. 225.—Dubis, the modern Dous. This name is said to mean "black river"; or, in the form Alduasdubis, "river of black rocks."—ut, as it were.

3. spatium, obj. of continet. —pedum, ped. gen. after est; for construction with amplius, see § 247. c; G. 311. R. 1; H. 417. N. 2. —qua, where. —ripae, nom., subj. of contingent. The real distance is 1600 feet.—huno [montem]: this an encompassing wall makes into a fortress. Some remains of this wall are yet to be seen.


Chap. 39. percontatione, questions.—vocibus, talk. —ingenti: Et. 112; magnitudine: Et. 387. —praedicabant, represented.

24. saepenumero, oftentimes. Adverbs are frequently thus strengthened by a qualifying word, usually a genitive: as hic loci, &c.—cogressos, having met them. —occupavit, seized.

2. hic, i.e. timor.—ortus: Et. 414. —reliquis, i.e. aids or attachés (contubernales, comites), who attended the governor or commander of a province for the sake of military practice. All these were often appointed from mere personal or political motives, and were of small use in the service, as it proved here. This staff was sometimes called, irregularly, the pratorian cohort.—amicitia causa: Cæsar's earlier career had been that of a political adven-
turer. He was deeply in debt, and probably could not afford to refuse positions to the "poor relations" of his creditors, trusting the valor of his veterans to cover their short-comings. It will be
observed that the politic proconsul represents these worthies as having come out of friendship for himself. — alius alius causa, on various pretexts (§ 203. c; G. 306; H. 459. c). — quam diceret, which, they said (§ 341. d. r.; G. 539. r.; H. 503. i).

3. vultum fingere, put on a brave face (vultum refers to the expression of the face). — abditi, hiding. — testamenta obsignabantur, indicating utter despair. The word refers to a will, sealed and witnessed in due form, — not the mere informal declaration permitted to soldiers on the eve of battle (in procinctu).

4. in castris = in military life. — rem frumentarium . . . timere (accus. of anticipation: § 334. c; G. 470; Madvig, 439. Obs. i), feared [for] the supply of corn, lest it might not be conveniently brought in (§ 331. f; G. 552; H. 498. III.).

5. cum juisset, for cum jussisset (fut. perf.) of direct disc. — castra moveri, to break camp. — dicto audientes, obedient to the word of command. — signa laturos, would carry the standards, i.e. advance. This is the technical term, as the standards were planted in the ground during a halt.

Chap. 40. convocato: Et. 496. — omnium ordinum, of all classes. See below. — inthusavit: Et. 60. — sibi quaerendum . . . putarent, thought they had a right to inquire (it ought to be inquired) or have any idea (it ought to be thought), in agreement with the interrogative clause quam . . . ducentur.

Relative Rank of the Centurions.

There were ten classes (ordines) of centurions in the legion, those of each cohort composing one class, and ranking in the order of the cohorts. The six centurions of the first cohort, then, were the centuriones primorum ordinum; those of the second cohort, secundorum ordinum, &c.* Usually, only those of the first class were summoned to the council of war. But this was a full council of all the officers, as Cæsar desired to make as wide an impression as possible through the army.

Göler thinks that the first class comprised the first centurions from all the cohorts, &c.; thus making six classes of ten in each class. But Cæsar mentions an eighth class (B. C. III, 53). So Göler is obliged to assume that the subcenturions (optiones) were considered centurions, thus making six more classes.

* Rüstow, Heerwesen und Kriegführung C. Julius Cäsars, pp. 7–12.
We may observe, on this point, that it seemed the uniform policy of the Romans that the cohorts, as well as the officers, should differ in rank, in order that the most experienced and skillful men might form the first line, and those of less experience the last. For the same reason, the best centurions would be needed in the first line, i.e. in the first four cohorts. The passage in Vegetius,* II. 21, we interpret as follows: —

As vacancies occurred in the ranks of any cohort, they were filled by detailing the best men from the next lower cohort. Thus recruits would always fall to the tenth cohort, and the first cohort would contain the very flower of the legion. Hence, under ordinary circumstances, when it became necessary to appoint a centurion, selection would be made from the privates of the first cohort (presumably from its first maniple), and he would be assigned as a centurion of the tenth cohort. Then he would pass successively through the grades of that cohort, then through the grades of the ninth, and so on, until he became first centurion of the first cohort (primipilus). Thus the circle (orbem) of service would be complete.

As to the optiones, each centurion seems to have selected his own, as the word implies, and as is expressly stated by Varro, Festus, and Paulus Diaconus. This choice would be impossible if they were graded as Götler supposes.

2. se consulce (direct, me consulce), in his consulship. — cur quisquam judicaret, why should any one think? For the form of question, see § 338. R.; G. 654. R.²; H. 523. II. n.; (direct, judicet, dubit. subj.) for the use of quisquam, implying a negative, see § 105. h; G. 304; H. 457. — tam temere diessussurum, would fall away so hastily. — sibi persuaderi, for his part he was persuaded (mihi persuadetur, § 230; G. 208; H. 301. 1): the subject of persuaderi is eum . . . repudiaturum.— perspecta: Et. 99.

25. 3. quod si intulisset, but if he should, &c. (dir. disc. intulerit, fut. perf. ind.) — quid tandem, what, pray, were they afraid of? — sua, their own; ipsius, his: ipse, used in this way, to avoid the repetition of sua, is an indirect reflexive.

4. periculum (root in experior), a trial. — Cimbris, &c., A.D. 102 and 101, a little more than forty years before.— cum . . .

* Nam quasi in orbem quemdam per diversas cohortes et diversas scholas milites promoventur, ita ut ex prima cohorte ad gradum quemiam promotus vadat ad decimam cohortem; et rursus ab ea, crescentibus stipendii, cum majore gradu per alias recurrit ad primam.
videbatur: although this clause was a part of Cæsar's speech to his officers, yet the indicative is used to emphasize to the reader the reality of the fact it asserts (§ 336. b; H. 529. N. 1 2). It will be noticed that cum is here equivalent to et tum, and the apparent temporal clause is actually coordinate with the preceding infinitive. This is the only instance in the Commentaries of an imperfect indicative with cum.—meritus, sc. esse.—servill tu-
multu (abl. of time), the insurrection of the slaves (gladiators) under Spartacus, B.C. 73-71. These consisted largely of the Germans captured by Marius. A war at home, i.e. in Italy or on its borders, was called tumultus (see Cic. Phil. viii. 1).—quos (referring to servos implied in servili) ... sublevarent (changing to passive so as to keep the emphasis), who yet were considerably helped by the training and discipline which they had got from us.
—aliquid, adverbial accusative.

5. quantum boni, how much advantage (§ 189. a; G. 195. R. 2; H. 397. 3). firmness has (for the tense of haberet, see § 287. d; H. 495. v.)—inermos, i.e. the slaves of Spartacus's force.—quos ... hos: notice the relative as usual preceding the antecedent.

6. hos esse, the Germans with Ariovistus.—quibuscum congressi, &c. (changing the relative clause), whom they had often met and beaten on their own ground (as well as, &c.).—qui, i.e. the Helvetii.—tamen, i.e. though they were strong enough to beat the Germans, after all, &c.—potuerint, see § 287. c. R.; G. 513; H. 495. VI. and foot-note 2.

7. adversum proelium, see Chap. 315.—si quos ... commoveret, if any were alarmed by (lit. if the disastrous battle moved any).—Ariovistum, subj. of vicisse.—neque ... fecisset, and had given them no chance at him.—adortum, agrees with Ari-
vistum and governs [eos] desperantes.

8. cui rationi, &c.: cui relates to hac (ratione), the noun being attracted to the relative clause, as is frequent in Latin (§ 200. c; G. 618; H. 445. 9): by a stratagem for which there had been room against unskilled barbarians, not even Ariovistus himself hoped that our armies could be taken in.

9. qui ... conferrent, [as for those] who laid their own coward-
ice to the pretended difficulty about provisions, &c.—desperare, &c., to be discouraged about the commander's doing his duty.—
praescribere, sc. officium; i.e. that they were dictating to him what his duty was.

10. frumentum, grain. — subministrare, were [now] furnishing. — esse, were beginning to be. — frumenta, crops.

11. quod . . . dicantur (see § 330. b; G. 528; H. 534. i. n.): as to its being said that they would not, &c. — nihil, noway. — quibuscumque, dat. after audiens dicto: i.e. no one has ever had a mutinous army, who has not either been unsuccessful by his own fault, so that his men had no confidence in his ability; or been convicted of avarice by some overt act, so that they had no confidence in his integrity. — suam, his own, emphatic by position; equivalent to in his case. — innocentiam: the technical word, meaning freedom from the charge of plunder and extortion. In fact, Cæsar’s fault lay just the other way, — a lavish and reckless generosity at the expense of subjects or allies. (In this sentence, in chiastic order, innocentiam is opposed to avaritiam, and felicitatem to male re gesta; a peculiarly Latin turn.)

26. 12. quod . . . fuisset, what he had intended to defer. — repraesentaturum, he will do at once. This is a legal term, meaning to do a thing before the time. One who pays money before it is due is said solutionem repraesentare.

13. decima legione: this was the legion which had been stationed in the province of Gallia Transalpina; it was distinguished for discipline and courage. — praetoriam cohortem = body-guard, the correct use of the term : compare note, Chap. 397.

This celebrated speech of Cæsar to his men, though in what seems to us the awkward and cold form of indirect discourse, is an admirable model of military eloquence, and deserves attentive study.

Chap. 41. innata est, sprang up. — optimum judicium fecisset, had expressed the most favorable opinion (a technical phrase).

2. cum tribunis . . . egerunt, &c., urged upon the tribunes to apologize. — summa belli = the policy of the campaign. — suum . . . sed imperatoris, predicates after esse (§ 214. c; G. 365; H. 402).

3. satisfactione, apology (compare satisfacerent, above). — accepta: Et. 33. — ei, in him. — ut . . . duceret (result), depends
Campaign against Ariovistus.

upon itinere exquisito. The subject of duceret refers to itinere. Also, cf. note on rem, Chap. 39. Lit., the road having been learned that it led; i.e. it having been learned that the road led. — millium [passuum] limits circuitu, by a circuit of more than fifty miles. — locis apertos, through the open country, so as to avoid a return of the panic.

4. exploratoribus, scouts. See note on Bk. II. Chap. 5, “Camp Duties.” — a nostris, from ours (i.e. forces).

CHAP. 42. per se, so far as he was concerned (a common expression with licet).

2. respuit: Et. 318. — reverti, that he was beginning to return. — petenti [Caesari], when he asked it. — veniebat, began to come. — fore uti desisteret (periphrastic future following spem), that he would cease from his stubbornness.

27. 3. ultro citroque, hither and yon (lit. beyond and this side). — veniret for veniat (hortatory) of direct discourse. — alia ratione, on any other terms.

4. interpositā causā (abl. abs.), by putting in an excuse. (Notice that excuse has the same root as causa.) — Gallorum equitatūi: he had no other; see note, Chap. 23. — Gallis equitibus, dative following detractus (§ 229; G. 346; H. 385. II. 2). — eo, upon them (= iis, § 207. a). — si quid, &c., if there should be need of any active measures: quid is adverbial acc. (§ 240. a; G. 331. R. 8; H. 378); facto (§ 243. e; G. 390; H. 414. N. 8).

5. quod cum fieret, while this was going on. — ad equum rescribere, he enrolled them among the knights. The word equites means not only the cavalry service in war, but a special privileged class in Roman politics. It seems that Cæsar could appreciate a pun. — rescribere: Et. 122.

CHAP. 43. tumulus terrenus = a smooth (i.e. not rocky) hill. — satis grandis, pretty large. — aberat: Et. 459.

2. equis, on horseback. — passibus ducentis (abl. of distance, or degree of difference) = 320 yards. — constituit: Et. 175. — denos, ten on each side.

3. beneficias, favors. — munera: according to Livy (xxx. 15), the gifts sent to Masinissa were "a golden crown and bowl, a curule
chair, an ivory staff, an embroidered toga, and a tunic with palm
leaf figures” (worn in triumphal processions). — pro . . . tri
bui, was usually granted only in return for special services. — doce
bat, informed. — aditum, access. — ea praemia consecutum, had
attained these prizes, as if he had eagerly sought them (compare
introductory note to Chap. 30). The tone of Cæsar’s speech shows
his intention of affronting the pride of Ariovistus.

4. necessitudinis, alliance. — ipsis (to avoid the use of sibi,
which might refer to Cæsar alone), the Romans. — intercederent,
evisted between. — senatus consulta, properly, orders [executive]
of the Senate, which had no authority to pass laws. — ut, how.

5. sui nihil, nothing of their own (dignity, &c.). — quod . . .
adituissent, what they had brought to the alliance; i.e. the in
dependence and dignity which they had possessed. — posset, § 338.
r. last part; G. 654. R.1; H. 523. II. 1. N.
6. postulavit eadem = he made the same demands. — in man
datis, in their instructions. — at, at least.

CHAP. 44. rogatum et arcessitum = at the request and sum
mons.
2. sibi, on him (referring to the main subject).
3. pace uti, enjoy peace. — sua voluntate, by their own consent.
— oportere, impersonal: its subject is amicitiam . . . esse. — id,
not eam, because it refers to the idea, ut amicus populi Romani
esse.

4. per, through the action of. — si remittatur, future cond.
(§§ 307, 337; G. 659; H. 507. 1, 527. 1): the pres. for imperf. for
greater vividness. — subtrahantur, are got away (by underhand
means). — non minus libenter, with no less pleasure.
5. quod . . . traducat, as for his bringing over (the quod clause
of fact, made subj. by indir. disc.). — defenderit, had defended
himself against.

29. 7. hanc Galliam, this part of Gaul. — ut . . . sic, as . . . so.
— ipsi, used as an indirect reflexive. See note on Chap. 403.
8. quod = in that. — imperitum rerum, ignorant of affairs.
— sciret: Et. 45. — bello proximo, i.e. B.C. 62.
Campaign against Ariovistus.

9. debere se suspicari, &c., he had ground to suspect, that Cæsar, in keeping an army in Gaul, kept it with pretense of friendship, [but really] for the sake of ruining him.—exercitum: Et. 3.

10. nobilibus gratum, a favor to the nobles. Cæsar was the recognized head of the party opposed to the Senate and nobility. Many of the aristocracy would have been glad of any safe way to be rid of him. See Cic. Fam. viii. 1, for the way rumors of disaster to Cæsar were spread among his enemies in Rome.—id compertum habere, had ascertained (§ 292. c; G. 230; H. 388. 1. N.).

The three relatives qui (l. 15), quod (l. 17), and quod (l. 21), illustrate the principle that the relative, serving to connect with the previous proposition, may represent various conjunctions: —if then he should not withdraw (qui = is igitur); and if he should kill him (quod, adverbial accusative, and as to this); but if he should withdraw (quod = sed, &c.).

Chap. 45. in eam sententiam quae = to this effect [to show] why.—negotio, enterprise.—desistere: Et. 175.—neque se judicare, and he did not consider.

2. bello superatos, B.C. 121, when the Allobroges were subdued, and the Province (probably) organized.—ignovisset, had pardoned: in fact, their country lay beyond the naturally strong frontier of the Cevennes.

3. antiquissimum quodque (see § 93. c; G. 305; H. 458. 1). Cæsar, referring to the statement of Ariovistus in Chap. 44, claims priority of conquest for the Romans.—spectari: Et. 99.

30. Chap. 46. conloquio: Et. 77.

3. periculo legionis, danger to the legion.—committendum non ut dici posset = no ground should be given for saying (§ 332. e; G. 557; H. 501. 1).—per fidem, through [misplaced] trust.

4. elatum est, it was reported.—qua adrogantia usus, with what display of insolence.—omni Gallia (abl. of separation, with interdixisset, § 243; G. 388; H. 413), had ordered the Romans (dat. following inter-) away from all Gaul.—ut, how (indir. question).

Chap. 47. uti constiteret, following velle (§ 331. b; G. 546; H. 498. 1).—si minus, if not.

2. conloquendi: Et. 77.—retineri quin, be kept from (§ 319.
Notes: Caesar.

31. Chap. 48. promovit: Et. 379. — a Caesaris castris. This camp is placed by Napoleon III. at the southern foot of the Vosges mountains, a few miles N.W. of Mühlhausen, just at the point where there is a break between the Vosges and the spurs of the Jura, opening from the valley of the Saône into that of the Rhine. The reversed march of Ariovistus placed him just in this passage, so as to cut off Cæsar’s supplies. This pass is now commanded by the famous fortress of Belfort.

3. hoc, pointing to the description which follows. — genus: Et. 112; exercuerant: Et. 3.

4. singuli [equites] singulos [pedites], one apiece. — versabantur, acted.

5. cirsumsitabant: Et. 175. — si quo . . . prodeundum, if there was occasion, &c. (quo = to any place). — exercitazione, through training. — sublevati, supporting themselves. — cursum adaequarent, keep pace with them.

Tacitus (Germania 6) says: “They fight in combination [infantry and cavalry] and the foot soldiers, picked out of the entire body of young men and placed in front of the line, are able to keep up with the cavalry in speed.”

Chap. 49. castris (loc. abl.), in camp. — consederant: Et. 234. — acie triplici, see Chap. 24. 
2. *secundam:* Et. 497. — *castra munire,* to fortify the camp. The Roman camp was measured with great precision by certain fixed rules (based on the science of augury), and thoroughly fortified with earth-wall, ditch and palisades. The spade was as familiar to the Roman soldier as the sword or javelin. In this case, Cæsar had one larger camp about two miles north of the Germans, and a smaller one rather more than half a mile to the west of them.

**The Camp.**

1. The Roman army in hostile or doubtful territory encamped at the close of each day’s march on ground carefully selected and as carefully fortified. When possible, the site was the slope of a gentle hill, so that the front had before it still a portion of the descent, and the rear lay on the summit. Thus line of battle could be formed before the camp in the favorite Roman position (*in loco superiore*). Then, too, water must be at hand, and abundant wood. Of course these conditions could not always be fulfilled, and sometimes the camp must be pitched where necessity demanded (*in loco necessario*).

2. The right-angled quadrilateral was in Cæsar’s time probably the only form of the Roman camp (Fig. 15). It was either square, or with sides in the ratio of 3 to 2. The corners were rounded, so as to afford room for defence. The gates (*portae*), one on each side, were usually merely openings, probably as wide as the front of a maniple (40 ft.). They were defended by semi-circular *tambours,* or by a traverse (*titulum*) reaching to a corresponding distance (see Fig. 15). Very likely on the inside was a corresponding traverse.

3. The normal Roman fortification consisted of a wall (*agger, valleum*) on which the defenders placed themselves †; and before it a ditch (*fossa*), from which came most of the material for the wall, and which stopped the approach of the enemy at the distance of a good spear-cast. The width of the ditch at the top was always a number divisible by 3 ‡, and the depth was $\frac{3}{2}$ of this width, plus 1. We may notice that Cæsar usually gives but one dimension of the ditch, the other, of course, being understood. The usual width was 9 ft., and the depth was 7 ft. There were three forms: that with both scarp and counterscarp sloping (*fossa fastigata*); the *fossa punica,* with sloping scarp and vertical counterscarp; and the ditch with both scarp (*latus interius*) and counterscarp (*latus exterior*) vertical.

*Bk. I. 24, II. 5. 8. 24, III. 19. † Bk. V. 39. ‡ Bk. II. 5, VII. 27. 72. The only exception will be found in the chapter last referred to.
(directis lateribus*). The first form was the most common. In this the width at the bottom was $\frac{1}{3}$ that at the top.

4. We think of a wall mainly as a breastwork behind which soldiers are sheltered from the fire of the enemy. But it was quite different with the Romans. They had comparatively little need for shelter from missiles. What they aimed at mainly was a high position, inaccessible to the enemy, from which to hurl their spears. The section of such a wall we may consider practically a rectangle, of sufficient height and width. The width should be enough for standing firmly, and for moving backward and forwards to hurl the javelins. The height should be as great as possible. Of course this would be limited by the fact that the earth came from the ditch. The usual height seems to have been $\frac{3}{4}$ of the upper width of the ditch. Cesar often speaks of a ditch 15 ft. wide, and a wall of 10 ft. The outer slope of the wall could be made very steep, as there was no fire of cannons to withstand. But to keep the earth of the wall in place, there had

![Fig. 12. Fossa Punica.](image)

![Fig. 13. Fossa directis lateribus.](image)

to be a facing of some more tenacious material. For this purpose there were used sods cut in digging the ditch; also timber and brush. This last was put up in bundles, in the form that we call *fascines*. Vegetius says that the Romans cut sods $1\frac{1}{2}$ ft. long, 1 ft. wide, and $\frac{1}{2}$ ft. thick, for use in fortifications. With such sods cut from the ditch, $\frac{1}{2}$ the height of the wall could be faced, leaving the other half to be strengthened with sod cut elsewhere, or with fascines.

5. The Romans were not always content with this facing of the outer slope. When they sought to give the wall especial height, they made it firmer by embedding in it several lines of fascines parallel to the length.

6. The rampart, of course, should be easily mounted from the inside. For this purpose steps were made. These were of brush, or at least strengthened with brush.

7. It is clear, then, that a Roman camp needed much wood, and also that the section of the wall was greater than the section of the ditch. The vertical section of a wall 6 ft. in height and width, well faced, and provided

* Bk. VII. 72.
with steps, contains about 56 sq. ft. The ditch (*fossa fastigata*) 9 ft. wide and 7 ft. deep, has a section of 42 sq. ft. But the earth would loosen itself about \( \frac{1}{6} \) in digging. That gives 49 sq. ft. section for the earthwork, leaving 7 sq. ft. for brushwork. Of this, at least 6 sq. ft. must be allotted to the steps.

8. When the wall was wide enough, on its top was placed a breastwork (*lorica, loricula*) of stakes (*valli*). On these a few twigs were left, which were firmly bound together. This breastwork was either of a uniform height of 4 or 5 ft., so that the soldiers could easily see over it and cast their spears; or there were pinnacles (*pinnae*) placed on it, 2 or 3 ft. high, between which were gaps. There were often erected on the wall, from point to point, wooden towers.† At such places both wall and ditch had to be wider.

9. It has been explained that the camp was generally a square, or a rectangle whose sides were as 3 to 2. The *front* was the side towards the enemy, or towards which on the following day the march would be taken up. The *rear* was of course opposite, and the other two sides were right and left to one facing the front.

10. The depth of the camp was divided into three nearly equal parts.

* Bk. V. 40, VII. 72.  † Bk. V. 40, VII. 72, VIII. 9.
Campaign against Ariovistus.

Beginning at the front, they were the *praetentura*, the *latera praetorii*, and the *retentura*. These three divisions were made by two broad streets parallel to the front, the *via principalis* and the *via quintana*.

The former ended at each side of the camp with a gate, the *porta principalis dextra* and the *porta principalis sinistra*. Very likely in large camps there were gates at the ends of the *via quintana* also.
11. In the middle of the front wall was the *porta praetoria*, and opposite, in the rear wall, was the *porta decumana*.

12. From the *porta praetoria* to the *via principalis* extended a street, the *via praetoria*. Opposite this, in the middle part of the camp, was the *praetorium*, a wide space in which were the headquarters tents, the altars, and the tribunal. This space occupied in length all the middle of the camp, but extended only 100 or 150 ft. each side of the middle line.

13. In the *retentura* was a similar place, the *quaestorium*. Here were the quarters of the administrative staff, here hostages and prisoners were kept and forage and booty were placed.

14. Outside of the camp, back of the *porta decumana*, were the booths of the sutlers (*mercatores*) who followed the army.

15. In the *praetentura* were stationed from $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ of the cohorts, equally divided between the two sides.* They occupied the tents facing the wall. Also in the *praetentura*, along the *via principalis*, was the place for the tents of the *legati* and *tribuni militum*. Again, in each half of the *praetentura*, in the space enclosed by the cohorts along the wall, by the tents of the *legati* and *tribuni* and by the *via principalis*, were encamped $\frac{1}{4}$ of the cavalry and $\frac{1}{2}$ of the archers and slingers. Thus in the entire *praentura* were quartered $\frac{1}{2}$ of the cavalry and all the archers and slingers, ready to march from the front gate and form the advanced guard.

16. On each flank of the *mid camp*, next the wall, was a line of cohorts, $\frac{1}{4}$ of the entire number in the army. Thus $\frac{1}{2}$ of the cohorts were here quartered. Next the praetorium, along both its longer sides, were placed the staff, except, of course, the *legati* and *tribuni*. Along the *via principalis*, between the cohorts along the wall and the staff, were encamped on each side $\frac{1}{4}$ of the cavalry, or $\frac{2}{3}$ in the whole mid-camp.

17. In the rear part of the camp, on each side of the *quaestorium* and equally divided by it, lay the rest of the cohorts, about $\frac{3}{4}$ of all in the army. They faced the wall on the flanks and rear. Enclosed by the cavalry, by the *quaestorium*, and by the *via quintana*, was the place for the auxiliary infantry, excepting the archers and slingers.

18. Entirely around the camp, within the wall, extended a broad street. This would at once prevent the likelihood of hostile missiles reaching the tents, and would allow room for moving troops to defend the walls. The width of this street is variously estimated. It was probably over 100 ft.

19. In the spaces behind the tents the arms were stacked and the pack animals tethered.

* For the arrangement of the cohorts in camp, see note on Bk. II. Chap. 5.
20. In estimating the time needed for fortifying the camp, we may consider the normal measure of the ditch to be 9 ft. wide and 7 ft. deep. Some of the men were detailed to the ditch, some to the wall, and others to gather material and make fascines. Those allotted to the ditch would probably work in three reliefs, each being occupied not more than an hour. A skillful digger who works only one hour and is then relieved, can easily excavate in that time from 50 to 60 cu. ft. (Roman). But the Roman legionaries were above all things skillful at digging. Then 3 or 4 hours would suffice completely to fortify the camp. Meanwhile others would be busied in laying out the streets and setting up the tents. So if the work was begun at noon, by 4 o'clock all would be finished.

32. **Chap. 50. instituto suo, according to his previous practice. — potestatem fecit, gave an opportunity.**

3. **in latiss et acceptis, after giving and receiving.**

4. **matres familiae:** according to Tacitus (Ger. 8), it was not matrons only, but women as a class, or most of them, to whom this prophetic power was ascribed. — **sortibus, lots of leaves or twigs marked with certain signs and drawn by chance; vaticinationibus, omens interpreted from the noise of waters, river-eddies, &c. — declararent:** Et. 58. — **ex usu, expedient. — utrum . . . necne, § 211; G. 460; H. 353. — non esse fas, it was not the divine will. — novam lunam (cf. Tac. G. 11): so the Spartans refused to advance to Marathon before the full moon.

**Chap. 51. reliquit:** Et. 500. — **alarios:** the auxiliaries as distinguished from the legionary (Roman) troops. They were usually stationed on the wings of the line of battle; hence their name, from ala, a wing. — **quod minus valebat, because he was weak in comparison with the enemy. — ad speciem, to make a show, as if the two legions were still there, while in fact they had joined the other force at the greater camp. — acies, of legionaries alone.**

2. **generatim, by tribes or clans. — Marcomannos, "men of the Mark," or frontier. It became a very formidable name about 200 years later, in the region of Bohemia and Bavaria.**

3. **eo, thereon, i.e. among the carts and wagons. — proffiscientes, [the men] as they advanced (obj. of implorabunt). — traderent:** Et. 225.
33. **Chap. 52.** *singulos legatos, a legatus in command of each legion.* This was the beginning of a very important reform in the military organization. Caesar felt so keenly the evil of the command being divided among six tribunes, that he detailed one of his *legati* nominally to assist the tribunes. After this time, we find the *legatus* as the regular commander of a legion, with the six tribunes under him. On this occasion he appointed his quartermaster (*quaestor*) to that one of the six legions which was intended to be under his own special command. — *praefecit:* Et. 256.

2. *ita . . . ut, so . . . that.* — *spatium, room, i.e. time.* — *rejectis, throwing aside.*

3. *impetus:* Et. 173. — *in phalangas* (acc. plur. § 63. f. 64; H. 68, 98. N. 2), *upon the phalanxes.* These were compact bodies of 300 to 400 men each with shields close locked in front and above (see note on Chap. 24). — *revellerent, &c., i.e. they leaped upon the roof of shields, pulled them up, and so thrust their swords down from above (desuper).*

4. *a sinistro cornu, on their left wing.*

5. *P. Crassus,* son of Marcus Crassus the triumvir. — *adulescens,* to distinguish him from his father. — *expeditior, more disengaged.* — *versabantur, were engaged.*

**Chap. 53.** *restitutum est,* contrasted with *laborantibus,* above. — *Rhenum:* the nearest point was a little below Bâle, somewhat more than five miles distant. Some texts have *quinque* instead of *quinquaginta.* The latter seems to be the correct reading, however. The Germans fled down the valley of the *III* (see dotted line in Plan III.), reaching the Rhine near Rheinau, some 50 miles from the battle-field. — *fugere:* Et. 142. — *perverserant:* Et. 509.

2. *tranare contenderunt = by great effort swam across.* — *reliquos omnes,* said to be 80,000.

3. *duae uxores:* only chiefs among the Germans, says Tacitus (G. 18), had more than one wife; and this was for the sake of honor and alliances. — *Sueva,* see Bk. iv. Chap. 1. — *utraque perierunt:* for Cæsar's massacres of women and children, compare Bk. IV. Chap. 14, Bk. VII. Chap. 28.

34. 5. neque ... diminuerat, nor had Fortune, by any harm to him, &c.

6. se praesente, in his own presence. — ter: it was the regular usage of the Germans to consult the lot thrice (Tac. G. 10). This has come down to the present day in sundry games, &c.

**Plan III.**
**Battle with Ariovistus.**

---

*a.* First camp of Ariovistus.  
*b.* Hill on which the conference was held.  
*c.* Second camp of Ariovistus.  
*d.* Cæsar’s larger camp.  
*e.* Cæsar’s smaller camp.  
*f.* Roman line of battle.  
*g.* German line of battle.

**Chap. 54. Ubi** (some older editions have ubi): these lived near the modern Cologne, and were deadly enemies of the Suevi, and
therefore generally in alliance with the Romans (see Bk. iv. Chap. 3). — insecuti: Et. 497.

14. maturius, earlier; the decisive battle with Ariovistus was fought about the 10th of September.

16. in citeriorem Galliam, south of the Alps. — conventus: the proconsular Courts held for the administration of justice.

THE LEGIONS.—When Cæsar came to Geneva, in the spring of the year 58 B.C., he found only one legion stationed in the farther province (Chap. 7*). This was the 10th (Legio X), afterwards so distinguished for fidelity and courage. As soon as the Helvetians set out through the territory of the Sequani, Cæsar hastened to Hither Gaul, enrolled two new legions (XI and XII), and called from their winter quarters the three (VII, VIII and IX) that were stationed in that province (see Chap. 10*). It was these six legions, together with auxiliaries (both horse and foot), that composed the army with which the Helvetians and the Germans were conquered.
BOOK SECOND. — B.C. 57.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY. — The people of Northern Gaul, including Flanders and the Netherlands, were far remote from any country hitherto occupied by the Roman arms. They lived amid forests and swamps hard to penetrate; they claimed kindred with the German tribes rather than with the more fickle and effeminate Celts; and they had a fierce and resolute spirit of independence, like that which the Dutch exhibited long after in the same regions, against the armies of Spain.* The Belgian tribes, and particularly the Nervii, appear in this confederation to have offered to Cæsar a more formidable and desperate resistance than any he met elsewhere, until the great rising of B.C. 52; and when their spirit was once broken, the conquest of Gaul was simply a question of time.

PAGE
35. CHAP. 1. in hibernis: it is doubtful whether this expression can be used except of an army or a campaign. — crebri = frequent. — adferebantur, fiebat (observe the imperfect of repeated action) = kept coming in; was informed from time to time. — quam, § 199; G. 616. R. 3. II.; H. 445. 4. — demonstravimus ... dixeramus. The Romans were very precise in indicating the relation of actions to one another in point of time. When one must be completed before another begins, the former is almost invariably expressed by a tense of completed action. Here the perfect, demonstravimus, implies an act (Bk. I. Chap. 54) done before the time of writing; the pluperfect, dixeramus, an act (Bk. I. Chap. 1) that took place before the letters and rumors came. Of course, to the writer the time of writing was present, and at that time the acts denoted by adferebantur and fiebat were in the past. Some think that each book of the Commentaries was written out at the close of the campaign of which it treated, from notes taken from day to day. — conjurare, uniting under oath: "any war against Rome is a 'conspiracy'; a nation enslaved by Rome is 'pacified.'"

2. vererentur, subj. as following esse (§ 342; G. 666; H. 529. II.). — Gallia, i.e. Celtic Gaul. — exercitus noster, i.e. in the way

* A very striking account of the country and its inhabitants will be found in the introduction to Motley’s Dutch Republic.
of regular garrisons on their frontier.—partim qui, &c., the three classes were, first, those jealous of the Roman power; second, the restless, who dreaded a strong settled rule; third, those who held a sort of despotic authority as chiefs.—ut . . . ita, while . . . at the same time.—inveterascere, get a foothold; lit. "grow old."—moleste ferebant, were impatient.

3. mobilitate: Et. 379. — novis imperis (dat. § 227. e; G. 345; H. 385) studebant, wanted frequent changes in the government.—nonnullis, i.e. the chiefs of clans.

36. ad conducendos homines, for taking men into their pay.—vulgo regna occupabantur, royal power was constantly usurped, by "coup d'état" on a small scale.—imperio nostro (abl. of time and cause), under our dominion.

Chap. 2. commotus: Et. 379. — duas legiones: these were numbered XIII and XIV, making eight in all, amounting perhaps to 60,000 men, including auxiliaries. The proconsul seems to have had absolute authority to raise these levies.—aestate: the aetas was the period from the spring equinox to that of autumn.

2. cum primum, as soon as.—pabuli copia, a supply of fodder, i.e. grass and grain began to grow, so that his army could move.—dat negotium, gives it in charge.—Senonibus: they were north of the Ædui, on the upper course of the Seine. Their name is preserved in the city of Sens.—uti cognoscant, to learn.

3. constantia, consistently, i.e. their accounts all agreed.— cogi [Et. 104], were gathering; conduci, were massing.

4. non dubitandum quin, there should be no hesitation about. With dubitare in this meaning the infinitive is the ordinary construction.

Chap. 3. de improviso, unexpectedly.—omni opinione (§ 247. b; G. 399. R.1; H. 417. I. n.5), than any one could think.—Remi, north of the river Marne, the territory near Rheims, in Champagne. They were friendly to the Romans, whose victory over Ariovistus had made them the second power in Gaul (see Bk. vi. Chap. 12).—ex Belgis, of the Belgae (for Belgarum: § 216. c; G. 371. R.5; H. 397. 3. n.5).
2. in fidem, to the protection. — oppidis (loc. abl.) recipere, receive them [the Romans] in their fortified places.

3. fuorem: blind and unreasoning passion. — Suessiones (obj. of deterrere), west of the Remi; the territory about the modern Soissons. — ut ne . . . potuerint (= possent, § 287. c. R.; G. 513; H. 495. VI.), that they [the Remi] could not even dissuade, &c. — qui utantur, although enjoying the same rights and laws (§ 320. e; G. 637; H. 515. III., under which construction it would also be subj. in direct disc.). — unum imperium, i.e. a confederacy, which did not, however, prevent the secession of the Suessiones along with the other Belgae. — magistratum: Et. 387. — quin consentirent, from uniting with them.

Chap. 4. armis: Et. 408. — sic, as follows. — reperiebat (imperf.), found, by repeated inquiry.

2. plerosque, a great many of: see the end of the chapter, and compare, with respect to the Nervii, Tac. G. 28. They were chiefly, no doubt, of Celtic blood, but considered the German a more proud and heroic descent.

37. propter fertilitatem [Et. 344]: construe with consedisse. — fieri, i.e. it was coming to be the case.

3. omnia explorata = full information. See note on compertum habere, Bk. I. Chap. 44. — propinquitatibus, blood-relationships; adfinitatibus, alliances by marriage.

4. Bellovacos, near Beauvais. — plurimum valere, have most power. — suos, i.e. of the Remi.

5. regem: showing that the overthrow of royal power (see note to Bk. I. Chap. 2) had not yet taken place among the Belgians. — cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also. — Britanniae, the first mention of Britain by a Roman author. — belli summam = conduct of the war.

6. Nervios, to the north of the Suessiones; Atrebates, near Arras; Ambianos, near Amiens; Caletos, near Calais; Veromanduos, in Vermandois; Condrusos, at Condros; Germani, a name appearing to belong especially to the four last-named tribes.

Chap. 5. liberaliter prosecutus [Et. 497], making liberal promises. — diligenter, promptly.
38. 2. *quanto opere* (often written *quantopere*) ... *intersit* [Et. 459], *how greatly it concerns both the republic* (Rome) *and their common interest* (§ 222; G. 381; H. 406. III.). — *ne confingendum sit*, lest they should have to contend.

3. *Bellovacorum*, as lying farthest west, and most remote from Cæsar’s field of operations, so as to divide the enemy (cf. Chap. 10). — *introduxerint*, perf. subj. (for fut. perf.), as following *docet* ... *posse.*

4. *ad se venire*, *were coming straight towards him.* — *ab iis*, construed with *cognovit.* — *Axonam*, the *Aisne*, here flowing nearly due west, and joining the Seine below Paris, through the Oise. — *in extremis finibus*, generally, *in the remotest part*; Bibrax, a town of the Remi, lying eight miles beyond. While here, Cæsar’s camp was protected by this river, in the rear, and in front by a small marshy stream. — *castra*, the traces of Cæsar’s works at this place were discovered in 1862, on a low hill called *Mauchamp* (see Plan IV.). — *ut* ... *posset*, subst. clause of result, obj. of *efficiēbat* (§ 332; G. 557; H. 501. II. 1).

ARRANGEMENT OF THE COHORTS IN CAMP. — We interpret from Hyginus the following arrangement of a cohort of six centuries.

The cohort encamped in a space of 120 ft. front and 180 ft. depth. This was divided, on lines parallel to the front, into 6 portions of 120 ft. by 30 ft. Each portion was for one century. From the length of the front, 12 ft. are to be deducted for the street dividing the cohort from the adjacent one. That leaves 108 ft. for the tents. Each century had 8 tents: 6 for the soldiers, one for the centurion, and one for the servants. As each tent was 10 ft. square, the length actually covered by tents would be 80 ft. This leaves 28 ft. for the 7 intervals between the tents, or 4 ft. for each interval. The three first centuries of the three maniples had their tents facing the wall, and the three second had theirs facing from the wall. Thus the two centuries of one maniple would be stationed back to back. The second of one maniple would face the first of the next, divided from it by a street 12 ft. wide, parallel to the wall.

From the 30 ft. depth of the space allotted to the century, 6 feet must be allowed for their half of the street, 10 ft. for the tents, 5 ft. behind the latter for stacking the weapons, and, finally, 9 feet for the pack animals.

The several cohorts of a legion, according to the room, could be placed side by side in a line, or in several lines.
Belgian Confederacy.

Camp Duties. — When the van reached the camping-ground selected, it was immediately formed with front towards the enemy to cover the work of fortifying. Strong details of cavalry reconnoitred in all directions, while the engineers immediately set to work at measuring and staking out the camp. As the legions arrived, they proceeded each to its allotted place, and laid aside baggage and arms (excepting swords) in the space behind the site for the tents *(arma in contubernio deposita)*. The cohorts assigned to guard duty of course retained their arms, and proceeded at once to their posts. Baggage and arms being laid aside, the legions marched to the street next the wall and were there told off, some for work within the camp, some for fortifying. The latter work, having already been measured *(opere dimenso)*, was begun at once *(castra ponuntur, mununtur ♂)*. When the baggage train arrived, the animals were tethered, each in its proper place, and were then unloaded by the servants *(calones)*. The tents, as a rule, were only pitched when the fortifications were completed. When not near the enemy, however, and especially in stormy weather, the tents would be pitched *(tabernacula constituere, statuere)* immediately on arrival. As soon as the fortifications were finished, the bulk of the cavalry was withdrawn into the camp. A few squadrons were left on picket without *(equites in statione ♂)*, and these sent scouts *(exploratores ♂)* in all directions. Any special duty of gaining information was performed by spies *(speculatores ♂)*.

At each gate was usually placed a cohort on guard, the four coming each from a different legion *(cohors in statione ad portam ♂)*. In the daytime few sentries were posted. But during the night doubtless each cohort of the guard lined the redan before the gate, and its side of the wall, thickly with sentinels. Of course, in special cases the guard was strengthened. Besides the guards at the gates, one cohort at least was detailed for duty in the camp, and was stationed in the *praetorium* and *quaestorium*.

As soon as the fortification was completed, the supper was prepared and eaten. For this meal the staff assembled in the *praetorium*, and remained there until nightfall. During this time the general could conveniently issue his orders for the night and for the next day. At nightfall, also, the musicians of the army assembled to sound the tattoo. This was the signal for setting the night watch. The cavalry pickets were drawn into the camp, except a very few single horsemen as outlying sentries.

---

* Bk. II. 19. † Bk. I. 49. II. 5, 13. ‡ Bk. V. 50. § Bk. II. 11. III. 2. VII. 44. || Bk. II. 11. V. 49. ** Bk. IV. 11. VI. 37.
(speculatores). The guard cohorts were probably changed at the tattoo, the new guard going on duty now to serve 24 hours. The night sentries (vigiles) were at once posted on the tambours (titula) and wall. The night from sunset to sunrise was divided into four equal watches (vigiliae). Each cohort on guard was divided accordingly into four reliefs, one of which should be on duty during each watch. The other three reliefs could rest. Of course, they lay on their arms, ready for duty at a moment's notice. If the cohort contained only about 300 men, it will readily be seen that 70 men could compose one relief. This number, for a length of wall of 2100 ft. (one side of the camp), would give one sentinel for each 30 ft. The different reliefs were signalled by the trumpeters (buccinatores).

At daybreak the musicians sounded the reveille. If the march was not to be resumed, the guard cohorts drew in their night sentries, and posted the less numerous sentinels for the day. The cavalry pickets took their posts (stationes), and sent out their scouts (exploratores). At noon this cavalry guard was relieved.

During the night the rounds of the sentries were probably made by the centurions of the guard. Occasionally, also, the tribunes on duty, and the general himself, would inspect the guards, to make sure of the vigilance with which the camp was watched.

If camp should be made in the presence of an enemy in force, the usual vanguard would not be enough to cover the operation. One or two legions would then be deployed in triple line of battle. The first two lines would keep off the enemy, and the third would do the work of fortifying.*

The army might leave the camp either to attack a near enemy, or to continue the march.

In the first case the tents were left standing, the baggage remained in its place, and a guard was left in charge. This guard might consist of a detail from each legion, or of entire legions. The latter would be likely to occur when legions of raw recruits were present. These would naturally be left within the walls.†

In case of continuing the march, the camp was abandoned. At the first signal of the bugles (signum profectionis), the tents were struck; at the second (vasa con clamamantur), they and the rest of the baggage were packed on the beasts; at the third, the march began.

To conceal the departure from the enemy, the signals might be omitted. Still it was deemed a point of military honor to sound them.

5. post eum (ea) quae essent = the rear of his army; tuta agrees with (ea).

6. in altera parte, i.e. on the left bank of the Aisne, towards the Remi. Cæsar had crossed the stream and encamped on the side next the Suessiones.—duodeviginti pedum, 18 feet (in width): i.e. the moat (see note on Bk. I. Chap. 49: "The Camp").

CHAP. 6. aegre sustentatum est = it was with difficulty that they held out.

2. oppugnatio, mode of attacking (towns).—circumjecta [Et. 493] . . . moenibus (dat.), having thrown a multitude of men about the walls.—coepti sunt, see § 143. a; G. 424. R.¹; H. 297. I. 1.—testudine facta, making a testudo; see note, Bk. I. Chap. 24.

3. tum, in this instance.

CHAP. 7. isdem ducibus usus, employing the same men [as] guides. Observe that ducibus is a second (or predicate) object after usus.

39. Numidas (from Algiers), Cretas: both these, especially the Cretans, were famous bowmen.—Baleares, from the small islands east of Spain: they were celebrated slingers.—subsidio oppidanis (§ 233; G. 350; H. 390) dat. of service and of indir. object.—potiundi oppidi, § 296. R.; G. 428. R.²; H. 421. N.⁴

2. morati, depopulati, having delayed, having laid waste: observe that Latin can employ a perfect participle (with active meaning) only (as here) of deponent verbs. The corresponding construction has to be continued in the abl. absolute, with incendo: vicis (Et. 85) incensis, having set fire to, &c.—quos takes the gender of vicis (collected habitations), as more important than aedificiis (scattered buildings). This agreement is analogous to that of pred. adjectives (§ 187. b; G. 616. 5 and 282; H. 445. 3. N.¹ and 439. 2).—omnibus copiis (abl. of accompaniment, see § 248. a; G. 391. R.¹; H. 419. 1), with all their troops.—ab . . . duobus, less than two miles off: ab is used here adverbially (§ 261. d; G. 416. R.; H. 379. 2. N.).—amplius: this may be acc. of extent of space (§ 257; G. 335; H. 379); or milibus may be abl. of distance, and amplius construed as in § 247. c; G. 311. R.⁴; H. 417. 1. N.²

CHAP. 8. eximiam opinionem, their high reputation for valor.
— *proelio supersedere*, to defer the engagement (lit. to sit above it, and do nothing). — *periclitabatur*, experimented: this gives the original meaning of *periculum*, trial, hence risk.

2. *in latitudinem*, i.e. from the camp towards the confluence of the *Miette* with the *Aisne*. — *locus*, loc. abl. (§§ 254, 258. f; G. 387; H. 425. 2). — *loci* (construe with *tantum*), spread over as much ground as, &c. — *lateris dejectus* — lateral slopes. — *in frontem*, &c., falling with an easy slope in front (i.e. to the west), sank down gently to the plain (see Plan IV.).

Plan IV. *Battle on the Aisne (Axona)*. Bk. II. Chap. 5-10.
C. R. Castra Romana.

3. *transversam*, at right angles to his line of battle. The remains of the works (see note, Chap. 5') show that towards the north was a trench (*fossa*) with a redoubt (*castellum*) at the end near the enemy. No such remains are found at the south: either
they have been effaced, or Cæsar's memory was at fault in using the plural term (castella). It is thought by some that the Aisne in Cæsar's time flowed farther east than now, cutting off the ox-bow near the camp; and that the southern castellum was near this ancient bank (see Plan IV.).

TORMENTA.—The artillery of the Romans consisted of various machines for hurling huge arrows, stones and the like. They were of three kinds,—catapultae, ballistae and scorpiones. Their probable construc-

Fig. 17. Catapulta.

struction may be seen in the annexed cuts. Usually the catapults shot arrows, and the ballistae great stones. The scorpions were really light catapults, and so were sometimes used as a sort of field artillery. The

Fig. 18. Scorpio.

others were generally employed only in the attack or defence of fortified positions, being too clumsy to be of service in the field. These machines were repaired and kept in order by the fabri, a body of whom were always
attached to the army. It may here be remarked that the fabri also cared for the weapons and armor, as well as constructed bridges. It is obvious that after each successful battle the pilae could easily be gathered and repaired.

Fig. 19. Ballista.

The word tormenta (from torqueo, twist) refers to the principle on which it will be seen from the cuts that all these machines must have been constructed.

3. instruxisset, subj. by attraction (§ 342; G. 665, at end; H. 529. II.) for fut. perf. indic.

4. si . . . esset, if there should be need of anything = any need.

Chap. 9. palus, a wet meadow (before referred to), traversed by a little stream, the Miette (Plan IV.).—si . . . exspectabant [Et. 99], waited [to see] whether. — si . . . fieret, in case they should begin the passage.

40. 2. proelio equestri, a cavalry-skirmish, which proved more favorable to the Roman side (secundiores nostris).—post, behind.

3. castellum, the redoubt ("tête de pont") beyond the river, held by Sabinus (Chap. 5°). — intersecinderent, cut away (between). —si minus potuissent, if they should not succeed. (Note that possent here represents the future, potuissent the future perfect, in the thought as it occurred to their minds.)

Chap. 10. Caesar: words thus italicized are wanting or obliterated in the Ms.—Numidias, &c.: these light-armed troops were trained runners, and so "got round by the bridge to the ford in time to stop the passage of the Belgians."
2. adgressi, at the stream below, probably, at the west of Cæsar's camp.

3. nostros, subj. of prodered depending on viderunt: and saw that our men were not [disposed to] advance to worse ground to fight them. — concilio: Et. 28. — domum . . . reverti: thus the confederacy dissolves suddenly into a mere defensive alliance, and the Nervii, &c., are cut to pieces in detail. — eos, antecedent of quorum, above. — convenièrent, &c.: understand ut after constituerunt (§ 331. f. R.; G. 546. R. 8; H. 499. 2).

4. Divitiacum . . . adpropinquare, see Chap. 58. — persuaderi (impersonal, § 230; G. 199. R. 1; H. 301), subject of poterat. — neque . . . ferrent = and so fail to carry relief to their own people.

41. Chap. 11. nullo certo ordine, in no regular order of march. "Imagine a débacle of 236,000 men, besides camp-followers, women, &c." — fecerunt ut: § 332. c; G. 557; H. 498. II. n. 2

2. speculatores, spies. They obtained information by mingling with the enemy in disguise; while the scouts (exploratores) were squads of cavalry who ranged the country in the vicinity of the army. — nondum perspexerat = he had not yet seen clearly, the object being qua . . . discenderent.


4. cum . . . consisterent, while those in the rear whom they over-took stood firm. — priores (understand et), and those in advance.

5. tantum . . . spatium = killed as many of them as the time (before night) allowed ("as the day was long").

Chap. 12. diei: Et. 224. — Noviodunum, the modern Soissons, about 20 miles west of Bibrak. Its modern name is given from the tribe whose capital it was, civitas Suessionum.

2. ex itinere, i.e. without waiting to throw up works or form regular lines of approach. — paucis defendentibus (concessive), though there were few defenders. — oppugnare, to attack; expugnare, to capture.

The Siege. — As this is the first mention in the Commentaries of an attack on a fortified town, we give here a full description of siege operations, to which reference may be made as needed in reading later chapters.

1. The principal work of a regular siege was the mound (agger). This
was always begun at a distance from the wall very nearly out of the reach of missiles. It was then gradually extended in the direction of the point to be attacked, and was at the same time gradually increased in height until on a level with the top of the walls, or even higher. When this mound was completed, the storming party moved on its top to the attack.

2. The height was often considerable. Before Avaricum* it was 80 ft., and as much before Massilia. The length, of course, depended on the power of the enemy's missile weapons. It seems probable that those built in assaulting the Gallic towns were not very long. The least distance from the hostile wall at which the construction could have been begun was from 400 to 500 ft. The width above must have been enough for a storming column, very likely of the usual formation. If we take this to be the front of a maniple, the least breadth would have been 50 ft. The sides might be quite steep, as we shall see later. A fabric 80 ft. high and 50 ft. wide on top, might have been 60 ft. wide on the ground. To the building of the agger, it must be remembered, everything else in the siege was subordinated.

3. By way of preparation for its construction, first of all the ground must be levelled for the foundation. This could be done by workmen protected by testudines, stout movable sheds (a, Fig. 26). Then the workmen, both those building the agger and those providing the material, must be guarded from the missiles of the enemy. The former were protected by plutei, large standing shields, which could be advanced from time to time. The others brought the material in covered galleries, composed of a series of vineae (sheds like the testudines in Fig. 26, but entirely open at each end), reaching to the point of beginning the agger. The workmen were also protected by archers, slingers, and tormenta, drawn up in a line parallel to the hostile wall. The archers and slingers were themselves protected by a line of plutei; the tormenta were placed usually in moving towers (c, Fig. 26). The towers were increased in height as they moved forward by putting up additional stories. Each floor often had an outside gallery protected by a sort of palisade. These parallels (i.e. the plutei and towers) must also have had covered approaches of long lines of

* Bk. VII. 24.
vineae (r o, Fig. 25). Under shelter of these vineae, too, were posted bodies of legionaries (cohortes expeditae*) to cover the operations and resist sorties. Farther in the rear, outside the camp, bivouacked strong bodies of troops, as additional supports.

4. The strength of the various protections would of course depend on the power of the enemy's missiles. Usually the rude walls of the vineae were only of a sort of wattled work.

5. Sometimes towers (turres ambulatoriae) were placed on the agger (Bk. VII. Chap. 17). In such cases the top of the latter was designed to be a smooth roadway; and its height had merely to be enough for the tower to have sufficient elevation. This was probably a quicker way of approach, as it saved building a considerable part of the agger; but it was not so convenient for a column of attack. The column would have to

![Fig. 21. Pluteus.](image)

pass over a drawbridge let fall from the tower upon the enemy's wall. As a rule, the tower accompanied the construction of the agger at its side (t t, Fig. 25), and served as a battery to clear the enemy from the wall, and as a redoubt in the line of approaches.

Construction of the Agger.

6. Fig. 24 gives a longitudinal vertical section of the agger. ab is the city wall to be attacked. The section of the agger when complete is represented by abcdefha. Of this only a little part, as cefhn d, can be built regularly. The portion next to the wall, abcd, must then be filled pell mell at the last moment.

7. To begin the regular structure, a line of vineae (g l, Fig. 25) was first advanced from the depot of material to the point of beginning. About 30 ft. in advance of this point, and at right angles to the line of huts, was placed a line of plutei, to protect the workmen. Through the gallery formed by the huts the workmen now carried the material. This was, first

* Bk. VII. Chap. 27.
of all, logs 20 to 30 ft. long and from a foot to a foot and a half thick. These were piled in layers alternating in direction, "cob house" fashion (Fig. 23). In the middle was left a passage some 10 or 12 ft. wide. The interstices were filled with stones, sods, brush, &c. When the work had reached a height of about 7 ft., a layer of timbers was placed entirely across it, thus at the same time covering over the passage and making a floor for a second story. Thus the first story was completed to a length of 30 ft. The *plutei* were now moved 30 ft. ahead, and, in like manner as before, a second section of the *agger* was built. The covered passage through the first section served the same purpose as the line of *vinae*, for the protection of those carrying the material. At the point of beginning, steps were made so as to reach the top of the first story.

8. When the work had been advanced in this way some 100 ft., a second line of *plutei* (*k*, Fig. 24) was placed on top of the first story and across it; and under their protection a second story was begun, just like the first. At the beginning of this, room was left for a platform (*fg*) by which to approach the covered gallery (*n*) of the second story. In this manner the work was steadily advanced, until the entire structure had reached the required height. Each additional story had its covered gallery running throughout its length, its steps, and platform.

9. When the regular structure had been brought as near the hostile wall as is safe, then through the various galleries a great mass of material, stones, fascines, sods, &c., was carried, and thrown out into the remaining space, until it is quite filled. The sides of the regular structure were protected from fire by being covered with fresh hides. When the *agger* was brought quite to the wall, the time for assault had arrived. Archers, slingers and *tormenta* swept the wall with missiles, while the column of attack mounted
Fig. 25. General View of Siege Operations.

A B C D. Hostile wall. s s. Testudines aggestitiae, protecting those levelling the ground. k k. Agger. x x, x' x', &c. Plutei, protecting those working on the agger e f g. Line of plutei, manned with archers and slingers. t t. Turres, also manned with archers and slingers and provided with tormenta. r o. Covered way of vineae, giving approach to archers and slingers. i q. Covered way of vineae approaching the point of beginning the agger. f g'. Position of plutei, covering the beginning of agger. m n. Covered gallery through the agger. n n n, &c. Steps and platforms of the several stories.
the agger, and rushed along its summit to storm the enemy's works. Usually, however, the town surrendered when this assault was seen impending.

3. vineas agere, to push the sheds forward. — quaeque . . . usui, i.e. wood, earth, stones, &c.

42. Chap. 13. obsidibus acceptis, after he had received as hostages, &c. — Bellovacos: their territory lay about 40 or 50 miles due north of Paris.

2. Bratuspantium, Breteuil, at the head of the Somme valley. — circiter, &c., [only] about five miles, &c. — manus: Et. 386. — majores natu, the elders (§ 91. b; G. 89. 3; H. 168. 4). — in ejus fidem venire (dep. on significare), that they committed themselves to his protection, i.e. "surrender at discretion."

3. cum accessisset, poneret, had arrived, was making (pitching).


2. perferre, were suffering: its subj. is Haeduos. — defecisse, had withdrawn: its subj. is Bellovacos (et . . . et, both . . . and).

3. qui . . . fuissent = all the movers of this policy.

4. sua clementia, his own [characteristic or well-known] clemency.

5. si fecerit, perf. subj. for fut. perf. of dir. disc., following the present facit. — quorum . . . consuerint, by whose aid and resources they are accustomed to sustain whatever wars befall them.

Chap. 15. causa: Et. 60. — quod, &c., giving the reason of poposcit. — magna auctoritate, of great influence (§ 215. R.; G. 402. R.1; H. 419. 2): the genitive is more common. — praestabat, was at the head.

43. 2. Ambianorum, about Amiens, near the coast of the Channel.

3. pati, they suffer (§ 336. a; G. 527. R.2; H. p. 296, foot-note 2). — eorum: this word is doubtful here; probably a note written in the margin by some editor: better as a general truth, animos, spirit. — remitti, relaxed.

4. reliquos: Et. 500. — projecissent, had abandoned. — confirmare, they declared positively that they would not, &c.
Fig. 26. Oppugnatio.


Note. — This cut represents an attack both by land and water, in which no agger is employed. While in these respects unlike the attack on the Gallic towns, it shows very clearly some siege implements in active use.
Belgian Confederacy.

CHAP. 16. Sabim, the Sambre, which flows north-easterly into the Meuse (Mosa). The Nervi occupied the basin of this river and of the upper Scheldt.

2. Atrebatii, &c., small tribes to the south and west.

3. Aduatucorum, Germans living farther to the east. — quique = eosque qui, following conjecisse. — in eum locum quo, into a place to which, &c.


2. demonstrarunt, made known. — inter singulas legiones = between every two legions. — impedimentorum [Et. 242] magnum numerum = a very long baggage-train ; numerum, because there was a large number of pack animals.

The Baggage-Train. — The heavy baggage (impedimenta) of the legion was carried by pack animals (jumenta), horses or mules. Wagons or carts, while occasionally used by the army, were more generally found only with the sutlers (mercatores), who followed the legions. The light baggage (sarcinae) was carried by the soldiers.

We may reckon the load of one pack animal at 200 pounds. First of all were the tents. These were described by Hyginus as square, 10 ft. on a side, with a wedge roof. Ten men could use such a tent. Hyginus estimates 8 men in a tent, but yet allows 1 to every 10, as 1/2 of each contubernium should always be on guard duty. It seems safe to consider that the contubernium, or number messing together in a tent, in Cæsar's army, was also 10. Then each centurion had one tent. So a maniple would need 14 tents for the centurions and a strength of 120 men. Allowing 2 for the servants, the entire number would be 16. That would make 48 for a cohort, and 480 for a legion. To this number must be added those needed by the six tribunes and their servants, or perhaps 12 more. If tents are allowed also for subcenturions, perhaps we should estimate 30 or 60 more.

The tents were of leather (pelles). The weight of one, including two upright poles, one ridge-pole, and a supply of pegs, must have been at least 40 pounds. One horse, then, could carry 5 such tents. It seems more likely, however, that we should estimate one pack animal to each
tent; i.e. to each centurion and to each contubernium. In this way could be carried provisions for a week, with hand-mills, blankets, &c.

For pitching camp there must have been needed a full supply of stakes, tools, &c. As these were for general use, they could not have been divided among the pack animals of the cohorts. So we may add one animal to each cohort for this service. Thus the cohort would have at least 49 beasts. To each beast should be allowed one servant (calo), who could attend each to a centurion or contubernium.

The higher officers had, besides at least two riding horses each, a still greater number of pack animals. We shall not be far astray if we assign to each tribune three pack animals and five servants.

Thus the number of pack horses or mules in the baggage-train of a legion reaches at least 520.

intercedere, intervened. — neque negotii, and there would be no difficulty. — hanc, i.e. the first legion. — consistere, make a stand.

3. adjuvabat: the subj. is quod Nervii . . . effecerent, &c., the advice of those who reported the matter was reinforced by the fact that, &c.

THE MARCH.

I. THE COHORT.—The cohort marched either in column of maniples or in column of centuries.

1. The column of maniples (manipulatim) was formed from order of battle merely by facing to the right (or left). (Figs. 27, 29.) Thus the maniples were in column, and the two centuries of each maniple were side by side. As the depth of the cohort in line of battle was 40 ft., of course the column of maniples was 40 ft. wide. But this was a loose order. Allowing each man 3 ft., the column could easily have been made only 30 ft. wide. Again, this wide column could have been reduced to half the width by the right (or left) century of each maniple moving straight on, and the other falling in its rear. Thus the maniple, instead of 12 ranks of 10 men, would have had 24 ranks of 5 men each. This last formation was really a column of centuries by the flank.

2. The column of centuries proper (centuriatim; ordinatim) was formed from the order of battle by having the maniple on the right (or left) wing of the cohort march straight forward, and the others successively followed (Figs. 27, 30, 31). Thus the centuries would form a column, the width of which would be the same as the front of a maniple, 40 ft. (or 36 ft., not including the centurion on the flank).
3. The column of centuries would naturally be adopted when a cohort marched directly forward. If the road was less than 40 ft. wide, as must often have happened in Gaul, the width of the column could easily be reduced from 40 ft. to 20 ft. The right (or left) half of each century would move straight on, and the other half would fall in its rear. The century would then consist of 10 ranks of 6 men each, instead of 5 ranks of 12 men. This was probably the usual formation in a march forward over the rough Gallic roads.

4. In column of march, in any formation, we should estimate 4 ft. as the distance from breast to breast. Then a cohort of 360 men would reach to the following length: —

- In column of centuries, 120 or 240 ft.;
- In column of maniples, 144 or 288 ft.

II. THE LEGION.—The legion, or a still greater number of cohorts, marched in one of three orders: in column (agmen pilatum), in order of battle (acies instructa), in square (agmen quadratum).

1. When the legion is in column, the cohorts march according to their number. If the march is from the right (i.e. from the right of the line of battle, Fig. 28), the first cohort has the lead, then follows the second, and so on. If the march is from the left, the 10th cohort leads, followed by the 9th, &c. Each cohort is in column of centuries. Between each two cohorts there must have been a small interval. Suppose this to have been 20 ft. Then the length of the legion would have been 1400 or 2600 ft.

* The Roman road was usually only 15 ft. wide.
2. For the baggage-train of a legion, we estimate 520 pack animals as the normal strength. In a road 40 ft. wide, 8 animals can easily find room abreast. Then the train would have had 65 ranks. Allowing each rank 10 ft. depth, the train would extend 650 ft. In a road only 20 ft. wide, the pack animals would march 4 abreast, and would extend 1300 ft. Then a legion with its baggage in column of march would extend 2050 or 3900 ft.

3. The march in order of battle is of two kinds: (a) by lines, and (b) by divisions.

   a. If the legion marches by lines, there are as many columns as there are lines in the formation. In Caesar's array there would usually be three columns. In the first column are cohorts 1-4; in the second, cohorts 5-7; in the third, cohorts 8-10 (Fig. 32). Each cohort is in column of maniples. So by simply facing to the left (or right) the legion is again in order of battle. It will be seen that in this formation the legion moves by the flank.

   b. A legion marching to the front by divisions in triple line of battle, forms three columns (Fig. 33). In the first are the cohorts of the right wing, 1, 5 and 8. In the second are the cohorts of the centre, 2, 6 and 9. In the third are the cohorts of the left, 4, 3, 7 and 10. The columns must be as far apart as the distance between their leading cohorts when in line of battle. Each cohort is in column of centuries.*

4. The march in square (Fig. 34) was used when the army was...

* Bk. I. 491, Bk. IV. 141.
rounded by the enemy. One division of troops, in column of centuries, leads. Then follows the baggage-train, and then a second division of troops in column of centuries. On either wing marches a body in column of maniples. Then by a simple facing of the wings to right and left, and deploying of the van and rear, the square is ready to meet the enemy.*

III. THE ARMY. — The three general directions of the march are, forward, to the rear, and to either flank.

1. When the column is marching forward, we must distinguish three parts of the army: the van (primum agmen †), the main body (exercitus, omnes copiae, agmen legionum ‡), and the rear guard (agmen novissimum, agmen extremum $§$).

2. The van may have had one of three objects. The first was to engage the rear of the enemy, so as to delay his march and give time for the main body to deploy, and for the commander to form his plans. For this purpose, a body of cavalry was sent forward, sometimes with the addition of light infantry (see Chap. 19§).

3. The second object was to reconnoitre the country (loqui naturam perspicere, iter cognoscere), and to bring news of the enemy. To accomplish this, there were sent forward special detachments of cavalry (exploratores), who scourèd the country far in front and on both flanks. To these detachments were often assigned trusty staff-officers, accompanied by spies (speculatores ||).

4. The third object was to select and make ready the place for the camp. This duty was entrusted to a detail of centurions from the legions, accompanied by a few men, and usually under a tribune or other officer of the general staff.**

5. At a fixed distance after the van marched the main body, and close after it the rear guard. This last, during a march to the front, had only police duty to perform; i.e., to pick up stragglers, and the like.

6. The main body marched in one of three forms: a. In column, each legion accompanied by its baggage. b. In column, all the baggage of the army together. c. In line of battle.

a. This order of march was only adopted in a friendly country, or at

---

* Bk. VII. 67. † Bk. I. 15†. ‡ Bk. II. 19. § Bk. I. 15. 23, II. 26. || Bk. I. 15†. 21†. 41†, II. 5†. ** Bk. II. 17†.
least when there appeared no immediate danger of an encounter with the enemy. The legions were in single column and the cohorts in column of centuries. Each legion was followed immediately by its baggage, which thus divided it from the legion next following. The last legion probably detached a few cohorts to follow the baggage. This detachment would thus form the rear guard of the whole army.

A column of five legions in this order, with a breadth of 40 ft., requires 10,250 ft. in length. A sixth legion would need 40 minutes to reach the head of this column so as to engage in battle.

It is clear that if the enemy could make a vigorous attack in force on the head of the column, they would have a good chance to throw it into confusion, and prevent it from properly deploying (see Chap. 17).

b. When near the enemy, if it was not desirable to march in order of battle, the column was formed as in a, but the baggage-train of all the army was assembled. The greater part of the legions, usually three-fourths of the entire number, composed the head of the column. Then followed the baggage. The remaining legions brought up the rear (claudunt agmen). In this order the legions could be deployed much more rapidly, and were properly called expeditae (see Chap. 19).

If a legion marching expedita is attacked on the march (in agmine, sub sarcinis, in itinere), before being able to meet the enemy, the legions must pile their personal baggage (sarcinae in acervum comportantur, sarcinae conferuntur*), draw their shields from their coverings (legimenta scutis detrahuntur†), put on their field badges (insignia accommodantur†), put on helmets (galeae induntur, galeantur‡), and get their weapons ready (arma expedituntur, legio armatur‡). Of course time was needed for all this; and this time must be won by the vanguard.

c. The advance in order of battle (acie instructa) could be made only for short distances. It was used only when in the immediate presence of the enemy, and when the ground was suitable. The order of march of each legion has already been described (see Bk. IV. Chap. 14¹).

7. The march in retreat was usually in one of two forms: a. The retreat in column, with baggage massed. b. The retreat in square.

a. The baggage was sent out of camp as soon as possible, under escort of a detachment of infantry. This body formed the vanguard, and with them went a detail of centurions and privates to stake out the new camp. Then followed the main body, the cohorts in column of centuries. Finally, at a suitable distance, moved the rear guard (agmen novissimum).

* Bk. I. 24². † Bk. II. 21³. ‡ Bk. VII. 18.
It was the duty of these last to delay the enemy, thus giving the army time to push on, or to deploy, if the attack should be made in force. The rear guard was usually composed of cavalry, with archers and slingers.*

6. The retreat in square was chosen when the enemy were on all sides; for instance, on a march through a rebellious country, and also when the hostile cavalry were numerous. A single square could be formed from all the legions, with all the baggage of the army in the centre; or each legion could form a square by itself, with its baggage enclosed. The cavalry, supported by the archers and slingers, remained without as skirmishers.†

8. Flank marches were made only for a short distance, and always in order of battle. The legions marched in column of lines, so that there were two or three parallel columns, according to the formation. The baggage-train would either march on the side remote from the enemy, or between the legions, each being followed by its own pack animals. The latter mode might be used when the army was divided from the enemy by some considerable obstacle, like a river; or when the side remote from the enemy was difficult to traverse; for instance, when the army was marching in the valley of a stream, so that the water was on the flank towards the enemy, and hills and woods on the other flank.‡ In such case as last mentioned, no guard of light troops would be necessary between the army and the enemy. But in open ground, such a detachment would have to be made, and would cover the march as skirmishers. To form line of battle from a column of march by the flank, was a simple matter unless the baggage was between the legions. It was done by facing to the right or left, as the case might be. In every march of a large body of troops, the order of march was changed daily, and the legions took turns in leading, so that each in turn might come first to camp.

44. antiquitas, of old: the hedges, described below, were an immemorial custom, and are still, it is said, common in this region. Traces of such still exist in England, about 400 years old. — neque student, pay no attention. — quicquid possunt, &c., = all the strength they have is in infantry.

4. quo facilius impedirent, in order to check the more easily. — teneris arboribus, &c., having notched and bent down young trees, and allowed their boughs to grow out thick breadthwise, and by planting among them brambles and thorns, they had made these hedges to furnish defences like a wall, which not only could not be broken into,

* Bk. I. 241. † Bk. VII. 67. ‡ Bk. VII. 34, 36.
but could not even be seen through. — consilium, i.e. the plan of attacking the first legion.

Chap. 18. aequaliter declivis, with uniform slope.

2. ab, i.e. on the other side. — nascebatur: Et. 42. — adversus hunc, facing (i.e. the similar slope facing) this. — contrarius, opposite (i.e. on the other side of the river). — passus . . . apertus, cleared (i.e. of woods) at the foot for about 200 paces.

3. secundum (prep.) along, or near. — stationes equitum, cavalry pickets.

Chap. 19. ordo agminis, plan of march (ago). — aliter . . . ac, otherwise [than] as ($156. a$; G. 646; H. 459. 2).

2. hostis, acc. plur. ($55. i$, 58; G. 60. 1; H. 62): this form is constantly found in earlier writers, but is rare in most editions of Cæsar. — expeditas [Et. 242], unincumbered (i.e. without baggage). For this order of march, see note on Chap. 17, “The March,” III. 6. b. — conlocaré, had put in its place: this word is often confused by beginners with conlegere, collect. — proxume conscriptae, the last levies; while the veterans, as usual, must bear the brunt of the fight.

Tactics of the Cavalry. — The small tactical unit* of the Roman cavalry, or of that formed on the Roman plan, was the turma of 32 horses in rank and file. This was probably arranged in 4 ranks of 8 horses each. Allowing 5 ft. front room to each horse, the turma would have a front of 40 ft., equal to that of the maniple. Taking 10 ft. depth for each rank, the depth of the turma would also be 40 ft., again equal to that of the maniple. The order of march could easily be formed from this order of battle.

A regiment (ala) of 400 horses consisted of 12 turmae. The battle array of the cavalry would very likely resemble that of the infantry. It would then consist of several lines, two or three, with intervals between the turmae. A regiment of 12 turmae in two lines would have 6 in each line; and the front, including intervals, would be 440 ft. Of course, if it should be desired to overwhelm the enemy with the momentum of the mass of horse, the intervals would be closed up.

If the number of cavalry should be considerable, a larger tactical unit would be desirable. Three turmae, arrayed side by side, would amount

* By a tactical unit is meant a body of troops which act together, and on which the evolutions of a larger body are based. Thus, in the American army, the company is the tactical unit of the regiment; the regiment of the brigade, &c.
to about 100 horses, with a front of 120 ft., equal to that of a cohort. A regiment (ala) of 400 horses would contain 4 such divisions.

In attacks in mass doubtless columns were formed of entire alae, perhaps 3 turmae front and 4 turmae (i.e. 16 ranks) deep. After the success was won, the turmae in the rear could be brought to the front (turnatim) to pursue the scattered foe.

Of course, the tactics of the cavalry would depend largely upon their

**Plan V. Battle on the Sambre (Sabisc).** Bk. II. Chap. 19-27.
C. R. Castra Romana. C. B. Castra Belgica.

arms as well as upon their numbers. If provided with missiles, they would doubtless be arrayed in turmae only, and would never form columns for attack.

The usual order of march of the ala of 400 men was probably in columns of turmae. If there was room for a column 40 ft. wide, the normal
order of battle might be kept by each turma. The ala, not including the
train, would then extend 480 feet. The train must have been considerable,
and would have added at least a half to the length of the line. A column
of 10 alae, or 4000 men, which Caesar sometimes had, would have extended
7200 feet.

If the road allowed the column a breadth of only 20 ft., as must gener-
ally have been the case in Gaul, the turma would march with a front of 4
horses and a depth of 8. The ala would then need 960 ft.; without bag-
gage, and with it 1440 ft. A column of 10 alae would require 14,400 ft.

In camp there would suffice for each turma a space of 120 ft. by 30 ft.,
the same as for a century of infantry. Then one ala of cavalry would
take the same room and be arranged in the same way as two cohorts of
infantry. Of course, in particulars the arrangement must have been varied
to adapt it to the convenience of that arm of the service.

4. quem ad finem: the antecedent attracted into the relative
clause. Translate as if it were ad finem ad quem.—cedentes,
agreeing with eos (understood), the obj. of insequi.—opere
dimenso, having staked out the works.

45. 5. silvis: the plural refers to the different parts of the
forest.—convenerat, had been agreed on (compare Eng. conven-
tional).—ut . . . confirmaverant, just as they had formed their
line, &c., they dashed forward (provolaverunt): i.e. in the same
order and with the same resolute courage.—omnibus copiis, in
full force (abl. of accompaniment).

6. in manibus nostris, i.e. within reach of our weapons.—
adverso colle contenderunt, pushed straight up the hill (§ 258.g;
G. 387; H. 431, according to Prof. Harkness).—occupati (this
participle is only used as an adjective), still at work.

Chap. 20. vexillum, see note on Bk. I. Chap. 25.—revocandi:
Et. 496.

The Martial Music.—The musical instruments used in the Roman
army were four in number: 1. The buccina, or bugle, a winding-horn of
brass. 2. The cornu, or horn, the horn of an ox, with a silver mouth-
piece. It was also sometimes made of brass. 3. The tuba, or trumpet,
straight and otherwise like the modern trumpet. 4. The litus, or cavalry
trumpet, bent at the mouth, and distinguished by its shrill tone.
The only musicians expressly mentioned by Cæsar were the *buccinatores* and *tubicines*. The former seem to have used both bugle and horn; the latter, only the trumpet. The various evolutions of the legion and its component parts were regulated by horn and trumpet,—the orders of the commander being first signalled on the former, and then passed along the line by the hoarse blast of the trumpet. It seems likely that there was a horn for each cohort, and a trumpet in each maniple. The *classicum*, sounded by all the musical instruments at once, was the general’s call for the army to assemble when he wished to address them; or it was the

signal for the onset to begin. In the latter case the commander’s standard (*vexillum*) was first displayed. This was immediately followed by the simultaneous blast of horn and trumpet (*signum tuba dandum*). At this the soldiers raised the war shout (*clamor*) and rushed to the charge. They had previously been advancing at a slow step.

The various divisions of the day, *reveillé*, noon and tattoo, were sounded by the bugle (*buccina*); each signal being followed, quite likely, by a martial air played by the assembled musicians of the army.

*Paulo longius*, to a considerable distance (§ 93. a; G. 312. 2; H. 444. 1).—*aggeris*, i.e. material (wood, sods, &c.) for the rampart.—*cohortandi*, had to be encouraged (in a set speech); § 135. d; G. 243; H. p. 114, foot-note, at end.—*successus*, close approach.

2. *usus*, experience.—*quid . . . oportet*, indir. quest., object of *praescribere*.—*legatos*, those whom he had assigned to the several legions (see note, Bk. I. Chap. 521).
3. nihil exspectabant, had no occasion to wait: nihil (properly adv. acc.) is stronger than non. — quae videbantur = what seemed best.

Chap. 21. necessariis, i.e. only what was necessary. — quam in partem, to whatever division (sc. in eam partem). — decumam, see Bk. I. Chap. 41. — memoriam: Et. 391.
2. non longiore . . . quam = with no more words than, &c. — nev neve: the ne being correl. to uti, above. — quod posset, gives the reason for signum dedit: for the subj. in posset, see § 320. c; G. 313; H. 502. 2.

46. 3. pugnantibus occurrit, finds them already fighting. — insignia, the ornaments of the helmet, &c. Some of these indicated the rank of the wearer (see "The Legionary," p. 3 of notes); it is possible, too, that different legions were distinguished by the insignia of the helmets. — tegmenta, leather covers. On the march helmets were slung upon the breast, shields covered with leather, and ornaments kept in some unexposed place. — defuerit, notice the sequence of tenses (§ 287. c. r.; G. 513; H. 495. VI.).

4. ab opere, i.e. the place he had held in the work of fortifying. — haec (sc. signa), antecedent to quae; the antecedent to quam is only implied loosely in the antecedent clause. If expressed, it would be (in) hac (parte).

constitit: the Roman soldier was so thoroughly drilled, that to whatever part of the legion he found his way, he knew perfectly well the duties belonging to it.

Chap. 22. dejectus, the steep decline. — rei . . . ordo, the system and method of military art. — diversis legionibus (abl. abs.), the legions being scattered (see Plan V.), each fighting the enemy that was nearest, and hence not supporting one another. — certa subsidia, regular reserves. — quid . . . opus esset (§ 243. c. r.; G. 390; H. 414. IV. n.⁴; subj. of providi [Et. 236], depending on poterat, understood), what was needed everywhere could not be provided beforehand. — administrari, attended to. — tanta iniuitate, so unfavorable a condition.

Chap. 23. acie, genitive (§ 74. a; G. 69. r.²; H. 120). — pilis emissis: see note on Bk. I. Chap. 24, "The Order of Battle." — examina- tos, out of breath, agreeing with Atrebates, obj. of compulerunt.
2. et . . . progressi, i.e. having advanced upon unfavorable ground (i.e. continuing their charge up the hill). This explains why the enemy again resisted.

3. diversae, different.— profligatis . . . ex loco superiore = having been driven from the higher ground.

4. nudatis, exposed by the advance of these four legions.— quom (see note, Bk. I. Chap. 13) constitisset, showing why the enemy charged in that quarter.— tenebat: Et. 188.

47. aperto latere, on the uncovered flank (i.e. the right, not protected by shields). — castrorum, not a partitive but a possessive genitive: the height upon which the camp stood.

Chap. 24. cum recipierent, while gathering back.— adversis hostibus, right in the face of the enemy, who had entered on the other side.— occurrebant . . . ferebantur: these imperfects belong to the side action (§ 277. a ; G. 223 ; H. 471. 6) interrupting the main narrative, which is resumed in the perfects contenderunt, &c., at the end of the chapter.

2. allii . . . aliam, § 203. c; G. 321; H. 461. 3.

4. Trevëri, from the valley of the Moselle: their capital city was the present Trêves. They claimed German origin.— opinio, reputation.— auxilia causa, as auxiliaries.— desperatis . . . contenderunt, losing hope in our fortunes, pushed for home.— Romanos, subj. of pulsos superatosque [esse]; castris, obj. of potitos, had got possession of.

Chap. 25. Caesar, subj. of processit (p. 48, l. 5): this sentence is a fine example of the force of a Latin period, holding the main act in suspense till all the circumstances bearing on it have been brought into a single view (see §§ 346; G. 685, 686. 2; H. 573).— ubi: construe with vidit.— signisque conlatis (causative), and since, &c. In the haste of meeting the sudden attack, the signiferi and vexillarii (see note on Bk. I. Chap. 25) had not taken a sufficient distance, so that the men were crowded together.— sibi . . . impedimento, hindered one another.

2. quartae cohortis: this stood on the left of the front line (see note on Bk. I. Chap. 24), and so bore the brunt of the attack.— signo: evidently this refers to the standard of the cohort (see note
on Bk. I. Chap. 25), and is clear enough proof that the cohort, and not the maniple, had the standard. — primipilo: the primus pilus was the first centurion of the first cohort, and thus stood on the extreme right of the line. He ranked next to the tribune, as an officer of the legion. See note on Bk. I. Chap. 7.


48. in angusto, in a strait. — vidit, repeated from line 4 of this chapter, on account of the length of the sentence and the number of particulars.

4. militi, dative after detracto, the almost universal construction of persons from whom anything is taken. — signa inferre, to charge. — laxare, (and thus) open out. The odd numbers of the front rank sprang forward against the enemy, thus gaining twice the room they had in the crowded ranks for the use of the sword. See note on Bk. I. Chap. 24, p. 37 of notes.

5. operam navare, to do his best.

CHAP. 26. urgeri, hard pushed. — conversa signa, &c.: the two united, facing (probably) different ways, thus forming a circle, orbis, or hollow square (see note on Bk. IV. Chap. 372).

2. neque timent, and no longer feared. — aversi, in the rear, i.e. while their backs were turned.

3. cursu incitato, setting out on a run.

4. nihil reliqui fecerunt, left nothing undone in the way of speed.

CHAP. 27. inermes armatis, unarmed threw themselves on the armed enemy. — quo (§ 317. b; G. 545. 2; H. 497. 2, with the implied comparative) praeferrent, that they might show themselves superior.

49. 3. ut . . . conicerent: clause of result, following tantam virtutem: and that when these too were struck down, and corpses were piled in heaps, those who survived still hurled weapons, &c. — ut . . . deberet, so that it must be judged that not without good
ho•pe of suc•cess (neqm•quam), &c. Th• subj. of de•beret is hom•ines . . . a•usos esse, &c.—ani•mi, spi•rit.—rede•gerat: Et. 104.

Chap. 28. prope ad i•nternec•ionem: this de•struction of a brave pe•ople was not so complete as their des•pair here rep•resents. Th• Nerv•ii w•ere again in rev•olt three years later (Bk. V. Chap. 39), and two years after se•nt a force of 5000 men to Alesia (Bk. VII. Chap. 75).—aestuar•ia: the coun•try lying to the north (th• modern Ze•land) is low and mar•shy, cut up with tidewater inlets and bays.—impedi•tum, in th• way (lit. hindered).

2. vix ad quing•entos = ad vix quing•entos, to barely 500.

3. misericordia, mercy (a corrupted form of the same word); it has been ob•served that Ca•esar's de•alings with th• Gauls were com•paratively merciful at first: at least, after enormous massacre, th• remnant had som•thing to hope for. But after he was twice repulsed from Brit•ain, when Gaul made another effort for inde•pendence, his "gentleness" was shown by such acts as cut•ting off th• hands of all his prisoners who had borne arms (Bk. VIII. Chap. 44), and in th• treatment of Vercingetorix, kept for years in chains, and then killed in cold blood in his conqueror's triumph.—videretur, might be made e•vident.

Chap. 29. cum venire•nt, while on th• way.—in unum opp•dum: not far from Namur, at th• confluence of th• Meuse (or Maas) and Sambre. (For a striking description of it, see Motley's Dutch Rep. iii. 224.) Others place it at Falk•ize, opposite Huy, on th• Meuse below Namur.

2. cum, while.—saxa . . . tr•bes, to throw down on th• besiegers.

3. Cim•bias Teuton•isque, see note, Bk. I. Chap. 74.

50. agere ac portare: th• cattle woul•d be driven; th• rest car•ried: agere and ferre are th• usual words for plun•der. —sex milia: this German military colony was probably adopted into th• Celtic trib•e of Aduatuci, giving rise to th• story th• th• whole trib•e were of German de•scent. —una, along with (it), i.e. with th• property (impedimentis).

4. alias . . . alias, now . . . now.—inferrent, make, th• regu-
lar word for offensive war. — inlatum [sibi] defenderent, defended themselves against it (defendo) when brought against them.— consensu eorum, by compact with them (i.e. the finitimi). — hunc locum, between the Meuse and the Scheldt.

Chap. 30. quindecim milium: fifteen miles would be preposterous for so small a hill as that at Namur: hence Napoleon III. understands pedum instead of passuum. But this would be nearly

Plan VI. Siege of Aduatuca. Bk. II. Chap. 29–33.

three miles, while the works on his plan measure hardly more than one.

2. ab tanto spatio (lit. away by so great space; abl. of distance, or degree of difference), so far away.

3. quibusnam: the enclitic nam (nam) gives a sarcastic emphasis to the question: by what hands, pray, or what strength, &c.
II. 29–33. 

Belgian Confederacy. 101

— praē, in comparison with. — contemptui, a curious example of the dat. of service (§ 233. n. 1; G. 350; H. 390). — conlocare = conlocaturos esse: some editions have turrim moturos sese confiderent. Very likely the Gauls thought that the Romans expected to lift the tower and set it up on the wall (in muro), and such an idea of course seemed very funny. But presently the tower began to roll forward and at the same time to increase in height, as story after story was added (see note on Chap. 12, "The Siege," 3). Then the joke seemed to lose its point.

Chap. 31. 2. existimare, sc. se: they thought that not without divine aid, &c. — se . . . permittere, they surrendered themselves, &c.

3. deprecari, besought (i.e. to be spared: de-precor). — pro, in accordance with. — quam audirent, which they [constantly] heard of (the tense implies repeated action). — statuisset: for fut. perf. ind. of direct discourse.

4. inimicos, i.e. their neighbors regarded them as interlopers. — traditis armis (abl. abs. denoting condition), if their weapons should be given up.

5. praestare, it was better. — quamvis fortunam, any fortune whatever (quam vis, what you will).

51. Chap. 32. aries, battering-ram, a long beam with an iron head (like a ram's), suspended from a framework and swung with great force against a wall, crumbling the strongest masonry (see Fig. 26).

2. in Nervis, in the case of, &c. — ne quam injuriam inferrent (§ 105. d; G. 302; H. 455. 1), to inflict no harm. — ad suos: the message was carried to their people, not simply reported to them, which would require suis.

3. summam altitudinem, the full height. — aggeris, Cæsar’s earthwork (see note on Chap. 12).

Chap. 33. ante inito, previously agreed on. — aut denique, or at any rate.

2. pellibus induxerant, had covered with hide. (Apparently used like dono, &c., § 225. d; G. 348; H. 384. II. 2: the regular construction would be with the dat., quibus pelles induxerant). — qua [parte], where.
3. *ita . . . ut*, they fought as fiercely as brave men ought to have fought, &c. (observe the impersonal use of the passive: § 146. c; G. 199. R.¹; H. 301. 1). For the force of the present infinitive *pugnari* with the perfect *debut*, see § 288. a; H. 537. 1.—in *extrema spe* — for their last chance.—in *una virtute*, in mere bravery.—*cum*, at a time when. This clause is really one of characteristic, being used to define a period (see note on Bk. III. Chap. 9, "The Conjunction *cum*," II. a. 2).

4. *sectionem* [Et. 45], auction-sale of confiscated property made in the lump (*universam*). The purchaser, called *sector*, then divided the estate into smaller lots, and resold it.

52. **CHAP. 34. Venetos, &c.**, the name of the Veneti is found in the modern *Vannes*, and of the Redones in *Rennes*.—*maritu-mae civitates*, the modern Brittany: they are spoken of at length in Book III.

**CHAP. 35. 2. Ilyricum**: this province, east of the Adriatic, made part of Cæsar’s government.

3. *Carnutes*, between the Seine and the Loire, comprising *Orleans*: their name is found in the modern *Chartres*.—*Andes* (Anjou), near the lower Loire; *Turōnes*, the modern *Tours*.—*propinquae*, meaning near the later seat of war.

4. *supplicatio*, a public ceremonial of thanksgiving. Ten days was the longest that had ever been granted before, excepting to Pompey, who was honored with twelve days for his victory over Mithridates. It should be remembered, however, that Cæsar’s party was now all-powerful at Rome.—*decreta*: Et. 69.

The Legions.—In the campaign of 57 B.C., Cæsar had eight legions; the six used in the previous year, and the two of new levies (Chap. 2¹).
BOOK THIRD. — B.C. 56.

ALPINE CAMPAIGN. — The higher valleys of the Alps were inhabited by tribes who got a scanty living by working in mines, and often waylaid and plundered expeditions on the march (see Strabo, iv. 6). The two legions sent by Cæsar under Q. Pedius (Bk. II. Chap. 2) had been attacked by these predatory people while passing into the valley of the Rhone above the Lake (Valais). Hence this expedition, which was intended to strike terror into the mountain tribes.

53. Nantuatís (acc.), &c. These tribes occupied the valley of the Upper Rhone, canton Valais, above the Lake of Geneva.

2. iter per Alpes: the pass of the Great St. Bernard, which reaches the Rhone valley at Martigny (the ancient Octodurus), at the great bend of the river. This was the principal route across the Alps at this period. Hannibal had crossed by the Little St. Bernard, and the pass by Mont Genèvre was also in use. — magnó cum periculó [Et. 296] = but only with great danger. — magnís portóriis, heavy transit-duties. — volebat: Et. 525.

54. 5. hic, ejus, both referring to vicús. — flumine, the Drance.

CHAP. 2. certior: Et. 69. — montes: not the higher ranges, but the lower heights directly upon the valley.

2. id, this, in appos. with ut . . . caperent. — opprimendae, crushing, the usual meaning of this word. — neque eam plenissímam, &c., and that not entirely full, since two cohorts had been detached, &c. The twelfth legion had suffered severely in the battle on the Sambre (Bk. II. Chap. 25). In this place plenissimam does not refer to the normal number of men in a legion, but merely to the actual strength of this legion, including all detachments. — singillatim, in small parties.

3. cum ipsi . . . decurrerent, when they should charge down from the hills upon the valley. The imp. subj. of ind. disc. with cum is here equivalent to the fut. ind. of direct discourse. See note on Chap. 9, “The Conjunction cum,” II. 2. b.
4. accedebat quod = and besides (it was added that). The subject of accedebat is the clause quod . . . dolebant, they were angry that their children were taken from them as hostages.—Romanos . . . adjungere, obj. of habebant, and in agreement with persuasum (see note on coactum habebat, Bk. I. Chap. 15): they had persuaded themselves that the Romans were attempting, &c.

The Winter Camp.—The winter camp (castra hiberna), in its general arrangement, resembled the ordinary summer camp. There must have been the same fortifications and streets. However, the convenience and comfort of the men were more regarded than when in the field. In place of tents (tabernaclata, pelles) the winter quarters afforded huts, which gave better protection against wind and weather. The arms were doubtless kept in the huts, and the pack animals in sheds. Then, too, more room could be taken than in the field. In the present case, Galba saved labor by appropriating a part of the Gallic buildings without much ceremony; but he proceeded to lay out the usual fortifications (see munitiones, Chap. 3).

Chap. 3. perfectae, referring both to opus and munitiones, but agreeing with the nearer.—satis esset provisum, sufficient provision had been made.

55. consilio, a council of officers.—celeriter: Et. 48.
2. praeter opinionem = unexpectedly.—subsidio veniri = it was impossible that any one should come to their aid: veniri is impersonal, the subject of posset implied in possent.
3. nonnullae sententiae, several opinions (or votes) given by the officers in council.
4. majori . . . placuit, it was determined by the majority.—hoc . . . defendere, to reserve this course for the extremity, and meanwhile, &c.

Chap. 4. gaesa, Gallic javelins, entirely of iron.
2. integris [Et. 189] viribus (abl. abs.), as long as their strength was unimpaired.—repugnare, mittere, succurrere, ferre, superare, historical infinitives, implying incessant action.—ut . . . videbatur, as (= whenever) any part seemed, &c.: a relative clause, of which the antecedent is eo.—succurrere, ran to meet the danger.—alli = while others.
3. non modo . . . sed ne . . . quidem, not only not, but not even, &c.

Chap. 5. cum pugnaretur, when the fight had been [and was still] going on (§ 277. b; G. 225; H. 469. II. 2). — languidioribus nostris (abl. abs.), as our men were less active. — deficerent, began to be exhausted. — vallum . . . complere; the rampart was made for the most part of earth thrown up in digging the ditch, stakes or palisades being planted above (see note on Bk. I. Chap. 49, "The Camp," 3, 9).

56. extremum auxilium = the last resource.

3. intermittent, hort. subj. following certiores facit in the sense of instructs. — tela . . . excipere, gather up the spent weapons, spending no strength in throwing them back.

Chap. 6. cognoscendi facultatem, opportunity of finding out. — sui colligendi [Et. 440] = of collecting their wits: observe that sui is plural in meaning (§ 298. a; G. 429. R.; H. 542. 1. n.1). It is, however, properly the gen. sing. of suum (§ 99. c; H. p. 71, foot-note 3).

2. circumventos interficiunt = they surround and kill. — ex milibus, for part. gen. after parte.


4. nolebat: Et. 525. — alio consilio . . . aliis rebus, remembered that he had come with one design, and saw that he had met a different state of things.

Naval Campaign. — The peninsula of Armorica (Bretagne, Brittany, or Little Britain, so called since the emigration from Great Britain to escape the Saxon invasion) has always been the home of the hardiest, most independent, and most strongly characterized of all the Gallic populations. Its scenery is wild and secluded, this character of its coast being clearly given in Cæsar's narrative. Its language remains Celtic to this day. No one of Cæsar's campaigns shows more strikingly his boldness and fertility of resource than this.

Chap. 7. pacatam: Et. 285. — Germanis, i.e. Ariovistus. It will be noticed that the geographical order, and not the order of
events, is followed in this summary. Of the Alpine tribes the Seduni are mentioned as the most important. — finita hieme, in the beginning of winter (“winter being entered on”).

2. mare following proximus with the construction of prope (§ 261. a; G. 356. r. ꞌ; H. 391. 2).

3. praefectos, officers of cavalry and auxiliaries.

57. Chap. 8. hujus civitatis, i.e. the Veneti, on the southern coast of Brittany, the modern Morbihan. — longe amplissima, very great indeed. — consuerunt, are accustomed (§ 279. d. R.; G. 228. r. ꞌ; H. 297. I. ꞌ). — in magno . . . aperto, in the great and open violence of the sea = on a sea exposed to great and violent storms. — omnes habent vectigales, treat all as tributaries, i.e. levy tolls upon.

3. ut sunt, &c., as in fact the resolutions of the Gauls are, &c.

4. quam accepserant, indic. as a clause of fact (§ 336. b; G. 630. r. ꞌ; H. 524. 2). — quam perferre, than to endure, following the comparative contained in mallent.

5. remittat, subj. expressing a command in ind. disc., depending on the message implied in legationem mittunt. The direct discourse would be “si vis,” &c., “remitte.”

Chap. 9. aberat longius, was too far off to take command at once in person. — naves longas, galleys.

Naves Longae. — The Roman galley was a long, low vessel, armed at the prow with a sharp beam (rostrum) shod with bronze for striking and sinking the enemy, and propelled by one or two sails and a multitude of oars. The seamen (naulae) attended to the steering and managing of the sails, and were freemen. The rowers (remiges) were usually slaves. In the Mediterranean, galleys were commonly provided with two, three, or more tiers of oars, and were accordingly called biremes, triremes, etc. It seems probable, however, that the fleet Caesar had built on the Loire consisted of boats with but one bank of oars, and hence were quite low, and decked over only at the bow and stern. The steering apparatus was a couple of broad-bladed oars near the stern, one on each side. The rudder was unknown to the Romans. The fighting men on these vessels of Caesar were legionaries embarked for the purpose. In fact there was no distinct naval service, as with us. A fleet was simply an army afloat. It
was commanded, as we see also on occasion of the expeditions to Britain, by military officers. On the decks were placed tormenta and turres, the latter in readiness to raise by ropes and pulleys attached to the mast.

The Gallic ships, it seems, used sails alone, without oars (see Chap. 14).

Ligere, the Loire, on the banks of which Crassus was wintering. — institui, to be organized, i.e. in gangs for the several galleys. — cum primum: the first moment when (lit. when first); compare quam primum (§ 93. b).

THE CONJUNCTION Cum.

In the seven books De Bello Gallico, Caesar uses cum as a conjunction 283 times.

I. In 62 places it is plainly causal (as, since), and in 13, concessive (although), and therefore takes the subjunctive (e.g. Bk. I. Chap. 21. 268. See § 326; G. 587–8; H. 515. III. 517).

II. In the remaining 208 places it is as clearly temporal (when, while, after).

a. 1. In 160 of these it introduces a clause the main use of which is to define the time of a past action, and it is followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. With the former tense the clause may denote either a point of time or a period, and the conjunction should be translated when or while respectively. With the pluperfect the translation may be when or after (e.g. Bk. II. Chap. 11; Bk. I. Chap. 268. See § 325; G. 586; H. 521. II. 2). The temporal clause usually expresses an event that actually happened; but the subjunctive shows that the writer's main idea in using the clause is to indicate by it the time of the event expressed by the principal statement.

2. Occasionally the clause with cum and the subjunctive is used to characterize a period of time, some form of tempus being expressed or understood (at a time when, &c.). This construction gives us simply a subjunctive of characteristic (e.g. Bk. I. Chap. 16. See § 320; G. 582. r. 1, 634; H. 521. II. 2. 1); this was without doubt the original meaning of all subjunctives with cum.

b. As the story of the Gallic war is purely narrative, containing few direct quotations, and those the briefest, we naturally find no instances of the use of cum with the future or future perfect indicative. In 13 passages, however, it occurs in the indirect discourse with a subjunctive that takes the place of one or the other of these tenses. In such sentences the
temporal clause is equivalent to a proasis (e.g. Bk. I. Chap. 39\textsuperscript{8}. See § 325. c; G. 584; H. 507. 3).

c. In 33 passages cum takes the indicative with tenses referring to present or past time, and in 2 others, Bk. II. Chap. 4, Bk. VI. Chap. 25, the subjunctive in indirect discourse equivalent to the historical perfect indicative. The mood shows that the writer’s main idea in using the temporal clause is to emphasize the reality of the event expressed by it, and that the temporal relation is of secondary importance. We distinguish several varieties of usage.

1. In 21 sentences the verb in the temporal clause denotes a repeated action. Cum here is equivalent to quotiescumque (whenever, as often as), and the clause is really the proasis of a general conditional sentence (e.g. Bk. I. 1\textsuperscript{3}, IV. 33\textsuperscript{1}, III. 14\textsuperscript{8}. See §§ 322, 309. c; G. 568–9, 585; H. 471. 3 and 5; Madvig, 335, Obs. 1. 359).

2. In 8 sentences cum is used as the correlative of tum, in the sense of both . . . and. The indicative of a verb expressed or implied is used in both clauses, unless in indirect discourse (e.g. Bk. V. Chap. 4\textsuperscript{8}. See § 326. b; G. 589; H. 521. N.1).

3. In 3 places (Bk. VI. Chap. 7\textsuperscript{1} and Chap. 8\textsuperscript{1}, Bk. VII. Chap. 26\textsuperscript{8}) the clause with cum is really the main proposition (see Madvig, 358. Obs. 1; § 325. b; G. 581. r.); this is the so-called cum inversum, by which the clause of time with the indicative (as in c above) is made the principal proposition in form. And in one other place (Bk. I. Chap. 40\textsuperscript{1}) it is really a co-ordinate clause, cum being equivalent to et tum.

4. In the remaining 2 passages (Bk. III. Chap. 9, Bk. VI. Chap. 12) the indicative is used with cum merely to emphasize the reality of a simple past action.

2. in se admisissent, had taken on themselves: admitto alone is the ordinary phrase for commit. — legatos . . . conjectos (the specific act), in appos. with facinus.

58. 3. pedestria itinera, &c., approaches by land were cut off. — inscientiam, i.e. the Romans’ lack of acquaintance. — neque . . . confidebant, and they trusted that our armies could not, &c.

4. ut . . . acciderent (concessive, § 266. c; G. 610; H. 515. III.), granting that everything should turn out contrary to their expectation. — plurimum posse, were strongest. — facultatem, supply. — longe aliam . . . atque, very different . . . from. — concluso, enclosed (like the Mediterranean).
5. Osismos, &c., the coast tribes as far as Flanders. The name Lexovii remains in Lisieux; Namnetes in Nantes; Diablintres in Jablins.

Chap. 10. Injuryae retentorum equitum, the wrong done by detaining the knights (§ 292. a; G. 667. R.2; H. 549. 5. N.3) — rebellio, renewal of hostilities (not rebellion). — ne . . . arbitra rentur: a new rising was threatened by the Belgians, while the maritime tribes, it is said, were already fearful of an attempt upon

Plan VII. Campaign against the Veneti. Bk. III. Chap. 7–16.

The dotted line shows the course of the two fleets from the Loire and the Auray respectively.

Britain. (Observe that this clause is under the same construction as the nominatives injuryae, defectio, &c.)

2. excitari: the present infin. here corresponds to the imperfect of description, excitabantur: while odisse answers to oderunt taken as a present, all men naturally hate. — homines: Et. 157.
CHAP. 11. mandat adeat, gives it in charge (manui dare) to advance upon (§ 331. f. R.; G. 547. R.²; H. 499. 2).

59. arcessiti [esse] dicebantur, were reported to have been invited.

2. Aquitaniam, in S. W. Gaul (see Bk. I. Chap. 1⁶). The people were of different race and language from the other Gauls, and took little interest in their affairs, not even joining in the great revolt of Book VII. But Cæsar may not have known this (Moberly).—nationes: Et. 112.

3. Unellos, &c., in Normandy.

4. Decimum Brutum, afterwards one of the conspirators against Cæsar, with the more celebrated Marcus Brutus. — Pictonibus, Santonis, south of the Loire (Poitou and Saintonge).

CHAP. 12. ejus modi . . . ut, of such sort that. — cum . . . incitavisset = at high tide. — aestus, tide: properly the surging movement of boiling water; hence applied both to extreme heat and to ocean-tides. — bis, apparently an error of most Mss. Some editors read xxiv instead of xii; others refer it to the general ignorance or carelessness of ancient writers. — minuente, at the ebb: intransitive, as if from the passive form used as a reflexive, as in case of deponents.

2. utraque re, in either case. — superati, agreeing with the subj. of coeperant. — his (aggere ac molibus) . . . adaequatis, when these were brought level with the walls. — defendebant: Et. 257.

General von Gölé explains the Roman works as follows: A dike was extended along each side of the isthmus in the direction of the town. While these were building, of course with each rise of the tide the space within would be overflowed. When the dikes were nearly completed, the Romans waited until the ebb had carried off the water, and then rapidly pushed their works to completion before the next turn of the tide. Thus the sea was shut out and the isthmus left dry. Meanwhile the dikes themselves, being raised to the height of the walls, served the purpose each of an agger for approach to the town.

3. haec faciebant, this they continued to do. — eo facilius . . . quod, the more easily, that, &c. — vasto mari, &c. (ablative abso-
lute, denoting cause); in each of these points the ocean is contrasted with the sheltered and tideless waters of the Mediterranean.

**CHAP. 13.** ipsorum, their own. — modum: Et. 238. — aliquanto (abl. of degree of difference) planiores, considerably more flat-bottomed. — navium, gen. depending on carinae understood. — quo . . . possent, that they might more easily stand the shallows and the ebb-tide; § 317. b; G. 545. 2; H. 497. 2.

2. admodum erectae, very high. — atque item puppes, and the sterns too: adcommodatae (being adapted: Et. 338) standing as predicate. — robore, oak timber.

60. contumeliam, buffeting. — transtra, &c., the cross-benches (for the rowers) of timbers a foot thick, fastened with iron bolts the thickness of a [man’s] thumb.

3. pelles, hides; alutae, leather. — tanta onera navium, ships of so great weight. — non satis commode, not very well: Cæsar does not like to say that anything is impossible.

4. nostrae classi (dat. of possession), &c., the encounter of our fleet with, &c. — una, only. — praestaret, had the advantage (i.e. our fleet). — pro loci natura, considering the nature of the place.

6. accedebat ut = there was this additional advantage, followed by ferrent, consistent, and timerent. — se vento dedissent, ran before the wind. The phrase is nautical: hence the noun is repeated. The clause cum . . . dedissent is parenthetical. — consistenter, came to anchor; ab aestu relictæ, &c., if left by the tide, had nothing to fear, &c. — casus, the chance of all these things.

**CHAP. 14.** neque . . . posse, that the enemy’s retreat could not be prevented by capturing their towns.

2. paratissimæ, fully equipped; ornatissimæ, thoroughly furnished. The battle was fought in the bay of Quiberon, off the heights of St. Gildas, on which Cæsar was encamped. The fleet of Crassus issued from the Loire and took a northwesterly course. Meanwhile the fleet of the Veneti came out of the Auray estuary, and passing through the Morbihan entrance to the bay, encountered the Romans directly opposite Cæsar’s camp. The dotted line in Plan VII. shows the course of the two fleets. — neque satis Bruto . . . constabat, and it was not clear to Brutus (agerent and
insisterent refer to Brutus and his officers). — tribunis militum centurionibusque: notice the military officers in command of the fleet.

3. excitatis, lifted up. — ex barbaris navibus, on the part of the enemy's ships (compare Bk. I. Chap. 22, note).

61. 4. magno usu, of great service, in fact turning disaster to victory: but Cæsar will not use words that hint a possible defeat. — muralium falcium, wall-hooks, long poles with sickle-shaped hooks attached (like those used by "hook-and-ladder" companies) used to pull down walls (see Fig. 26): it limits formae (understood), dat. after absimili.

5. cum: See note on Chap. 9, "The Conjunction Cum," II. c. 1. — praerumpabantur, they [the halyards] were torn away. (Observe the position of funes in the clause with cum.)

7. paulo fortius factum, one of Cæsar's mild expressions for an act of remarkable daring.

CHAP. 15. cum: see note on Chap. 14b. — singulas, &c., two or three ships about each one (of the enemy's). — contendebant, made repeated efforts: compare with contenderunt below, describing a single act.

2. expugnatis ... navibus, when many of their ships had been captured.

3. conversis ... navibus, i.e. steered so as to run before the wind. — malacia, calm (a Greek word).

The prevailing winds at present towards the end of summer in this quarter are from the east or north-east, — the precise winds needed for the two fleets to have met as indicated above. Further, when these winds have blown during the morning, it usually falls calm at noon. This is just what happened on the day of the battle. The calm was probably just after midday.

4. pervenerint, came to land: pervenirent would be equally correct, and is found in some copies; but the perfect conveys more distinctly the act of landing. — hora quarta, about 10 A.M.

CHAP. 16. cum ... tum, while ... at the same time. The phrase is similar to a very frequent Greek construction (μετά ... δί).
— convenerant, coegerant, i.e. for this war. — quod ubique, all there were anywhere, followed by the partitive gen. navium.

2. quo, i.e. [any refuge] whither; quem ad modum (often written as one word), how.

62. 3. eo ... quo, the more severe, &c., in order that. — vindicandum (impersonal), punishment should be inflicted. — omni senatu necato, an instance of Cæsar’s clementia. — sub corona vendidit, sold [as slaves] at public auction: lit. under the wreath, since the captives “were crowned like an animal for sacrifice.”

“This can hardly mean that Cæsar sold the whole nation by auction. The mention of the Senate makes its probable that the inhabitants of the capital Dariorigum [Vannes] are meant. Even so the rigor is terrible; and the more so, as regards the Senate, from the grim alternative which the next chapter suggests [of being massacred by their own people, Chap. 17] as the only one open to these unfortunate rulers” (Moberly).

“He has not said, as he does on another occasion (Bk. II. Chap. 33), how many were sold, but we may infer that he depopulated the country of the Veneti at least; and it appears from a later book (Bk. VII. Chap. 75) that all the Armoric states must have been greatly reduced by this unfortunate war. The only naval power in Gallia that could be formidable to the Romans was totally destroyed, and neither the Veneti nor their allies gave the proconsul any more trouble” (Long).

Chap. 17. Unellorum, along the Channel coast of Normandy. Another form of the name is Venelli. — magnas copias, considerable forces (not supplies, as these fell short, see Chap. 18), most likely meaning here irregular troops (perditorum hominum, see next section) as opposed to exercitum.

2. his paucis diebus, i.e. about the same time. — perditorum, desperate: it was now the third year of constant war in Gaul.

3. carperetur, was carped at, his reputation “picked to pieces.”

4. eo absente, i.e. Cæsar. A legatus regularly had no imperium, or independent command, but served under that of his superior. — opportunitate, a favorable chance (opportunus).

Chap. 18. edocet, instructs.

2. pro perfuga, in the character of a deserter. — neque longius esse quin = not later than, i.e. the time was not farther off.
63. 4. superiorum dierum, on the previous days. — confirmatio, positive assertion. — parum diligenter, i.e. (in Cæsar's style) with too little diligence. — spes . . . belli (subjective genitive denoting the source) = hope founded on, &c. — fere . . . credunt = most men are glad to believe, &c.

5. non prius, . . . quam, not . . . until.

6. ut . . . victoria (abl. abs.) = as if victory were already assured. — samentis, sprouts, or young growth; virgultus, brushwood.

Chap. 19. paulatim adolvis, gently rising. — magno cursu, on a full run. — que, and (consequently).

4. quos: the antecedent is eorum. — reliquos paucos, few of the remainder (§ 216. e; G. 368. r.²; H. 440. 2. n.²). — ac = but.

Southern Gaul. — The campaign in Aquitania was made merely for strategic reasons, was not provoked by any attack or threat of one, and appears to have been quite unnecessary (see note, Chap. 112) as well as difficult and dangerous. The Aquitani were not closely allied with the Gauls, took no share in their wars, and were at a secure distance. They had no strong military league or combination, but consisted of small isolated clans, and were besides of more industrial habit, being good miners and engineers. As a mere narrative, however, this is an interesting episode of the war.

64. Chap. 20. ex tertia parte (an idiomatic phrase) = as a third part, a greatly exaggerated reckoning. Many of Cæsar's geographical statements (e.g. the account of Britain, Bk. V. Chap. 13) are extremely ignorant or careless. — armis: Et. 333.

Praeconinus, Mallius: these defeats were 20 years before (B.C. 78), when the Aquitani united with the Marian leader Sertorius, who held Spain for six years against Rome.

2. Tolosa et Narbone (early editions add Carcassone): Tolosa was an old Gallic town; Narbo, a Roman colony established by the policy of Caius Gracchus, B.C. 118. It became the capital of the Roman province, to which it gave its name. — Sontiatum, south of the Garonne, S.E. of the modern Bordeaux; the name remains in the modern Sôs.

3. ostenderunt, showed.

Chap. 21. diu: Et. 224. — superioribus victoriis, i.e. those just related. — sine imperatore adulescentulo duce: an impera-
tor is the chief commander of an army, holding the imperium, or power of military command conferred on him by regular formalities; dux is a general designation for any person holding a command, and might be given to a subordinate officer, like Crassus, who acted as an agent under the imperium of his superiors. — perspici: the subj. is the indirect question quid . . . possent. — vertère, histor. infin. The perfect form in ēre is very rare in early prose.

2. vineas turreque egit: see note on Bk. II. Chap. 11, "The Siege."

3. cuniculis, mines, so called from their likeness to rabbits' burrows. The mine was intended to run under the Roman agger. The roof was carefully propped up with wooden posts, and these being finally set on fire, when they were burned through the entire mass of Roman works would fall into the pit. — aerariae secturæque (hendiadys: see A. & G. p. 298; G. 695; H. 636. III. 2), copper mines. [The † indicates a corrupt or doubtful reading. Some editions omit the -que, and others have structuræ, works.] — diligentia, through the watchfulness. The Romans doubtless met the attack with countermines. — faciunt, they do [it].

65. Chap. 22. soldurios, paid retainers ("soldiers"), from the root sold. It is related that these soldurii "were dressed in royal garments like their chief."

2. condicio: the same condition was found among the Germans (Bk. VI. Chap. 23), and was the foundation of feudal vassalage. — mortem: Et. 393.

3. cum his (repeated from cum devotis), with these (I say).

Chap. 23. Vocatium, &c., further west. — quibus, within which. — quoque versum, in every direction (quoque, the adverb of place formed from the distributive quisque; versum, the adverb of direction usually connected with prepositions, as ad . . . versum). It is often written quoquoversum.

2. Hispaniae: these Iberian populations were allied to the Aquitani (Bk. I. Chap. 15). Spain had been subject to Rome for more than 150 years, but was always rather mutinous, and had made several attempts at independence, especially under Sertorius (see note, Chap. 201). It was also the last stronghold of Pom-
pey's party in the civil war, till finally subdued at Munda, B.C. 45.
— auctoritate, prestige.

3. omnes annos, i.e. B.C. 78-72. — consuetudine pop. Rom.: a
custom which they had learned in the service with Sertorius. —
loca capere, to occupy positions, &c., i.e. make systematic prepara-
tions for war. — instituunt, begin.

4. suas... augeri, &c. These infinitive clauses are in apposi-
tion with quod. — diduci, be scattered in various directions. —
minus commode, less conveniently.

66. Chap. 24. duplici, i.e. two cohorts in depth. His numbers
were too few to allow greater depth. — auxiliis: Et. 138. — in
mediam aciem, to the centre of his line, where they would be kept
in hand by his legionaries (see Chap. 25'). — espectabat, waited
[to see] what, &c.

2. obsessis viis... potiri, in English, to block the roads, cut
off supplies, and win the victory without a wound. — sese reci-
pere, to withdraw from Aquitania. — in agmine, on the march. —
infirmiore animo (abl. of quality) = dispirited, an adjective phrase
in the same construction with impeditos (§ 179; G. 402; H.
419. II.). — adoriri cogitabant, had in mind to attack. — productis
copiis, concessive (= although, &c.).

3. sua, their own. — opinione timoris, the notion [they had
given] of their own cowardice. — expectari... iretur, depending
on some word of saying implied in voces. — ad hostium castra:
this is the only instance in the Commentaries of an attack by Ro-
mans on a fortified Gallic camp. — omnibus cupientibus = to the
eager desire of them all.

Chap. 25. opinionem pugnantium, i.e. an impression as if
actually engaged.

2. ab decumana porta, i.e. in the rear, where this gate was
situated (see note on Bk. I. Chap. 49, "The Camp"): the Gauls
appear to have adopted the Roman mode of constructing camps.

Chap. 26. 2. intritae, unworn. [Observe that while in the
compound verb the preposition in has an intensive force (intero, to
crumble), in the compound adjective it has a negative force. Many
words have thus two exactly opposite meanings: as infractus,
(participle) broken up, (adjective) unbroken.]
67. *prius quam*: this phrase is often used with the indicative to show that one actual fact precedes another, just as succession is denoted by *postquam*. Here the subjunctive subordinates the temporal clause to the main idea, just as with *cum* (§§ 325, 327; G. 579; H. 520).

5. *apertissimis campis*, i.e. the broad, treeless plains which abound in this part of the country. — *consectatus* (intensive from *sequor*), *overtaking in hot chase*. — *Cantabris*, a very hardy people of the western Pyrenees. — *multa nocte*, late at night (abl. of time).

Chap. 27. *dedit*: Et. 225. — *Tarbelli*, &c.: some of the names will be recognized in the modern *Tarbes, Bigorre, Garonne*. — *ultimae*, remotest.

Chap. 28. *exacta*: Et. 104. — *omni pacata*, while all the rest of Gaul was subdued. — *Morini*, &c., on the islands and low coastlands of Flanders and further north. The Celtic *mor* signifies *sea*. — *alia ac, different from*.

2. *continentes*, continuous = far-stretching.

4. *longius*, too far (farther than was safe).

68. Chap. 29. *deinceps*, i.e. in the days next following. — *caedere*: Et. 244. — *conversam*, fronting, i.e. with the boughs turned towards the enemy. — *pro vallo*, as a palisade.

2. *tenerentur*, were just getting within reach. — *ejusmodi uti . . . intermitteretur*, such that the work was constantly interrupted (broken off would have been *intermissum sit*). — *sub tellibus*: the tents were of leather.

3. *Aulercis*, &c., along the Seine, near *Evreux* and *Lisieux*. — *proxime*, last.

The Legions. — In the campaign of the year 56 B.C., Cesar had the same eight legions as in the year before. During the operations against the Veneti, the twelfth legion was with Galba, among the Allobroges (Chap. 64); *Sabinus* had three legions in Normandy (Chap. 113); *Crassus* had twelve legionary cohorts (not comprising any one entire legion, but being detailed from different legions) in Aquitania (Chap. 113); while the rest of the army, twenty-eight cohorts (i.e. four legions, less the twelve cohorts detached under *Sabinus*), were engaged with *Cesar*. 
Book Fourth.—B.C. 55.

Passage of the Rhine.—The year B.C. 55 appears to have been marked by a general movement in the migration of the German tribes. An advance, consisting of the two populations Usipetes and Tencteri, crowded forward by the more powerful Suevi, crossed the lower Rhine into northern Gaul. Cæsar assumed the defence of the country he had just conquered, drove them back across the Rhine, followed them up by an expedition into their own territories, and fully established the supremacy of the Roman arms. Another brief campaign in Germany two years later confirmed this success, and the Rhine became the military frontier, recognized for many centuries, between the Roman empire and the barbarian world. In the common opinion of France it is to this day the natural boundary, established, as it were, in perpetuity by the arms of Julius Cæsar.

Page 69. Pompeio, Crasso (the year 55 B.C.): the coalition between Cæsar, Pompey and Crassus, sometimes called the First Triumvirate, had been formed five years before. In carrying out the scheme, Cæsar held the government of Gaul, while the others took into their own hands this year the whole control of affairs at home (see Introd., "Life of Cæsar").—Usipetes, Tencteri, from beyond the Rhine, a little below Cologne.

2. Suevis: this people (the modern Swabians) occupied the greater part of central Germany, and was made up of several independent tribes. The name is held to mean wanderers.—premebantur, had been crowded (§ 277. b; G. 225; H. 469. II. 2).

3. centum pagos (see Bk. I. Chap. 12): there is probably some confusion here with the ancient German institution of the Hundred, a division of the population giving its name to a district of territory. Each hundred seems to have sent 1000 men (singula milia) to the army. The term early lost its numerical value, and became a mere local designation.—manserunt: Et. 358.

4. alunt: Et. 426.—anno post, the year after.—in vicem (invicem), in turn.—ratio, theoretical knowledge, i.e. theory; usus, knowledge derived from experience, i.e. practice.
70. 5. sed: i.e. they attended to agriculture systematically, but, &c. — privati . . . agri, i.e. the land was held in tribal communities, — a state of things almost universal among primitive nations. (But see Introduction, near the end.) — longius anno: i.e. the community had no fixed possessions, but was transferred yearly from one tract to another, its place being taken by another community. As is shown in Bk. VI. Chap. 22, the community was composed of persons kindred by birth. The annual shifting of occupancy would prevent at once forming local attachments, building up large properties, and too rapidly exhausting the soil.

6. frumento, &c.: they were still in a half-nomadic state, though with some little advance in agriculture (compare Bk. VI. Chap. 22, and Tac. Ger. 26). — maximam partem (adv. acc.), for the most part. — quom (some copies read quod) . . . faciant; this clause is a parenthesis: since, having been trained from childhood to no service or discipline, they do nothing whatever against their will, — a lively contrast of barbarous manners with the severity of Roman family discipline. — alit, the subj. is quae res. — homines (pred.) efficit, makes [them] men, &c.

7. eam, correl. with ut. — locis (abl. abs., concessive) frigidissimis = even in their extreme climate. — haberent, have; lavarentur, bathe (imperf. by sequence of tenses following adduxerunt: § 287. a; G. 511. R.2; H. 495. 1).

Chap. 2. eo, ut . . . habent, so (on this account) that they may have [some one] to whom, &c. — quam quo . . . desiderent, than that they want, &c. (For the use of quo with the implied negative, see § 341. R.; G. 541. R.1; H. 516. 2.)


3. eodem vestigio, on the same spot (footprint). — cum usus est, when there is need. See note on Book III. Chap. 9, “The Conjunction cum,” II. c. 1. — ephippiis (a Greek word), housings, or horse blankets (see Fig. 6). There is no evidence of the use of actual saddles until the fourth century A.D.

4. quamvis pauci, however few. — importari: Et. 313.
CHAP. 3. publice, i.e. to them as a community.—a suis finibus, on (back from) their boundaries. — una ... Suevis, extending from [the territory of] the Suevi in one direction. — agri, the region (nom. pl.).

71. 2. partem: Et. 313. — Ubii, along the Rhine, opposite Cologne. — captus, capacity, hence character. — paulo ... humaniores (omit the words in brackets), somewhat more civilized than the others of that race (Germans).

3. gravitatem, importance, referring to the warlike character and extensive resources of the people; while amplitudinem refers to their great numbers. — humiliores (pred.), sc. so as to be.

CHAP. 4. in eadem causa, in the same case. — ad extremum, at length.

2. quas partes: North Brabant, with the north bank of the Rhine. — ad utramque ripam, along both banks.


4. priusquam ... fieret, § 327; G. 579; H. 529. — eorum copiis, on their supplies (cattle and grain).

CHAP. 5. infirmitatem, weakness of purpose = fickleness. — mobiles: Et. 379. — nihil ... committendum, no confidence should be placed in them. Observe that committendum (esse) is impersonal, while nihil is an adverbial accusative.

72. 2. est ... consuetudinis, it is [a point] of Gallic custom (§ 214. d; G. 365. r.1; H. 401). — vulgus circumsistat ... cogant, a crowd surrounds the traders, and compel, &c. With the former verb, the crowd is taken as a whole; with the second (in the plural), the inquisitive questioners are thought of.

3. rebus atque auditionibus, facts and hearsays. — in vestigio, on the spot, i.e. presently (sur-le-champ). — incertis: Et. 69. — serviant = are slaves to. — plerique, the travellers; eorum, the questioners.

CHAP. 6. graviori bello, too serious a war (i.e. unmanageable). — maturius, earlier in the season. — ad exercitum: the army was now in Normandy (Bk. III. Chap. 29).
2. uti . . . discederent, to withdraw from: the Rhine further into Gaul. The Belgae, it will be remembered, claimed kindred with the Germans, and were no doubt ready to retaliate their bloody defeat on the Romans.—postulassent, §§ 281, 316, 336; G. 236, 510; H. 525. 2.—fore parata, should be made ready (the regular fut. infin. passive, depending on some such word as promiserunt, implied in invitatos).

3. Eburonum, &c.: German tribes (see Bk. II. Chap. 9).—clientes: Et. 58.

4. quae cognoverat, the facts he had learned (the subj. cognovisset would make it an indir. question; and ea would then be out of place, as quae would be interrogative. Again, the subjunctive of characteristic is not used, as the facts to which ea refers have just been mentioned, in sections 2 and 3).—permulsis, calmed from their terror (lit. soothed by stroking, like a nervous horse).

CHAP. 7. equitibus delectis: the quota of cavalry was required from each of the allied states.

2. a quibus refers to locis.—piiores, first, or, as aggressors (compare the language of Ariovistus, Bk. I. Chap. 36).—neque recusare quin, they do not decline.—quicumque: the antecedent is eis (dat.) implied with resistere.—neque deprecari, and ask no quarter (lit. and not beg off).

3. haec tamen dicere, this however they did say [said they].—iis, to the Romans. —adtribuunt, subj. in ind. disc. for imperative of the direct. —eos, sc. agros.—concedere, yield, as inferior.

73. CHAP. 8. quae visum est, as it seemed good (see Bk. I. Chap. 14. 43).—verum, reasonable.

2. injuria, injustice. —Ubiorum, see Chap. 32. —quorum sint, &c., whose envoys (he informs them) are now with him to complain, &c.

CHAP. 9. post diem tertium (=tertio die), i.e. the next day but one. (The first and last day are usually counted in the Roman reckoning: so in French en huit jours = in a week.)—id, the two days' delay (ne . . . moveret).
2. *trans*, i.e. westwardly. — *exspectari*, translate as active, *they were waiting for*.

**Chap. 10. profuit:** Et. 345. — *Vosego, the Vosges*: in fact, "from the plateau of Langres, the cradle of French rivers." — *parte... recepta*: the Rhine branches in these low, marshy regions, one branch (*Vacalus*, the modern *Waal*), uniting with the Meuse near *Bois-le-Duc* (see note, Chap. 15).

2. *oritur*: Et. 414. — *Nantuatium*: compare Bk. III. Chap. 1, where they are placed upon the Rhone, just above Lake Geneva; this was perhaps a branch, or kindred tribe. This list of names is incomplete. — *citatus, with rapid course. — feris... nationibus*: see the introduction to Motley’s "Dutch Republic." — *capitibus, mouths* (usually *sources*).

**Chap. 11. ut erat constitutum, as had been arranged* (the return of the envoys). Either this is a careless expression, or Caesar's consent is omitted in Chap. 9. It is there stated merely that *they said* they would return.

74. 2. *eos* (anteced. to *qui*), *the cavalry who, &c.* — *potestatem faceret*, would give authority. — *condicione... usuros*, would keep the terms offered by Caesar.

3. *eodem illo pertinere*, tended the same way (to the same point) (see Chap. 9), i.e. to gain time till the German cavalry should arrive. — *暑aquiónis causa*: a small stream (the *Niers*) lay between him and the German encampment.

**Chap. 12. ubi primum... conspexerunt, as soon as they came in sight. — amplius octingentos, more than 800 (§ 247. c; G. 311. R.4; H. 417. 1. N.2)*. Tacitus (*Germ.* 32) says that this tribe was distinguished for cavalry. — *perturbaverunt, threw into disorder.*

2. *resistentibus, sc. nostris.* — *subfossis, stabbed in the belly. — ita perterritos, so panic-stricken.*

3. *regnunm obtinuerat, had held supreme power. — intercluso*: Et. 56.

75. **Chap. 13. neque jam, no longer**: knowing how little his own cavalry (of Gauls) were to be trusted, and that the arrival of
the main body of the Germans would put them at once to flight, Cæsar resolved to attack at the first opportunity, right or wrong.—
ab iis qui, from men who, &c.—insidias: Et. 234.

2. quantum anutoritatis, how great prestige the enemy had
gained by one battle.—quibus, i.e. the enemy.

3. quaestore, see Bk. I. Chap. 52¹.—res, in apposition with
quod . . . venerunt.—máne: Et. 386.—eadem perfidia: their
perfidy Cæsar takes for granted, as the best apology for his own;
but the presence of the chiefs and old men looks more as if they
came (as they said) to offer amends for the attack of the day
before.

4. sui purgandi: § 298. a; G. 429. R.¹; H. 542. 1. n.—contra
atque, contrary to what.—si quid . . . de indutiis = whatever
(if anything) they could in the way of truce (de with the abl. is
nearly the same as the part. gen.).—fallendo, i.e. by another
trick.

5. quos, illos, both refer to the same subject.—quos oblatos
gavisus, delighted that they were put in his power. By detaining
their chief men, he would at once perplex and disable them.—sub-
sequi, to follow in the rear; he could not trust them in the
intended attack.

CHAP. 14. acie triplici: this was a march in line of battle (see
Fig. 33).—quid ageretur, what was going on.

2. ne . . . an . . . an (§ 211; G. 460; H. 353): the three infini-
tives all belong to praestaret (Et. 175), whether it were better.
4. quo loco = in this place.

76. reliqua multitudo: the presence of women and children
shows that it was a migration for settlement, not a mere inroad for
plunder.—ad quos consecandos (frequent. of sequor), to hunt
them down, a fit business for the cowardly and treacherous Gallic
horse. Referring to this massacre of helpless fugitives, Plutarch
writes that, "when the Senate was voting public thanksgiving and
processions on account of the victory, Cato proposed that Cæsar
should be given up to the barbarians to expiate that breach of faith,
that the divine vengeance might fall upon its author rather than
upon Rome" (Life of Cæsar).
Chap. 15. Germani, i.e. those who were fighting; clamore (Et. 28), i.e. of those who were being massacred.—reliqua fuga, further flight.

The reasons are very strong against placing this action in the low lands at the confluence of the Rhine and Meuse (Mosa); among them the great distance, more than 120 miles, from the place where Cæsar actually crossed the Rhine. It will make the whole narrative much clearer, to regard this (with Göler) as the confluence of the Rhine and Mosella (Moselle) at Koblenz, the ancient Confluentes. In this view the text has been confused by the likeness of the names, while Chap. 10 appears to be a note added perhaps by some geographer.

2. ex . . . timore = relieved from [the apprehension of] so great a war.

3. discedendi potestatem, permission to depart. By this permission Cæsar practically acquits them of the charge of treachery (compare his dealings with the Veneti, Bk. III. Chap. 16). The attack and massacre were purely for “moral effect.”—supplicia = vengeance.

Chap. 16. illa, the following.—justissima, most reasonable.—suis . . . intellegegerant, he wished them to fear for their own affairs also, since they would understand, &c. (cum intellegegerant is here nearly equivalent to a participle).

2. accessit quod = and besides.—quam . . . transisse, which, as I mentioned above (the conjunction that of indirect discourse cannot be used in English to introduce a relative clause). Observe that Cæsar the writer uses the first person (commemoravi); Cæsar the actor is always in the third.—Sugambrorum, just north of the Ubii.

3. qui postularent . . . dederent, to require them to surrender those who, &c. (observe the omission of ut: § 331. f. R.; G. 546. R.³; H. 499. 2).—finire, was the limit of (see introd. note, Bk. IV.).—se invito, without his own consent.—sui imperii (pred. after esse), under his power.

4. occupationibus reipublicae, by the demands of state affairs.

5. opinionem, reputation.—navium, boats.
Passage of the Rhine.

Chap. 17. neque . . . esse, it did not belong to his dignity, &c.
2. latitudinem, &c. Cæsar's passage of the Rhine was most probably at Bonn, where the high and rocky banks begin; or at Neuwied, 20 or 25 miles further south, where there is a break in the chain of hills (but here, it is said, the bottom is rock, and not fit for driving piles). The width of the river at either place is about 1400 feet; its depth is very variable. It is now crossed in these parts by floating bridges of boats.
3. rationem, plan. The brief description which Cæsar gives of his rough and ready but very serviceable engineering may be made clearer by giving its different points as follows (see Fig. 38):

1. A pair of unhewn logs, a foot and a half thick (tigna bina sesquipe-dalia), braced two feet apart, and sharpened at the end, are rammers (fistucis) into the bottom, sloping a little with the stream (').
2. A similar pair is driven in opposite, 40 feet below, sloping a little against the stream ('): the upper ends of the two pairs would thus be some 25 or 30 feet apart, the width of the roadway. Rüstow thinks that the 40 feet refer to the top and not to the bottom of the piles.
3. A beam of square timber, two feet thick (trabs bipedalis), and about 30 feet long, is made fast at the ends by ties (fibulis) between the logs of each pair,—which are thus kept at a proper distance apart, while they are strongly braced against the current (6).
4. A suitable number (probably about 60) of these trestles, or timber-arches, having been built and connected by cross-ties,—this part of the structure must be taken for granted,—planks are then laid lengthwise of the bridge (directa materia), resting on the heavy floor-timbers; and upon these, again, saplings and twigs (longurii, cratès) are spread, to prevent the jar and wear of the carts and hoofs of the pack-animals on the flooring (6).
5. Piles (sublice) are then driven in below, resting obliquely against the logs, to which they serve as shores or buttresses (pro ariete), and other heavier piles a little way above, to break the force of floating logs or boats sent down to destroy the bridge (7).

tigna, probably unhewn logs. — bina, two and two, i.e. in pairs.
—pedum duorum, i.e. between the timbers of each pair.
4. cum . . . defixerat, &c. See note on Bk. III. Chap. 9, "The Conjunction cum," II. c. 1. —machinationibus immissa,
PONS A CÆSARE IN RHENO FACTUS.

aa, ligna bina sequipedia. bb trabes bipedales. cc fibulae.

dd, diversa materia, longuiris crucibusque constrata.

ee, sublacae ad inferiorum partem fluminis pro ariete oblique accae

ff. sublacae supra pontem immiscae.

g. castellum ad caput pontis positum.

Fig. 38.
lowered into the river by machines (boats fastened together in pairs). — sublicae modo, like a pile. — fastigate, sloping (like the rafters of a house). — ut . . . procumbent, so as to fall forward with the current. — ab inferiore parte, down stream.

5. haec utraque . . . distinebantur, these two sets (or pairs) were held apart by two-foot timbers laid on above, [in thickness] equal to the interval left by the fastening of the beams (quantum . . . distabat), with a pair of ties at each end. — quibus [tignis] . . . revinctis, which being held apart, and made fast again at the opposite end, i.e. the beams held them apart, while the ties kept them from falling asunder.

78. artius (= arcticus), more closely.

6. haec . . . contexeabantur, these (the framework of timber) were covered with boards lengthwise. — sublicae . . . agebantur, piles (or shores) were driven slanting on the lower side, so as to prop the bridge against the current. — pro ariete, as a buttress (abutting).

7. aliae item, other piles a little way above, to serve as a breakwater. There is nothing in the text to show whether these were attached to the bridge or not. Colonel von Cohausen, a Prussian engineer officer, who has made a careful technical study of this structure, thinks that they were, and that mediocre spatio refers to the bottom of the river. — deiciendi operis, genitive of quality expressing purpose (§ 298. r.; G. 429. r.2; H. 544. n.3, last example), to throw down the work. — his defensoribus, by these defences. — neu . . . nooerent, and that they (trunci, &c.) might not harm the bridge.

Chap. 18. diebus decem (Et. 8), within ten days. — traducitur, the histor. present, resumed from 161.

3. hortantibus iis, &c., the few who had escaped the massacre of Chap. 15, and had taken refuge across the Rhine.

Chap. 19. succisis, cut down to the ground.

2. uti . . . convenirent, clause of purpose (§ 331. a; G. 546. r.; H. 499) following the verbal phrase nuntios . . . dimisisse. — omnea, sc. ut. — hunc, &c., this (the place of meeting) had been selected in the midst, &c.; medium, agreeing directly with hunc
Notes: Caesar.

§ 193; G. 324. R.⁶; H. 440. N.²) in preference to the adverbial phrase in medio. — decertare: Et. 69.

3. ut . . . liberaret, these clauses are in appos. with rebus iis.

79. ulcisceretur, chastise. — rescidit, broke up.

The Landing in Britain. — What is called the First Invasion of Britain, though it marks an interesting date in history, and gave fresh stimulus to Roman curiosity and ambition, was in itself an affair of small account. It was, in fact, only meant for a reconnoissance, or, perhaps, as opening the way to further schemes. Towards the end of summer, Caesar sailed across to the white cliffs of Dover, coasted a few miles towards the west, and established a camp on the British coast. His cavalry, meanwhile, had been weatherbound in their transports, and then, after crossing, were driven back by rough winds without even coming to land. After holding an uneasy and perilous position for about three weeks, he returned to Gaul, without accomplishing anything beyond a barren display of hardihood.

Chap. 20. exigüa . . . reliquá, when but little of the summer was left: ablative absolute (or it might be construed as simple loc. abl., in the brief remainder of the summer; illustrating the development of the one construction from the other). — et si . . .
tamen . . . contendit, though the winters are early, yet he made haste to set out, &c. — ad septentriones vergit, lies near the seven stars (the north).

2. omnibus bellis (loc. abl.), in almost all, &c. — hostibus, dat. after sumministrata, furnished to the enemy. — si . . . tamen, even if time should fail, still, &c. — magno usu, dat. of service. — fore: the subject is the clause si . . . cognovisset, he thought it would be of great advantage if, &c.; the pluperfect adisset, &c., representing the future perf. adierit, following arbitrabatur. [Observe in this sentence, that while Caesar's action is given in the perfect (contendit), his reasons are in the imperfect (intellegebat, arbitrabatur); while the conditional clauses si deficeret, si adisset, are strictly future conditions carried into the past by the sequence of tenses, § 307. f; G. 598. R.⁶; H. 509. N.⁴]. — quae omnia, all of which (§ 216. e; G. 368. R.²). — Gallis incognita. i.e. except to the secluded and jealous Veneti (Bk. III. Chap. 8).
3. neque enim (neg. of etenim, § 156. d; G. 500. r.²), to be rendered with quisquam, for no one. — temere, without good reason. — neque quicquam = and nothing. — iis, dat. after notum (§ 232. a; G. 352; H. 388. 1). — Galliæs, i.e. Celtic and Belgic Gaul.

4. vocatis mercatoribus, &c. = he called the traders, but could not, &c. — quem usum = what degree of skill. — quanta . . . portus [Et. 296]: these indir. questions follow reperire poterat. Notice that the imperfect poterat is used rather than potuit; calling attention to his repeated questions to the different traders.

CHAP. 21. periculum faceret, making the trial. — idoneum, a fit person. — navi longa, see Bk. III. Chap. 9¹. — quam primum, as soon as possible.

2. Morînos, occupying the nearest point to Britain: in clear weather the British coast is in sight from these shores. — quam clœssam, the fleet which (§ 200. b; G. 618; H. 445. 9). — qui polliceantur, to promise (§ 317; G. 544; H. 497), followed by dare as complem. infin. (§ 330. f; G. 527. r.²; H. 537. n.), a rare use for se daturos [esse].

80. 4. ut permanerent, to remain, object-clause after hortatus. — Atrebatibus superatis (see Bk. II. Chap. 23): the same people, it is said, occupied Berkshire in England, whence the supposed influence of Commius. — ibi, i.e. among the Atrebates (§ 207. a; G. 613. r.¹; H. 304. III. 2). — magni, gen. of indefinite value (§ 215. c; G. 399; H. 404), of great account.

5. huic, indir. obj. of imperat; the dir. obj. is the whole clause, down to nuntiet. — fidem sequantur, i.e. accept the protection of, or submit to. — sequæ . . . nuntiet, and tell them that he is coming.

6. quantum (sc. tantum) . . . auderet, so far as opportunity could be given to one who did not venture, &c. (a bit of irony). — perspexiæset, had investigated: for sequence of tenses, see § 287. e; G. 511. r.¹; H. 495. II.

CHAP. 22. superioris temporis, of the season before (see Bk. III. Chap. 28). — homines barbari = being (as they were) barbarians.
2. *satis opportune, seasonably enough.* — *has... anteponen-das,* that occupation about such little matters should be put before [the invasion of] Britain.

3. *coactis, gathered* from various quarters; *contractis, brought together* into port (at Boulogne, or possibly a few miles farther north, at Wissant). — *duas legiones,* the seventh and tenth. — *quod... habebat,* all the galleys he had besides. — *ex eo loco,* &c., eight miles from there, at the port of Ambleteuse. — *tene-bantur quo minus,* were detained from. — *equites,* cavalry, of whom there were 450.

81. C. H. 23. *idoneam tempestatem,* favorable weather. — *tertia vigilia, at midnight.* The date was August 26, high water being about half past seven P.M.; the ships, therefore, would go out at about half-tide. — *nactus:* Et. 354. — *solut,* loosed or cast-off the ships: used like our phrase *weighed anchor.* — *equites:* these were to embark at Ambleteuse, as above.

2. *paulo tardius:* they sailed after a delay of three days (Chap. 28). — *hora quarta,* about half past eight A.M., about an hour after high-tide. The landing was near Dover, where he lay at anchor till half past three.

3. *montibus angustis,* i.e. cliffs coming close to the shore.

4. *dum... convenirent,* until the other ships should come up (§ 328; G. 574; H. 519).

5. *ut... postularent,* as military science and especially seamanship require; relat. clause following *monuit... administrarentur,* enjoined that everything should be done promptly. — *ut quae... haberent* (§ 320. c; G. 637; H. 517. 3. 1), since they have, &c.

6. *his dimissis,* when they were sent to their posts (observe the dispersive effect of *di-).* — *aestum secundum:* the tide in this place would run west until about half past six. — *ancoris:* Et. 1. — *aperto... litore:* “at Lymne in Romney marsh, where the cliffs are far back from the beach, and there is a fine shingle.”

C. H. 24. *essedarius:* the *essedum* was a two-wheeled war-chariot. — *quo generes,* i.e. both horses and chariots, making a sort of flying artillery. — *copiis,* abl. of accompaniment (§ 248. a; G. 391; H. 419. 1). — *egrēdi,* infin. for *ne* or *quominus* with subj.
2. nisi in alto, except in deep water. — militibus (dat. after desiliendum), the men had to leap down. — oppressis (taken with militibus), weighted as they were. — simul: Et. 377. — cum . . . conicerent, while they (the Britons), &c. — arido, dry ground. — insuefactos, trained to it, i.e. to charge to the water's edge.

3. generis (gen. after imperiti, § 218. a; G. 373; H. 399): wholly unskilled in this sort of fighting.

82. pedestribus, on land, where the main strength lay with infantry. — uti, employ or exhibit.

Chap. 25. naves (obj. of jussit, and subj. of removeri: see § 240. f. note; G. 532; H. 534), ordered the vessels to be set back. — species, appearance. — insititior, quite strange. — latus apertum, the exposed flank, i.e. the right, unprotected by their shields. — quae res, this manœuvre.

2. permoti, startled. — ac = atque, and besides. — paulum modo, just a little.

3. qui ferebat, the one who carried: the antecedent of qui is is, the understood subj. of inquit. — contestatus, appealing to. — legioni, dat. of reference.

4. prodere: Et. 225. — ego certe . . . praestitero, I at any rate shall have done, &c. (see § 281. r; G. 236; H. 473).

5. inter se, one another (§ 196. f; G. 212; H. 448. n.). — universi, in a body. — ex proximis [primis] navibus, from the nearest ships (those in the front line). — adpropinquarunt: the subject is, [those] from, &c.

Chap. 26. pugnatum est = they fought (§ 146. c; G. 199. R.¹; H. 301. 1). — ab utriisque, strictly, by those on both sides. — poterant . . . submittebat: notice the numerous imperfects of this description, implying repeated or continuous action. — alius alia ex navi = from different ships (§ 203. c; G. 306; H. 461. 3). — quibus-cumque signis, dat. after occurrebat; the antecedent noun and pronoun (eis signis), if expressed, would be dat. after adgregabat. The clause from quod to adgregabat is a parenthesis.

2. singulares, in scattered groups. — adoribantur [Et. 414], would attack. — ab latere aperto (see Chap. 25¹), on the exposed flank of the Romans. — in universos, upon the mass.
3. **speculatoria navigia**, swift, light boats for reconnaissance. Vegetius says that these were painted of a greenish-blue color, to escape notice. The sails and rigging, and even the dress of those on board, were of the same color.

4. **simul [atque]**, as soon as.

83. **quod equites, &c.**; they were windbound at Ambleteuse (Chap. 224). — **hoc unum ... defuit**: “in fact, a tide of disasters was now setting in to continue several years.”

Chap. 27. **superati**: Et. 225. — **quae imperasset, what he should require** (quae imperaveris). — **quem praemissum**, Chap. 214.

2. **oratoris modo, in the character of envoy (or spokesman).** — **ut [sibi] ignoraceretur, that [this thing] might be pardoned**: ignoroscere [Et. 120] takes a direct object of the thing, with an indirect object of the person (§ 225. c).

3. **bellum ... intulissent**: these barbarous people might well be pardoned for mistaking Caesar’s expedition as an invasion! — **ignoscere**: for the omission of the subject, see § 336. a; G. 527. R.² — **arescessitam = when they should be fetched.**

4. **remigrare, to move back.**

Chap. 28. **confirmata**: Et. 261. — **post diem quartum, i.e. three days after.** — **naves, &c., see Chap. 224.**

2. **aliae ... aliae, some ... others.** — sui (obj. gen. with periculo), to themselves. — **occasum, west.** — cum ... **complerentur, since they were filling as they lay at anchor.** — **adversa nocte, in the face of the night.**

Chap. 29. **eadem nocte**: this was the night of August 30; the moon was full at 3 A.M.

84. **aestus maximos, spring tides.** The ocean tides, rising here between 20 and 30 feet, were a strange phenomenon to those who had known only the tideless waters of the Mediterranean (compare Bk. III. Chap. 81). — **naves, obj. of compleverat.** — **adfectabant** (intensive), dashed about. — **facultas, opportunity** (to do a thing).

2. **id quod, see § 200. e; G. 616. R.²; H. 445. 7.**

3. **quod constabat, because it was settled**: the subject is opor-
tere, of which the subj. is hiemari, that to winter in Gaul was needful. — his in locis: for the order of words, see § 345. a; G. 680. r.²; H. 569. II.

Chap. 30. principes, subj. of duxerunt. — hoc angustiora, so much the smaller: hoc is abl. of deg. of dif. (§ 250; G. 400; H. 423). — optimum, in pred. agreement with frumento . . . producere. — duxerunt, thought. — frumento commeatu, corn and other supplies. — rem, the operations. — his . . . interclusis, abl. abs. of condition: if these should be overcome, &c. — rursus, not a second time, but back from negotiations to hostilities. — clam: Et. 29. — deducere, bring down towards the coast.

Chap. 31. ex eventu navium, from what had befallen the ships. — ex eo quod, from the fact that. — suspicabatur, began to suspect. — subsidia comparabat, made provision.

2. quae . . . naves, earum, &c., the timber and bronze of those ships which, &c. (§ 200. b; G. 618; H. 445. 9). — aere: the Romans used aes indiscriminately for copper and bronze. These metals were more common than iron in the Roman ships. They were employed to sheathe the rostrum, and in the spikes that held the timbers together. — materia: Et. 396. — quae . . . usui, whatever was of use: the antecedent of quae is ea, subj. of comportari.

85. reliquis . . . effectit, he managed so that they could sail (navigari, impers.) tolerably with the rest.

Chap. 32. geruntur, § 276. e; G. 220. r.¹; H. 467. III. 4. — frumentatum, to get grain (supine). — pars hominum, some of the people. — ventitaret, returned from time to time (frequent, § 167. b; H. 336). — pro, in front of. — quam . . . ferret = than usual.

2. id quod erat = what was the fact. — aliquid . . . consilii, that some new design was undertaken. — ex reliquis duas, two of the others. — armari, to arm; in verbs, thus used reflexively, English prefers the active and Latin the passive form.

3. paulo longius, some little distance. — premi . . . sustinere, were getting pushed, and hardly held their ground. — conferta legione (abl. abs.) = the legion was formed in solid square, while
weapons were hurled, &c. Observe the force of Latin, in conveying a description, as here, by a participial phrase.

4. suspicati, supposing (§ 290. b; G. 278. r.; H. 550. n.1).—dispersos, occupatos, while scattered, &c., agreeing with milites, governed by adorti.—incertis ordinibus (abl. abs.), because the ranks were unsteady.

CHAP. 33. ex essedis: these chariots are often represented with scythes at the axle, of which Caesar makes no mention. They held six men (essedarii) each, besides the driver (auriga), and were drawn by two horses.—cum se insinuaverunt, when they have worked themselves among. For perf. indic. with cum, see "The Conjunction Cum," note on Bk. III. Chap. 9.

2. equitum, the cavalry of the Britons. When the essedarii had dismounted, the British line was composed of alternate bodies of horse and foot (see Fig. 39).—paulatim, little by little (§ 148. ε; H. 304. I. 1).—illi, i.e. the fighting men spoken of above.—expeditum receptum, a ready retreat.

3. praestant, exhibit. Caesar was much struck with the efficiency of the German and British horse (see Chap. 12), and made it the basis of important changes in the Roman army.—uti . . . consuerint, clause of result following efficient.—declivi ac præcipiti [Et. 52] lūco = a steep downward slope.—incitatos equos sustinere, to check their horses in full gallop (infin. after consuerint).—brevi, within a short space.

86. CHAP. 34. quibus rebus, under these circumstances (loc. abl.).—nostris, dat. following tulit auxillum.

2. alienum . . . arbitratus, judging it an unfavorable time. For this force of alienum see note on Bk. I. Chap. 152.

3. quae continentur, so as to keep (§ 319; G. 633; H. 500. I.).

4. praedicaverunt [Et. 10], bragged about.—quanta . . . fa-
cultas dare tur, what opportunity was offered (indir. question following demonstraverunt).

Chap. 35. ut effugerent (in appos. with idem, the subj. of fore), namely, that if, &c. — effugerent, would escape: the future signification is from the effect of fore. — equites triginta : these few cavalry would be of no service in an engagement, but only in pursuit. To chase and cut down the beaten army was considered an essential part of the battle.

3. tanto spatio, over as much ground (§ 257. b; G. 387; H. 379. 2).

Chap. 36. duplicavit: Et. 231. — die aequinoctii, the stormy season (Sept. 24). "Caesar had therefore been nearly a month in Britain, without being able to advance a mile from the shore." Napoleon III. estimates that the return to Gaul occurred Sept. 11 or 12. This would make the stay about three weeks. — hiemi, &c., thought the voyage ought not to be exposed to foul weather.

87. 2. eosdem . . . portus, the same ports with the others: reliqui is masc. (by synesis) as referring to milites; some editions have reliqua [naves].

Paulo infra: "the west current sets in on the French coast, while that to the east is still running in mid-channel."

Chap. 37. expositi, landed. — circiter trecenti: From this statement we may make a pretty close estimate of the number of men in a full legion. Caesar tells us that he had 80 transports for his two legions. By the storm 12 ships were lost. These 12 were probably transports, as they were at anchor, and hence more exposed to danger. That would leave 68. From the two that were separated from the fleet, about 300 men were landed. At that rate, in the 68 ships there must have been 10,200 men. As the legions were without heavy baggage, there would have been no servants excepting for the officers. Allowing for these, and for the number of officers in the general staff, there would remain not much less than 5000 men in each legion. We see thus that Goeler's estimate of 4800, as the normal number in the legion, was not far from the truth. — non ita magno, not very large.— numero: Et. 360.
2. orbē: the circle was formed by a small body of troops when entirely surrounded by the enemy. It was generally hollow, with officers and baggage in the centre.

3. horis, abl. of comparison with amplius: a more common construction would be horas.

4. postea quam = as soon as.

Chap. 38. sociitātes: see § 75. c; G. 195. 5; H. 130. 2.—superiore anno, see Bk. III. Chap. 28²: the tempestātes of Chap. 34 were apparently merely gusty weather without rain.

3. supplicatio: compare end of Bk. II.

The crossing of the Rhine had strongly impressed the minds of the Romans, and so too the passage into Britain, though in fact a failure. This unprecedented thanksgiving of 20 days we must remember, however, was voted by Cæsar's own party, who now held all the offices, and who would wish to cover up the impression of any ill success. In fact, though he had added nothing to Roman power, he had opened a new world to Roman ambition.

The Legions. — In the campaign of the year 55 B.C., Cæsar had still under his orders the eight legions before mentioned. How many of these were engaged in the expedition against the Germans we do not know. Legions VII and X composed the detachment with which Britain was reconnoitred (Chap. 25², Chap. 32¹).
BOOK FIFTH. — B.C. 54.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN. — The landing of the previous year had been only a reconnaissance. Cæsar now determines upon a regular advance and occupation. The earlier part of the season was chiefly taken up with naval preparations, the ships being apparently (Chap. 5) built on the inland streams, and the rigging and outfit brought from Spain (Chap. 1), which was considerably in advance of Gaul in civilization, abounded in metals, and, in particular, furnished the esparto, or Spanish grass, whose long, tough fibre made the best of cordage. Cæsar sails (by the reckoning of Napoleon III.) on the 20th of July from Portus Itius, at or near Boulogne, drifting first with wind and tide some distance to the N.E., then returning to the locality of his former landing (Chap. 8).

88. Chap. 1. L. Domitio, &c. The consuls entered on their office Jan. 1, according to the official calendar; the real date appears to have been Dec. 12. Cæsar’s visit to Italy was probably later. — naves ... curarent, have vessels built and the old ones repaired. See note on Bk. I. Chap. 13.—modum formamque, style of build (hend).

2. subductiones, hauling ashore: they were not left at anchor. (For the plural form, see § 75. c; G. 195. r. 5; H. 130. 2.) Compare naves subducere, to haul ashore, and deducere, to haul down, i.e. to launch. See Chap. 2. — nostro: i.e. Mediterranean. —minus magnos seems to refer to the smooth ocean swell, compared with the angry “chopping seas” of the Mediterranean.—id, sc. facit (206. c; H. 368. 3. N. 1).

3. actuarias, driven by oars as well as sails, hence swift. The Gallic ships, it will be remembered, did not use oars. See Bk. III. Chap. 14. — humilitas: as compared with the high-banked galleys. These of Cæsar had only one bank of oars.—armandas, rigging (see above).

89. 4. conventibus, proconsular or provincial courts; the same name is given to the districts. These courts were regularly held in the winter (compare Bk. I. Chap. 54). — Illyricum: Cæsar’s province included all to the N.E. as well as N.W. from
Italy. — *Pirustis*: a tribe long allied with Rome, inhabiting the valley of the *Drina*. — *civitatibus*, § 225. *c*; G. 347; H. 384. *2.* — *certum*, designated (*erno*): observe the passive meaning.


7. *arbitros*, umpires; *litem*, amount of damages.


3. *Itium* (see above): Boulogne, Wissant or Ambleteuse, no matter which (compare Bk. IV. Chap. 23). — *triginta*: a little less than 28 English miles.

4. *Treverorum*, a tribe reckoned as Gauls or Celts (see Bk. VIII. Chap. 25), but believed to be, in part at least, of German origin, and giving their name to the modern *Trèves*. Their chief town (*Augusta Treverorum*) was long the chief seat of Roman power in Northern Gaul. — *concilia*, assemblies, held by a province or confederacy for consultation or law-making. Cæsar appears to have organized such assemblies under his own authority in Belgic Gaul after its conquest. — *veniebant*, &c.: notice the imperfect tense. — *dicebantur*: for the personal form, see § 330. *b*; G. 199. *3*; H. 534. *1. N. 1.*

**CHAP. 3.** ut supra *demonstravimus*, Bk. III. Chap. 111.

2. *alter*, the latter, Cingetorix. — *suos*, i.e. clansmen, retainers, &c. Cingetorix offers to bring his nation under Roman authority on condition of ruling them himself as a subject or “friend” of Rome.

90. 3. *Arduennam*: this hilly and forest region makes the natural frontier between Gaul and the Netherlands, and is the seat of the famous Belgian iron-mines. — *medios*, see § 193; G. 287. *R.*; H. 440. *N. 1.*

5. *laberetur*, fall off (from obedience). — *imprudentiam*, ill-judgment. — *ita-que*, and in consequence. — *se permittatur*, to put . . . under his protection.

**CHAP. 4.** omnibus . . . *comparatis*, now that, &c.

3. *cum* . . . intellegebat, considered on the one hand. (See
"The Conjunction Cum," note on Bk. III. Chap. 9.) — merito ejus = as he fairly deserved (see § 253; G. 398; H. 424).

4. suam . . . minui, in appos. with id factum. — qui . . . fuiisset = while, &c. (see § 320. e; G. 637; H. 515. III.). — dolore, grievance.

91. Chap. 5. 2. in Meldis: these were on the Marne, near Meaux. The ships were built here, probably, for convenience of timber; they were low and of light draft (Chap. 1), and proved too frail for the Channel waters (Chap. 10; compare Bk. III. Chap. 9, where sturdier craft are built upon the Loire).

3. numero, abl. of specification; milium limits equitatus. — loco, in the condition (§ 254. a; G. 385. r.; H. 425. 2). — cum . . . abesse, while he should be away (a fut. cond. following verebatur).

Chap. 6. Dumnorix: he appears to have been kept four years under close surveillance (see Bk. I. Chap. 20, end).

2. neque . . . audebant, and yet dared not.

3. timeret, diceret: § 341. d. r.; G. 541; H. 516. II. — religionibus, by religious scruples.

4. sollicitare; territare; esse: notice the different construction of these three infinitives. — causa, purpose. — fieri ut, it was coming to pass that, &c.

5. ex usu, to the advantage. — intellexissem here represents the fut. perf. of direct discourse.

Chap. 7. quod . . . statuebat: the severity to Dumnorix was proportioned to the favor and consequence granted to his State.

92. 2. commoratus, i.e. during the delay (compare § 290. b; G. 278. r.; H. 550. n. 1). — Corus (or Caurus), the north-west wind. — omnis temporis, every season of the year: the windmills on this coast had their sails set permanently to the N.W. (Moberly).

3. milites equitesque: the milites were the legionary infantry.

4. pro sano,rationally. — negligisset: the tense depends on arbitratus, which is, however, present in meaning (see note on commoratus).
5. *enim = in point of fact.* — *liberum, &c.* Cæsar takes no pains to conceal the violence of his own acts. He had no authority over Dumnorix except that of the stronger.

**Chap. 8. 2. pari ... quem, the same ... as (i.e. 2000). — Africo,** the south-west wind. — *sub sinistra:* i.e. he had drifted to the north-east (see map).

Cæsar weighed anchor at sunset (about 8 p.m.). A gentle breeze was then blowing from the S.W.; but at the same time a tidal current was setting towards the S.W. Under the impulse of these two forces, the fleet kept a north-westerly course until about midnight. The wind then died down, and the current also began to set in the opposite direction (N.E.). With this current the Romans drifted, and at dawn the British coast appeared on their left. They had passed by *(relictam)* the North Foreland, and were drifting farther away from the land. But at about this time (5 a.m.) the tide changed, and the current again began to flow towards the S.W. With its help, and that of the oars, the fleet now began to move towards the land, aiming to reach the same point that had been found in the previous expedition to be the most convenient for debarking. Here they arrived at about noon (Göler).

4. *gravibusque = and that, too, heavy-laden.* — *navigis,* abl. of means.

93. 5. *accessum est:* the landing was at *Romney.* — *annotinis, those built the year before.* — *sui commodi,* sc. *causā;* or. *commodi* is a genitive of purpose.

**Chap. 9. cohortibus decem,** i.e. two from each legion.

2. *flumen:* the *Stour,* which flows north-easterly through Canterbury, forming at its mouth the Isle of *Thanet.* — *superiore:* the north bank is higher ground than the opposite.

4. *testudine facta et aggere . . . adjecto:*

From the rapidity with which this *agger* was completed, it is evident that it was not the elaborate structure required in attacking more formidable defences, as described in the note on Bk. II. Chap. 12. We may also infer that the British stronghold was only rudely fortified. The method of attack seems to have been as follows: —

The men in each file stood close together, but with a space of about 3 ft. between the files; excepting, of course, in the front rank, where the
formation would be solid. This first rank held their shields in front of them. The other shields were held overhead, the length at right angles to the file. Thus between each two files a protected space, 3 ft. wide, was left, through which workmen could carry brush and fagots. This being rapidly piled, the soldiers kept mounting, stepping alternately to right and left, as the clear space was filled and the place where they were standing was needed. Thus in a short time the *testudo* was on a level with the top of the wall, and the ditch was filled up. Then a rush drove the enemy easily from their works, and the position was taken.

**Chap. 10. tripartito, i.e. in three columns, following different roads.**

94. **Chap. 11. sic, &c.; i.e. true to the extent that, &c.**
2. *fabros deligit*: a certain number of carpenters (*fabri lignarii*) was always attached to the engineer corps of the army. The use of *deligit*, however, seems to imply that there were too few for the present emergency, and hence there were selected from the ranks a sufficient number of men skilled in such work.
4. *eodem*; i.e. to the British defences on the Stour.
5. *a mari*, from Cæsar’s place of landing. The distance is reckoned, not in a straight line, but by the roads, as the army marched.
6. *huic . . . intercesserant*: “The brave and cautious prince Cassivellaunus [Casswallon], who ruled in what is now Middlesex and the surrounding district, — formerly the terror of the Celts to the south of the Thames, but now the protector and champion of the whole nation” (Mommsen).

**Chap. 12. natos in insula: they were not, however, indigenous, but a Celtic population following an earlier Iberian race.—iis nominibus: for example, Atrébates and Belgæ.**

95. 3. *Gallicis*: brief references to the Gallic customs of building are made in Bk. V. Chap. 43, and Bk. VI. Chap. 30. — *nummo aereo*: this doubtful phrase is found in some good authorities, in the very doubtful form *aureo*. — *plumbum album*: Cæsar is mistaken in placing tin-mines inland and iron on the coast; it
was just the other way. He does not say whether iron was used in the arts, which would imply a pretty advanced civilization.

4. *fagum atque abietem*: another error; the beech and fir are both native to Britain.—*animi, fancy.*—*frigoribus, seasons of cold.*

**CHAP. 13. 2. ad Hispaniam, &c.** For this crude geography compare Tacitus (Agric. 34), who says that Ireland is between Britain and Spain.—*atque, as, § 156. a; G. 646; H. 554. 1. 2. N.*

3. *Mona, the Isle of Man.* Tacitus, apparently, gives this name to Anglesea.

4. *ex aqua mensuris*: the *clepsydra*, or water-clock, measured time by the dropping of fixed measures of water through a small pipe, or aperture.

**CHAP. 14. 2. interiores*: the ruder barbarians here described are probably represented by the later *Picts*, whose name (*pictis*) has been thought to denote their woad-staining.

("A painted coat King Vortigern had on,
Which from a naked Pict his grandsire won."

3. *parte, § 251; G. 402; H. 419. II.*

96. 4. *uxores habent, &c.* This rude and early nucleus of the clan "was founded upon the intermarriage of several brothers to each other's wives in a group, and of several sisters to each other's husbands in a group. But the term *brother*, as here used, included the first, second, third, and even more remote male connections, all of whom were considered brothers to each other, as we consider own brothers" (Morgan's "Ancient Society"). One effect of the arrangement was a great check upon population,—an important point with all barbarians.—*quo* (adv.) here stands for *ad quos* (§ 207. a; G. 613. r. 1; H. 304. II. 3. N.).

**CHAP. 15. essedarii: see Bk. IV. Chap. 33.—fuerint, § 287. c.* with Rem.; G. 513; H. 495. VI.

3. *atque his, and these, too.*—*primis*: the first cohorts had the best soldiers. See note on the "Relative Rank of the Centurions,"
Bk. I. Chap. 40. — *per medios*, i.e. through the interval between the two cohorts.

**Chap. 16**. *cedentibus et inequentibus*, agreeing with *eis* understood (abl. abs.), referring to the Britons. Whether advancing or retreating, the islanders were equally formidable.

4. *stationes, supports*. It will be observed that the Britons showed considerable military skill, and that their mode of battle somewhat resembled that of the Romans themselves. They used an open and flexible array, rather than the dense masses (*phalan- ges*) of the Gauls and Germans.

97. **Chap. 18. uno loco**: somewhere between Brentford and the mouth of the *Wey*. The details of Cæsar's march are here uncertain: as Mr. Long thinks, he went by the passage of the *Mole* through the chalk hills at Dorking.

2. *sudibus*: these defences, or palisades, have been thought to be indicated by the local name *Cowey Stakes*, near the junction of the Wey with the Thames. These, however, were at right angles with the bank, as if piles for a bridge; while those spoken of in the text were driven in along the bank—one of the rows at low water.

4. *capite solo*, a most hazardous depth. By the rule for modern infantry, a ford should not be more than three feet deep. But, says Merivale, "the swimming and fording of rivers were among the regular exercises of the Roman legionary. Though immersed up to his chin in water, he was expert in plying his hatchet against the stakes which opposed his progress, while he held his buckler over his head not less steadily than on dry land. Behind him a constant storm of stones and darts was impelled against the enemy from the engines which always accompanied the Roman armies."

**Chap. 19. locisque impeditis ac silvestribus**: from this description we must infer that the British chariots were very narrow, to pass through the forest roads; and had very high wheels, to go easily over rough ground.

CHAP. 20. Trinobantes: in Essex. Their chief place was Camalodunum, now Colchester. — Imanuentius: this name is found in later Mss., and is not given in Nipperdey’s text.

2. qui praesit: this defection of Mandubricius was soon followed by the break-up of the Briton confederacy.

CHAP. 21. Iceni, &c. These local names vaguely hint at the petty populations of the vicinity. — oppidum Cassivellauni: thought to be the modern St. Albans.

2. oppidum, &c. The Britons, like the Germans, did not live in towns, but used these strongholds simply for defence against attack. — cum: see note on Book III. Chap. 9, “The Conjunction Cum,” II. c. 1.

99. CHAP. 22. regionibus: implying that Kent (Cantium) was divided into four recognized military commands.

4. neque multum aestatis. Cæsar had now apparently been in Britain about two months (compare Chap. 23). The dates assigned by Napoleon III. for his sailing and return are July 22 and Sept. 24; or, by the reformed calendar, July 20 and Sept. 21. — extrahi, protracted, i.e. wasted. Besides, Cæsar had just learned the death of his daughter Julia, Pompey’s wife, threatening the dissolution of the triumvirate, and giving him strong reason for wishing to be nearer home.

vectigalis: this was mere form, as no means were left to enforce the tribute.

FRESH RISINGS OF THE GAULS. — The remaining events of this campaign are among the most critical of the entire Gallic war, and show to what extreme peril Cæsar had exposed his conquests by his nearly idle and fruitless expedition across the Channel. They serve, besides, to bring out, in very marked relief, the personal qualities of his several lieutenants. As a series of episodes, this Book is, in fact, the most interesting of the eight.

100. CHAP. 24. Samoibrivae, the chief town of the Ambiani, whose name is found in the modern Amiens. — aliter ac: i.e. not where supplies were most abundant, but where there was chief danger of disturbance.
2. Q. Ciceroni, the younger brother of the orator, and a man of harder temper. He had joined Cæsar's army the present year, and taken part in the expedition to Britain.

3. proxime, latest. This was the 15th legion. — trans Padum, i.e. from Rome to the north.

Chap. 25. restituerat: this act of "restoring" chiefs exiled by the democracy of the tribes was peculiarly odious, as here appears.

2. auctoribus, either at their instigation, or at any rate with their full consent.

101. Chap. 26. diebus . . . quibus, within a fortnight after, &c. — praesto, in attendance upon, as obedient subjects. — Indu-
tiomari: for the bitter offence given him by Cæsar, see above, Chap. 4.

3. aliqui: the usual form is aliquis (§§ 104, 105. d; G. 105; H. 190. N. 2).

Chap. 27. eques, a knight, a member of the "equestrian order," the commercial aristocracy of Rome.

3. imperia, sovereignty. The word is used in English abstractly, referring to all cases; while in Latin each sovereignty is regarded as a separate imperium.

102. 4. humilitate, weakness.


6. pro pietate: pietas implies the love of a child to a parent; here, of course, to his native land. — rationem officii = regard to his duty. — conductam, hired, or subsidized.

Chap. 28. 2. consilium: as the two legates had 1½ legions under their command, the council of war contained, besides the legates, 9 military tribunes, and either 9 or 6 centurions, according as the half legion did or did not include the first cohort. Thus there were in the council either 20 or 17 persons.

103. Chap. 29. proximis, close at hand.

2. fuissete capturos: the direct discourse would have cepissent, and for venturos esse, venirent.
3. auctorem, as the informant. — spectare, sc. se. — ardere, is in a blaze. — Ariovisti mortem: he had, however, escaped after the battle (Bk. I. Chap. 53).

4. persuaderet: for the form of question, see § 338. r.; G. 468; H. 486. II.

Chap. 30. primis ordinibus = primorum ordinum centurionibus.

104. Chap. 31. 2. dat manus (a formal sign of surrender), gives in. — pronuntiatur, the order is given out.

4. ut quibus, &c. (§§ 320. e, 230; G. 637, 208; H. 515. III., 384. 5), as if, &c. — longissimo: the line of march was very long, and consequently very weak.

Chap. 32. convallem: a valley enclosed on all sides. In this sink of course the Romans were at a disadvantage.

105. Chap. 33. providisset: for the subj. see § 341. d; G. 636; H. 517.

3. in orbem: see note on Bk. IV., Chap. 37. A modern army would form a hollow square. The circle was hollow, having room within for the higher officers, the non-combatants, the wounded, &c.

Chap. 34. existimarent, for imperat. of direct discourse (§ 339; G. 655; H. 523. III.).

2. et virtute et numero, abl. of cause.

3. ad signa recipientes: the standards were fixed in the ground, thus indicating the alignment of the circle.

Chap. 35. cum . . . excederat, as often as, &c., equivalent to a general condition (§ 309. c; G. 585; H. 521. II. 1, with last example; also see “The Conjunction Cum,” note on Bk. III. Chap. 9). — recipi: “recipere ferrum was the cry to a gladiator who was not to be spared” (Mobberly).

4. qui . . . duxerat: as he had been chief centurion the year before, we infer that he was now serving in the corps of veterans called evocati. See Bk. VII. Chap. 65.

Chap. 37. ululatum: such a yell of triumph is described by
Ammianus (XVI. 12, 43): "It began with a low humming, growing gradually louder and louder, until it was like the thunder of the waves, when they crash on a rocky shore."

107. CHAP. 38. neque noctem neque diem intermittit. Ambiorix marched only one night and one day. More than that would have been expressed by nocturnis diurnisque itineribus (cf. Bk. I. Chap. 38).

2. in Nervios. Cæsar had said (Bk. II. Chap. 28) that the Nervii were almost utterly exterminated (prope ad internecionem redacti) three years before. From this it is inferred that "he wrote his Commentaries at the time of the events, and did not correct them afterwards" (Long). Or they may have been drawn up from his despatches to the Senate, which were sent at the close of each campaign (Roscher). See note on Bk. II. Chap. 1.

3. oppressam . . . interfici: render by two verbs, to be surprised and slain (§ 292. R.; G. 667. R. 1; H. 549. 5).

CHAP. 40. 2. turres: these "were open at the sides and behind, solidly timbered towards the enemy, and their object was, like that of the modern bastion, to shorten the length of wall to be occupied by the defence" (Moberly). Others think that their use was to give the soldiers a still higher position from which to throw their missiles. In this case, if made like those described by Pansa in Bk. VIII. Chap. 9, they would have been of not more than three stories, or perhaps 30 ft., high. Each story was floored with a platform, on which the soldiers stood. The front and sides of each platform were protected by a parapet (loricae) of hurdles, to the height of about 4 ft. Above this projected a sort of battlement of stakes (pinnae), or of hurdles standing erect, with spaces at intervals, through which the spears were hurled. The structure was square, of about 10 ft. on a side. Of these towers it appears that on the first night only the framework was erected. On succeeding nights they were completed.

108. 3. muralium pilorum, long pikes, to defend the wall.—contabulantur, floored with plank. Possibly also the towers were connected by galleries, one for each story.
CHAP. 41. 3. nihil . . . recusent: i.e. they will be friends, but not subjects; they only refuse to admit a standing military force.

CHAP. 42. fossa pedum quindecim: a ditch 15 ft. wide would be 11 ft. deep. See note on Bk. I. Chap. 49.
2. nulla . . . copia = having no supply, &c. (a sort of abl. abs.).—manibus sagulisque . . . exaurire, to take up with the hands and [carry] in the cloaks. A case of zeugma, Gr. p. 298; G. 690; H. 636. II. 1.

109. 3. quindecim: probably an error, as a circuit of 15 miles seems out of the question; perhaps pedum, or quinque,—falces, hooks, for tearing down the wall.—testudines, wooden galleries or sheds, to protect the undermining (see Fig. 26).

CHAP. 43. casas, the huts of the encampment, thatched with straw.
2. clamore: see note on Chap. 373.

110. CHAP. 44. 2. locum, opportunity

CHAP. 45. 2. a prima obsidione, at the beginning of the siege.

111. CHAP. 46. milia passuum xxv, i.e. from Amiens to Montdidier.

CHAP. 47. 4. quos . . . scriret = cum eos scriret. — veritus ut, § 331. f; G. 552; H. 498. III. n. 1.
5. quanto . . . esset, indir. quest. depending on the verb of telling implied in litteras remittit.

CHAP. 48. opinione, expectation.

112. 4. Graecis litteris, i.e. in Greek letters. The Gauls were well acquainted with the Greek characters (Bk. I. Chap. 29; Bk. VI. Chap. 14). According to Polyaeus the despatch contained merely the words, "Caesar to Cicero. Be of good courage. Expect aid."

5. amentum: the amentum was a small strap fastened to the middle of a light spear. By its use the spear could be thrown twice as far as without it, as has been proven by experiment.
6. biduo, within two days (§ 256; G. 392; H. 429).
7. perlectam . . . recitat: he read it through (to himself), and then recited it aloud in the assembly of the soldiers.

113. Chap. 49. 2. Gallum...repetit, asks again for the Gaul.
6. milium septem: the legions averaged, then, 3500 men each, and this was less than the normal strength. The latter was quite likely at least 4800. See note on Bk. IV. Chap. 52.—angustiis viarum, i.e. narrow paths or streets within the camp. See note on Bk. I. Chap. 49.

Chap. 51. 3. nemo, not a man (emphatic by position).

114. Chap. 52. 3. pro ejus merito: Cicero’s admirable conduct here receives as high praise as it was Cæsar’s habit to give anybody.
4. laetatio: this word occurs nowhere else in any classical author.

Chap. 53. 3. trinis, see § 95. b; G. 95. R. 2; H. 174. 2. 3.—ad exercitum manere, contrary to his usual course, which was, for political reasons, to keep in near communication with Italy.

115. 6. longius, sc. quam (as after plus, minus, amplius).

Chap. 54. 2. adventu (loc. abl.) = at the time of, &c.
5. adeo (emphatic), in fact.—ei, nom.—praeferebantur, used to be held superior. The old terror of the Gallic name was, indeed, rather confirmed by the ferocity of the hostility which Cæsar met, especially in Britain, where his two legions had been cut down to "scarcely 7000 men" (Chap. 49).

116. Chap. 56. ultro veniri, a spontaneous rising for his support.
4. Senonibus, Carnutibus, Sens and Chartres.

117. Chap. 58. 3. praecipit refers to peterent; interdicit to nev vulneret.—morâ reliquorum, by waiting to attack the others.

The Legions.—In the year 54 B.C., probably in the spring, Cæsar enlisted one new legion, the 15th. The 14th was divided. Five of its cohorts were scattered, the men being used to fill up the depleted ranks of the other legions. Thus Cæsar had in all eight and a half legions under arms. Of these, fifteen cohorts (legion XV and five cohorts of legion XIV) were destroyed with Sabinus.
BOOK SIXTH. — B.C. 53.

SECOND PASSAGE OF THE RHINE. — The last campaign, including the bootless return from Britain, and the slaughter of the division of Sabinus, must have been in the eyes of the Gauls at least as good as a drawn battle, and have given them fresh hope in the struggle. The strength of their resistance was in the north and east, where they had the support of raids from across the Rhine,—a falling back on barbarism which it was especially the business of Cæsar to check by a daring blow. Hence the policy of this new, but idle, advance into Germany. It may be borne in mind that this campaign was the more critical, as following closely upon the defeat and destruction of the Roman armies under Crassus in the East.

CHAP. 1. multis de causis: viz. the desertion of Dumnorix, the loss of Cotta and Sabinus, and the sudden revolt led by Indutiomarus (see above). — dilectum, i.e. in Italy.

2. proconsule: Pompey had been consul B.C. 55. He was now nominally proconsul of Spain, with six legions; but remained in Italy, ruling his province through legati. It was at this time that he built his great wooden amphitheatre in Rome, capable of holding 30,000 spectators. — ad urbem (not in urbe): as long as he was in military command (cum imperio), he might not enter the city— which in such case had only been done by Sulla. — reipublicae causâ, the superintending of the corn supply (cura annonae).

—Cisalpina Gallia, Cæsar’s own province. But Pompey and Crassus had received authority to raise troops where they pleased, and in whatever number. The jealousies arising from this transfer of troops had fatal consequences afterwards. — consulis . . . rogavisset: the verb rogare is used of the magistrate who puts a proposed law to vote; literally, “asks” the people if they will accept it (jubeatisne?); also of a commander who demands of his men whether they will be bound to him by oath. The genitive (consulis) indicates the magistrate or officer who imposes the oath; on the part of the soldiers the expression would be, in verba consulis jurare. — juberet follows petit (sc. ut); its object being the antecedent (eos) of quos, above.
3. *opinionem Galliae, reputation in Gaul* (subj. gen.). — *videri, be seen* (not *seem*). — *adaugeri* refers not to "damage" (detrimento), but to Cæsar’s forces (implied). [This linking of different subjects under one construction is called *zeugma*.]

4. *amicitiae*: Cæsar and Pompey were still openly friends, though by the recent death of Julia (Cæsar’s daughter and Pompey’s wife), as well as by the death of Crassus, the political coalition which united them was dissolved, and an open rupture soon followed. The legion now forwarded to Cæsar was demanded back two or three years later. — *duplicat*: 15 cohorts were lost under Titurius. The three legions now received of course had 30. The new legions sent by Pompey were known as the 1st and 3d. Another, raised by Cæsar, was the 14th; taking the same number as the legion the half of which had been lost under Titurius at Aduatuca. The other half, it will be remembered, had been used to fill up the other depleted legions.

**II9. Chap. 2.** In the details of this chapter, notice the formidable appearance, but the really long, weak and broken line of the Gallic confederacy.

**Chap. 3. Nerviorum**: the vitality of this tribe is remarkable, after its triple extermination. — *praedā, as booty*; *ēā* (referring to *magnō . . . numero*) agrees by attraction with the appositive, § 195. *d*; G. 202. R. 5; H. 445. 4.

2. *ut . . . videretur*: it seems more reasonable to read *ne* instead of *ut*. — *Lutetiam* (translated by Carlyle Mudtown): the first mention in history of *Paris*, which was a place of no importance until its occupation as a royal town by the Franks in A.D. 502. The original place of meeting had probably been Samarobriva (*Amiens*).

3. *civitatem conjunxerant*, i.e. with the Senones. This was a close political union, not a mere military league (*foedus*). — *hoc consilio*, the new confederacy (compare Bk. VII. Chap. 75). — *hac re*, the removal to Lutetia. — *pro suggestu, in front of the platform*; i.e. by public announcement, not special notification to the commanders.

**Chap. 4. conantibus** (sc. *iis, abl. abs.*), while they were attempting to effect the gathering.
2. *sides*, *protection* (implied by the act of trust), i.e. of the Romans. — *libenter*, &c. But Acco was afterwards put to death; see Chap. 44.

120. 3. *equites* : the cavalry of the Roman armies was wholly furnished by the subject-allies.

CHAP. 5. *Cavarinum*, a chief appointed at Cæsar’s dictation, and odious to his tribe (Bk. V. Chap. 54). Hence his animosity (*iracundia*) against the State which had driven him into exile. — *meruerat*, implying a harsh and tyrannical rule.

2. *pro explorato* = *ascertained.*


4. *haec auxilia*, i.e. both the Menapii and the Germans. — *lacesseret*, subj. of relat. clause following *existimabat*.

CHAP. 6. *tripartito*: in three columns, on different roads.


2. *a* (adverbial), *away.* — *impedimentis*, i.e. the greater part of the heavy baggage. He took a baggage-train with him (Chap. 83), probably merely what was necessary.

3. *flumen*, probably some stream flowing into the Meuse (Mosa), perhaps the Alzette. — *spes*, their (the Treveri) *hope.*

4. *palam*, freely or openly, but not in set speech. — *castra moturum*, feigning flight (see below Chap. 6, 7).

5. *natura*, their natural attachment to their own land.

CHAP. 8. *cum*: see note on Chap. 71.

122. 3. *imperatorii*: Cæsar, who alone had the *imperium*, or military authority.

4. *dirigi*, i.e. *to be formed* and aligned; *dirigo* properly has only the latter meaning. There is an ellipsis of *instructi et*.

5. *impetum modo*, *the mere onset*.

7. comitati eos, in company with them (the Germans). —
demonstravimus: see Bk. V. Chap. 3 and 56.

Chap. 9. miserant, sc. Germani, implied in trans Rhenum.
2. paulum supra, a little above, or to the south, “apparently
near Andernach.” — nota ratione = on the plan already tried and
approved (compare Bk. IV. Chap. 17).

123. 4. purgandi sui, § 298. a; G. 429. r. 1; H. 542. l. n. 1.
6. cognita, having inquired into.

Chap. 10. iis . . . imperio, subject tribes, not confederate
allies. Tacitus, however (Ger. 38), represents the Suevi as a con-
federacy: its subjects may, after Cæsar’s time, have been admitted
to alliance. — peditatus, § 214. e; G. 359; H. 396. VI.

3. penitus, entirely.
4. silvam: this was the natural frontier (pro nativo muro) of
the north German plain towards the south. A range of wooded
hills still borders the Saxon duchies on the north. The Cherusci
held the valleys of the Weser and Seine.

Chap. 11. loco, a “place” where there is really nothing to
tell, as Cæsar found the country deserted (Chap. 29), and returned
at once to Gaul. We owe to this void in the narrative a most
curious and entertaining glimpse into the geographic and ethnog-
graphic knowledge of the time.

124. 2. quorum: the antecedent is principes. The subjunc-
tive redeat indicates the character of their authority (§ 320; G.
633; H. 503. l.). Or, by making eorum the antecedent, we should
have the meaning that the party chiefs are designated (as in our
political conventions) by a body, or council, to whom the decision
is referred by general consent, — a plausible understanding of the
passage.

3. ne quis, correl. with ita (in itaque); the clause ne . . .
egeret being in appos. with ejus rei, and the past tense (egeret)
taking its time from institutum [esse]: § 287. a; G. 518. exc.;
H. 495. IV.

4. ratio, order of things. — in summi, in general, the gen.
Galliae depending on ratio.
Notes: Cæsar.

Chap. 12. cum ... venit. See "The Conjunction Cum," note on Bk. III. Chap. 9. — Sequani, who succeeded to the domination of the Arverni (see Bk. I. Chap. 31). — antiquitus, really, only a little while before, as the Ædui had risen by favor of the Romans. — jacturias, sacrifices. — clientelas, dependents. These were the petty tribes, which grouped themselves about one or the other rival State.

3. Divitiacus: compare the note to Bk. I. Chap. 31. — infectare, without effecting his object (Kraner has imperfecta).

4. reliquis rebus, abl. of instr. with amplificata.

5. adaequare, were equal, i.e. to the Ædui. (The inferior clause depends on intellegebatur.)

125. Chap. 13. plebes (sing.), perhaps the scattered rural population (?). — nullo, either an older form of dative, or (more likely) an experiment in uniformity of Cæsar's own, like alterae in Bk. V. Chap. 27, and paterfamiliae in Chap. 19, below.

2. cum ... premuntur, indicative to express repetition, — a general truth. See "The Conjunction Cum," note on Bk. III. Chap. 9. — quae dominis (dat. of poss.), as masters have.

4. sacrificiis, abl. of separation; understand eos with interdicens.

5. decedunt, sc. de viâ (i.e. "cut" them in the street). — incommodi, part. gen. following quid.

7. Carnutum: this central spot was at or near the modern town of Dreux, where, it is said, traces of these assemblies may still be found.

126. Chap. 14. 2. ediscere, to learn by heart.

3. fas: the words fas and nefas refer to what is religiously right and wrong, in distinction from jus and injuria, which refer to human obligations only.

4. litteris confisos, by trusting to written words, — a useful hint to teachers.

5. hoc (acc.; more usually illud) refers to what follows; hoc (abl.) to what has just been said.

6. mundi, the universe (system of things); terrarum (cf. orbis terrarum), the world.
Chap. 15. equitum: these made a sort of military nobility. It is interesting to compare the two "upper classes" here described with the ecclesiastics and feudal noblesse of France before the Revolution. — cum est: notice the force of the indicative. See "The Conjunction Cum," note on Bk. III. Chap. 9. — versantur, engage, or are employed.

2. ut quisque . . . ita, the more . . . the more (§ 93. c, at end; G. 645. R. 2; H. 458. 2). — ambactos: this Celtic word was known as the equivalent of servus, "slave," as early as the time of Ennius, 150 years before (compare Chap. 13).

Chap. 16. homines immolant: the practice of human sacrifice is thought (by Thierry) to have been obsolete at this time in Gaul. Caesar appears not to have known any actual instances of it.

127. 3. supplicia, i.e. as sacrifices. The word ("downbent") refers to the attitude of the victim, who is bound and kneeling to receive his doom. The choice of criminals for this purpose may remind us of that latest form of human sacrifice, the punishment of death for heresy. — defecit: § 279. b; G. 228. R. 2; H. 471. II. 3. See "The Conjunction Cum," note on Bk. III. Chap. 9.

Chap. 17. Mercurium: the name of the god whom the Romans identified with Mercury is lost (Teutates?); but it appears from inscriptions and images that his worship was very widespread and important throughout the period of the Empire. The other deities here mentioned appear under numerous epithets. Jupiter was probably the Gallic Taranis, whose name appears to indicate that he was a god of thunder. He has been identified by some with a statuette bearing in its hand a long hammer or mallet, like the Scandinavian Thor. (Esquisse de la Religion de Gaulois, by Henri Gadroz.)

3. cum, &c. See last note on Chap. 15. — ceperint, subj. of characteristic.

5. capta, taken as spoil; posita, consecrated as a gift.

Chap. 18. Dite = Pluto, the god of Darkness, or the Underworld (see § 244. a. R.; G. 395; H. 415. II. n.). — ob, translate in keeping with, as it cannot be the true reason,—the fact being
common to most primitive peoples: e.g. the Germans (Tac. Germ. ii). Our word "fortnight" is a relic of this early use. — ut ... subsequatur, i.e. the day began at sunset.

2. fere ab reliquis, from most others. — suos liberos, &c. The Romans, on the other hand, accustomed their sons to public life, and in early times even took them with them into the Senate. — cum, &c. See last note on Chap. 15.

128. Chap. 19. quantas . . . communicant: the husband deposits, in a common fund, an amount equal to the wife's marriage-portion.

2. ratio habetur, a reckoning is kept. — fructus, revenues, or profits.

3. viri in uxores, &c.: compare the Roman patria potestas; the rank of the wife was much higher among the Germans. — cum, &c. See last note on Chap. 15. — de uxoribus: this is thought by some to imply polygamy among the Gauls. — in servilem modum, after the manner of slaves, i.e. by torture.

4. pro cultu, considering the degree of refinement: "not up, perhaps, to the Roman ideas as to gladiators and the like" (Moberly). — hanc = nostram (cf. Bk. II. Chap. 46). — justis, right, by conventional rule. When these had been fulfilled, the sacrifice was added.

Chap. 20. legibus sanctum, established by law, agreeing with the clause si . . . communicet (obj. of habent). — quo, indef., any one (nequis).

2. quod saepe, &c. Compare the lively account in Bk. IV. Chap. 5.

3. quae visa sunt, what they think fit to conceal (understand occultanda, and compare ἄνοιγε ἄνοις). — per concilium, by means (or, in the proceedings) of the public assembly.

Chap. 21. neque Druides habent: they had, however, both priests and priestesses, with religious forms public and private. Cæsar's contact with the Germans, it is to be remarked, was only on their unsettled military frontier.

2. deorum numero, &c. In this, Cæsar's testimony is directly contradicted by Tacitus, who speaks (Germ. 9) of their worship
of Mercury, Mars and Hercules. This is almost the only contradiction between these writers, in whose accounts of political and other institutions there is a striking agreement.

3. ab parvulis, from childhood (compare "from a child," 2 Tim. iii. 15).

129. 4. qui ... permanserunt, strictly, "who are slowest to outgrow" their boyhood. Compare Tacitus: sera juvenum venus, eoque inexhausta pubertas; and contrast the premature debaucheries of the Roman youth.

5. nulla occultatio, like the English there is no hiding. — rhenonum, i.e. reinder's hide.—magnà . . . nudà (abl. abs.), i.e. in battle, where Cæsar would chiefly meet them.

Chap. 22. agriculturae: as to this chapter, compare what is said in the general Introduction to the volume, and in Bk. IV. Chap. 1, where it is shown that the soil was tilled, not by the labor of old men, women, or slaves, but by that of the fighting men. In other words, the Germans were, though "barbarians," not (in one sense) a barbarous people.

2. neque quisquam, &c. This temporary and shifting occupation of land, as well as the holding of it by the family or clan (cognitionibus), is characteristic of a primitive society. But compare the Introduction, as above.—fines proprios, private boundaries, or landmarks.—qui unà coerunt: in the general gathering for this assignment, each clan must have met by itself, and been represented by its chief.

3. agricultura: notice the use of the ablative (§ 252; G. 404; H. 422. N. 2), here to be rendered "for."—ne ... expellant: this was a flagrant evil in Italy, which Cæsar had attempted in his own consulship to check (by the lex agraria), following the precedent of the Gracchi. There the potentiores had already succeeded in ousting the humiliores from their estates, and creating enormous plantations, latifundia, cultivated by slaves, in place of the earlier peasant freeholds.—cum ... videat: this looks as if the land was portioned in equal shares to rich and poor alike, unless we take aequari in the sense of a conative present, implying only tendency, or opportunity.
CHAP. 23. maxima laus: so in Bk. IV. Chap. 3. — virtutis, § 218. d; G. 356. r. 1; H. 391. II. 4. — prope, near; consistere, to stay or settle; observe the reduplicated form, with the force given by con.

2. cum . . . infert: note force of pres. indic. with cum. See "The Conjunction Cum, note on Bk. III. Chap. 9. — magistratus . . . deliguntur, by lot, according to the Saxon Bede, from among existing magistrates. The Goths, Burgundians, Franks and Lombards, on the other hand, had real kings.

3. principes . . . pagorum; these local and village chiefs, forming a sort of governing body, were probably the "natural leaders" each of his own district. They are said, however, to have been elected, no doubt for life, by an assembly of the tribe or nation (Tac. Germ. 12).

4. latrocinia . . . extra fines, "cattle-lifting raids," like those of the Scottish Borderers.

130. 5. ubi quis (indef.), &c. This is how volunteers were mustered for the raids in question. — omnium rerum fides, confidence in anything.

CHAP. 24. cum . . . superarent: a clause of characteristic.

2. Hercyniam silvam, the great wooded range extending from the Black Forest to the Bohemian Highlands. — Volcae, &c., occupying the southern part of Gaul, about Narbonne or Toulouse. A portion, only, had migrated to Germany; or, as some hold, had staid behind from an early Celtic migration westward.

CHAP. 25. expedito (dat.), "with free foot," i.e. unencumbered with baggage. — non noverunt: so at the present day, in the mountain regions of Germany and Switzerland, distance is measured by "hours" (stunden) instead of miles.

2. Nemetum, &c., along the middle course of the Rhine, where it flows northward from Bâle. — recta . . . regione, i.e. parallel. — Dacorum, &c., occupying the eastern and western portions of Hungary. — sinistrorsus: in reality, it is the river which leaves the course of the forest or highland, bending abruptly to the right, or southward. The ancients had no compasses, and were careless observers of direction (compare Bk. V. Chap. 13).
3. hujus, that familiar to the Romans, viz. western. — initium, as we should say the end, eastward, where it is lost in the Carpathian range. Its extent, in a direct line, is stated as 1600 miles. — processerit, acceperit: subj. by indir. disc. for perf. indic. See last note on Chap. 15.

131. Chap. 26. bos: this name seems to have been given loosely to any large-horned, unfamiliar beast, even to the elephant; here it is probably the reindeer, which had anciently a wide-scattered range. — unum cornu: perhaps the specimen described had lost a horn; or, more likely, the expression refers to the long projection from which both branches spring, instead of growing independently, like the horns of an ox. The description of the horn might, however, rather suggest the moose or Irish elk.

2. palmae ramique (hend.), branching antlers.

Chap. 27. aelae: this name is undoubtedly elks, but the description is widely unlike ("a little bigger than goats!") and quite unrecognizable. If it were correct, the creature would be well entitled to the name "wretched animal" (Eldénthier) bestowed upon it in German. — crura . . . habent: the same yarn is told by Pliny, H. N. viii. 16, 39.

3. cum. See last note on Chap. 15. — subruunt, undermine; accidunt, cut into. — summa species, the surface look.

4. cum. See above.

Chap. 28. urli: this name is generally understood to refer to the German Urochs (the primitive or wild ox, probably buffalo), said still to be found in the forests of Lithuania.* Cæsar evidently describes a very different animal, with great spreading horns like those of a reindeer or moose; but the whole description must have been derived from a confused account.

4. ne . . . excepti, not even when caught quite young.

132. 5. ab labris, around the rim.

* The buffalo of Eastern Europe, domesticated in Transylvania, where the cows are valued for their milk, is long and rather low in form, with depressed and flat horns, like those of the musk-ox. — J. H. A.
CHAP. 29. Caesar, &c. This chapter directly follows Chap. 10, the intervening passage being a digression.

2. barbaris, dat. (§ 229; G. 344, r. 2; H. 385, II. 2). — ne... tolleret, as would be done by completely destroying the bridge; ut tardaret, by making it practically useless. — in extremo ponte. There seems to have been an island in the river at this place, so that the bridge was in two sections. The section between the island and the right bank was destroyed, and at what was now the end of the bridge (extremo), on the island, the tower was built. There was probably a redoubt, as usual, at the entrance to the bridge on the mainland. — cohortium duodecim: these were auxiliaries, as it appears in Chap. 33 that he had all his legions with him.

3. maturescere, i.e. early in August. — Arduennam, the modern Ardennes (Shakspere’s Forest of Arden). — quingentis: an obvious mistake, possibly of some copyist. It should be centum et quinquaginta.

4. si quid... possit (interrog. § 334, f; G. 462, 2; H. 529, i. N. 1), to see whether, &c. — subsequi (pres.), i.e. is already on the road.

CHAP. 30. 2. multum potest, has great power. It has been observed that Cæsar, since his failure in Britain, harps much on the favor of Fortune (compare Chaps. 35, 42), and seems to waver in his confidence in Destiny. — ipsum (twice), referring to Ambiorix. — prius... quam, render as one word, before, — English omitting the relative particle. — magnae fortunae (pred. gen.), a great piece of luck; or, mere luck.

133. 3. hoc, abl. of means, explained by quod... suspendunt. — sunt fere, generally are.

4. his pugnantibus: notice the force of the Latin order. While these were fighting, time was given for the chief to be placed on horseback by some of his followers, and, as soon as he actually got away, he was covered by the woods.

CHAP. 31. judicione... an, whether by design... or, &c. — exsistimavit, crederet: in direct discourse, exsistimavit (an act of decision) and credebat (a state of opinion).
2. *quas aequitas*, i.e. islands only at high tide.—*alienissimis*, entire strangers.

3. *precibus detestatus*, cursing with formal imprecations, which, from a dying man, were thought to have efficacy with the gods.

Chap. 32. *unam esse causam*, that the case was the same, i.e. that they were all included in the league.

2. *convenissent, reucerentur*, in dir. disc. *convenerint, reduplicantur.*

134. 3. *id castelli nomen est*, that is the (German) name of (for) a stronghold. It will be remembered that the Aduatuci were of German descent; and it is thought that *Aduatuca* is an old German word, meaning a stronghold. Then the Aduatuci were the people who held such a place of safety. There were several towns of this name, which fact adds force to the conjecture.—Titurius, &c. (Sabinus and Cotta). See Bk. V. Chap. 24.

6. Q. Ciceronem: this post was forced upon him "to keep him from the ranks of the republican opposition at Rome," of which he was afterwards an obstinate adherent. He was at this time a *legatus* of Pompey.

Chap. 33. *ad . . . versus*, towards.—Scaldem, the Scheldt.

There seems to be some confused geography here.

2. *post diem septimum, the seventh day after*.—*quam ad diem*, compare Chap. 35 (*quem ad diem*).

3. * commodo* (abl.), to (in accordance with) the advantage (rei-publicae) is gen.:

Chap. 34. *supra*, in Chap. 31.—*quod se defenderet, capable of*, &c. (subj. of characteristic).

2. *cuique*, to any. We should put the distributive with the leading verb (*consederat*), each had taken position where, &c.

3. *universis, to men gathered in one body*.—*ex parte, in a measure*.

135. 5. *hominum sceleratorum*, those scoundrels; an expression of temper which Caesar does not often permit himself towards his foes, whose crime was (says Krafer) "that they dared to maintain their independence."—*ad signa = in camp.*
6. nocreretur, harm should be done to the enemy, through the animosities of their own countrymen. — ulciscoendum, to avenge the destruction of the force of Sabinus and Cotta (Bk. V. Chaps. 27–38).

Chap. 35. 2. possit, adferat: present tense to express a general truth; though usually in Latin such expressions follow the sequence of tenses.

3. ultro, freely, i.e. any that would; as a general invitation, extending beyond those immediately concerned.

4. supra docuimus, see Bk. IV. Chap. 16.

5. primos fines, the nearest limits.

136. 7. fortunatissimis: § 272. a; G. 535. R. 2; H. 536. 2. 3).
   — Aduatucam, see Chap. 324. — tantum, only so much, really, so scanty. — cingi, surrounded (with a line of defenders).

8. duce, as guide (pred. appos.).

Chap. 36. Cicero. See Chap. 328, with note. — continuisset (concessive subj.), while he had, &c. — de, &c., construe with fidem.

2. illius, &c., who called his quiet waiting a blockade. — siquidem, since: with subj., indicating the ground of their complaint.
   — quo (following ejusmodi, of such sort that), with posset as subj. of result. — offendi (impers.), an attack could be made.

3. hoc spatio, since Cæsar's departure. — sub vexillo: the vexillum was a little scarlet flag (quite distinct from the metal signum), used by small bodies detached for some special service. The name vexillarii was given to the soldiers of such a corps. See note on Bk. I. Chap. 25. — jumentorum, to bring in the expected supplies. — subsederant, had stayed behind when Cæsar left. — facta potestate, obtaining leave.

Chap. 37. ab decumana porta, at the rear gate (see Fig. 15). The camp fronted in the direction where the enemy were supposed to be — i.e. the Gallic tribes; so that its more exposed part lay nearest the German attack. — neu prius ... quam, not till. — silvis: it was considered bad management to place a camp so near the woods as to conceal the approach of the enemy. The pickets, too, must have been either very carelessly stationed, or very negligent. — usque eo, so close. — qui ... mercatores, the traders
(sutlers) who spread their booths (tentoria) under the shelter of the wall.

137. 2. circumfunduntur (the middle or reflexive use of the passive, rendered in English by the active form), pour on, or about.

3. reliquos aditus, any other way of approach. — quisque conveniat, each soldier (= all the soldiers) shall get together for defence. — provident: the plural here seems to imply that they were without a commander, — a grave military fault.

4. imperatore, Cæsar. Observe the force of atque: and the general too! — novas religiones, a sudden superstition, as if the spot itself were unlucky to the Romans (see Chap. 32). — qui occiderint, who (as they recalled; hence subj.) fell.

CHAP. 38. ad Caesarem, at Caesar's side. — proeliis (loc. abl.), see Bk. II. Chap. 25; Bk. III. Chap. 5.

2. consequuntur hunc: as primus pilus, he had authority to command all other centurions; although generally, as here, he really only formed a rallying point. See note on Bk. I. Chap. 7.

3. relinquuit animus, breath (or consciousness) fails him (he faints). — per manus tractus, dragged along from hand to hand by his comrades.

CHAP. 39. 2. hic, in the open field. — modo . . . exspectant: the Roman discipline was so perfect that, in general, every man knew just what to do in any emergency (as in the fight with the Nervii, Bk. II. Chap. 21); but these new levies are helpless till the exact order has been given, even the boldest of them (nemo est tam fortis, &c.).

138. 3. legiones: those of Trebonius, which had been sent to lay waste the territory (Chap. 33).

CHAP. 40. in signa manipulosque, among the cohorts and maniples. In their panic the servants not only rushed through the intervals between the cohorts (signa), but many of them also poured through the narrower spaces between the maniples. — alii . . . alii: these were the men in the ranks, who seem to have had time for cool deliberation, as is implied in the expression censent, the regular expression for voting in a public assembly.
3. hoc: the latter counsel, which was that of the raw recruits. —
doculmus, Chap. 36*. — C. Trebonio: compare Chap. 33'; his
relation to Q. Cicero in this command is not quite clear.

4. militum virtute: i.e. of the infantry; the cavalry, it will be
remembered, were not Roman, but Gallic allies. — nullo usu
percepto, having gained no experience. — eo consilio, in appos.
with ut . . . defenderent. — demiserunt: se has already been
expressed with recipere.

5. ex inferioribus ordinibus: the officers of a new legion were
usually obtained in this way, being promoted from the lower grades
of veteran cohorts. See note on Bk. I. Chap. 40, "Relative Rank
of the Centurions."

CHAP. 41. constitisse, &c., had now gained position within the
works.

2. fidem non faceret, did not gain belief.

139. 3. alienata mente, beside themselves with terror.—
deletis . . . recepisse, obj. of dicentur. — incolumi exercitu
(abl. abs. denoting condition), in case the army were safe. — oppug-
naturosuisse, the regular form in indir. disc. for oppugnavissent.

"Where Q. Cicero was all this time, we are not informed. He probably
lost his head with the rest, but Caesar passes it over in silence, probably
in consideration for his brother." — Kraner.

"Brave as they were, the Roman soldiers seem to have been curiously
liable to panics of this kind. The faith with which they relied upon their
general avenged itself through the completeness with which they were
accustomed to depend upon him. He returned on the day which he had
fixed, and not unnaturally was displeased at the disregard of his orders.
He did not, or does not in his Commentaries, professedly blame Cicero.
But the Ciceros perhaps resented the loss of confidence which one of
them had brought upon himself. Quintus Cicero cooled in his zeal, and
afterwards amused the leisure of his winter quarters with composing worth-
less dramas." — Froude's "Cesair."

CHAP. 42. eventus (acc. plur.) belli the fortune of war (in
general). — unum, only one thing. — minimo, in the slightest degree;
casu is to be rendered as dat. with relinquui. — avertisset, sc.
fortuna.
2. videbatur: the subj. is quod...obtulerunt. — Ambiorigis: this object of Cæsar's special animosity and eager pursuit was never captured.

Chap. 43. 3. in eum locum = so close upon him. — ut...contenderent, that prisoners who were brought in looked round among themselves for Ambiorix, whom they had just seen in flight — supposing that he must have been taken also — and insisted that he was not yet quite out of sight. — paene...vincerent, almost surpassed the bounds of nature in their eagerness. — summam felicitatem, i.e. the prize offered for his capture.

Chap. 44. more majorum: the ancient Roman mode of punishment was to fasten the head in a sort of stocks or pillory (furca), then flog the person to death, after which he was beheaded. It was an extraordinary sentence to pronounce on a prisoner of war. Concerted resistance (conjuratio) had come to be regarded as a flagrant crime, and its penalty was more and more bloody as time went on — as we see in the two succeeding Books (see especially Bk. VIII. Chaps. 39-44).

2. aqua...interdixisset, i.e. banished them, forbade them to return to Gaul.

The Legions. — At the opening of the campaign of 53 B.C., Pompey loaned Cæsar two legions (I and III). One new one was raised, which received the same number (XIV) as the one Cæsar had divided (see note on “The Legions,” end of Bk. V.), and of which five cohorts were lost with Sabinus. Hence the number of legions in Gaul had now reached ten.
Book Seventh. — B.C. 52.

War of Vercingetorix. — The last three campaigns had been conducted wholly in the north, with a view either to crush the bolder and more restless northern populations, or to overawe the more barbarous Britons and Germans beyond the frontier. It is not quite clear why the discontented spirits of the south did not seize the occasion to join forces with the formidable Belgian revolt. At all events, they seemed quiet and submissive after their defeats in the earlier campaigns, and might have continued so but for the news from Rome, where “the discomfiture of Crassus had been more pleasant news to the Senate than the defeat of Ariovistus; and the passionate hope of the aristocracy had been for some opportunity which would enable them to check Caesar in his career of conquest, and bring him home to dishonor and perhaps impeachment.” — Froude.

This opportunity might seem to offer in the disorders which followed the death of Clodius. Clodius was a bully and professional politician belonging to the popular party, a bitter enemy of Cicero, whom he had succeeded, a few years before, in driving into exile. He was killed in a street brawl on the 20th of January of this year by Milo, a ruffian of the senatorial or aristocratic party. For the time, all regular and orderly government was at an end, till at length Pompey was invested with dictatorial powers, and quiet was restored. The news of these events coming to Gaul, gave the native leaders reasonable ground to hope that a new uprising might be successful. Their plan, it will appear, was, by a sudden movement, to cut off Caesar’s communications with his military posts in the north, which would thus be speedily starved into surrender. This plan Caesar foiled by striking, with his usual rapidity, through their line, and through the neutral or hostile populations of Central Gaul, and so advancing upon his assailants with the support of his legions from the north. His campaign of this year was the most fiercely contested, as well as the most important and decisive, of the entire war.

Chap. 1. Quieta Gallia: compare Bk. II. Chap. 35; Bk. III. Chap. 28. — ut . . . conjurarent (clause depending on senatus consulto): this was not an ordinary conscription, but a levy in mass, in which the entire population of Italy liable to military duty (the
The page contains a segment from a historical text about the War of Vercingetorix. It discusses the actions of the *juniores*, the levy ordered by Caesar, and the involvement of provinces such as *Gallia Cisalpina*, *Gallia Transalpina*, and *Illyricum*. It also mentions the political context of Caesar’s decision to stay in Italy at a time of crisis.

The text references the name *Acconis* and advises on the use of *interclaudatur* in a sentence. It highlights the importance of *rationem, the plan of campaign*. It explains the significance of *Genabum* or *Cenabum*, now known as *Orleans*.

The text describes the nature of *clamore*, a form of telegraph, and its use in conveying messages. It also provides a description of *vigiliam*, or nighttime messages, and the *Arvernum* region.

The term *Vercingetorix* is introduced as being explained as a name meaning “very brave lord” and its connection to terror. The term *prohibetur* is discussed in the context of the elders’ discouragement of an enterprise.
the chief town of the Arverni, on an eminence near Clermont.—perditorum, men of ruined fortunes, desperate.

3. Senones, &c. Several of these names are preserved in the modern Sens, Paris, Poitiers, Tours, Limoges. The league included all Celtic Gaul south of the Seine and west of the loyal (or doubtful) Ædui and Bituriges, who were drawn into it later on.

6. quod (interrogative) agrees with tempus, and before what time.

Chap. 5. Rutenos: these, as well as the Cadurci, lay between the Arverni and the Roman province. It was important, therefore, to secure them as a frontier defence.

144. 2. de consilio, at the advice.
3. qui agrees with the persons implied in equitatus peditatisque, § 182; G. 202. r. 1; H. 445. 5. — veritos: causal.
4. quod (adv. acc.) because (the reason for non videtur, &c.). — junguntur (reflex.), join.

Chap. 6. virtute = vigor.
2. qua . . . posset, indir. question following difficultate.
3. nam si, &c. See the introductory note, above.

Chap. 7. Nitiobriges et Gabalos: these completed the Arvernian frontier, the Volcae and Helvii being within the limits of the Province. — Narbonem, Narbonne, the chief town of Gallia Narbonensis, founded by C. Gracchus.

2. antevertendum [esse] has for its subject ut . . . proficisceretur, and is followed by the dat. consiliis.
3. provincialibus: a portion of the Ruteni had been incorporated in the Province.

145. Chap. 8. quod . . . putabat, referring to Lucterius.
2. durissimo, &c. Pompey was put in authority Feb. 25; Cæsar, who left Italy directly after, probably crossed the Cevennes early in March. — summo sudore: “these admirable soldiers were worthy of the genius of their chief.”

3. singulari homini, “a solitary wayfarer.”

Chap. 9. usu . . . praecepurat, had suspected would come to pass. — per causam, on the pretext (so elsewhere in Cæsar): his
real motive was to join his force.—Brutum, Decimus Junius Brutus, afterward one of Cæsar's assassins.
2. Viennam, Vienne, a little below Lyons on the Rhone.
3. de sua salute, affecting his own safety.
5. Gorgobinam: this was situated probably on the Allier, a southern confluent of the Loire.—quos, &c.; see Bk. I. Chap. 28.

146. Chap. 10. stipendiariis, the Boii, who were in the pay of the Aeduî. —amictis, &c., since his friends would find there was no help for them in him.—ab, in respect to his supply of corn.
4. Agedici, now Sens, the chief town of the Senones. It is often written Agendicum, or Agedincum.

Chap. 11. altero die, on the second day of the march.—circumvallavit: the circumvallation (properly speaking this was a contra-vallation) consisted of a line of wall and trench surrounding the town.
2. Genabum, Gien, a little above Orleans, on the Loire.—quod mitterent, to send.
3. continebat, was close to. The town being on the north bank, the bridge would admit its defenders to the friendly Bituriges.

147. 6. diripit: compare the fate of Avaricum, Chap. 28.

Chap. 12. ille, Cæsar.
2. qua, whereby, referring to celeritate.
5. omnes incolumes (acc.) : see line 16, above; constr. with receperunt, got them all back safe to Cæsar’s camp.

Chap. 13. Germanos: for the training and efficiency of the German horse, see Bk. I. Chap. 48; also Chaps. 70, 80, below.
2. quibus, and these (the Gallic horse). —eos, i.e. the leaders in the sudden movement described above, Chap. 12.
3. Avaricum, the modern Bourges, an important town of 40,000 inhabitants, the geographical centre of France.

148. Chap. 14. 2. longa alia ratione atque, in a way quite different from, &c.; by purely defensive or guerilla war.—anni tempore, the early spring, long before harvest; all supplies must be got from granaries or storehouses (aedificia) which might easily be destroyed.
Notes: Caesar.

3. *incendi*: compare the *course* of the Helvetians, Bk. I. Chap. 5.—*hoc spatio*, the range of the Roman foraging parties.—*quoque versus*, *in every direction*.

4. *neque interesse*, and it made no difference.—*ne . . .  ne*, whether . . . or.

5. *sint receptacula*, serve as retreats; *proposita*, offered as spoil.

6. *aestimare*, understand *se*.

Chap. 15. *urbes*: Caesar more commonly calls them *oppida*. Rome alone is always *urbs*.

2. *amissa* = *all they had lost* (obj. of *recuperatos*).—*explorata* (compare Bk. III. Chap. 18; Bk. V. Chap. 43) = *sure*, i.e. to which the way is clearly seen.

4. *flumine*: the city was just above the junction of the *Auron* with the *Yévre* (see Plan VIII.).

149. Chap. 16. *longe* = *distant*.

2. *certos* (*cerno*), appointed.—*in . . . tempora*, from hour to hour.

3. *necessario* (adv.), unavoidably.—*ratione*, skilful planning (explained by *ut . . . iret ur*, a clause of result).

Chap. 17. *quae . . . habebat*, i.e. the neck of the peninsula on which the town was situated (Chap. 15*).—*intermissa*, *left free*.—*aggerem*, &c. See note on Bk. II. Chap. 12.

Between the *Yévre* and the *Auron* was a plateau, some 1200 to 1600 ft. high, with rather steep banks. As this plateau approached the town, it narrowed to a ridge only about 400 ft. wide, with the *Auron* on one side, and a swampy brook, the *Yévrette*, on the other. From the *Yévrette* to the *Yévre* extended a morass. At a distance of about 300 ft. from the city wall the ridge was intersected by a sudden depression like a trench, perhaps 50 ft. deep (see Plan VIII. 4). Caesar pitched his camp on the plateau just back of the ridge, a little over half a mile from *Avaricum*. Along the ridge, right across the intersecting ravine, he built the *agger*.

2. *alteri*, the *Ædui*, already wavering in their allegiance; *alteri*, the *Boii*, a fragment of the defeated Helvetians (Bk. I. Chap. 28).

3. *caruerint, sustentarent*: notice the change of tense, — the
lack of corn was incidental or occasional; hunger the constant condition.

150. **Chap. 18.** qui...consuissent, see Bk. I. Chap. 48.
4. *sarcinas...conferri*, the change from marching to fighting order.

**Chap. 19.** difficilis, hard to cross; *impedita*, entangled with brushwood, &c.
2. *vada, saltus, fords* and open *spaces*, where the way seemed practicable. — *haesitantes*, struggling in the mud or bushes, obj. of *premerent* (which is apod. of a future condition), would crush.
3. *prope, &c.*, on nearly equal terms; *iniquitatem, unfair advantage*, showing that their offering battle was *inanis simulatio*.
4. *quod...possent* follows *indignantes*, chafing that, &c.

![Ground Plan of Gallic Wall](image)

**Fig. 40. Ground Plan of Gallic Wall.**

151. **Chap. 20.** *discessisset* and *venisset* refer to the action in Chap. 18.
2. *qui se...defenderet*, which was its own defence.
3. *mollitiam, unsteadiness or impatience. — laborem, hardship.*
4. *fortuna* (dat.), as well as *huic* (referring to *alicujus*), take with *gratiam habendam*, thanks were due.
5. *imperium*, the same as *regnnum Galliae*, above. — *remittere is ready to resign; in direct disc., remitto, I resign.*

152. 7. *si = to see if.* — *posse, sc. quemquam.*
8. *quem*, construe with *ne...recipiat*, subj. of *provisum est.*

**Chap. 21.** *suo more*: compare Tacitus, Germ. 11, *frameas con-

*cutiunt.* — *summum*: this word is often used where we should say “a great.”
2. si...retinuissest, in appos. with eo.

Chap. 22. occurrebant, worked against, or frustrated.—atque...
...aptissimum, compare Bk. IV. Chap. 5.
2. laqueis, &c. See Fig. 16.—cuniculis, by mines ("rabbit-
burrows").—ferrariae: so of the copper-mines of the Aquitani,
Bk. III. Chap. 213.

4. commissis malis, by fastening posts: these were the high
corner-beams of the towers, by which they were raised in successive
stages, so that each increase in the height of the Roman works
was met by a corresponding increase in the height of the defences.
The towers on the walls were probably connected by covered gal-
leries, one for each story.

153. Chap. 23. directae, at right angles with the course of
the wall; perpetuae, &c., the whole length.—revincuntur, are
fastened by beams some 40 ft. in length, running lengthwise of the
wall, to steady the entire work (section 3).
War of Vercingetorix.

2. *neque ... contineantur*: so alternating, in the successive layers, that beams rested on stone, and stone on beams.

3. *deforme, irregular or ill-looking*.

**Chap. 24. latum**: as a width of over 300 ft. is incredible, some

---

**Plan VIII. Siege of Avaricum.** Bk. VII. Chaps. 23–28.

1. *agger*, pushed towards the town from the Roman camp. 2. First position of Vercingetorix. 3. Second position of Vercingetorix. 4. Section of the *agger*, according to Rüstow.

have supposed that this is an error for *longum*; others, that the numeral should be *xxxx*.

2. *turrium*, the Roman towers, mounted on wheels or rollers, and here placed on the *agger* (see note on Bk. II. Chap. 11, "The Siege,"

---

*altum pedes LXXX*: it must be remembered that
the height of the *agger* had to equal the depth of the ravine it crossed, and also the height of the Gallic wall. The latter may have been 30 ft. Göler supposes that the *agger* sloped gradually up towards the enemy (see Fig. 42). But the construction of Rüstow and Napoleon III. (Plan VIII. 4) seems simpler.

154. 4. partitis temporibus, i.e. *in their turn.* — *interrumpere,* i.e. they cut away the unfinished end of the *agger,* which was in flames. Thus the rest was saved.

**Chap. 25.** *pluteos,* see Figs. 20–22. — *nec . . . animadvertebat* = and noticed that relief did not easily arrive, exposed as the men were by the burning of the defence.

2. *scorpione:* this was a powerful cross-bow, for hurling darts or "bolts." (See Fig. 18.)

**Chap. 26.** 3. *quos* refers to *se* as well as to *liberos.*

155. 4. *non recipit,* does not admit.

**Chap. 27.** *suosque:* the *que* connects *arbitratus est* with *jussit* and *ostendit* (notice the tense).

2. *intra vineas:* it would be impossible for *legions* to find room *inside* the *vineae* (see note on Bk. II. Chap. 12). Either *legiones* here refers to the storming columns, or *intra vineas* means *among* and *around* the sheds. — *expeditis,* *put in fighting order* (see Chap. 18*).

**Chap. 28.** *cuneatim,* *in compact body* ("wedge-fashion"), implying excellent discipline.

2. *circumfundi* (impers. pass.) = *that men were pouring on.* — *continenti impetu,* *in one mass.*

4. *quae pars* refers to those implied by *suos,* and is explained by Chap. 19*, where it is said that the Gallic forces were arranged *generatim.*

156. **Chap. 29.** 2. *errare si qui* = *that those were wrong who,* &c.

3. *Biturigum:* see Chap. 15*. — *obsequentia,* *yielding,* or *deference.*

5. *impetrari*: notice the modesty of this phrase, appropriate to the great disaster just suffered.

**Chap. 30. re integra, while his force was still unbroken (Chap. 15).***

3. *de reliquis*, &c., follows *in spem*. — *hominis insueti*, understand "although."

**Chap. 31. 2. *capere = gain over* ("catch") the neutral states.***

157. 3. *sagittarios*: apparently the Gauls had trusted too much, in the siege especially, to hand-to-hand fighting.

4. *quos conduxerat, whom he had hired*; i.e. mercenaries.

**Chap. 32. 2. *confecta*: it was now about the end of March, or a little later. — *sive . . . sive*, understand "to try," or some such phrase.

3. *annum*: see Bk. I. Chap. 15.

4. *proximo anno, the year before*. — *clientelas*, armed followers (Bk. VI. Chap. 15).

5. *positum [esse], depended on.***

158. **Chap. 33. minus [sibi] confideret = felt itself weakest.***

2. *quos inter = eos inter quos*.

3. *renuntiatum*: *renuntiare* is the technical term for the act of a magistrate who, after an election, formally declares the result, and thus "creates" the new official. — *intermissis magistratibus*: this phrase signifies that an interval occurred between the term of one magistrate and the due election of his successor. In such a case at Rome (as had recently occurred twice, B.C. 55 and 52), the patrician senators appointed an *interrex* by virtue of the sacred authority residing in them. Cæsar here, accordingly, recognizes the likeness to a Roman precedent. — *obtinere, to hold against* (ob) the rival claimant. See note on Bk. I. Chap. 14.

**Chap. 34. 2. *secundum flumen, along the stream* (construe with duxit).***

3. *ab altera parte*: Cæsar being on the right or eastern bank, Vercingetorix on the western, on which the town of Gergovia lay.
Plan IX. Siege of Gergovia. Bk. VII. Chap. 36-53.

1. Cæsar's large camp. 2. The double trench connecting the camps. 3. The small camp
War of Vercingetorix.

CHAP. 35. e regione castris (dat.), over against the [other] camp.

159. captis: this word (marked as doubtful or corrupt) is no doubt an error for some word signifying "set in position."

3. pars inferior: the lower end of the piles, which (being under water) was not burned or cut away, served as a support to the new bridge hastily constructed for the crossing.

CHAP. 36. quintis castris, at the fifth encampment, or end of the fifth day's march. See note on Bk. I. Chap. io. — expugnatione, taking (it) by storm, without a formal siege.

2. qua despici poterat, where a view could be had from above.

3. collis: the so-called Roche Blanche ("White Rock"), at whose foot flows the only sufficient stream of water (see Plan IX.). Cæsar's larger camp, it will be remembered, lay towards the south-east of the town (Plan IX. 1), and the smaller towards the south (Plan IX. 3); while the forces of the Gauls (Plan IX. 7) lay on the gentler southern slopes of the hill (measuring nearly a mile from east to west, and a third as much from north to south) on which the town was built (see Chap. 46). — duodenum pedum (Plan IX. 2): see note on Bk. I. Chap. 49, "The Camp," 3.

160. CHAP. 37. 2. imperio natos, born for command (dat.).

3. unam civitatem, the one only state. — traducta, carried over to the patriotic party. — beneficio, a friendly act, i.e. deciding in his favor; but this (he claimed) was only his due, — sic . . . obtinuerit.

5. vel principes, not mere followers or adherents.

CHAP. 38. 2. principes civitatis: see Chap. 39.

161. 5. consilii res, a matter for deliberation.

7. fiduciā, under the protection, to bring in supplies. — unā (adv.), with him.

CHAP. 39. genere dispari, of lower birth. — traditum is here equivalent to commendatum — "presented" as suited for public service.

4. levi momento, of light account: momentum (from moveo) is strictly the weight which "moves" the balance-scale.
162. Chap. 40. 2. contrahenda: as only two legions were left behind, the camp should have been "contracted," so that these few might be equal to the task of keeping and relieving guard. The danger to which the situation exposed them is related in the next chapter: propter magnitudinem castrorum (Chap. 41).

4. necessario . . . labore = by the hardship of a forced march. It is worth while to notice the frank terms on which Cæsar stands with his citizen-soldiers.

Chap. 41. 3. tormenta: see note on Bk. II. Chap. 83.

4. discessu eorum, at the suspension of their attack when night came on: his messengers had apparently set out about midnight.—obstruere, &c. These present infinitives show that his preparations are still going on.

Fig. 43. Sections of the Double Trench

Connecting the two camps at Gergovia; as shown by the excavations under Napoleon III.

163. Chap. 42. levem auditionem: see Bk. IV. Chap. 53.

3. proclinatam, "leaning forward" like a wall just ready to fall = in itself perilous.

4. fide data, giving pledges of security.—idem facere, i.e. to come out and put themselves in their power.

Chap. 43. capti, &c., tempted (as they had been) by the profit of the plunder.—ea res, i.e. responsibility for it.

4. ab, away from (the neighborhood of).—contraheret, i.e. join his forces with the four legions of Labienus (Chap. 34).
164. Chap. 44. 2. dorsum, &c. (observe that the word is here masculine): the hill (collis) was south-west of the town and north-west of Caesar's smaller camp (see plan); while from it a narrow wooded ridge (dorsum), nearly level, gave easy access to the town at its western side. Most of the Gallic force had been transferred to that side from the eastern and southern defences.

3: uno . . . occupato: see Chap. 364.

Chap. 45. 2. impedimentorum, beasts of burden.—stramenta, the pack-saddles, which would prevent the animal from being ridden on conveniently.—collibus (loc. abl.) circumvehi, i.e. towards the westerly side.
6. raros, a few at a time.

165. 8. ab dextra parte, from the larger camp, to the east.

Chap. 46. recta regione, in a straight line.—huc, to this amount.
2. in longitudinem, &c. = lengthwise of the hill.—murum: traces of this wall are still found, at some distance down the slope, parallel with the town wall (see Plan IX. 5).—castris (see Plan IX. 7): the separate camps of the several Gallic states, set close together, of which three (trinis) were taken.

Chap. 47. receptui: Caesar appears to have found the enemy here in greater force than he expected, though (as usual) he claims to have gained all he wanted.
2. reliquarum, i.e. those engaged in the assault just described.—retinebantur, conative: the officers tried to hold them back.
5. Avarici: see Chap. 28.

166. Chap. 48. supra: see Chap. 44.—oppidum . . . teneri depends on muntius as a word of telling.
3. sustinebant, by serving as relief or reserves.

Chap. 49. sub infimo colle, at the foot of the main hill (Chap. 46), not that on which was the smaller Roman camp.—ab . . . hostium, i.e. on the Roman left; Caesar, meanwhile, was posted considerably to the right (eastward).

Chap. 50. latere aperto, the exposed flank of the Romans, i.e. the right flank.—manus, scattered forces of the Gauls.
167. 2. **insigne pacatum** (other editors have *pacatorum*), a friendly signal.

4. **excidere**, to cut away; it does not appear whether from within, to gain his own escape, or from without, to relieve those who were being slaughtered in the town.

**Chap. 51. aequiore loco**, on more level ground, farther back from the town.

2. **locum superiorem**, higher ground, in the direction of the larger camp. The retreat was made in good order, as is shown by what immediately follows.

**Chap. 52. cupiditatem**, eagerness for battle.

2. **ad Avaricum**, referring to the operations in that neighborhood described in Chap. 19. Compare also Chap. 45.

168. **Chap. 53. virtuti hostium**: a change in Cæsar's feeling towards his foes has been noticed here, as if after his reverses he grudged them his former praise of their bravery. — **eadem . . . senserat**: he returns to his former plan of falling back (compare Chaps. 43 and 44).

2. **secundo**, favorable to the Romans. By this slight success, and the refusal of Vercingetorix to meet him in the plain on even terms, Cæsar avoids the appearance of a compulsory retreat.

**Chap. 54. Viridomaro, &c.**: see Chap. 39.

2. **perfidiam . . . habebat**; see note on **coactum habebat**, Bk. I. Chap. 15.

3. **discedentibus** (dat.), as they were setting out. — **quam humiles**: see Bk. I. Chap. 31.

169. 4. **mandatis**: this word implies that what he has just said to them is to be repeated to their countrymen at home.

**Chap. 55. Noviodunum**, the modern Nevers, on the right bank of the Loire (Liger), just above its junction with the Allier (Elaver). The Noviodunum of Chap. 12 is probably Saucerre.

2. **civitatis**: the Æduan commonwealth. The status is described in the clause which follows, down to **missos**.

4. in **Provinciam**: Cæsar was now on the western or further
bank of the Loire, which he would thus be obliged to follow up towards its source, thence crossing over to the Province.

Chap. 56. *si esset, &c. = in case (i.e. lest) he might have to risk a battle while the bridge-building was under way.*

170. 2. *Labieno, legionibus,* datives following *timebat.*
3. *pro rei necessitate, considering the emergency,* difficult and hazardous as it was. — *disposito equitatu:* just above the ford a line of cavalry was formed, in the water, reaching across the river. By this barrier the violence of the current was checked.

Chap. 57. *eo supplemento:* see Chap. 1, 75. — *Lutetiam,* Paris: see Bk. VI. Chap. 3 and note.
2. *Aulerco:* this tribe was the next westerly, south of the Seine (see map).
3. *perpetuam paludem,* the marsh ground along the little river *Essonne,* which flows into the Seine on the south a little above Paris. Labienus was proceeding on the left or southerly bank of the Seine. See Plan X.

Chap. 58. *aggere, a mass of earth* for a causeway. — *confieri,* rare for *confici* (the form *fieri* is regular only in compounds — not with prepositions — which retain *facio*). — *Melodunum, Melun:* here Labienus crosses to the right bank.
3. *eo, aboard (= in eos).*

171. 4. *secundo flumine,* following the river-course down the right bank. Having boats or pontoons, he would easily cross the *Marne* just above Paris.
5. *projecta palude,* a marshy ground south of the river. — *e regione, over against.*

Chap. 59. *secundo,* successful. — *confirmabant,* kept asserting.
2. *qui refers to Bellovaci.*
4. *alterā, alteram:* the Bellovaci were on the north of the Seine, Camulogenus was (Chap. 57) on the south. — *quae civitas:* see Bk. II. Chap. 4. — *praesidio,* &c.: these were at Agedincum (*Sens*), far up the Seine.

Chap. 60. *equitibus,* not *cavalrymen,* but unattached officers
of equestrian rank (*tribuni militum, comites imperatoris, &c.*) put in charge each of a single vessel.

2. *adverso flumine*, a feint, the real attack being made below. — *imperat*, gives orders (followed by the acc. and infin. instead of the usual ut-clause).

172. Chap. 61. 2. *tumultuari*: the *magnus tumultu* (Chap. 60). — *paulo infra*, about four miles below.
4. *castrorum*, the Roman camp. — *naves*, the lintres.

173. Chap. 62. *neque potuerunt, but could not.*

Chap. 63. *circummittuntur, &c.*: these are the acts of the Ædui.

2. *quos Caesar, &c.*: see Chap. 55. — *supplicio*, i.e. by threats; compare Chap. 4. — *rationes communicet*, not simply consult, but share the direction of affairs.
5. *illī*, the Remi (see Bk. II. Chap. V.; Bk. V. Chap. 54), and the Lingones.
7. *summae spei, of high ambition* (Chap. 39).

Chap. 64. *huc*, at Bibracte (Chap. 63). A better reading of this clause, though having less authority, is *diemque huic rei constituit*.

174. 3. *aequo modo animo*, without complaint, meanwhile.
5. *altera ex parte*: as the Roman frontier was bent into an irregular curve by the line of the Cevennes, the Gauls would strike the Province in two directions, the Ædui from the west, the Ruteni, &c., from the north.
6. *superiore bello*, the war of eight years before, in which the Allobroges had been subdued by Pomptinus (Bk. I. Chap. 6).

Chap. 65. *cohortium*, not legionary troops, but auxiliaries levied in the Province. — *L. Caesare*, a cousin of Julius, consul B.C. 64.

2. *Donnotauro*, a brother of Procillus (Bk. I. Chap. 47); the Roman name (*C. Valerius*) is regularly taken in compliment to his
Plan XI. *Defeat of Vercingetorix on the Vingeanne.* Bk. VII. Chaps. 66-67

C. Cæsar’s camp the day before the battle.
V. The three camps of Vercingetorix.
e. Roman cavalry.
x. German cavalry.
g. Gallic cavalry.
B. Heavy baggage of the Romans.
D. Cæsar’s camp after the battle.
M. Roman column of march at the time the attack was made.

Scale of Miles.

---

Digitized by Google
Roman *patronus* (see also Bk. I. Chaps. 19, 53). — *muros, strongholds*—not simply the walls of the *oppida*.


5. *sed et*: these words should probably be omitted.

175. **Chap. 66. equites**: see Chap. 641.

2. *per . . . fines*, bearing from near Agedincum (where he had been joined by Labienus, Chap. 62) toward the east, and so leaving the hostile Ædui to the south. This movement, checked by the attack of Vercingetorix, explains how the crisis of the campaign came to be the siege and capture of Alesia (see map).

4. *adorirentur* (subj. for imperat. of direct discourse), *charge upon them!* — *pedites*, the Roman foot; Vercingetorix knew Caesar’s weakness in cavalry, and did not suspect the German reinforcement. To infantry, any delay in defending whatever part might be attacked (*suis*) would be fatal. — *dignitate*, &c.; i.e. the dishonor of retreat with loss of baggage.

5. *de, as to. — quin . . . audeat* follows *ne . . . dubitare*. — *ipsos quidem* = such men as they — victorious as they were just now at Gergovia. — *et quo*: another reading is *Id quo*, beginning a new sentence, and making the passage from *si pedites to dubitare* parenthetical. — *pro castris, in front of the camp*, by way of defiance.

**Chap. 67. primo agmine** (loc. abl.), *at the front of the* [Roman] *line of march*. Some copies have a *primo agmine*.

3. *aciem *constitui*: by a change of front turning the line of march to a line of battle.

176. 5. *quo duce*, &c. (see Bk. I. Chap. 31): this was seemingly another Eporedorix, not the rival of Viridomarus.

**Chap. 68. Alesiam**: this famous fortress (now called *Aise St. Réine*) was on the territory lying just north of the Æduan frontier. Its natural advantages—summed up in the succeeding chapters—are thus described: —

“ Alesia, like Gergovia, is on a hill sloping off all round, with steep, and, in places, precipitous sides. It lies between two small rivers, both of which
fall into the Brenne, and thence into the Seine. Into this peninsula, with
the rivers on each side of him, Vercingetorix had thrown himself with
80,000 men. Alesia as a position was impregnable except to famine.
The water-supply was secure. The position was of extraordinary strength.
The rivers formed natural trenches. Below the town, to the west, they
ran parallel for three miles through an open alluvial plain before they
reached the Brenne. In every other direction rose rocky hills of equal
height with the central plateau, originally perhaps one wide table-land,
through which the water had ploughed out the valley. To attack Ver-
cingetorix where he had placed himself was out of the question; but to
blockade him there, to capture the leader of the insurrection and his
whole army, and so in one blow make an end with it, on a survey of the
situation seemed not impossible.” — *Froude’s Cæsar.*

**Chap. 69. 3. quae pars has for an antecedent hunc locum.**
4. munitionis: Cæsar constructed a line of contravallation; i.e. a series of works entirely surrounding the town, so as to resist a sortie. — milium: this genitive requires some such word as spatium to be understood after tenebat. Some editions read milla. In the remains of these works traces have been found of four infantry and four cavalry camps (see Plan XII.).

5. stationes, &c.: in the daytime a mere picket-guard occupied each redoubt; at night it was necessary to station in them strong garrisons with numerous sentries (excubitoribus) on their walls.

**177. Chap. 70. pro castris:** these were on the high ground south of the city (see Plan XII.); castris is plural, camps.

3. angustioribus, too narrow, either from unskilful construction, or more easily to prevent the enemy’s entrance. — relictis: it is conjectured that this word does not belong here, being an error of some copyist, whose eye caught the same word two lines below.

5. portas, town gates; these were closed, lest those who manned the exterior defences (the fossa and maceria) should rush into the town in a panic.

**Chap. 71. 4. ratione inita, having taken an account.**
5. opus, the Roman works of contravallation, still unfinished.
6. copias omnes: not those that held the fortification east of the town, but the outlying pickets on all the other sides.
178. Chap. 72. *pedum viginti*, i.e. in breadth. — *directis, vertical*, the bottom (*solum*) being as broad as the top. The ditch was usually dug with sloping sides; the object here was (as it was probably shallow) to make it harder to cross. See note on Bk. I. Chap. 49, "The Camp," 3. This was the *contravallation*, the interior line of defence, against the town.

2. *totum corpus, the entire work*, eleven miles in extent, according to Chap. 69. — *operi, take with destinatos*.

3. *eadem altitudine, of equal depth*. — *interiorem*: i.e. nearer the town. — *locis, loc. abl.*

4. *loricam, pinnas*: see Bk. V. Chap. 40, and also note on Bk. I. Chap. 49, "The Camp," 8. — *cervis, stumps with roots, or trunks with branches, projecting like stags' horns. — ad, at. — pluteorum*: the *lorica* was really a series of *plutei*, arranged side by side on the wall and bound together. — *turre*: if these were 10 ft. wide at the base, there must have been at least 400.

Chap. 73. 2. *trunci arborum, &c.:* trunks of trees having very stiff boughs were cut down, the boughs being trimmed and sharpened at the ends, and then planted in five rows in trenches five ft. deep (*quinos pedes*), and perhaps one and a half ft. wide.

179. 3. *quini . . . ordines*: these five rows of *chevaux-de-frise*, intertwined so as to be continuous, covered a space perhaps 25 ft. wide, so that, even
with the help of a pole, an enemy could not easily leap over them. — *cippos*, "boundary-stones," so called jestingly by the troops.

4. *scrobæ*, little pits, with sloping sides, three feet deep, dug in eight rows, arranged, as we should say, in diamond-pattern, or as trees were planted in an orchard (*in quincuncem*), so that each should be equally distant from the six adjacent. A stout, sharp stake was set in each, packed with a foot depth of earth, its point projecting four inches, the pit being then loosely filled with twigs and brush. This elegant funnel-shaped trap for man or beast the soldiers called a "lily-cup" (*lilium*).

5. *teretes*, round, like a stick, while the word *rotundus* means round like a ball.

6. *totæ*, their whole length, so that only the hooks projected.

**Chap. 74. regiones . . . aequissimas**: the line of circumvallation (see Plan XII.) was parallel with the works just described, and distant from it about 700 ft. It was protected by a single ditch. — *XIV milia*: of course the works of circumvallation included all the Roman camps, and must have had a greater circuit than the inner line of contravallation (see Chap. 69*). — *diversas*, facing the other way. — *si discessu*: this passage is irregular in syntax and confused in meaning; doubtless corrupt. The sense is, perhaps, that he might not be driven to a retreat by ever so great an attacking force. — *habere . . . convictum*: see note on *compertum habere*, Bk. I. Chap. 44.

**180. Chap. 75. Bodis**: the blank is conjecturally filled by *bina*. — *quo in numero*: compare Bk. III. Chap. 7.

3. *pro, in consideration of* . . . *una*, along with the rest.

**Chap. 76. opera Commii**: see Bk. IV. Chaps. 21, 35; Bk. V. Chap. 22. — *civitatem*, the Atrebates. — *immunem*, free from tribute. — *ipsi, sc. civitati*. — attribuerat, had annexed as a subject state.
3. Vercassivellauno: in this word, as in Vercingetorix, the prefix Ver is probably a title, like the modern "Sir."
5. ancipiti, with double front, having to be fought behind and before.

181. Chap. 77. 3. deditioinis, a mere "laying down of arms."
4. mollities, compare Chap. 205.
5. atque, and then, too.
6. quid animi, what heart?
8. animi causã, for the pleasure of it.
9. illorum, the Gauls; his, the Romans.

182. 11. illi bello, dative after simile.
13. finitimam, "over the border" — the Province. — securibus, the lictor's axes, the sign not simply of military rule, but of bloody execution (as a servile insurrection would be revenged).

Chap. 78. 2. prohibebat: "cruel, but war is cruel; and where a garrison is to be reduced by famine, the laws of it are inexorable."

Chap. 79. colle: this hill is south-west from Alesia, beyond the Brenne.

183. Chap. 80. 4. complures, of the Roman cavalry.
5. neque ... ac, perhaps a misreading for neque ... nec.

Chap. 81. atque, and even. — harpagonum, iron hooks fastened to poles, for tearing down the defences.

184. campestres munitiones, the works in the plain; i.e. the line of circumvallation in the Plain of Laumes, south-west from Alesia.
2. crates, hurdles of woven twigs, to fill up the trenches.
4. librilibus, heavy stones fastened to a thong, by which they were hurled with great force. — glandibus, leaden bullets.

Chap. 82. 2. superioribus, on the higher ground to the north and south (see next chapter).
3. fossas: this word should probably be fossam. It seems to refer to the ditch 20 ft. wide.
War of Vercingetorix.

Chap. 83. 2. collis: the camp of these two legions (Plan XII. D) was on the southern slope of Mont Rea.

185. Chap. 85. 3. iniquum . . . fastigium, the unfavorable downward slope of the ground (see Chap. 83²).

186. 4. agger, earth.

Chap. 86. Labienum: he was encamped on the heights of Bussy (Plan XII. C).

3. interiores, the Gauls within the town.—loca praerupta: probably the Heights of Flavigny.—ex ascensu, by assault.

Chap. 87. integros, i.e. troops that had not yet been engaged. The cohorts of Brutus and Fabius were probably of those that had been defending the works in the plain.

2. eo, &c.: i.e. in the works on Mont Rea.

Chap. 88. ex colore, the purple paludamentum. — insigni, as a badge. — de locis superioribus, from the high ground occupied by the Gauls. — declivia, on the downward slope.

187. 2. equitatus, who had been despatched as told in Chap. 87².

5. crebris subsidiiis, the constant sending of relief.

Chap. 89. Vercingetorix deditur: the fate reserved for this gallant and ill-fated chieftain was to be kept for six years in chains, and then, after being led in Cæsar’s triumphal procession, to be put to death.

From 1862 to 1865 careful excavations were made under direction of the emperor Napoleon III. on the site of the works at Alesia. The discoveries that resulted were most interesting. There were found the remains of Cæsar’s four infantry camps (Plan XII. A B C D) and of his four cavalry camps (G H I K). Of the 23 redoubts, remains of only 5 could be traced. It is likely that the rest were mostly of wood, so that they soon crumbled entirely away. The trench 20 ft. wide (f f) remains in its entirety. Of the pits (lilia) in which the sharp stakes were buried, more than 50 were discovered. They are all 3 ft. deep, 2 ft. wide at the top, and 1 ft. wide at the bottom. Of course they do not retain the original
dimensions. In the trenches was found a great number of coins, Roman and Gallic, swords, daggers, spear-heads, and the like. The result of these researches was a very striking corroboration of Cæsar’s narrative.

CLOSE OF THE CAMPAIGN. — If Cæsar was merciless in war, he was wise and humane in victory. Even in the moment of the fall of Alesia, he uses his prisoners to make terms with the more important states (si per eos, &c.). His aim was “not to enslave the Gauls, but to incorporate them in the Empire; to extend the privileges of Roman citizens among them, and among all the undegenerate races of the European provinces. He punished no one. He was gracious and considerate to all, and he so impressed the central tribes by his judgment and his moderation, that they served him faithfully in all his coming troubles, and never more, even in the severest temptation, made an effort to recover their independence.” *

Cæsar’s own narrative closes with the great and decisive victory at Alesia. The short remainder of the story is told by his faithful officer and friend, Hirtius Pansa, in the Eighth Book. A rising of the Carnutes and Bituriges in the west, undeterred by the fate of Avaricum, was crushed by a rapid winter march across the Loire. The Remi in the north, who alone of the Gauls had been steadily true to Rome, were attacked in retaliation by the Bellovacı under Commius, but were crushed in a single battle, and Commius fled to Germany. The final rally of the patriot party was made at the stronghold of Uxellodunum, on a branch of the Garonne, in the southwest; but this was also reduced by a siege of extreme difficulty, and the one act of vindictive barbarity which stains Cæsar’s record was inflicted after its fall by cutting off the hands of the desperate defenders who had held out to the last for the independence of Gaul. Cæsar then “invited the chiefs of all the tribes to come to him. He spoke to them of the future which lay open to them as members of a splendid imperial state. He gave them magnificent presents. He laid no impositions either on the leaders or their people; and they went to their homes personally devoted to their conqueror, contented with their condition, and resolved to maintain the peace which was now established, — a unique experience in political history.”

THE LEGIONS. — In the operations of this year (52 B.C.) Cæsar used the 10 legions with which the previous year saw him provided. Legions I and III had been loaned him by Pompey (see note on Bk. VI. Chap. 1*).

* The student of Bk. VII. will do well to read, in connection with it, the admirable condensed narrative given in Froude’s “Cæsar,” from which the above extract is taken.
Legions VII, VIII, IX and X Cæsar found stationed in his provinces when he assumed the proconsulship in the year 58. Legions XI and XII he enrolled in Hither Gaul in the spring of that year, to operate against the Helvetians. Legion XIII was raised in Hither Gaul in 57. Legion XIV was raised in 53. The previous (half) Legion XIV and Legion XV had perished with Sabinus in 54 B.C.
MILITARY INDEX.

Numbers refer to Pages of Notes.

acies, 35, 87, 88, 185.
acies duplex, 116.
acies triplex, 35, 123.
agmen, 38, 86 et seq.
agmen extremum, 89.
agmen novissimum, 28, 89.
agmen quadratum, 87, 88, 91.
ala, 34, 92.
alarii, 63.
amentum, 148.
aquila, 39.
aquilifer, 39.
aries, 101.
ballista, 75.
balteus, 4.
bracca, 3.
buccina, 72, 94.
calceus, 3.
calo, 71, 86.
cassis, 3.
castellum, 21, 74, 76, 161, 191.
castra, 56, 57, 70, 104, 177, 179, 186, 191.
catapulta, 75.
centuria, 17, 35, 70.
centurio, 17, 35, 49.
cibaria, 15.
cippi, 189.
circumvallare, 189.

clamor, 95.
cohors, 35, 49, 70, 97, 183.
cohors praetoria, 48, 52.
comites, 48.
concilium, 43, 138.
concursus, 35.
consilium, 145.
contabulare, 147, 172.
contravallare, 186.
contuberales, 48, 85.
convallis, 146.
cornu, 64, 94.
crista, 3.
cruralia, 3.
cuniculi, 115, 172.
decuria, 34.
decurio, 34.
ephippiis, 119.
equitatus, 28, 34, 92.
equites, 34, 71, 121, 134, 139, 152, 155, 181.
essedum, 130, 134.
essedarii, 130, 134.
excubiae, 186.
expediti milites, 90.
exploratores, 25, 71, 72, 77, 79.
fabri, 75, 141.
falces, 112, 148.
feminalia, 3.
ferrum, 4.
fossa, 57, 74, 186, 188.
Military Index.

frumentum, 29.
funditores, 73.
furca, 24.
gaesum, 104.
galea, 3.
gladius, 4, 38.
hastati, 87.
hiberna, 67, 104.
impedimenta, 85, 88 et seq., 152.
imperium, 17, 32, 115, 152.
insignia, 33, 96.
iter, 23.
itineris consuetudo, 86 et seq.
jugum, 19.
latus apertum, 38, 97, 179.
legatus, 22, 27, 32, 62, 64.
librilia, 190.
lilium, 191.
litua, 94.
litus, 94.
locus alienus, 28.
locus superior, 35, 40, 57.
locus suus, 28.
lorica, 3, 60, 147, 188.
maceria, 186.
manipulus, 17, 35, 70, 163.
manipulos laxare, 98.
matura, 40.
muli Mariani, 24.
munire castra, 57.
munitio, 22, 186, 190, 191.
murus, 20, 172.
naves, 106, 111.
naves subducere, 137.
ocrea, 3.
oppiatum, 14, 144.
oppugnatio, 73, 77.
optio, 49.
opus dimetiri, 71.
orbis, 98, 136.
ordo, 17, 35, 49.
pabulum, 29, 68.
pagus, 26, 118.
passus, 10.
pedem referre, 38.
pelles, 85, 104.
phalanx, 37, 64.
pilani, 87.
pilum, 4, 35, 76.
pila muralia, 147.
pinna, 60, 147, 188.
pluteus, 78 et seq., 188.
pons, 26, 125.
porta, 57, 61, 62, 116, 162, 186.
presactus, 106.
presidium, 21.
primipilus, 50, 98.
principes, 87.
quaestor, 64.
sagittarii, 175.
sagulum, 148.
sagum, 3, 23.
sarcinae, 24, 35, 85 et seq.
scorpio, 75.
scobes, 189.
scutum, 3, 96.
sectionem vendere, 102.
signa, 39, 163.
signa conferre, 97.
signa convertere, 38, 98.
signa inferre, 38, 98.
signifer, 39, 97.
signum, 72.
signum pugnae, 95.
soldurii, 115.
stationes, 71, 72, 143, 186.
stipendium, 4.
tabernaculum, 71, 104.
terga vertere, 38.
testudo, 37, 78, 148.
testudinem facere, 73, 140.
titulum, 57, 72.
tormenta, 75, 76, 78, 80, 107.
tragula, 40.
tribuni militum, 17, 62.
tuba, 94.
tunica, 3.
turma, 34, 92.
turris, 78, 97, 107, 147, 172, 173, 188.
turris ambulatoria, 79.

umbo, 4.
valli, 60.
vallum, 57, 105.
vexillarius, 39, 97.
vexillum, 39, 95.
vigilia, 72.
vinea, 78 et seq., 174.
A SPECIAL

VOCABULARY TO CAESAR,

COVERING SEVEN BOOKS.

By J. B. GREENOUGH.

BOSTON:
PUBLISHED BY GINN & COMPANY.
1886.

Copyright by J. B. Greenough, 1885.
SIGNs AND ABBREVIATIONS.

a. active.
ac. accusative.
ac. active.
adj. adjective.
adv. adverb.
cf. compare.
comp. composition.
conj. conjunction.
dat. dative.
def. definite.
dep. deponent.
Eng. English.
esp. especially.
F. feminine.
fem. feminine.
fig. figuratively.
fr. from.
gen. genitive.
Gr. Greek.
indcl. indeclinable.
 indef. indefinite.
insep. inseparable.
 irr. irregular.
M. masculine.
masc. masculine.
N. neuter.
neut. neuter.
nom. nominative.
um. numeral.
orig. originally.
p. present participle.
pass. passive.
perf. perfect.
perh. perhaps.
Pl. plural.
plur. plural.
prob. probably.
reduced indicates the loss of a syllable in derivation or composition.
reflex. reflexive.
rel. relative.
sup. superlative.
superl. superlative.
transf. transferred (i.e. fr. a proper to a forced meaning).
unc. uncertain.
v. verb.
wh. which or whence.

(-). A hyphen at the end of a word means that the word is a stem. Between two words it means composition.

(+). A plus sign indicates derivation by means of a derivative suffix following the sign.

√, the radical sign, means a root, which is generally given in SMALL CAPITALS.

†, the dagger, denotes a word not found, but assumed as having once existed.

(?). A query denotes a doubtful etymology or meaning.

Full-faced type in parentheses denotes other spellings or forms of the same word.

1, 2, 3, 4, refer to conjugations of verbs. In giving the principal parts, the perfect participle, as of more frequent use, has been preferred to the supine form.
VOCABULARY.

A., Aulus (wh. see).
a. d., ante diem (wh. see).
ā, see ab.
ab (ā, abs), [reduced case of unc. stem akin to Gr. ἀφ, Eng. off, of], adv. (only in comp.), and prep. with abl., away from, from (cf. ex, out of).—Of place, with idea of motion, from: ab Arare iter convertere.—Of time, ab hora quarta.—Fig., from, with more or less feeling of motion: ab cohortatione prefectus; temperare ab injuriis; tutus ab; ab ramis (from the branches, as far as where they begin).—With expressions of measure, off, away, at a distance of: a milibus passuum duobus (two miles off).—With different notion in Eng., ortum est ab (began with); vacuum ab (dostitute of); capite initium a (begin at); ab tanto spatio (so far off); ab officio discendere (forsake, etc.); a quibus decedere (abandon, etc.); gratiam inire ab (secure gratitude from, win favor with).—Esp. with passives and similar notions, by: accidere a Caesare (at the hands of, showing the origin of this meaning).—Esp. also (prob. as the place whence the impression comes), on the side of, on, at, on the part of: a dextro cornu; a re frumentaria (in respect to); intritus ab labore (by).—In comp., away, off, apart. Also with negative force, not, un.

abdītus, p.p. of abdo.
abdō, -dīdī, -ditus, -dere, [ab-do (put)], 3. v. a., put away, remove, hide.—With reflex., conceal one’s self; hide.—With in and acc., hide in, withdraw to (take refuge among), withdraw and hide away.—abdītus, -a, -um, p.p., hidden, remote: abditi in tabernaculis (secluding themselves, etc.).

abdūcō, -duxi, -ductus, -ducere, [ab-duco], 3. v. a., lead away, draw away, take away, lead off, carry away (of persons or things which move of themselves).
abēō, -i, -itūrūs, -ire, [ab-еo], irr. v. n., go away, go off, retire, go (out of sight or away).
abiciō, -jēci, -jectus, -icere, [ab-jectio], 3. v. a., throw away, throw down, throw (away from one’s self).
ablēs, -ītis (-jetis), [?], F., fr or spruce (tree or wood), (prob. including all short-leaved coniferae).
abjectus, p.p. of abicēto.
abjectūs, see better spelling abicēto.
abjunctus, p.p. of abjungō.
ab Jungō, -junxi, -junctus, - jungere, [ab-jungo], 3. v. a., disjoin, detach: abjuncto Labierno.
abripīnō, -ripui, -reptus, -ripere, [ab-rapio], 3. v. a., carry off (with violence), drag away.
abs, see ab.
abscidīō, -cidī, -cisus, -cidere, [abs-caedo], 3. v. a., cut off, lop off, tear off, tear away.
Vocabulary.

abscessus, p.p. of abscoido.
absäns, see absum.
absimilis, -e, [ab-similis], adj.,

unlike.

absistō, -stī, no p.p., -sistere,
[ab-sisto], 3. v. n., stand away, with-
draw — Fig., leave off, keep aloof.

abstineō, -tinui, -tentus, -tinère,
[abs-teneo], 2. v. n., hold (one's self)
off. — Fig., refrain, spare: proelio
(refrain from giving); mulieribus
(spare).

abstractus, p.p. of abstrahó.

abstrahō, -traxi, -tractus, -tra-
here, [abs-traho], 3. v. a., drag off,
drag away.

absum, -fuī (āfuī), -futūrus, -esse,
[ab-sum], irr. v. n., be away, be ab-
sent, be off (at a distance). — Fig.,
suspicio (be wanting); nomen (be
far from helping); ab eo quin
(be far from being); multum quin
(lack much of, etc.); longius quin
(be farther off...that); a bello (keep
aloof); ab hoc consilio (not be con-
cerned in). — absens, p. as adj., ab-
sent, in one's absence.

abundō, -āvi, -āurus, -āre, [ab-
undō]-, 1. v. n., overflow. — Fig.,
abound. — Transf. (of the place, etc.,
containing the thing), be strong in,
be rich in, abound in.

āc, shorter form for atque (wh.
see).

accēdō, -cessi, -cessūrus, -cedere,
[ad-cedo], 3. v. n., move towards,
draw near, approach, come up, come
(to), advance to, advance. — Fig.,
come to: Remis studium (be in-
spired in, cf. discedo). — Esp., be
added, where often an explanatory
word is necessary in Eng.: huc acced-
dere (be in addition to this); huc
accedebat ut (there was also this
disadvantage); so with quod (there
was also the fact that, there was also
the reason that, or simply moreover,
then again).

accelerō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [ad-
celero], 1. v. a. and n., hasten.

acceptus, p.p. of accipio.

accessō, see accesso.

acessus, p.p. of accedo.

accidō, -cidi, no p.p., -cidere,
[ad-cado], 3. v. n., fall upon, fall:
tela gravius (strike). — Fig., hap-
pen, occur, present itself, turn out,
arise. — Often euphemistically for
death, defeat, etc.: si quid Roma-
nis; gravius a Caesare (be done,
severe measures be taken).

accidō, -cidi, -cīsus, cidere, [ad-
caedo], 3. v. a., cut into, partly cut.

accipīō, -cepī, -ceptus, -ciperé,
[ad-capio], 3. v. a., take, receive:
exercitum (take command of). —
Less exactly, volnus; incommodum
(suffer, meet with). — Fig., accept,
learn, hear, get, take: excusation-
em; usus (acquire); alicquid fama
as adj., acceptable.

acclivis, -e, [ad-clivus (weak-
ened)], adj., rising, sloping, ascend-
ing: collis; aditus.

acclivitas, -tās, [acclivi + tas],
F., slope, inclination: par (steepness).

Accō, -onis, [Celtic], M., one of
the Senones, who stirred up his people
against the Romans. The revolt was
suppressed by Caesar's sudden arri-
val, and Acco was tried and con-
demned to death.

accommodātus, p.p. of accom-
modo.

accommodō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre,
[ac-commodō, or ad-commodo],
1. v. a., fit on, fit: insignia (put on,
adjust). — accommodātus, -a, -um,
p.p., fitted, adapted.
Vocabulary.

accurātēs [abl. of accuratus], adv., with care, carefully.
accurō, -curri (-cucurri), no p.p., -currere, [ad-curro], 3. v. n., run to, run up (on foot), rush up (on horseback), ride up.
accisō, -avi, -ātus, -āre, [ad-tcaeso (cf. causor)], accuse, blame, find fault with.
ācer, -cris, -cre, [√ac (cf. acus) + ris (cf. -rus in purus)], adj., sharp. — Fig., keen, active, violent.
acerbē [abl. of acerbus], adv., bitterly. — Fig. (of the mind), ferre inopia (suffer severely from, etc.).
acerbitās, -tātis, [acerbō + tas], P., bitterness. — Concrete in plur., sufferings (with a change of point of view in Eng.).
acerbus, -a, -um, [acer (treated as stem) + bus (cf. superbus)], adj., bitter (to the taste). — Fig. (to the mind), bitter, hard to bear, cruel.
ācerrimē (acerrume), superl. of ācriter.
acerbus, -a, -um, [acer (as stem) + vus (cf. torvus)], M., (pointed ?), a heap, a pile.
ācies, -ei, [√ac + ies (cf. series)], P., point, sharp edge, edge: oculorum (keen glance, glare). — Esp., line, battle line, array, army (in battle array, cf. agmen), rank (of an army in several ranks). The battle array of the Romans in Caesar's time was generally in three lines, though each line was about ten soldiers deep. The line was not continuous, but the cohorts were separated by a space equal to their front, and behind these spaces stood the cohorts of the next line: acie instructa depugnare (fight a pitched battle).
acquirō, see adquīro.
ācriter [acrō + ter (prob. neut. of -terus reduced, cf. alter)], adv., sharply. — Fig., fiercely, violently, hotly (of fighting), with spirit.
actuārius, -a, -um, [actu + arius], adj., fast sailing (provided with sails and oars both).
actus, p.p. of ago.
acuō, -ui, -itus, -uere, [acu- (stem of acus)], 3. v. a., sharpen. — aculus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., sharpened, sharp.
acūtus, p.p. of acuō.
ad [7], adv. (only in comp.), and prep. with acc. With idea of motion, to, towards, against. — Where the idea of motion is more or less obliterated, to, towards, for, at, on, against, in, in regard to. — Of time, till, at, on. — With numerals, about. — Esp., deferre ad (lay before); recepti ad se (among); ad fortunam Caesari defuit (Caesar lacked to complete, etc.); contendere ad occupandum (to), (and often with the gerund construction); ad certum pondus (of); ad modum (in); commovere ad (visit); ad impedimenta (by); ad auxilium (to give assistance); ad arbitrium (according to); proficiisci ad (for); ad unum (to a man); ad celeritatem (in the way of). — In comp., to, in, by, towards.
adactus, p.p. of adigo.
a. d., see ante.
adaequō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [ad-aequo], 1. v. a., make equal to: moles moenibus (make as high as).
— More commonly with the verb neuter and the acc. or dat. depending on combined idea, become equal to, equal: altitudinem muri (reach up to); cursum (keep up with).
adamō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [ad-amō], 1. v. a., fall in love with, take a fancy to, covet.
Vocabulary.

adangeē, -anxi, -anctus, -angēre, [ad-angeo], 2. v. a., increase.
adēō, -didi, -ditus, -dere, [ad-do (1 and 2)], 3. v. a., give to. — Also, place to, add (with acc. or absolutely).
aduēcē, -duxi, -ductus, -ducere, [ad-duco], 3. v. a., lead to, draw to, bring in (of persons), bring, draw in (towards one), drive, force. — Fig., induce, drive.
adductus, p.p. of adduco.
ademptus, p.p. of adimo.
1. adeō, -ii (-ivi), -iturus, -ire, [ad-eō], irr. v. a. and n., go to, visit, get at, come to, come up, go to (a place), get in (to a place), advance (somewhere), attack, approach (speak with): ad (come into the presence of).

2. adeō [ad-eō], adv., to that point. — Less exactly, to that degree, so much, so: discessisse adeo ut (so speedily that). — Weakened, in fact, at all, exactly.
adepetus, p.p. of adimpleret.
adequitō, -āvi, -o p.p., -āre, [ad-equitō], 1. v. a. and n., ride up, ride against, skirmish with (of cavalry).
adfectus, p.p. of adfectio.
adferō (aff-), -tuli, -latus, -ferre, [ad-fero], irr. v. a., bring to, bring : litteras. — Fig., cause, bring forward, allege, report, announce: fortuna casus (bring about).

adfectō (aff-), -feci, -fectus, -fice-re, [ad-facio], 3. v. a., do to, affect. — With acc. and abl., affect with, inflict upon, produce in, cause to, visit with, fill with. — In passive, suffer, receive, be in (a condition), be afflicted by, suffer from: beneficio adfectus (having received favors).
adfigō, -fixi, -fixus, -figere, [ad-figo], 3. v. a., fasten to (by insertion).
adfigō, -finxi, -fictus, -fingere, [ad-fingo], 3. v. a., make up in addition. — Of rumors, invent more.
adfinitas (aff-), -tātis, [adfini + tas], F., nearness. — Of relation by marriage, relationship, alliance, connection. — Concretely, a connection: adfinitatisbus coniuncti (marriages).
adfirmātīō (aff-), -ōnis, [adfirmatio (cf. adfirma)], F., assurance. — Concretely, an assertion.
adfixus (aff-), p.p. of adfigo.
adflictō (aff-), -āvi, -ätus, -äre, [ad-flicto, cf. adfligo], 1. v. a., dash against, dash upon, dash to the ground. Hence, overthrow, overwhelm, wreck.
adflectus (aff-), p.p. of adfligo.
adfligō (aff-), -fixi, -fictus, -fligere, [ad-fligo], 3. v. a., dash upon. Hence, overthrow, wreck, overturn : naves (shatter, damage); arbores (throw down).
adfore (aff-), see adsum.
adgreler (agg-), -gressus, -gredi, [ad-gradior], 3. v. dep., go towards, go to, march against, attack.
adgregō (agg-), -āvi, -ätus, -äre, [ad-gregō], 1. v. a., unite in a flock, gather: se (gather around, flock to); se ad amicitiam (attach one's self to).

adhaereo, -haesi, -haesūrus, -ハー-つ, [ad-haereo], 2. v. n., stick (to), cling (to), get caught (in).
adhaerēscō, -ere, [ad-haereco], 3. v. n., same as adhaereō.
adhibēō, -ui, -itus, -ère, [ad-habeo], 2. v. a., have in. Hence, call in, admit, bring with (one). — Fig., employ, use.

adhibitus, p.p. of adhibeo.
adhortor, -ätus, -āri, [ad-hortor], 1. v. dep., encourage, address, urge, rally (soldiers).
Vocabulary.

adhuc [ad-huc], adv., hitherto (of place). — Of time, up to this time, till now, to this day.

Adiatunnus, -i, [Celtic], m., chief of the Sontiates.

adiciō (adjic-), -jēci, -jectus, -icer, [ad-jacio], 3. v. a., throw to: telum adici (reach); aggerem (throw up). — Fig., add: adjuncta planities (with the addition of).

adigō, -ēgi, -actus, -igere, [ad-ago], 3. v. a., drive to, drive up (of cattle). — Less exactly, drive in (of piles), move up (of towers), shoot (of weapons). — Fig., force, bind (by oath).

adimō, -ēmi, -emptus, -imer, [ad-emo (take)], 3. v. a., take away (the action being looked upon as done to somebody). — Fig., destroy, cut off: spem; prospectum (interrupt, cut off).

adipiscor, -epus, -ipsi, -apiscor, [ad-apiscor], 3. v. dep., obtain, secure: victoriam (win, gain).

aditus, -iūs, [ad-itus, cf. adeo (1)], m., approach, arrival, coming, access: defugere (contact, intercourse). — Concretely, an avenue (of approach), access (excuse for approaching), means of approach, means of access, way of approach, approach (in military sense). — Phrases: sermonis (occasion for intercourse); ad uxorem (intercourse).

adjaceō, -jacuī, no p.p., -jacere, [ad-jaceo], 2. v. n., lie near, border on, be adjacent.

adjicus, p.p. of adicio.

adjiciō, see better spelling adicio.

adjudicātus, p.p. of adjudico.

adjudicō, -āvi, ātus, āre, [ad-judico], 1. v. a., adjudge, assign (by deliberation).

adjungō, -junxi, -junctus, -jun-
admodum [ad modum], adv., to a degree. Hence, very, very much, greatly, exceedingly, so (very) much.

admoneō, -ui, -itus, -äre, [admoneo], 2. v. a., warn, urge.
adolēscēns, see adulescens.
adolēscēntia, see adulescentia.
adolēscō, -olēvī, -ultūs, -olēscere, [ad-olesco], 3. v. n., grow up (to maturity), mature. See also adulescens.

adorīr, -ortus, -ōrīrī, [ad-orior], 4. v. dep., (rise up against), attack, assail.

adorītus, -a, -um, p.p. of adorīr.

adparō (app-), -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [ad-paro], 1. v. a. and n., prepare, get ready, make preparations.
adpellō (app-), -puli, -pulsus, -pellecre, [ad-pello], 3. v. a. and n., land (ships), bring to land.
adpetō (app-), -petīvī, -petitus, -petere, [ad-peto], 3. v. a. and n., seek to gain, desire, aim at. — Abs., approach.

adplōcō (app-), -āvī (-uī), -plicātus (-plicitus), -plicare, [ad-plico], 1. v. a. (bend towards). With reflex., lean against.

adportō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [ad-porto], 1. v. a., bring in, bring (to some place).
adprobō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [ad-probo], 1. v. a., approve of; agree with (an opinion or action).
adpropīnquō, -āvī, no p.p., -āre, [ad-propinquo], 1. v. n., approach, come nearer, come near.

adpuslus, p.p. of 1. adpello.
adquirō (acq-), -quisivī, -quisitus, -quirere, [ad-quirō], 3. v. a., (get in addition), acquire: aliquid (gain some advantage).
adripō (arr-), -ripui, -reptus, -ripere, [ad-rapio], 3. v. a., snatch up, seize.
adrogaṇter [adrogant- (stem of p. of adrogo) + ter], adv., with presumption, presumingly, with insolence.
adrogantia, -ae, [adrogant- (see preceding) + ia], f., insolence, insolent conduct, presumption.

adscendō (asc-), -scendi, -scensus, -scendere, [ad-scano], 3. v. a. and n., climb up, climb, ascend: valērum (mount).

adscēnsum (asc-), -ūs, [ad†scensus, cf. ascendo], m., a climbing up, an ascent, a going up. — Concr., a way up, a means of ascent: prohibere ascensum (from climbing up).

adsciscō, -scivi, -scitus, -sciscere, [ad-siscio], 3. v. a., attack (by formal decree). — Less exactly, attack to (one’s self), unite with (one’s self).

adsidius (ass-), -a, -um, [ad†sidius (SED + uus, cf. residuus)], adj., (sitting by), constant, continued, incessant.

adspectus (asp-), -ūs, [ad†spectus (cf. adspicio)], m., a looking at. — Transf., an appearance, aspect.

adsuefacciō (ass-), -fēcī, -factus, -facere, [†adsue- (unc. case, akin to suesco) -facio], 3. v. a., accustom, train. — Pass., be accustomed.

adsuefactus, -a, -um, p.p. of adsuefacio.

adsuefacciō (ass-), -suēvī, -suētus, -suescere, [ad-suesco], 3. v. a. and n., accustom, become accustomed, become wonted (of animals).
Vocabulary.

adsuētus, -a, -um, pp. of adsu-esco.

adsum (assum), -fui, -futūrus, -esse, [ad-sum], irr. v. n., be near, be by, be present, be at hand, be there, appear.

adtextō, see attestō.
adtingō, see attingo.
adtribuō, see attribuo.

Aduātua, -ae, [Celtic], F., a fortress of the Eburones (prob. Tongres) near the Meuse.

Aduātuci, -orum, [Celtic], m. pl., a tribe of the Belgae (originally Germans) living on the west bank of the Meuse (later, Tongri).

adulēsēna, -entis, [p. of adulēsco], adj., young. — As noun, a youth, young man. — With proper names, the younger (Jr., to distinguish one from his father).

adulēscentia, -ae, [adulescent- / ia], F., youth.

adulēscentulus, -i, [adulescent- (as if adulescent-) + ius], m. (often as adj.), a mere boy, very young.

adventus, -ūs, [ad-ventus (cf. advenio and eventus)], m., a coming, arrival.

adversārius, -a, -um, [adversō- (reduced) + arius, cf. onerārius], adj., (turned towards), opposed. — As noun, opponent.

adversus, p.p. of adverto, in various uses, wh. see.

adversus, prep., see adverto.

advertō, -verti, -versus, -vertere, [ad-vertō], 3. v. a., turn towards: animum (turn the attention, notice, see animadvertō), turn against, turn (to anything). — adversus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., in front, opposed, opposite, in opposition, adverse: proelium (unsuccessful); nox (un-
favorable); hostibus adversis occurrebant (right against, in their front); in adversum os (right in);
flumine (up, cf. secundo); res adversae (adversity, want of success).

— adversus [petrified as adv., cf. versus], against.

advocō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [advocō], 1. v. a., call (to one), summon.

advolō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [advolō], 1. v. n., fly to, fly at. — Less exactly, of cavalry, rush at, (fly at).

aedicicum, -i, [aedicific- (cf. artifex) + ium], N., building. — Esp. standing singly, opposed to villages, farm houses.

aedicīco, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [aedicific- (cf. artifex)], 1. v. a., build (of houses). — Less exactly, of ships.

Aedusus, etc., see Haedusus.

aeger, -gra, -grum, [unc. root (? / reconc, shake) + rus], adj., sick, disabled.

aegerrimē, superl. of aegre.

aegrē [abl. of aeger], adv., feebly. Hence, with difficulty, hardly, scarcely.

Aemilius, -i, [? aemulō- (reduced) + ius], m., (Lucius), a Gaul, a subaltern in Cæsar's Gallic cavalry. Prob. named from some Roman Aemilius from whom he had received the citizenship.

aequālliter [aequali + ter (cf. acriter)], adv., evenly, uniformly.

aequinoctium, -i, [as if aequinoct- (as adj. stem) + ium (cf. blennium)], N., the time of the equinox, the equinox.

aequitas, -tātis, [aequō + tas], F., evenness. Hence (cf. aequus), fairness, justice. — Esp., aequitas animi (evenness of mind, contentment, resignation).
Vocabulary.

aequō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [aequō-], i. v. a., make equal, equalize.

aequus, -a, -um, [ʔ, perh. akin to unus], adj., even, level, equal. Hence, fair, just, equitable. — Esp., aequus animus (equanimity, contentment, resignation); aequo animo aliquid facere (be resigned to, be satisfied to, be content to); contentio (on equal terms); aequo Marte (on equal terms).

aerarium, -a, -um, [aer- (as stem of aes) + arius (cf. onerarius)], adj., (having to do with copper). — Fem. as noun, a mine.

aereus, -a, -um, [aer- (as stem of aes) + eus (for -ayas)], adj., of copper, copper (as adj.).

aes, acrius, [perh. akin to Eng. iron], N., copper (for ships, or as money). Hence, money. — Esp., alienum (debt, another man's money).

aestās, -tātis, [stem akin to aedes + tas, or perh. aëstā - (cf. juventa) + tis (cf. virtus)], F., (heat), summer (the season for military operations).

aestimātūs, -ānis,aestimā-(stem of aestimo) + tio], F., valuation.

aestimō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [aestimō- (aes + tumus, cf. aedītumus)], i. v. a., value, estimate. — Less exactly, regard: gravius (consider more serious, of calamities).

aestīvus, -a, -um, [aestu- (reduced) + ivus], adj., hot. Hence, summer (as adj.).: tempus.

aestuārius, -a, -um, [aestu + arius (cf. onerarius)], adj., (relating to the tide). — Only in neuter, as noun, creek, estuary, marsh.

aestus, -tīs, [root of aedes + tus], M., heat (plur. in same sense). Hence, boiling, tide.

aetās, -tātis, [aëvo- (stem of aevum) + tas], F., age (of old or young): aetate confectus (pressed with years).

aeternus, -a, -um, [aëvo- (stem of aevum) + tērnis (cf. hesternus)], adj., eternal, lasting.

aff., see adf.-

Africus, -a, -um, [Afrō- (stem of Afer) + cus], adj., of Africa. — Esp., sc. ventus, the S. W. wind (blowing from Africa to Italy).

āfuisse, āfūturus, see absam.

AGEDIL(n)CUM (Agend-), -i, [Celtic], N., chief town of the Senones, on the Yonne (now Sens).

ager, agri, [√AG (drive ?) + rūs], cf. Gr. ἀγόρας, acre, M., land (cultivated), fields, country (opposed to city), territory (country), cultivated lands, fields (as opposed to woods).

agger, -eris, [ad-ger (for ēs, root of gere, as stem)], M., earth (for a wall), earth of a wall, a mound of earth, a wall, a mole, a dyke (either the regular earthwork of the Romans for an entrenched camp or line of circumvallation, or the dyke of approach, a long sloping mound leading up to the height of the walls): cotidius (daily addition to the walls).

agg- (except agger), see adj.-

agitō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [agitō- (as if stem of p.p. of ago)], i. v. a., drive, chase. Hence, vex, trouble. — Fig., turn over (in mind), propose, discuss, purpose.

agmen, -minis, [√AG (in ago) + men], N., a moving, a march. — Concretely (of bodies in motion), a body in motion, a column, a fleet, an army, a line (of troops in march), a train. — Less exactly, an army (not in march). Phrases: primum (the van); novissimum (the rear);
claudere (bring up the rear); confirm agmine (in close order); agmine (on the march); agmen legi
onum (the main body); extremo agmine (in the rear).
agō, ēgi, āctus, agere, [✓/AG],
3. v. a., drive (apparently from be
hind, cf. duco, lead): sublicas
(drive down); vineas, turrens, etc.
(set in motion, move on, advance);
ac portare (of live stock as booty,
drive off). — Loosely, do (cf. "carry
on"), act, treat, discuss, plead.—
Phrases: conventum (hold); gra
tias (render, give, express, cf. ha
bere and referre); quid agit (what
is one about?); quid agitur (what
is going on?); de obsessione agere
(do anything about).
agricultūrae, -ae,[agrō-cultūrae],
F., land tillage, farming, agricultu
re: prohibere (from cultivating
the land).
alacer, -cris, -cre, [?], adj., active,
cager, spirited.
alacritās, -tātis, [alacri + tas],
F., eagerness, readiness, spirit.
alārius, -a, -um, [alāri- (stem of
ala + ris) + ius], adj. (belonging to
the wings). Hence, of the allies
(who held the wings of the army).
— Masc. plur., allies, auxiliaries.
albus, -a, -um, [?], cf. Alpes and
Gr. ἄλπος], adj., white (pale, opposed
to ater, cf. candidus, shining
white, opposed to niger): plum
hum album (tin).
alcēs, -is, [Teutonic, cf. elk], F.,
the elk (a large beast of the deer
kind, resembling the moose).
Alduasdubis, various reading for
Dubis, I. 38, a tributary of the Saône.
Alesla, -ae, [Gallic], F., a city of
the Mandubii, west of Dijon (now
Alise).
allās [unc. case-form of allus,
but cf. foras], adv., elsewhere.— Of
time, at another time: alias...alias
(now...now, cf. allus...allus).
aliēnātus, p.p. of alieno.
aliēnō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [alienō-],
1. v. a., make another's (cf. ali
enus). — Also, make strange, alienate,
estrange: alienata mente (in a
frenzy).
aliēnus, -a, -um, [unc. stem akin
to allus (prob. imitated from verb
stems of second conjugation) + nus
cf. egenus], adj., another's, of
others, other people's: fines (other's);
aes (debt). Hence, strange, foreign,
unfavorable (cf. suus), foreign to
the purpose. — Superl., masc. plur. as
noun, perfect strangers.
aliō [dat. of allus], adv., else
whither, elsewhere (of end of motion).
allquamdiū [alliquam diu, cf.
quamdiu], adv., for some time,
some time, a considerable time.
allquantō [unc. form, cf. quan
do and alliquis], at some time. —
Emphatically, at last (at some time,
though not before).
alliquantō, see alliquantus.
alliquantus, -a, -um, [ali- (re
duced stem of allus) -quantus (cf.
allquis)], adj., considerable. — Neut.,
as noun, a good deal, a considerable
part. — allquantō (as abl. of mea
sure), by considerable, considerably.
alliquis(-qui), -qua, -quid(-quod),
[ali- (reduced stem of allus) -quis],
pron. (more forcible than quis; not
universal, like quisquam), some,
any. — Emphatic, some (considera
ble), any (important). — As noun,
some one, any one, something, any
thing.
alliquot [ali- (reduced stem of
allus) -quot], pron. indecl., several,
Vocabulary.

*some* (more than one, but not conceived as many).

**alter** [**ali**- (reduced stem of **alius**) + **ter** (cf. **acriter**)], adv., otherwise, differently. — Often rendered by a noun or adjective implied in the context, **alter se habere ac** (be different from what, etc.); nec **alter sentire quin** (have no other idea but to ox that).

**alius**, -a, -ud, [unc. root (cf. **else**) + **ius** (√**ya**)], adj. pron., another (any one, not all), other, different, else, another (of the second of three or more). — Repeated (either in separate clauses or in same), one... another, one another, one one (thing), another another: **alius alia causa illata** (alluding different reasons); **alius ex alio** (from different, etc., one from one, another from another).

— Esp. in a partitive use, **ex alius** (with sup., most of all others, cf. "the fairest of her daughters, Eve"); **alius atque** (see atque).

**allatus**, see **adfero**.

**allicio**, see **adlicio**.

**Allobroges**, -um, [Celtic], m. pl., a Celtic people (of Gaul), living between the Rhone, the Isère, the Lake of Geneva, and the Alps (in Dauphiny and Savoy). They were conquered in 121 B.C. by Fabius Maximus.

**aldo**, alui, alius, alere, [√**AL**, cf. **adolesco**], 3. v. a., cause to grow, feed, nurse, support (supply with food), foster, raise (of animals): **staturam** (increase). — Fig., foster, foment, feed.

**Alpès**, -ium, [√**ALP** (Celtic form of **ALBH**, cf. **albus**) + **is**], f. pl., the Alps, more or less loosely used of the whole mass of mountains between Italy (Cisalpine Gaul), Gaul, and Germany.

**alter**, -era, -erum, [√**AL**- (in **alius**) + **ter** (for **terus**, comparative suffix)], pron. adj., the other (of two). — In plur., the other party. — Repeated (cf. **alus**), one the other, one another (of two), one the other. — In plur., one party... the other.

— Also, the second (of more than two), another (the second of three): **dies** (the second). — Also (esp. with negatives), another (beside one's self, where all are conceived as two parties, one's self and all the rest).

**alternus**, -a, -um, [**alter** (as stem) + **nus**], adj., alternate, reciprocal, mutual, alternating.

**altitūdō**, -inis, [altō + tudo], f., height, depth (cf. **altus**), thickness (of a timber).

**altus**, -a, -um, [p.p. of **alo** as adj.], high. — From another point of view, deep. — Neut., as noun, the sea, the deep: in alto (in deep water); ex alto (from the sea).

**alīta**, -ae, (?; cf. **alumen**), f., leather (of a fine sort, like morocco?).


**Ambarri**, -orum, [Celtic], plur. of adj., a tribe of Gaul, on the Saône. They seem to have been clients of the Hædui, and are called (if the reading is correct in i. 11), Haedui Ambarri.

**Ambläni**, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a Belgian tribe, whose chief town, Samarobriva, is now called from their name, Amiens.

**Ambibarrî** (Ambibari), -orum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., an Armorican tribe living in a part of Normandy.

**Ambilarēti**, see **Ambivareti**.

**Ambillāti**, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a tribe on the Somme (possibly part of the preceding).
Vocabulary.

Amblorix, -īgis, [Celtic], m., an able prince of the Eburones. He caused a revolt of his nation against Caesar, which was partially (and came near being entirely) successful. He caused Caesar uneasiness for several years, and eluded every effort to capture him.

Ambivareti (Ambila-), -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a Gallic tribe, dependents of the Haudii.

Ambivaritū, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a Belgic tribe on the west bank of the Meuse.

Ambluareti, see Ambivareti.

ambō, -ae, -ō (-ōrum), [akin to amb-], num. adj., both (together, cf. uterque, both separately).

āmēns, -entis, [ab-mens], adj., (having the mind away), mad, crazy.

āmentia, -ae, [ament + ya], f., madness, frenzy, (mad) folly.

āmentum, -i, [?, √AP (in apis-cor) or √AG (in ago) + mentum], n., a thong (attached to a javelin, and wound around it to give it a twisting motion in throwing, as with rifle missiles).

āmfractus, see anfractus.

amicitia, -ae, [amicō + tia], f., friendship, friendly relations, alliance (opposed to hospitium, wh. see), personal friendship.

amicus, -a, -um, [unc. stem from √AM (in amo) + cus (cf. pudicus, posticus)], adj., friendly, well disposed: praesidium (devoted). — As noun, m., a friend, an ally.

āmissus, p.p. of amitto.

āmittō, -misī, -missus, -mittere, [ab-mitto], 3. v. a., let go (away), let slip, let pass. Hence, lose (esp. of military losses).

amor, -ōris, [√AM (in amo) + or (for -os)], f., love, affection.

amplē [abl. of amplus], adv., widely, largely.—amplius, compar., farther, more, longer: amplius quingenti (five hundred and more); ne quis, etc., amplius (any more); amplius obsidum (see amplus); numeram amplissime missam (generous gifts).

amplificātus, p.p. of amplifico.

amplificō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [amplificō-], 1. v. a., increase, enlarge, extend, heighten.

amplītūdō,-inis, [amplō+tudo], f., size, extent, greatness: cornu (spread).

amplus, -a, -um, [?], perh. amb + stem akin to plus, plenus], adj. Of size and extent, lit. and fig., large, wide, great. — Esp., prominent, of consequence, splendid, noble, distinguished: munera (lavish, valuable); dimissis amplioribus copis (the greater part of). — amplius, neut. comp. as noun (cf. plus), more, a greater number: amplius obsidum.

an [?], conj. introducing the second member of a double question, or, or rather. — Often with the first member only implied, or: quid veneirent, an speculandi causa (or was it, was it).

Anartēs, -ium, [?], m. plur., a people in Dacia (Transylvania), on the river Theiss, at the eastern end of the Hercynian forest.

Ancalītēs, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a nation of Britain.

anceps, -cipitis, [amb-caput], adj., (having a head on both sides), double-headed. — Less exactly, two-fold, double: proelium (on both fronts, of an army facing in two ways).

ancora, -ae, [Gr. ἀγκόρα], f., anchor: in ancoris (at anchor).
Vocabulary.

Andōs, -ium, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul north of the Loire, in modern Anjou.

Andi, -orum, the same as the
Andes, wh. see.

Andocumborius, -i, [Celtic], m., a chief man of the Remi.

ānfractus (amfr-), -ūs, [amfractus], m., a bending round. Hence, a winding, a circuit, a deviation (from a straight line).

angulus, -i, [prob. ancō- (stem of ancus, bent) + lus], m., (a little hook), a corner.

angustē [abl. of angustus], adv., narrowly, in narrow quarters (closely). — Fig., sparingly (cf. ample), in small quantity.

angustiae, ārum, [angustō + ia], f. plur., narrowness (prop. concrete, narrow); itinerum (a narrow pass); propter angustias (narrowness of the passage). — Fig., straits (difficult position, etc.), hard straits, difficulties: angustiis premi (to be hard pushed).

angustus, -a, -um, [angor (for angos) + tōs], adj., narrow, confined: angustiora castra (less extensive); montes (confining, by which one is hemmed in). — Fig., in angusto res est (the position is critical).

anima, -ae, [ani- (treated as root, fr. √AN, blow) + ma (f. of mus), cf. animus], f., breath. Hence, soul.

— Plur., the soul (of man, abstractly).

animadvertō, -verti, -versus, -vertēre, (also animum adverto uncontracted), [animum adverto], 3. v. a., turn the mind to, attend to: in aliquem (punish, cf. the domestic “attend to”). — Less exactly, observe, notice, learn.

animal, -ālis, [anima + lia, n. of adj.], n., (a creature endowed with life), an animal (including man), a living creature (opposed to booty).

animus, -i, [ani- (stem as root, fr. √AN, blow) + mus (cf. Gr. áve- nos, wind)], m., breath, life, soul (vital). — Usually (the above meanings being appropriated to anima, wh. see), soul (as thinking, feeling), mind, feelings, feeling, intellect (but cf. mens), spirit: effeminare; levi- tas animi (disposition, nature, or together, want of constancy); animus relinquuit alienum (one faints);
animi mollitia (want of energy or endurance); animo paratus (resolu- tute); animum advertere (see animadvertere). — Esp. (in a good sense, often in plur.), spirit, constancy, courage, resolution: confirmare (encourage any one); relanguescere; promptus; paratus ad aliquid.

— Also (as opposed to mens, which see), the moral powers, will, desires, affections, etc., the heart, the feelings, the disposition: bona animo esse (be well disposed); esse in animo alicui (to have in mind, as a purpose); offendere or avertere (feel- ings); magni animi (of great ambition). — Also, animus magnus (courage, magnanimity, lofty spirit); animi magnitudo (lofty spirit); permutercere (angry spirit); mentes animoseque perturbare (minds, as thinking, and hearts, as feeling, etc.); animi virtus (nobleness of soul); animi causa (for pleasure).

annōtinus, -a, -um, [some form of annō + tinus (cf. diluitinus)], adj., last year’s, old (of ships made the year before).

annus, -i, [?], m., a year (as a
Vocabulary.

point of time, or as the course of the year, or as a period).

annuus, -a, -um, [annō + us], adj., annual: magistratus crētur (annually).

ānsēr, -eris, [for hānsēr, akin to goose], m., a goose.

ante [old antīd, abl. of tānti- (cf. post and postis)], adv., before (of place and time), in front: ante dictum (above, before, previously); antequam, before (with clause); iam ante (already before, already); paucis ante diēbus (a few days before).—Prep., before (of place or time): ante se mittit (in advance of).—In dates, ante diem (a. d.) (on such a day before).—In comp., before (of place, time, and succession).

anteā [ante ēā (prob. abl. or instr., cf. ēā, quā)], adv. (of time), before, previously, once.

antecēdē, -cessī, -cessus, -cēderē, [ante-cedo], 3. v. n. and a. (fr. force of prep.), go forward, advance, surpass (in size, etc.), exceed, precede, go in advance of.

antecursor, -ōris, [ante-cursor], m., a courier.

antarē, -tuli, -lātus, -ferē, [antarē-ferō], irr. v. a., (place in advance, prefer).—Pass., be preferred, be the first, have the superiority.

antēmna, -ne, [perh. borrh. fr. some Gr. word fr. South Italy akin to ávareiβo], r., a yard (for sails).

antenna, see antemna.

antepōnō, -posuī, -positūs, -pōnere, [ante-pōnō], 3. v. a., (place in advance, cf. antefero), think of more importance.

antequam, see ante.

antevertō, -verti, -versus, -vertere, [ante-verterō], 3. v. a., (turn in front, cf. antepōnō), prefer.

antiquus, -a, -um, [anti- (cf. ante) + cus (cf. porticus)], adj., old (existing from early times, not so much in reference to present age as to former origin, cf. vētus), ancient.

Antistius,-ī, [antistī- (antistēs) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name.

—Esp., Gaius Antistius Reginus, a legatus of Cēsar.

Antōnius, -ī, [?], m., a Roman family name. —Esp.: 1. Marcus (Mark Antony), the famous triumvir, a legatus of Cēsar in Gaul; also, 2, his brother, Gaius, a legatus of Cēsar.

Apŏs, Applus (wh. see).

aperīō, -peruī, -perutus, -perire, [ab-pario (get off), cf. operio, cover], 4. v. a., uncover, open.—apertura, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., open, exposed, uncovered, unobstructed, unprotected: latus (the right side, not covered by the shield); collia (without trees); impetus maris (unbroken).

aperē [abl. of apertus], adv., openly.

Apollō, -inis, [?], m., the son of Jupiter and Latona and twin brother of Diana, god of the sun, of divination, of poetry and music, and president of the Muses. He was also god of archery, of pestilence, and, on the other hand, of healing. He is identified by Cēsar with some Celtic divinity.

apparē, see adparō.

1. appellation, see adpello.

2. appellō, -āvī, -āitus, -āre, [ad-pellō, cf. compellō], 1. v. a., call, name, address, call upon, style (de.
clare one something or address in a certain character).

appeto, see adpeto.

Appius, -i, [?, a Sabine word ?], m., a Roman prænomen.
applicō, see adplico.
apportō, see adporto.
approbō, see adprobo.
appropriquo, see adpropinquo.

Apr., abbrev. for Aprilis (wh. see).

Aprilis, -e, [prob. akin to aperio], adj., of April.
aptus, -a, -um, [√AP (in apiscor) + tus], adj., (fitted to), suited, adapted, fit, apt.
apud [akin to ab and Gr. ἀπό], prep., at, among, with, before, on one’s part, in relation to (a person), in one’s house (company, possession).
aqua, -ae, [?], F., water, a water-course: aqua atque igni interdicere (a form of banishment among the Romans); mensurae ex aqua, by the water-clock (a contrivance like an hour-glass for telling time by the running of water).
aquatīō, -onis, [aquā- (stem of aquor) + tio], F., getting water (cf. pabulatio).
aquila, -ae, [F. of aquillus, dark gray, perh. remotely akin to aqua], F., an eagle. — Esp., the standard of the Romans, consisting of an eagle on a staff.

Aquillāia, -ae, [Aquila + ins], F., a city of Cisalpine Gaul (Venetia), founded by a Roman colony in 182 b.c. as an outpost on the north-east.
aquilifer, -eri, [aquila-fer (reduced from -ferus, √FER + us)] m., a standard-bearer (of the eagle).

Aquitānia, -ae, [F. of adj. developed from Aquitanus], F., the part of Gaul between the Province, the Pyrenees, the Garumna, and the ocean (see I. 1).

Aquitānus, -a, -um, [?], adj., of Aquitania. — Plur., as subst., the people of Aquitania. — Sing., a man of Aquitania.

Arar, -aris, [?], m., the Sabine, a river of Gaul rising in the Vosges and flowing into the Rhone at Lyons.
arbiter, -tri, [ad-þbiter (√BI, in bito, + trus, cf. -trum)], m., a witness. — Less exactly, a referee, an arbitrator.
arbitrium, -i, [arbitrō + ium (cf. judicium)], n., judgment, will, pleasure (what one sees fits to do).
arbitror, -ātus, -āri, [arbitrō-], i. v. a. and n., think, suppose (judge).
arbor, -oris, [?], F., a tree.
arcessō, -svi, -situs, -sere, [akin to accedo, but the exact relation uncertain], 2. v. n., be hot, be on fire. — Fig., be excited, be in a blaze, burn.
ardeō, arsi, arsus, ardère, [prob. aridō-, cf. ardifer], 2. v. n., be hot, be on fire. — Fig., be excited, be in a blaze, burn.

Arduenna, -ae, [?], F., the Ardennes (a very large forest region in N.E. Gaul).
ardus, -a, -um, [?], perh. = Gr. ὀρθός, adj., high, steep, difficult (of ascent).

Arecomicī, -ōrum, [?], m. plur. See Volcae.

Arēmoricus, see Armorican.
argentinum, -i, [akin to arguo, the shining metal], n., silver (the metal). Also, of things made of the metal, silver ware, silver.
argilla, -ae, [diminutive, akin to arguo, originally white clay], F.
clay: fusillis (some vitrifying earth, such as porcelain is made of).

ärīdus, -a, -um, [ἀρίδο- (whence areo) + dus], adj., dry.—Neut. as subst., dry land.

ariēs, ietis (-jetis), [?], m., a ram.—Fig., a battering ram (a long timber armed at the end with metal for demolishing walls).—Less exactly, a buttress (piles driven down in a stream to brace a bridge).

Ariovistus, -i, [?], m., a chief of the Germans, called in by the Gauls in their domestic quarrels, who conquered and ruled them until he was himself crushed by the Romans.

Aristus, -i, [?, Arista + ius ?], m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., Marcus, a tribune of the soldiers in Cesar's army.

arma, -ōrum, [√AR (fē, cf. armus, the shoulder joint) + mus], n. plur., arms, equipment: armis jus exsequi (by force of arms); in armis esse (to be under arms, to be ready for service, to be in service); parati in armis (armed for war); in armis (in battle); armis congressi (in battle), and the like.

armāmenta, -ōrum, [armā- (stem of armo) + mentum], n. plur., implements.—Esp., rigging, tackle.

armātūra, -ae, [armā- (stem of armo) + turā], F., equipment: levis armaturae Numidae (light armed, without the heavy defensive armor of the legionsary).

armōtus, -a, -um, p.p. of armo.

armō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [armō-(stem of arma)], i. v. a., equip, arm.—Pass., in middle sense, arm (one's self).—armātūrus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., armed, in armis, equipped.

Armoricanus (Arēm-), -a, -um, [Celtic are, near, and mor, the sea], adj., only F. plur., Armorican (of the states of Gaul near the ocean, in Normandy and Brittany; see V. 53).

Arpinējus, -i, [Arpinō- (stem of Arpinum) + eius], m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., Gaius, a Roman knight in Cesar's army, possibly of Gallic origin, of a family enfranchised by Marius, who came from Arpinum.

arripō, see adripio.

arroganter, see adroganter.

arrogantia, see adrogantia.

ars, artis, [√AR + ius (reduced)], F., skill, art.—Plur., the arts, the useful arts.

artē [abl. of artus], adv., closely, tightly.

articulus, -i, [artu- (stem of artus) + culus], m., a little joint.—Less exactly, a joint.

artificium, -i, [artifice- (stem of artifex) + ium], n., a skilful contrivance, an artifice, a trick. Also, a trade (opposed to ars, a higher art).

artus, -a, -um, [p.p. of arceo, but poss. √AR (cf. ars) + tus], as adj., tightly bound, close: silva (thick).

Arvernum, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Arverni (a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Cevennes in modern Auvergne).—Masc. plur., the people.

arx, arcis, [√are (in arceo, arca) + ius (reduced)], F., a stronghold, a fortress.

ascendō, see adscendo.

ascensō, see adscensus.

aspectus, see adaspectus.

asper, -era, -erum, [?], adj. rough, harsh.—Fig., violent.

assiduus, see adsiduus.

assistō, see adstisto.

assuēfaciō, see adsuefacio.
assuefactus, see adsuefactus.
assuefecē, see adsuescē.
assuefectus, see adsuetus.
at [prob. form of ad], conj., but, 
at least.
atque (ac-), [ad-que], conj. and 
(generally introducing some more 
important idea). and even, and es-
pecially. — Also, as, than : par atque 
(the same as); simul atque (as soon 
as); similis atque (just like); aliter ac 
(otherwise than, different from 
what, etc.); alius atque (dif-
ferent from, etc.).

Atrebas, -atis, [Celtic], adj., 
Atrebatian, of the Atrebates, (a people 
of Belgic Gaul). — Plur., the nation 
itself, in modern Artois. — Also. 
Atrebatis, ablative plur., as if from 
Atrebatii, -orums (cf. the declension of 
poema).

Atrius, -i, [atrö- (stem of ater) 
+ ius], M., a Roman genteile name. 
— Esp., Quintus, a soldier in Cæsar’s 
army.

attexē, -textuī, -textus, -texere, 
[ad-texto], 3. v. a., weave on, make 
on (by weaving).

attingō (adt-), -tīgi, -tactus, -ting 
gere, [ad-tango], 3. v. a., touch upon, 
touch, reach, join (of a nation’s bound 
daries).

attribuē (adt-), -bui, -būtus, 
[ad-tribuo], 3. v. a., assign.

attuli, see adfero.

auctor, -ōris, [\(\sqrt{\text{AUG}}\) (in augeo) 
+ tor], M., a voucher (for any act 
or statement), an authority, an ad 
viser: -defectionis (leader); auctor 
esse (approve, advise); eis auctori 
bus (with their approval); auctore 
hoste (on the authority of the en 
emy).

auctōritās, -tātis, [auctor- (as if 
i-stem) + tas], F., influence, prestige,

authority (not political nor military, 
cf. imperium and potestas).
auctus, -a, -um, p.p. of augeo.
auctumnus, see autumnus.
audācia, -ac, [audac + ia], F., 
daring, boldness, effrontery.

audācēter [audac + ter], adv., 
with daring, boldly, fearlessly (but of 
an enemy): audacissime (with the 
greatest daring).
audāx, -ācis, [audā- (as if stem 
of audeo) + cus (reduced)], adj., 
daring. / 
audeō, ausus, audēre, [prob. 
avido- (stem of avidus)], 2. v. a. 
and n., dare, venture, risk, dare to 
try (or do). — ausus, -a, -um, p.p. 
in pres. sense, daring.

audiō, -divī, -dītus, -dire, [prob. 
akin to auri], 4. v. a., hear, hear 
of. — audiēns, -ntis, p. as adj., 
obedient (with dico).

auditiō, -ōnis, [audi- (stem of 
audio) + tio], F., a hearing, hear-
say, report.

augeō, auxi, auctus, augēre, 
[\(\sqrt{\text{AUG}}\) (causative or fr. unc. noun 
stem)], 2. v. a., increase, magnify, en 
hance, add to (something). — Pass, 
increase.

Aulercus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., 
of the Auleri (a wide-spread people 
of several tribes in the interior of 
Gaul). — Plur., the people them 
selves.

Aulus, -i, [?], M., a Roman præ 
nomen.

auriga, -ae, [poss. akin to auri 
and ago, cf. aurea, headstall], C., 
a charioteer, a driver.

aurīs, -is, [akin to ear, stem *aurī 
(cf. audio)], F., an ear.

Aurunculējus, -i, [Aurunculō 
(dim. of Auruncus, name of an 
Italian tribe) + eius], M., a Roman
Vocabulary.

gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, a legatus of Caesar.

Ausci, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a tribe of Aquitania.

ausus, -a, -um, p.p. of audaeo.

aut [?, but cf. autem], conj., or (regularly exclusive, cf. vel). — Repeated, either . . . or.

autem [?, akin to aut], conj., but (the weakest degree of opposition, cf. sed), on the other hand, then again, now (explanatory), whereas (in slight opposition to something preceding).

autumnus (auct-), -i, [for tautomatus, -ae (cf. augeo) + minus (cf. Vertumnus)], m., autumn (the season of increase).

auxillarēs, -e, [auxiliō (as if auxiliā) + ris (cf. alaris)], adj., auxiliary. — Plur. as noun, auxiliaries, auxiliary troops (not Roman legionaries).

auxillor, -ātus, -āri, [tāuxiliō-], i. v. dep., give assistance.

auxillium, -i, [tāuxili- (akin to augeo, cf. fusillus) + ium], n., assistance, aid, remedy, relief: extremum (the last resource); ferre (to assist, to aid); auxilio (as a reinforcement); quos auxili causa habebat (as auxiliaries, etc.).—Plur., auxiliaries (as opposed to the regular heavy-armed infantry); reënforcements: auxilia tardare (hinder from rendering assistance).

Avaricēnsis, -e, [Avaricō + ensis], adj., of Avaricum. — Plur., the people of Avaricum.

Avaricum, -i, [Celtic], n., a town of the Bituriges (now Bourges).

avārtīa, -ae, [avarō + tia], f., covetousness, greed, avarice.

āvehō, -xēi, -vectus, -vehere, [ab-vehō], 3. v. a., carry off, carry away.

āversus, -a, -um, p.p. of averto.

āvertō, -verti, -versus, -vertere, [ab-vertō], 3. v. a., turn aside, turn off, push aside. — Fig., alienate, estrange. — āversus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., turned away. Hence, flying, or, with a change of point of view in translation, in the rear (of that to which the word is applied): ne aversi ab hoste circumveniarentur (by the enemy getting in their rear, etc.).

avlis, -is, [unc. root + is], f., a bird.

avus, -i, [?], m., a grandfather.

Axona, -ae, [Celtic], f., a river of Gaul (now Aisne), a tributary of the Isara (Oise).

B.

Bacēnis, -is, [Celtic], f., with silva, a forest of Germany between the Cherusci and the Suebi.

Baculus, -i, [baculus = baculum, staff], m., agnomen of Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Baleāris, -e, [?], adj., Balearic (belonging to the Baleares insulæ in the Mediterranean, now Majorca and Minorca, famous for their slingers). — Plur., the islands themselves.

balteus, -i, [?], m., a belt (for the sword, passing over the shoulder, but sometimes also encircling the waist).

Balventius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentile name, only with Titus, a centurion in Caesar's army.

barbarus, -a, -um, [prob. f. imitation of unintelligible speech, cf. balbus], adj., foreign (not Greek or Latin), uncivilized, savage, barbarian, of the barbarians. — Plur.,
the barbarians or savages (used of the Gauls).

Basilus, -i, [?] M., agnomen of Lucius Minucius Basilus, an officer in Cesar’s army.

Batavi, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., the Batavians (a nation occupying the region about the mouths of the Rhine).

Belgae, -ārum, [?], M. plur., the Belgians (a nation occupying the northern part of Gaul). — Perhaps also a small tribe of the nation with this special name.

Belgium, -i, [Belga + ium], N., the country of the Belgians.

bellicosus, -a, -um, [bellicō + osus], adj., warlike.

bellicus, -a, -um, [bellō + cus], adj., of war, in war.

bellō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [bellō-], I. v. n., fight, make war: studium bellandi (a passion for war).

Bellocassii, -ōrum, see Velocasses.

Bellovaci, -ōrum, [?], M. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Seine, Somme, and Oise, about modern Beauvais.

bellum, -i, [old duellum, from duo, a strife between two], N., war, a war: bello persequi, etc. (in arms); bellum inferre (make war, offensive); parare bellum (make warlike preparations).

bene [abl. of bonus], adv., well: bene gerere negotium (be successful in, etc.).

beneficium, -ī, [beneficē- (reduced) + ium (but cf. officium)], N., well-doing, a service, a favor, often rendered by Eng. plur., services, favors shown, services rendered: sortium beneficio (thanks to the lot); beneficio suo adductus (by gratitude for his favors).

benevolentia, -ae, [benevolent + ia], F., good-will, kindness.

Bibracte, -is, [Celtic], N., the chief town of the Hædui (now Autun, from its later name Augustodunum).

Bibrax, -ctis, [cf. last word], F., a town of the Remi not satisfactorily identified.

Bibraci, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of south-east Britain.

biduum, -i, [dēvi-duum (akin to dies)], N., two days’ time, two days.

biennium, -i, [bienni- (bi-annō) + ium], N., two years’ time, the space of two years, two years.

Bigerriones, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Pyrenees (Bigorre).

bini, -ae, -a, [dēvi + nus], adj. plur., two each, two sets of, two (of things in pairs or sets).

bipartitō [abl. of bipartitus], adv., in two divisions: bipartito collocatī insidiis (in two places).

bipedālīs, -e, [biped + alis], adj., of two feet (measure), two feet (long, wide, etc.).

bis [for dīvis, unc. case-form of duo (cf. cis, uls)], adv., twice.

Biturgīces, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Celtic Gaul, in two branches, Vibisci (around Bordeaux) and Cubi (around Bourges).

Boduōgnātus, -i, [Celtic], M., a leader of the Nervii.

Bōja, F. sing. of Bōji, Boian.

Bōji, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic nation, of which a part occupied lands in Cisalpine Gaul, a part settled in Pannonia, and a part were with the Helvetii in their emigration.
Vocabulary.

Bonītās, -tās, [†bonō + tas], F., goodness: agrorum (fertility).
Bonus, -a, -um, [?], adj., good: bono animo esse (to be well disposed); optimum est (it is best); optimum iudicium facere (express so high an opinion). — Neut. as subst., good, advantage. — Plur., goods, property, estate.

Bōs, bovis, [akin to cow], C., a bull, a cow, an ox. — Plur., cattle.

Bracchium (brâch-), -i, [?], N., an arm.

Brannovices, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a division of the Aulerci living near the Hœdui.

Brannovīli, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic tribe, dependents of the Hœdui.

Bratuspantium, -i, [Celtic], N., a fortified town of the Belovaci, not certainly identified.

Brevīs, -e, [for †bregus, √bragh + us], adj., short (of space or time): brevi (in a short space).

Brevītās, -tās, [†brevi + tas], F., shortness, short stature: brevitas temporis (want of time).

Brevīter [†brevi + ter], adv., briefly.

Britanni, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., the Britons (including all tribes of Britain).

Britannia, -ae, [†Britannō + ia (f. of iua)], F., Britain.

Britannicus, -a, -um, [†Britannō + cus], adj., of Britain, Briton: bellum (with Britain).

Brūma, -ae, [†brevi + ma (superl.), sc. dies], F., the winter solstice.

Brūtus, -i, [brūtus, heavy], a family name at Rome. — Esp., Decimus Junius Brutus Albinus, a legatus of Caesar. He distinguished himself in command of Caesar's fleet off the coast of Gaul, and afterwards in the civil war on the side of Caesar. But he joined the conspiracy against Caesar with Marcus Brutus, and was one of Caesar's assassins. He was afterwards killed in Gaul by order of Antony.

C.

C, 100.

C., see Gajus.

Cabilia, -i, [Celtic], N., a town of the Hœdui on the Saone (Chalons-sur-Saône).

Cabūrus, -i, [Celtic], M., the personal name of Caius Valerius Caburus, a Gaul, made a Roman citizen by C. Valerius Flaccus, and father of C. Valerius Procilius and C. Valerius Donnatus.

Cacūmen, -inis, [?], N., the top (of trees, mountains, etc.).

Cadāver, -eris, [akin to cado], N., a corpse, a body (dead).

Cadō, cecidi, cāsūrus, cadere, [√cad], 3. v. n., fall, be killed.

Cadurci, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Cadurci (a tribe of Aquitania). — Plur., the people themselves.

Caedēs, -is, [†caed (as root of caedo) + is], F., a murder, a massacre, slaughter.

Caedō, cecidi, caesus, caedere, [prob. causative of caedo, cf. fall, fell], 3. v. a., strike, strike down, fell, cut down, slay.

Caelestis, -e, [†caelīt- (stem of caeleś) + tis (cf. agrestis and modestus)], adj., heavenly. — Plur., the gods.

Caelum, -i, [?], N., the sky, the heavens, heaven (as the abode of the gods):
Vocabulary.

caerimônia, -ae, [?], F., a rite, a ceremony.
Caerœsi, -orum, [?], M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
caeruleus, -a, -um, [perh. akin to caelus], adj., dark blue.
Caesar, -aris, [?], M., a family name in the gens Iulia. — Esp.: 1. C. Julius Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul and the author of the Commentaries. — 2. L. Julius Caesar, a kinsman of the former, acting as his legatus in Gaul.
caespes, see cespes.
caesus, -a, -um, p.p. of caedo.
Cālus, see Cālus.
Cal., see Calendae.
calamitās, -ātis, [?], F., disaster (orig. to crops?), defeat, misfortune (also euphemistically for death): ejus (any accident to him).
Calendae, -ārum, [akin to calo, call, the day when the phases of the moon were announced to the people by the priests], F. plur., the Kalends (the first day of the Roman month).
Calētī, -ōrum, and Calētēs, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe in Normandy, on the Seine.
callidus, -a, -um, [†callō- (cf. callum) + dus], adj., (tough ?), shrewd, cunning, skilful.
cālō, -ōnis, [?], M., a servant (of a soldier), a camp follower.
campester, -tris, -tre, [†campō + ster, as if †campet + tris (cf. equestris)], adj., of the plain: loca (level plains).
cānus, -i, [?], M., a plain.
Camulogēnus, -i, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Aulerici.
Caninius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., C. Caninius Rebilus, a legatus of Cæsar.
canō, cecinī, cantus, canere, [∨can], 3. v. a. and n., sing, sound (with voice or instrument).
Cantaber, -bra, -brum, [Celtic], adj., of the Cantabri (a warlike people in the north of Spain, allied with the Galls of Aquitania). — Plur., the people.
Cantium, -i,[Celtic], N., Kent (the south-east corner of Great Britain).
caper, -pri, [?], M., a goat.
capillus, -i, [adj. form akin to caput], M., the hair (collective).
capiō, cepi, captus, capere, [∨cap], 3. v. a., take, capture, take possession of, get, acquire, seize: stipendum; nomen; arma (take up); montem. — Less exactly, choose, select: locum. — So also (esp. of vessels), reach: portus (arrive at). — Fig., take in (deceive), captivate, beguile, experience: dolorem; condicturam (make); quietem (take, enjoy); fugam (take to flight).
caprea, -ae, [†caprō- (reduced) + ea (F. of -eus)], F., a roe (a small animal of the deer kind, with branching horns and a dappled skin).
captivus, -a, -um, [as if †captī- (imaginary stem of capto) + vus], adj., captive. — Masc. as noun, a captive, a prisoner.
captus, -a, -um, p.p. of capio.
captus, -ūs, [′cap + ās], M., a seizing. Hence, what one can grasp. — Fig., capacity, character, nature.
caput, -itis, [?], akin to head], N., the head: capite demisso; capite solo ex aqua extare (have only the head above water). — Less exactly, person (cf. “head of cattle”), mouth (of a river). — Fig., life: poenam capitis (of death); capitis periculo (of life).
careō, -ui, -itūrus, -ēre, [?], 2. v.n., be without, go without.
Vocabulary.

**carina, -ae, [?], F., keel, bottom (of a ship).**

**Carnūtes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur.,**
a Gallic people between the Loire and the Seine, about Orīlāns.

**carō, carnis, [akin to erudus and raw], F., flesh, meat.**

**carpō, -psi, -putus, -pere, [akin to harvest], 3. v. a., pluck. — Fig., find fault with (cf. "pick at").**

**carrum, -i, [Celtic], N., a cart (of the Gauls).**

**carrus, -ī, M., another form for carrum.**

**cārus, -a, -um, [?], adj., dear, precious, valuable.**

**Carvillus, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Also, a king of part of Kent.**

**casa, -ae, [?], F., a cottage, a hut.**

**cāseus, -i, [?], M., cheese.**

**Cassi, -orum, [Celtic, cf. Vercasses and Cassivellaunus], M. plur., a British tribe.**

**Casslānus, -a, -um, [†Cassīō (reduced) + ānus (cf. Romanus)], adj., of Cassius: bellum (the war in B.C. 107, in which L. Cassius Longinus was defeated by the Tigrini, near Lake Geneva, and killed).**

**cassis, -idis, [?], F., a helmet (of metal, for horsemen, cf. galea).**

**Cassius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., L. Cassius Longinus, consul B.C. 107 (see Cassianus).**

**Cassivellaunus, -i, [Celtic], M., a British chief ruling north of the Thames, who took command of the general resistance of his countrymen to Cæsar, but was finally reduced to submission.**

**castellum, -i, [†castrō + lum (N. of -lus)], N., a fortress, a fort, an outwork, a redoubt.**

**Casticus, -i, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Sequani.**

**castigō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [†castīgō (stem of lost adj. †castīgus, castīgus, cf. prodīgus)], 1. v. a., make pure, reform. Hence, chide, reprove.**

**castrum, -i, [√skad (cover) + trum], N., a fortress. — Plur., a camp (fortified, as was the manner of the Romans): in castris (in camp, also in service); castra ponere (pitch a camp); castra movere (break camp, move); quintis castris (after five days' journey, as the Romans encamped every night).**

**cāsus, -ūs, [√cad + tus], M., (what befalls), an accident, a chance (good or bad), a mischance: hoc ipso tempore et casu (emergency); casu (by accident, by chance); casu devenit (chanced to, etc.); quarrum rerum casus (the occurrence, the happening); eundem casum ferre (fate); belli casum sustinere (take the chances); in eiusmodi casu (a case); ad extremum casum (to the most critical position); ad omnes casus (again all accidents); in eum casum deduci (that pass).**

**Catamantaloedēs, -is, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Sequani.**

**catēna, -ae, [?], F., a chain (for prisoners), a cable: in catenas conscjict (into prison); in catenis tener.**

**Caturiges, -um, [Celtic], M. plur.,**
a people in Roman Gaul (Provincia).

**Catuvolcatus, -i, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Eburones.**

**Caurus, see Cōrus.**

**causa, -ae, [?], F., a cause, a reason, an excuse, grounds, a motive (for an act), a right (to anything): satis causae (sufficient reason). —
Abl. after a genitive, for the sake of, for the purpose of, for, on behalf of: libertatis causa; potentiae causa (to gain); praedandi causa (to, etc.); insidiarum causa (for an ambuscade); animi causa (for amusement). — Also, a cause (in law), a case: causa cognita (after trial); causa indicta (unheard); causam dicere (plead one’s cause, stand a trial, be tried); causae dictio (a trial). Hence, also, a situation, a case: Germanorum unus esse causam (the case...the same); in eadem causa (in the same situation, also, on the same side).

cautē [abl. of cautos], adv., with caution.

cautēs, -is, [akin to eos, whetstone], F., a rock (sharp or jagged), a reef.

cautus, p.p. of caveo.

Cavarillus, -i, [Celtic], m., a prince of the Hœdui.

Cavarinus, -i, [Celtic], m., one of the Senones, made their king by Caesar.

caveō, cavī, ca, tus, cavēre, [perh. √skv?], 2. v. n., bid a., be on one’s guard, guard against (something), take security (intacte).

cēdō, cessi, cessūrus, cedere, [?], 3. v. n., make way (giving place). — Fig., yield: fortunae.

celer, -eris, -ere, [√CEL (in cello) + ris], adj., swift, quick, speedy, fast: motus (sudden).

celeritās, -tās, [√celeri + tas], F., swiftness, activity, speed, promptness: ad celeritatem onerandi (to secure quick loading); itineris (quick marching).

celeriter [celeri + ter], adv., quickly, speedily, very soon, soon.

cēlō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [?], akin to clam and calligo], 1. v. a., conceal, hide: arma.— Pass., pass unnoticed.

Celteae, -ārum, [Celtic], m. plur., a great race in Gaul and Britain. — More particularly, the Celts (in a narrower sense, occupying the interior of Gaul).

Celtillus, -i, [Celtic], m., one of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix.

Cēnabēnses, -ium, [Cenabō + ensis], m. plur., the people of Cenabum.

Cēnabum (Gen-), -i, [Celtic], n., the chief city of the Carnutes, now Orléans (from its later name, urba Aurelianensis).

Centimāgnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a British tribe.

Cenomāni, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a division of the Aulerci.

cēnōs, cēnsui, cēnsus, cēnsēre, [?], 2. v. a., (perh. fine), reckon, estimate. — Less exactly, give one’s opinion, advise, decree (of the Senate), determine.

cēnsus, -ūs, [akin to cēnseō], m., a numbering, a census.

Centrōnes, see Ceutrones.

centum (C), [akin to hund-red], indecl., a hundred.

centuriō, -onis, [√centuria + o], m., a centurion. A subaltern officer from the ranks, commanding a century, originally a hundred men. There were two in a maniple, and sixty in a legion, ranking according to the numbers of the cohorts from 1 to 10, the six of the first cohort being the centuriones primorum ordinum, and the one of the first century in that cohort being primus pilus.

cernō, crēvi, crētus, cernere,
Vocabulary.

\[\sqrt{\text{cer}}\], 3. v. a., separate. Hence, distinguish, see, behold, descry. — Also, determine.

certāmen, -inis, [\text{certā-} (in certo) + men], N., a struggle, a contest, rivalry.

certē [abl. of certus], adv., certainly, surely, at least (surely what is mentioned, if nothing more).

certus, -a, -um, p.p. of cerno as adj., determined, fixed, certain (of the thing as well as the person), sure, established: certiorum facere (in tell order); certissimae res (absolutely certain facts); dies certa (an appointed day); certa subsidia (regular, as organized beforehand); certum in locum (particular).

cervus, -i, [root of cornu + vus], M., a stag.

cēspes (caesp-), -itis, [?], M., a sod (used in fortification).

cēterus, -ra, -rum, [\sqrt{\text{ce}} (in ecce, hic) + terus (cf. alter)], adj., the rest of (cf. allus, other, not including all). — Plur., the rest, the remaining, the others: frumento ceterisque rebus (everything else necessary, where allis would mean some other things).


Cevenna, -ae, [Celtic], N., the Cevennes (a woody mountain region on the west side of the lower Rhone valley).

Cherusci, -ōrum, [?], M. plur., a tribe of the Germans between the Weser and the Elbe.

Cibārīus, -a, -um, [cibo- (reduced) + arius], adj., pertaining to food. — Neut. plur. as subst., provisions: molita (ground corn).

cibus, -i, [?], M., food.

Clīerō, -onis, [cīcr + o, orig. a nickname, possibly from excrescences on the nose], M., a name of a Roman family from Arpinum. — Esp.: 1. Marcus Tullius, the great orator. — 2. Quintus (Tullius), his brother, in Cæsar's service in Gaul as legatus.

Cimbērius, -i, [akin to Climbri], M., a prince of the Suevi.

Cimbrī, -orum, [?], M. plur., a German tribe living in Jutland, who overran Gaul and made a successful inroad into the Roman dominions in the second century B.C. They were conquered at Aque Sextiae and Verceilly by Marius and Catulus, B.C. 103 and 102.


cingō, cinxī, cinctus, cingere, [?], 3. v. a., surround, encircle: flumen oppidum (run around). — Less exactly, man (occupy in a circuit, of walls).

cippus, -i, [?], M., a stake, a pillar, a post. — Apparently jocosely used of a peculiar form of palisades, boundary-posts (?).

circā [case-form (instr.) of circus (cf. circum)], adv. and prep., about, around.

circinus, -i, [circō- (cf. circum) + nus], M., a pair of compasses, a compass.

circletar [circō-ter (cf. alter)], adv. and prep., about. — Fig. (of time, number, and quantity), about (in the neighborhood of), near, not far from.

circueō, see circumereo.

circuitus, -a, -um, p.p. of circumereo.
Vocabulary.

circuitus, -tūs, [circum-itus], m., a circuit (a going round), a circuitous route, a circumference: in circuitū (all around).
circum [acc. of circē- (√KAR + cus, cf. curvus)], adv. and prep., about, around.
circumcidō, -cīdī, -cīsus, -cidere, [circum-caedo], 3. v. a., cut around, cut (the idea of around being implied in the context). — circumcīsus, -a, -um, p.p. — Fig., isolated: collis.
circumclūdō, -clūsi, -clūsus, -clūdere, [circum-clauedo], 3. v. a., enclose around, encircle, place a band around.
circumdatūs, -a, -um, p.p. of circumdo.
circumdō, -dedī, -datus, -dare, [circum-2. do], 1. v. a., put around: murus circumdatūs (encircling, thrown around). — By a confusion of ideas, surround, encircle: aciem rhedias.
circumdācō, -duxi, -ductus, -ducere, [circum-duco], 3. v. a., lead around. — Less exactly, of a line, draw around.
circumdactus, -a, -um, p.p. of circumduco.
circum (m)eō, -ii, -itus, -ire, [circum-eo], irr. v. n., go around. — Becoming active, visit, make a tour of: hiberna.
circumfundō, -fūdī, -fūsus, -fundere, [circum-fundo], 3. v. a., pour around. — Pass. (as reflexive), pour in, rush around, rush in on all sides. — Also (cf. circumdo), surround: multitudine præsidia (surround with a swarming multitude).
circumiciō, -jecī, -jectus, -icere, [circum-jacio], 3. v. a., throw around. — Esp. in a military sense, hurl around, throw around: circumjecta multitudine (assailing on all sides).
circumjectus, -a, -um, p.p. of circumjeto.
circummittō, -misi, -missus, -mittere, [circum-mitto], 3. v. a., lead around.
circummūnīō, -ivi, -itus, -ire, [circum-munio], 4. v. a., fortify around, throw fortifications around, fortify, protect (by a fortification).
circummūnītus, -a, -um, p.p. of circummunio.
circumplector, -plexus, -plecti, [circum-plector (cf. amplerctor)], 3. v. dep., embrace.
circumstētō, -stēti, no p.p., -stētere, [circum-steto], 3. v. a., stand around, flock around, rally around, surround, hem in.
circumspicīō, -spēxi, -spectus, -spicerē, [circum-spicio], 3. v. a., look about for. — Fig., think over, consider, cast about for: animo consilia (by way of investigating or divining).
circumstō, -stēti, no p.p., -stāre, [circum-sto], 1. v. a., surround.
circumvallūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of circumvallo.
circumvallō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [circum-vallo], 1. v. a., surround with walls, invest.
circumvectus, p.p. of circumveho.
circumvehō, -vēxi, -vectus, -vehere, [circum-vehō], 3. v. a., carry around. — Esp. pass. as dep., ride around.
circumveniō, -vēni, -ventus, -venīre, [circum-venio], 4. v. a., surround. — Fig. (cf. "gēi. around"), impose upon, defraud, betray, circumvent.
Vocabulary.

circumventus, -a, -um, p.p. of circumvenire.
cis [case-form (gen.?, cf. uls, obs, etc.) of ce (cf. ec-ce, cetera)], adv. and prep., this side, this side of.
Cisalpinus, -a, -um, [cis Alpes (as if cisalpi-) + nus], adj., being this side the Alps, Cisalpine: Gallia (that part of Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps).
Cisrhenanus, -a, -um, [cis Rhe-num (as if cisrheno-) + nus], adj., being this side the Rhine, this side the Rhine (as adj. phrase).—Plur. as subst., the people this side the Rhine (i.e. towards Gaul).
Cita, -ae, [perh. √Cl (in cleo) + ta (cf. nauta)], M., a Roman family name.—Only, C. Fufus, a Roman knight doing business in Cenabum.
citatus, -a, -um, p.p. of cito.
citer, -ra, -rum, [√Cl (cf. cis) + terus (reduced, cf. alter)], adj., on this side (rare and antiquated).—Usually citerior (compar.), nearer, hither (as adj.): provincia (Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps as opposed to Farther Gaul, cf. Cisalpinus).
citō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [citō- (stem of citus)], I. v. a., urge on, hurry. —citatūs, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., in haste: citatus fertur (runs at full speed).
citō [abl. of citus (from cleo)], adv., quickly: citissimē (very rapidly).
citrā [abl. or instr. (?) of citer], adv. and prep., this side, within (as opposed to beyond).
citrē [dat. of citer], adv., to this side: ultro citroque (back and forth).
civls, -is, [√Cl (in quiles) + vis (weakening of -vus), c., a citizen, a fellow-citizen.
civitās, -tātis, [civi + tas], F., the state of being a citizen, citizenship. — Esp., Roman citizenship, the Roman franchise. — Less exactly, a body of fellow-citizens, the citizens (as a body), one’s fellow-citizens, a state (composed of citizens), a city (because the city was the state), a nation, a tribe (politically): expellit ex civitate (from the country).
clam [case of stem akin to cal-go, etc.], adv. and prep., secretly.
clāmitō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [freq. of clamo, perh. √clamita (cf. nauta)], I. v. a., keep crying out, vociferate, cry out.
clāmor, āris, [clam (as if root of clamo) + or], M., a shouting, a shout, a cry, an outcry.
clandestinus, -a, -um, [unc. stem (perh. manufactured from clam) + tinus], adj., secret, clandestine.
clārus, -a, -um, [√CLA (in clamo) + rus], adj., bright, clear. — Fig., famous. — Also (of sound), loud, distinct.
clāssēs, -is, [√CLA (in clamo) + tis], F., (a summoning). — Less exactly, the army (called out). — Esp., an army (called out for duty at sea), a fleet (the most common later meaning).
Claudius, -i, [claudō+ius (prop. adj.)], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Appius Claudius, consul in B.C. 54.
claudō, claudi, clausus, claudere, [of unc. form., akin to clavis], 3. v. a., close, shut, fasten. — Esp., claudere agmen (close the line of march, bring up the rear).
clausus, -a, -um, p.p. of claudio.
clāvus, -i, [√CLA=V (cf. clando) + us], M., a nail, spike.
clêmôns, -entis, [perh. √CLA (in clarus) + mēns (cf. vehemens)], adj., (bright?), gentle (of weather).
— Fig., gentle, kind, merciful.
clémentia, -ae, [clement + ia], F., kindness, gentleness, humanity, clemency.
cliēns, -entis, [pres. p. of clueo], c., (a hearer), a dependant, a vassal, a retainer.
clientēla, -ae, [client + ēla (imitating suadela, etc.)], F., vassalage (as condition of a cliens). Hence (viewed fr. the other side), protection.—Phrases: magnae clientelae (many vassals, extensive relations of "clientage"); Remis in clientelam se dicaverunt (surrendered themselves as vassals to, etc.).
cλivus, -i, [ √CLI (in clino) + yuS], M., a slope, a declivity, an activity: ad mollieundum clivum (to make the ascent easier).
Clōdius, -i, [the popular form of Claudius], M., a Roman gentile name, belonging to the plebeian branch of the gens Claudia.—Esp., P. Clodius, a most bitter enemy of Cicero. He was killed in a fray by T. Annius Milo, who was defended by Cicero in a famous oration still extant.

Cn., abbreviation for Cnaeus.
Cnaeus, see Gnaeus.

cocacervō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [con-acervo], i. v. a., heap up, mass together, heap on top (of others).
cōactus, -a, -um, p.p. of cogo.
cōactus, -tūs, [con-actus (cf. cogo)], M., compulsion.
cōagmenteō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [coagmentō-], i. v. a., fasten together.
Cocosātes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Aquitania.

coelestis, see caelestis.

cœmō, -ēmi, -emptus, -emere, [con-emō], 3. v. a., buy up.
cōeō, -ivī, no p.p., -ire, [con-eō], irr. v. n., come together, unite.

cœpi, -isse, [con-apist (perf. of tapo, cf. apliscre)], def. v. a., (have taken hold of), began, undertook, started.—coepus, -a, -um, p.p. used in same sense as active with passive infinitives.

cōeptus, -a, -um, p.p. of coepl.
cōercreō, -ercuī, -ercitus, -ercere, [con-arcreō], 2. v. a., confine, keep in check.

cōgilī, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [con-agito (in sense of revolve, discuss)], i. v. a., consider, think over.—Esp. (as to some plan of action), think about, discuss (what to do), have an idea of, intend, consider (that something may happen), expect (contemplate the possibility): cogitare ne (see that not, think how not, plan to prevent); nihil cogitare de bello (have no thought of, etc.).

cōgnātīō, -onis, [con-(g)natio], F., connection by birth.—Concretely, a family, a clan: magnae cognationes (extensive connections, by blood).

cōgnitus, -a, -um, p.p. of cognoscō.

cōgnoscō, -gnōvi, -gnitus, -gnoscere, [con(g)noscō], 3. v. a., learn, find out, find, become aware.—Esp., investigate, inquire into, learn about, study.—In perfect tenses (cf. nosco), know, be aware: cognitum est de aliqua re (something was known); causa cognita (upon a full investigation, after trial); egregia virtute erant cogniti (had been found to be of, etc.); ad cognoscendum (for inquiry).
Vocabulary.

cōgō, coēgī, coēctus, coēgere, [con-agō], 3. v. a., bring together, collect, assemble, get together. Hence, force, compel, oblige: coactus (by compulsion).

cohors, -hortis, [con-†hortis (reduced), akin to hortus], F., an enclosure. Hence, a body of troops, a cohort (the tenth part of a legion, corresponding as a unit of formation to the company of modern tactics, and containing from 300 to 600 men).

cohortātiō, -ōnis, [con-hortatio (cf. cohortor)], F., an encouraging, encouragement. — Esp. (to soldiers), an address (almost invariably a preliminary to an engagement).

cohortor, -ātus, -āri, [con-hortor], 1. v. dep., encourage, rally, address (esp. of a commander).

collātus, see conlatus.

collaudātiō, see conlaudatio.

collaudō, see conlaudo.

collectus, see conlectus.

collīgō, see conligo, 1 and 2.

collis, -is, [?], M., a hill.

collocātus, see conlocatus.

colloco, see conloclo.

colloquium, see conloquium.

colloquor, see conloquor.

colō, colui, cultus, colere, [?], 3. v. a., till, cultivate. — Fig., attend upon, court, cultivate (as a friend), pay court to, worship (of divinities).

colōntia, -ae, [colonō + ia], F., (state of a colonist). — Concretely, a colony (both of the establishment and the persons sent). The Roman colonists were and continued to be Roman citizens, and served as armed occupants of the soil where they were sent in the interests of the mother country.

color, -ōris, [prob. akin to caligo, as opposed to white], M., color.

combūrō, -ūsī, -ūstus, -ūrere, [con-†buro(?), relation to uro very uncertain, cf. bustum], 3. v. a., burn up, consume.

comes, -itis, [con-†mitis ( √ ma in meo + tis, cf. semita)], C., a companion (esp. an inferior as attendant or follower).

cōminus [formed by some false analogy from con manus], adv., hand to hand (cf. cōminus), in close combat, at short range.

comitātus, -a, -um, p.p. of comitor.

comitium, -i, [?, perh. comit- (see comes) + ium, the assemblage of followers (cf. servitium)], N., a part of the Forum at Rome. — Plur., an election (assembly of the people for voting).

comitor, -ātus, -āri, [comit-], 1. v. dep., accompany, — comitātus, -a, -um, p.p. in pres. sense, accompanying.

commeātus, -tus, [con-meatus, cf. commemo], M., a going to and fro, an expedition (back and forth), a trip. Hence, communications (of an army). — So also, supplies (of an army), provisions.

commemorō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [con-memoro], 1. v. a., remind one of. Hence, speak of, mention, state (in a narrative).

commendō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [commend], 1. v. a., intrust, recommend, surrender.

commeō, -āvi, -āturus, -āre, [commeo], 1. v. n., go back and forth. — With ad, visit, resort to.

commissūra, -ae, [con-†missura (cf. committo)], F., a joint.

commissus, -a, -um, p.p. of committo.

committō, -misi, -missus, -mit-
Vocabulary.

tere, [con-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go (send) together or altogether). Hence join, unite, attach: proelium (engage, begin the engagement). — Also, trust: se barbaris committere (put one’s self in the hands of, etc.); nihil his committere (place no confidence in, etc.). — Also, admit, allow (to happen), commit (suffer to be done, cf. admitto), perpetrate: neque commissum a se (nothing had been done by them); committere ut possit (leave it possible); nihil committēbant (did nothing).

Commius, -i, [Celtic], m., a leader of the Atrebates.

commodē [abl. of commodus], adv., advantageously, conveniently, fitly, readily, to advantage: satis commode (to much advantage); non satis commode (not very easily).

commodus, see commodus.

commodus, -a, -um, [con-modus, see A. & G., 168 d'], adj., (having the same measure with), fitting, suitable, convenient, advantageous: commodissimum est (it is the best thing, most advantageous). — Neut. as subst., convenience, comfort, advantage, interest: commodo republicae (without prejudice to the public interests); omnibus in vita commodis (all the blessings of life); rei familiaris commodum (the interests of one’s property); quas sui quisque commodi fecerat (for his own convenience), see A. & G., 214 c.

commōnēfaciō, -feci, -fectus, -facere, [unc. case-form (of stem akin to moneo) -facio], 3. v. a., remind.

commorātus, -a, -um, p.p. of commoror.

commoror, -ātus, -āri, [con-moror], 1. v. dep., delay, stay.

commōtus, -a, -um, p.p. of commoveo.

commoveō, -mōvi, -mōtus, -move, [con-moveo], 2. v. a., move, stir, agitate. — With reflex., or in pass., be moved, move (intrans.), stir.

— Fig., disturb, agitate, affect, alarm, influence (with idea of violent feeling).

commūnicātus, -a, -um, p.p. of communico.

commūnicēō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [†communicō- (stem of †communicus, communi + cas)], 1. v. a., (make common), share, communicate, consult (with a person about a thing, and so make it common), add (a thing to another), put in along with (something else).

commūnīō, -īvi, -ītus, -īre, [communio], 4. v. a., fortify, intrench, build (make by fortification).

commūnīs, -e, [con + munis (cf. munia, duties)], adj., (having shares together), common, general, in common: ex communi consensu (by general agreement); consilium (general plan, concerted action).

commūtātīō, -onis, [con-mutatio (cf. commuto)], F., change: aestus (turn).

commūtātus, -a, -um, p.p. of commuto.

commūtō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [commuto], 1. v. a., change, exchange: studium belli agricultūra (exchange the pursuits of war for agriculture).

comparātus, -a, -um, p.p. of 1. comparo.

1. comparō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [comparo], 1. v. a., get ready, prepare, procure, gain, get together, prepare for (with a different view of the object in English): omnibus rebus
Vocabulary.

comparatis (having made all arrangements).

2. comparō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [conparo], 1. v. a., (pair together), compare.

compellō, -puli, -pulsus, -pellere, [con-pello], 3. v. a., drive together (or altogether), drive in, force, drive.

compendium, -i, [com + pendium], N., (a weighing in, cf. expendo), a saving, profit.

comperiō, -peri, -pertus, -perire, [con-pario], 4. v. a., (get together), find out (by inquiry), discover. — compertus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., certain (cf. exploratus).

compertus, -a, -um, p.p. of compereio.

complector, -plexus, -pecti, [complector], 3. v. dep., embrace, include, enclose.

compleō, -plēvi, -plētus, -plēre, [con-pleo], 2. v. a., fill up, fill. — With a different conception of the action from Eng., cover, man (of walls).

complexus, -a, -um, p.p. of complector.

complurēs, -plūra (-ia), [complus], adj. plur., very many, a great many, a great number of.

comportō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [comporto], 1. v. a., bring together.

comprehendō, -hendi, -hēnsus, -hendere, [con-prehendo], 3. v. a., seize, catch, arrest, capture, grasp (one by the hand or clothing). — Fig., take, catch (of fire).

comprehēnsus, -a, -um, p.p. of comprehendō.

comprobō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [con-probo], 1. v. a., prove, approve : consilium fortuna (justify).

compulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of compello.

cōnātum, -i, [N. p.p. of conor as pass.], N., an attempt, an undertaking.

cōnātus, -tūs, [conā- (stem of conor) + tus], M., an attempt, an effort.

cōnātus, -a, -um, p.p. of conor.

concēdō, -cēsi, -cēssus, -cēdere, [con-cedo], 3. v. a. and n., (give up a thing to one), allow, grant, assign (leave, where the rest is taken away), permit, yield the palm (to a superior), yield, make a concession.

concertō, -āvi, -āürus, -āre, [concerto], 1. v. n., contend.

concēssus, -sūs, [con-cessus (cf. concedo)], M., a concession, a permission.

concīdō, -cīdī, -cāsūrus, -cidere, [con-cado], 3. v. n., fall down, fall.

concīdē, -cīdi, -cīsus, -cidere, [con-caedo], 3. v. a., cut to pieces, cut down (kill), cut up (land by estuaries).

concillō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [concillō- (stem of concilium)], I. v. a., bring together (cf. concilium).

Hence, win over (originally by persuasion in council ?), secure (even by force), win, gain.

concilium, -i, [con-cileium (\sqrt{CAL} + ium, cf. Calendae)], N., a meeting. — Esp., an assembly (of war or state), a council, a conference : per concilium (in council).

concīō, see contio.

concisisus, -a, -um, p.p. of concido.

concītātus, -a, -um, p.p. of concito.

concitō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [concito], 1. v. a., arouse, stir up, call out (and so set in motion).

conclāmātus, -a, -um, p.p. of conclamo.
Vocabulary.

conclámo, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [conclamo], i. v. n., cry out, shout: victoriam (cogn. acc.), shout victory.

conclūdō, -clūsi, -clūsus, -clūdre, [con-cludo], 3. v. a., shut up, enclose: mare conclusum (enclosed, inland).

conclusus, -a, -um, p.p. of conclude.

Conconetodumnus, see Conetodumnus.

concrepō, -crepūi, -crepitūrus, -crepāre, [concrepo], 1. v. n., rattle, clash: armis (clash their arms, of soldiers).

concurreō, -curri (-cucurri), -currūrus, -currere, [con-curro], 3. v. n., run together, rush up, rush in, rush (advance), flock to, hasten in: conclusum est (there was a rush).

concursō, -āvi, -ātūrus, -āre, [concursus], 1. v. n., rush to and fro: concursari inbet (orders a noise of running to and fro to be made).

concursus, -a, -um, p.p. of concurreō.

concursus, -sūs, [con-cursus (cf. concurro)], m., a rushing to and fro, a dashing together (collision).— Esp., a charge, onset, a crowd running, a crowd.

condemnātus, -a, -um, p.p. of condemnō.

condémnō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [condamno], 1. v. a., condemn, find guilty.

condiciō, -onis, [condicio (cf. condico)], f., terms, condition, terms of agreement, terms of fighting, state (of slavery): ad iniquam conditionem pugnandi (to fight on unequal terms).

conditio, see condicio.

condōnō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [condono], 1. v. a., give up, pardon for the sake of.

Condūsi, -orum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Belgic tribe on the Meuse, clients of the Treveri.

condūcō, -duxi, -ductus, -ducere, [con-duco], 3. v. a., bring together, bring up (soldiers), hire: manus conducta (a band of mercenaries).

Conetodumnus (Conconet)-, -i, [Celtic], m., a leader of the Carnutes.

cōnfectus, -a, -um, p.p. of conficio.

cōnferciō, -fēsi, -fertus, -fercire, [con-farcio], 4. v. a., crowd together.

—cōnfectus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., close, crowded, dense, closely crowded, in close order, in a solid body.

cōnferō, -tuli, -lātus, -ferre, [confero], irr. v. a., bring together, get together, bring in, gather, collect.— With or without culpam, lay the blame on, charge.— With reflexive, betake one’s self, remove, take refuge.

—So with other words, fortunas (remove).— Also, postpone, delay.

cōnfectus, -a, -um, p.p. of confercio.

cōnfestim [acc. of tōcon-festis (cf. festino), adv., in haste, immediately, at once.

cōnficātiō, -ficēti, -fectus, -ficere, [confacio], 3. v. a., (do up), accomplish, complete, finish up, carry out, finish, perform.— Also, make up, write up (of a document), work up (of skins tanned).— Also (cf. Eng. “done up”), finish up, exhaust, wear out: nondum confecta hieme (when the winter was not yet spent, before the end of, etc.).— See also confiō.

cōnfidō, -fīsius sum, -fidere, [confido], 3. v. n., be confident, trust,
trust to, have confidence in, rely on,
feel assured. — confi
tus, -a, -um,
p.p. in active sense, trusting in.

confligō, -fīxi, -fīxus, -fīgere,
[con-
figo], 3. v. a., fasten together, fasten.

cōnfinis, -ē, [con-finis], adj.,
(having boundaries together, see A.
& G., 168 d.), adjacent. confines
Senonibus (neighbors of).
cōnfinium, -i [confini + ium],
N., neighborhood, confines (common
boundaries).

cōnfiō, -fīeri, -fectus, [con-fio],
irr. v. n. (used rarely as pass. of
confictō), be accomplished, etc. (see
confictō).

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, [con-firma-
tio, cf. confrmō], F., assurance,
confirmation.

cōnfirmātus, -a, -um, p.p. of
confrmo.

cōnfirmō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [con-
frmo], 1. v. a., strengthen.—Fig.,
strengthen, establish (pacem), reas-
sure, encourage, confirm, assure (by
oath): se (resolve). Hence (of things
and statements), confirm, declare.

cōnfitsus, -a, -um, p.p. of
condo.

cōnfiteor, -fessus, -fētēri, [con-
fateor], 2. v. dep., confess, acknow-
ledge, admit.

cōnfīxus, -a, -um, p.p. of confrgo.

cōnflagrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [con-
flagro], 1. v. n., be on fire, burn.

cōnflictātus, -a, -um, p.p. of
confictō.

confictō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [con-
fitcto, cf. conflīgo], 1. v. a., dash
against (one thing against another),
assail.

cōnflīgō, -fīxi, -fīctus, -fīgere,
[con-
flīgo], 3. v. a. and n., dash
against, contend, fight.

cōnfluēns, -enti, [pres. p. of
confluō], m., a meeting of two riv-
ers, confluence.

cōnfluō, -fūxi, no p.p., -ere, [con-
fluō], 3. v. n., flow together. — Less
exactly (of persons), flock together.

cōnfugō, -fugi, no p.p., -fugere,
[con-
fugio], 3. v. n., flee, take refuge.

cōnfundō, -fūdi, -fūsus, -fundere,
[con-
fundō], 3. v. a., pour together.
— Less exactly, mingle, mix indis-
criminately, unite without distinc-
tion.

congerō, -gessi, -gestus, -gerere,
[con-
gero], 3. v. a., bring together,
heap together.

congredior, -gressus, -gredi,[con-
gradior], 3. v. dep., come together.
— In peace, unite with. — Esp. in
war, come in contact with, engage,
fight.

congressus, -a, -um, p.p. of con-
gredior.

congressus, -sūs, [con-gressus,
cf. congrēdior], M., an engagement.

cōnclēo (-jclō), -jēci, -jēctus,
-icere, [con-iacio], 3. v. a., throw
together, hurl, cast, discharge: se
conicere (throw one's self, rush). —
Less exactly (esp. in a military sense),
throw (into prison), put, place, sta-
tion (cf. military throw troops into,
etc.), force.—Fig., put together (of
ideas).

conjectūra, -ae, [con-iactura,
cf. concto], F., a guess ("putting
two and two together"), a conjecture.

conjectus, -a, -um, p.p. of con-
cto.

conclēo, see conclō.

conjunctim [acc. of conjunctis
(jung as root + tis, cf. conjungo)],
adv., unitedly, in common, altogether.

conjunctus, -a, -um, p.p. of con-
jungo.
conjunx, jugis, [con-]jux (\textit{\textgreek{yuj}}, as stem, with intrusive \textgreek{n} from jun-\textit{go}), c., a spous. — Esp., f., a wife.

conjuratio, -onis, [conjuratio, cf. conjuro], f., a conspiracy, a confederacy.

conjurō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [con-\textit{uro}], i. v. n., swear together, take an oath (together), swear mutual oaths. Hence, conspire.

conlātus (coll-), -a, -um, p.p. of confero.

conlaudātus (coll-), -a, -um, p.p. of conlaudo.

conlaudio (coll-), -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [con-\textit{lando}], i. v. a., praise (in set terms).

conlēctus (coll-), -a, -um, p.p. of conligo.

conligō (coll-), -lēgi, -lēctus, -ligere, [con-\textit{lego}], 3. v. a., gather, collect, acquire (by accumulation).

— With reflexive, collect one’s self, recover.

conligō (coll-), -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [con-\textit{ligo}], i. v. a., bind together, fasten together: scuta (lock together).

conlocātus (coll-), -a, -um, p.p. of conloco.

conlocō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [con-locō], i. v. a., place, set, station (of troops, etc.): angustius milites (stow, in a vessel). — Esp. (with or without nuptum), give in marriage, marry (of a father or guardian). — Fig., settle: rebus conlocandis (making dispositions).

conloquēri, -āvitō, -āverī, -āverunt, -āvī, -āvitāre, [con-\textit{loquēri}], 3. v. dep., confer, hold an interview (or parley), parley, converse.

conlocum (coll-), -i, [con-\textit{loquium, cf. conloquor}], N., a conference, an interview, a parley.

conloquor (coll-), -locūtus, -lo-qui, [con-\textit{loquor}], 3. v. dep., confer, hold an interview (or parley), parley, converse.

conlocus, -ātus, -āri, [? con-, stem akin to onus], i. v. dep., attempt, try, endeavor: idem conari (make the same attempt).

conquēscō, -quiēvī, -quētūrus, -quiēscere, [con-\textit{quēscō}], 3. v. n., rest, repose.

conquirō, -quisīvī, -quisītus, -quīrere, [con-\textit{quaero}], 3. v. a., search for, seek for, hunt up.

conscangueus, -a, -um, [con-\textit{sanguin + eus}], adj., akin (by blood). — As subst., a kinsman.

conscendō, -scendi, -scensus, -scendere, [con-\textit{scando}], 3. v. a., climb, climb upon: naves (in naves) (go on board); vallum (man).

conscientia, -ae, [con-\textit{scientia}, cf. consciens], f., consciousness, privacy, conscience.

consciscō, -scivi, -scitus, -sciscere, [con-\textit{scisco}], 3. v. a., resolve (a political term, cf. plebiscitum). — Less exactly, with dat. of reflex., take to one’s self: mortem (commit suicide).

conscius, -a, -um, [con-\textit{scius}, \textgreek{sci} (in scio) + us], adj., knowing (with one’s self or another), conscious.

conscriptus, -a, -um, p.p. of conscribo.

consecratīus, -a, -um, p.p. of consecro.
Vocabulary.

consecrō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [con-sacро], 1. v. a., hallow, consacrate.
— consacrātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., consacrated, sacred.

consector, -ātus, -āri, [con-sector, cf. consequor], 1. v. dep., overteke.

consecūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of consequor.

consēnsīō, -onis, [con-†sensio, cf. consentio], F. n, agreement, unanimity.

consensus, -sūs, [con-sensus, cf. consentio], M., agreement, consent, harmonious (or concerted) action.

consentiō, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus, -sentīre, [con-sentīo], 4. v. n., agree, conspire, make common cause, act with (some one).

consequor, -secūtus, -sequī, [consequor], 3. v. dep., follow (and stay with), overtexe. Hence, obtain, secure, attain, succeed in (some purpose).— Also, follow close upon, succeed, ensue.

conservō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [conservō], 1. v. a., save, preserve, spare.
— Also, observe (law, right), regard.

Considius, -i, [con-‡sidius (akin to sedeо)], a Roman name.— Esp., Publius, a Roman soldier.

considō, -sēdī, -sessūrus, -sidere, [con-sido], 3. v. n., sit down (in a place).— Less exactly, take a position, halt, encamp, settle.

consiliwm, -i, [con-‡siliwm (cf. consul, akin to sallo, in some earlier unc. meaning)], N., deliberation, a council (of war, more commonly concilium).— Esp., wise counsel, prudence, discretion. Hence, a plan, counsel, design, purpose. — And so (design carried out), course, measure, conduct. — Phrases: ipsorum esse consilium (a matter for them to decide); quasi consilii sit res (as if it were a matter for consultation); commune consilium (concerted action); publicum consilium (action of the state, official action); barbaris consilium non defuit (an intelligent plan of action).

consimilis, -e, [con-similis], adj., very like, just like.

consistō, -stī, no p.p., -sisterе, [con-sisto], 3. v. n., take 1. stand, take a position, stand, keep one’s position, form (of troops).— In perf. tenses, have a position, stand. Hence, stop, halt, make a stand, hold one’s ground, run aground (of ships), remain, stay.— With in, occupy, rest on.— Fig., depend on, rest on.

consobrinus, -i, [con-sobrinus], M., first cousin (on the mother’s side).— Less exactly, (any) cousin german.

consōlātus, -a, -um, p.p. of consolor.

consolōr, -ātus, -āri, [con-solor], 1. v. dep., console.— consōlātus, -a, -um, p.p. as pres., consoling.

conspectus, -a, -um, p.p. of conspicio.

conspectus, -tūs, [con-spectus, cf. conspicio], M., sight.— in conspectu (in one’s presence); in conspectum proferre (display).

conspicātus, -a, -um, p.p. of conspicor.

conspicium, -i, [con-‡spectum (cf. consul, akin to sallo, in some earlier unc. meaning)], N., deliberation, a council (of war, more commonly concilium).— Esp., wise counsel, prudence, discretion. Hence, a plan, counsel, design, purpose. — And so (design carried out), course, measure, conduct. — Phrases: ipsorum esse consilium (a matter for them to decide); quasi consilii sit res (as if it were a matter for consultation); commune consilium (concerted action); publicum consilium (action of the state, official action); barbaris consilium non defuit (an intelligent plan of action).

consiprō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [con-spiro], 1. v. n., sound together.— Fig., harmonize. — Also, conspire, league together.
cōnstanter [constant + -ter], adv., consistently, uniformly, steadily, with constancy, firmly.

cōnstantia, -ae, [constant + -ia], F., firmness, constancy, undaunted courage.

cōnsternātus, -a, -um, p.p. of consterno.

cōnsternō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [con- + sternō (cf. sternax)], i. v. a., overwhelm. — Fig., dismay. — cōnsternātus, -a, -um, p.p., stricken with fear.

cōnsternō, -strāvi, -strātus, -sternere, [con-sterno], 3. v. a., strew over (both of the thing thrown and that over which): navis constrata (decked, fully decked, as opposed to ships only covered at the ends).

cōnstitō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [con-stipo], i. v. a., crowd, cram. — In pass. or with reflexive, crowd together.

cōnstituō, -stitui, -stitūtus, -stituere, [con-statuo], 3. v. a. and n., set up, raise, put together, make up. Hence, establish, station, arrange, draw up (aciem). — Fig., determine, appoint, agree upon, determine upon, fix, decide upon: praeemia (offer).

cōnsto, -stiti, -stāturus, -stāre, [con-sto], i. v. n., stand together. — Fig., agree (esp. of accounts): numerus (be complete). Hence, be established, appear, be agreed upon, be evident. — Also (from accounts), cost. — Also (with in), depend upon.

cōnstrātus, -a, -um, p.p. of consterno.

cōnсуēscō, -suēvi, -suētus, -suēscere, [con-suēscō], 3. v. n., become accustomed. — In perf. tenses, be accustomed, be wont. — cōnсуētus, -a, -um, p.p., accustomed, wont, used.

cōnсуētūdō, -inis, [con-+ suētudo (prob. suētus + do, as in gravēdo, libido), cf. consuesco], F., habit, custom, habits (collectively), manners, customs: victus (customary mode of living); itineris (usual manner of marching).

cōnсуētus, -a, -um, p.p. of consueco.

cōnsul, -ulus, [con-sul (cf. praesul, exsul)], root of sallo in some earlier unc. meaning], M., a consul (the title of the chief magistrate of Rome, cf. consiliolum). — With proper names in abl., the usual way of indicating dates: M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus (in the consulship of, etc.); se consul (in his consulship, as a date or occasion).

cōnсуlātus, -tūs, [†consulā- (cf. exsulco) + tus], M., consulship (cf. consul).

cōnsulō, -sului, -sultus, -sulere, [prob. consul, though poss. a kindred or independent verb], 3. v. a. and n., deliberate, consult, take counsel, decide. — With acc., consult, take the advice of. — With dat., take counsel for, consult the interests of, consult for the welfare of, look out for, do a service to: vitae (spare). — Phrase: sortibus consultum (est), (lots were drawn to decide).

cōnsultō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [con- + consulto-], i. v. n., consult: de bello (take measures for).

cōnsultō [prob. like abl. absolute used impersonally, cf. ausplicato], adv., with deliberation, purposely, designedly.

cōnsultum, -i, [N. p.p. of consulo], N., a decision, an order, a decree. — Esp., senatus consultum (an order of the senate).

cōnsūmō, -sūmpi, -sūmpitus, -sūmere, [con- + sumo], 3. v. a., (take out of the general store). Hence, waste, consume, destroy, spend, exhaust.
Vocabulary.

cōnsūmpĭtus, -a, -um, p.p. of consumo.
cōnsurgŏ, -surrēxĭ, -surrectus, -surgere, [con-surgō], 3. v. n., rise, rise up. — Esp. of a session, break up.
contabulŏ, -āvĭ, -ātus, -āre, [con-tabulō], i. v. a., build up (in stories). — Also, build up (generally, as of a wall with towers).
contāgīō, -ōnis, [con-ταγίο, cf. contingo], F., contact. — Esp. with something noxious, implying contagion.
contāminātus, a, -um, p.p. of contaminō.
contāminŏ, -āvĭ, -ātus, -āre, [contamin- (stem of contāmen, i.e. τατίμεν, i.e. tag + men)], i. v. a., bring into contact, unite. — Esp. with notion of contagion (cf. contagio), contaminate: facinore contaminatus (implicated in).
contegŏ, -tēxĭ, -tectus, -tegere, [con-tego], 3. v. a., cover up.
contemnŏ, -tempĭ, -temptus, -temnere, [con-temnō], 3. v. a., despise, disregard, hold in contempt.
contemptīō, -ōnis, [con-τεμπτίο, cf. contemnō], F., contempt: in contemptionem venire (incur the contempt, etc.).
contemptus, -tūs, [con-τεμπτʊs, cf. contemno], M., contempt, scorn: contemptui est (is a matter of ridicule).
contendŏ, -tendi, -tentus, -tendere, [con-tendo], 3. v. n., strain, struggle, strive, try, endeavor, exert one’s self, attempt, be zealous: id contendere et laborare (strive and exert one’s self for that). — Esp. with verbs of motion, press on, hasten. — Also, fight, contend, wage war. — With ad and in like constructions, hasten, march, start to go (in haste);
vi contendere (to force a passage);
petere contendit (seek earnestly).
contentīō, -ōnis, [con-τεντίο, cf. contendō], F., struggle, efforts. — Esp., contest, fighting.
contentus, -a, -um, p.p. of contendō and contineō.
contestātus, -a, -um, p.p. of contestor.
contestor, -ātus, -āri, [con-testor], i. v. dep., call to witness.
contexŏ, -texuĭ, -textum, -texere, [con-texo], 3. v. a., interweave, weave together. — Also, weave (make by weaving).
contextus, -a, -um, p.p. of contexo.
continēns, -entis, pres. p. of contineō, which see.
continenter [continent + ter], adv., continually, without stopping, continuously.
continelltia, -ae, [continent + ia], F., self-restraint.
continēō, -tinuĭ, -tentus, -tīnerē, [con-teneo], 2. v. a., hold together, hold in. Hence, in many fig. meanings, restrain, hold in check, keep (within bounds), hem in, retain (in something). — Pass. or with reflex., keep within, remain, be included in, be bounded, consist in (be contained in). — Also, hold on to, join. — continēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., (holding together), continual, contiguous, continuous: continenti impetu (with one continuous rush). — As subst., the continuous land, the continent. — Also, restraining one’s self, continent.
continŏntia, -ae, [continere + ia], F., continuous weapon.
continuātīō, -ōnis, [continuā-
Vocabulary.

(see continuō) + tio], F., continuation: continuatio imbruum (incessant rains).
continuō [abl. of continuus], adv., immediately, straightforward, forthwith.
continuus, -a, -um, [con-†tenuus (√ten in teneo + uus)], adj., continuous, successive; dies (successive).
contio, -onis, [prob. for conventio], F., an assembly. — Less exactly, an address (to an assembly or to soldiers).
contiōnātus, -a, -um, p.p. of contionor.
contiōnor, -ātus, -āri, [contion-], 1. v. dep., harangue, address (an assembly or an army).
contrā [unc. case-form (instr.?) of †conterus (con + terus), cf. superus, supra], adv. and prep., opposite, contrary to, against, in opposition, on the other hand: contrā atque (contrary to what, etc.).
contrahō, -traxī, -tractus, -tragere, [con-traho], 3. v. a., draw together, draw in, bring together, gather together, contract, narrow, make smaller, bring into smaller compass.
contrārius, -a, -um, [†conterō- (see contra) + arius], adj., opposite (lit. and fig.), contrary: ex contrario (on the contrary); in contrariam partem (in the opposite direction).
contrōversia, -ae, [controversō + ia], F., a dispute, a quarrel. — Plur., grounds of quarrel.
contumēlia, -ae, [unc. form, akin to contumax and tumeo], F., (swelling pride?), an outrage, an insult, an affront. — Fig., violence (of waves).
convalēscō, -valui, no p.p., -valēscere, [con-†valesco], 3. v. n., recover, get well.

convallis, -is, [con-vallis], F., a valley (enclosed on all sides). — Less exactly, a defile, a valley (of any kind).
convectus, -a, -um, p.p. of convello.
convēhō, -vexī, -vectus, -vehere, [con-vehō], 3. v. a., bring together, bring in.
convenīō, -vēnī, -ventus, -venīre, [con-venio], 4. v. a. and n., come together, meet, assemble, come in, arrive, agree upon, agree. — With acc., meet, come to. — Also, of things, be agreed upon, be fitting, be necessary (in a loose sense in Eng.).
conventus, -tūs, [con-†ventus (cf. convenio and adventus)], M., an assembly, a meeting. — Esp., an assise (the regular assembly of Roman citizens in a provincial town on stated occasions, at which justice was dispensed).

conversus, -a, -um, p.p. of convertō.
convertō, -vertī, -versus, -vertere, [con-vertō], 3. v. a., turn about, turn. — Fig., change: signa (change front, wheel); conversa signa bipartio intulerunt (wheeled and charged the enemy in two directions); conversa signa in hostes inferre (face about and charge, etc.); in fugam conversa (put to flight); conversam [materiam] ad hostem collocabat (placed [fallen trees] with their tops towards the enemy); contra vim fluminis (against the current); itinere converso (altering his course); mentes conversae sunt (their state of mind was changed).

Convictoltāvis, -is, [Celtic], M., a young Hæduan nobleman.

convictus, -a, -um, p.p. of convincō.
convincō, -vīcī, -victus, -vincere, [con-vinco], 3. v. a., prove, make good (a charge, etc.): avaritia convicta (found guilty of avarice, changing the point of view for the Eng. idiom).

convocō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [con-vocō], i. v. a., call together, summon, call (a council).

coorlor, -ortus, -orīri, [con-orior], 3. v. dep., arise, spring up, break out (of a war).

coortus, -a, -um, p. p. of coorlor.

cōplā, -ae, [tōpī- (con-opēs) + iā, cf. inopīa, inops], F., abundance, plenty, supply (both great and small), quantity, number. — Esp., luxury (abundance of everything). — Plur. (esp. of forces), forces, resources, supplies. — Phrases: copiam facere (afford a supply, give an opportunity); magna copia locorum (choice); copia atque usus (necessary supplies).

cōpīōsus, -a, -um, [copia (reduced) + osus], adj., well supplied, wealthy.

cōpula, -ae, [con-tāpula (from ἅπα, cf. querulus)], F., (holding together), a grappling-hook.

cor, cordis, [root as stem (akin to Eng. heart)], N., the heart. — Phrase: cordi esse (be dear).

cōram [unc. case, formed from con and os], adv. and prep., present, in person.

corium, -i, [?], N., a hide, a skin.

cornū, -ūs, [?], N., a horn. — Fig., a wing (of an army).

corōna, -ae, [?], F., a garland. — Fig., a circle (line, of soldiers) — Phrase: sub corona (at auction, the garland being the symbol of a captive for sale at auction).

corpus, -orīs, [unc. root + us], N., the body, the person. — Also, a body (dead). — Less exactly, extent (of a camp). — Phrase: magnitudo corporis (size).

corrumpō, -rūpi, -ruptus, -rumpere, [con-rumpō], 3. v. a., spoil, ruin.

cortex, -icus, [?], M. (also F.), bark.

Cōrus (Caurus), -i, [?], M., the north-west wind.

cotidiānus (quo-), -a, -um, [cotidie + anus], adj., daily: cotidiāno labore.

cotidiē (quot-), [quot-die, loc. of dies], adv., daily, every day.

Cotta, -ac, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, one of Caesar’s legati in Gaul.

Cotuātus, -i, [?], M., (a doubtful reading), a chief of the Carnutes.

Cotus, -i, [Celtic], M., a young Hæduan nobleman.

crassitūdō, -inis, [crassō + tudo (as if crassitu + do), cf. consuetudo], F., thickness.

Crassus, -i, [crassus, fat], M., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. Marcus (Licinius) Crassus, consul with Pompey, B.C. 55; one (with Caesar and Pompey) of the combination called the Triumvirate. — 2. Publius Crassus (called Adulescens, the Younger, only as distinguished from his father), son of the Triumvir, serving with Caesar in Gaul as commander of cavalry. — 3. Marcus Crassus, another son of the Triumvir, questor, B.C. 54, in Caesar’s army.

crātēs, -is, [?], F., a hurdle, a fascine (a hurdle used to hold up earthworks in fortification). — Also, wicker (for hurdles).

creātus, -a, -um, p. p. of creo.
Vocabulary.

Crēber, -bra, -brum, [crē- (in creo) + ber (cf. saluber)], adj., thick, close, numerous, frequent: arbores (thickly growing); praesidia (continuous, not far apart, at short intervals).

Crēbrō [prob. abl. of creber], adv., frequently, constantly, in rapid succession, at short intervals.

Crēdō, crēdī, crēditus, crēdere, [tēred (faith, of unc. formation) + do (place)], 3. v. a. and n., trust, entrust, believe, suppose.

Cremnō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [?], i. v. a., burn, consume.

Crēō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [unc. form, akin to cresco], i. v. a., (cause-to grow), create.—Esp., elect, choose.

Crēs, Crētis, [Gr. Kpēs], m., a Cretan.

Crēscō, crēvi, crētus, crēscere, [stem crē (also in creo) with -seo], 3. v. n., grow, increase, swell (of a river), be swollen, increase in influence (of a man).

Crīmen, -minis, [crī- (stem akin to cerno) + men], n., (a decision).—Less exactly, a charge, a fault, a crime.

Crīnīs, -is, [?], m., the hair.

Criticāntus, -ī, [Celtic], m., a chief of the Arvernii.

Cruciātus, -tūs, [cruciā- (stem of crucio) + tūs], m., crucifying. Hence, torture.—With a change of relation, suffering (of the person tortured).


Crūdēllītas, -tās, [crudelītās]. F., cruelly.

Crūdēlīter [crudeli + ter], adv., cruelly, with cruelty.

Crūs, crūris, [?], n., the leg.

Cubile, -is, [tēbubī- (stem akin to cumbo) + lis (cf. crudelis), n. of adj.], n., a couch, a resting-place, a bed, a lair.

Cujusque modi, see quisque and modus.

Culmen, -inis, [unc. root (in celo?) + men], n., a height, a top, a summit, a roof.

Culpa, -ae, [?], f., a fault, blame, guilt.

Cultus, -tūs, [v/col. (in colo) + tūs], m., cultivation.—Esp. of one’s self, care (corporis). Hence, civilization, manner of life, state of civilization.

Cum [? another form of con-], prep., with.

Cum (quom), [case-form (prob. acc.) of qui], conj., when, while, whenever.—Often rendered by a different construction in Eng.: cum non possit (not being able); cum prohibent (while defending).—Of logical relations (usually with subj.), when, while, since, inasmuch as, though, although: cum ... tum (while ... so also); cum ... tum maxime (not only ... but especially).

Cunctātiō, -onis, [cunctā (stem of cunctor) + tō], F., hesitation, reluctance, indisposition to fight.

Cunctor, -ātus, -āri, [?], i. v. dep., hesitate, hang back, be reluctant: non quin (have no hesitation in, etc.).

Cunctus, -a, -um, [for conlunctus ?], adj., all.

Cuneātīm [cuneā- (reduced) + atim, as if acc. of *cuneatīs], adv., in the shape of a wedge. —Esp. of soldiers, in (a peculiar wedge-shaped) column of attack.

Cunous, -i, [akin to conus], m., a wedge.
Vocabulary.

cuniculus, -i [Gr. κούκλος], m., (a cony). — Transferred, a burrow. Hence, a mine (esp. in a military sense).

cupidē [abl. of cupidus], adv., eagerly, zealously, earnestly.

cupiditās, -ātis, [cupidō + tās], f., desire, eagerness, greed: cupiditate adductus (through over seal).

cupidus, -a, -um, [noun stem akin to cuplo + dus], adj., eager, desirous, longing (for), fond of, ambitious (for), with a passion (for).

cupīō, -pīvi, -pītus, -pere, [partly root verb, partly from *tupi- (cf. cupidus)], 3. (and 4.) v. a. and n., be eager (for), be anxious, desire (stronger than volo). — With dat., wish well to, be zealous for. — Phrase: cupientibus signum dat (gives the signal to his impatient soldiers).

cūr (quōr), [perfh. for qua re], adv., why (rel. and interr.).

cūra, -ae, [for *tēavira, akin to caveo], F., care, anxiety, attention: curae alicui esse (be one's care, object of one's attention).

Curiosolitae, ārum, reading for the following: —

Curiosolites, -tum, [Celtic], m. plur., a people of Armoric Gaul.

cūrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [cura], i. v. a. and n., take care. — With gerundive, cause (to be done), have (done).

curro, cucurri, cursuros, curriere, [? for *turro], 3. v. n., run.

currus, -ūs, [√cur (?) + us, cf. curro], m., a chariot (= essedum).

cursus, -sūs, [√cur (? + tus, cf. curro], m., a running, running; speed, a run (in concrete sense), a course (space or direction run): cursum adaequare (keep up with); cursu incitato or magno (at full speed); eodem cursu (with the same impetus, without stopping); in hoc medio cursu (midway of this passage, from Britain to Ireland).

custōdia, -ae, [custod + ia], f., custody, guard (state of being guarded). — Plur. (concretely), guards, keepers.

custōdiō, -ivi, -itus, -ire, [custod-, as if custodi-], 4. v. a., keep under guard, guard.

custōs, -tōdis, [unc. stem + dis (cf. merces-ōdis, palus-ōdis)], c., a guard, a watchman, a keeper.

D.

d., see a. d.

D [half of Φ, CI = M], 500.

D, abbrev. for Decimus.

Dācus, -a, -um, [?], adj., Dacian (of the Dacians, a people of Thrace, north of the Carpathian Mts., occupying parts of Hungary, Galicia, Wallachia, etc.). — Plur., the Dacians (the people).

damnātus, -a, -um, p.p. of damnō.

dannō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [damnō-], i. v. a. (fine), find guilty, condemn.

dannum, -i, [?; √da + menus (cf. alumnus)], N., (fine), loss.

Dānubius (-plus), -i, [?], m., the Danube, the great river flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea.

datus, -a, -um, p.p. of do.

dē [unc. case-form of pron. stem DA (in idem, dum)], prep. with abl., (down, only in comp. as adv.), down from, off from, from, away from. Hence, qua de causa (for which reason); de populo mereor (deserve well or ill of, properly win from); de consilio (by, cf. ex). —
Esp. in partitive sense, out of, of: pauci de nostris. — Also (cf. Eng. of), about, of (about), in regard to, concerning, for: de regno desperrare; nihil de bello timere (have no fear of war); de potentatu contendere; de injuria satisfacere.

— In expressions of time, just after, about: de tertia vigilia. — Often with verbs of sense which may take acc.: sentio de (learn, discover). — Phrases: de improviso (of a sudden). — In comp., down, off, away, through (cf. debeo, decerto).

débeo, -buí, -bitus, -bère, [de-habeo], 2. v. a., (have off of one's possessions), owe, be bound, ought, cannot help: judicari debere (might well be, etc.). — Pass., be due, be owing.

décēdō, -cēsī, -cessūrus, -cēdere, [de-cedo], 3. v. n., (make way off, cf. cedo), retire, withdraw, withdraw from, shun. — Esp. (from life), die.

decem [?], indecl. adj., ten.

déceptus, -a, -um, p.p. of declpio.

décernō, -crēvi, -crētus, -cernere, [de-cerno], 3. v. a. and n., (decide off, so as to clear away), decide, determine, decree, order (as a result of determination).

décertō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [de-certo], 1. v. a. and n., contend (so as to close the contest), decide the issue, try the issue (of war), carry on war, fight (a general engagement): pugna (risk a decisive battle).

dēcessus, -sūs, [de-cessus, cf. decedo and incessus], M., withdrawal, departure: aestus (ebb, fall).

Decetia, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city of the Hædui, on the Loire.

dēcidō, -cidi, no p.p., -cidere, [de-cado], 3. v.n., fall off (or down), fall (from one's horse).

decimānus, see decumanus.

decimus, -a, -um, [decem- (as stem of decem) + mus], adj., tenth.

— Masc. as subst., a Roman prænomen (see Brutus).

déclīpio, -cēpī, -ceptus, -cipere, [de-capio], 3. v. a., (take off, catch), beguile, deceive.

déclārō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [declaro], 1. v. a., (clear off), make plain, declare (decide and state).

déclivis, -es, [de-clivis (or clivus weakened)], adj., sloping down, inclined. — Plur. as subst., slopes.

déclivitās, -tātis, [declivi + tas], F., slope: ad declivitatem (downward).

décretum, -i, [prop. N. of decretus], N., a decree, a decision.

décretus, -a, -um, p.p. of decremento.

decumānus, -a, -um, [decumō (reduced) + anus], adj., belonging to the tenth: porta (the rear gate, of a camp, where the tenth cohort was posted).

decurīō, -onis, [decuria- (reduced) + o], M., a commander (of a decuria of cavalry, a small squadron).

decurrō, -curri (cucurri), -cursūrus, -currere, [de-curro], 3. v. n., run down, run away, hurry off.

decus, -oris, [unc. root (cf. decet) + us], N., honor, glory.

dēdecus, -oris, [de-decns], N., disgrace, dishonor.

dēditiclus, -a, -um, [dedītō (reduced) + eius], adj., surrendered.

— Plur. as subst., prisoners (taken by surrender), subjects, persons surrendered.
đēdītō, -ōnis, [de-datio, cf. dedo], F., surrender: in deditio-
em accipere (receive one's sur-
render).

dēdītus, -a, -um, p.p. of dedo.
dēdō, -didi, -ditus, -dere, [de-do],
3. v. a., give over, surrender, give up. — In pass. or with reflex., sur-
render one's self, submit.

dēdūcō, -dūxi, -ductus, dūcere,
[de-duco], 3. v. a., lead down or off,
lead away, withdraw, draw off (praes-
idia), take away (of men), bring
away, lead (from one place to an-
other), bring (into a situation). —
Fig., induce, bring, lead. — Esp. of
ships, launch (draw down); of
women, marry (used of the man);
of things, bring, draw, turn. So,
raise (a man to fortune). — Also,
rem in periculum (cause a perious
situation); re in controversiam
deducta (coming to, etc.); deduci
milites (march out, led by their
commander).

dēductus, -a, -um, p.p. of deduco.
dēfatigātō, see defetigatio.
dēfatigō, see defetigō.
dēfectō, -ōnis, [de-factio, cf.
deficito], F., falling off, defection,
falling away, revolt.

dēfendō, -fendi, -fensus, -fendere,
[de-fendo], 3. v. a., ward off, de-
fend one's self against. — Also, with
changed relation, defend, protect.

dēfēnsīo, -ōnis, [de-fensio, cf.
defendo], F., a defence.

dēfensor, -ōris, [de-fensor, cf.
defendo], M., a defender. — Also, a
means of defence. — Phrase: speci-
em defensorum (a show of defence).

dēferō, -tuli, -lātus, -ferre, [de-
fero], irr. v. a., carry down, carry
away, bring, land (of ships). —
Pass., be borne down or on, drift (of
ships), turn aside: delati in scro-
bes (falling). — Fig., confer upon,
put in one's hands, report, lay before.

dēfessus, -a, -um, p.p. of de-
fetiscor.
dēfetigātō, -ōnis, [de-fatiga-
tio], F., exhaustion.
dēfetigātus, -a, -um, p.p. of de-
fetigo.
dēfetigō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [de-
fatigo], 1. v. a., wear out, exhaust,
worry, tire out.

dēfetiscor, -fessus, -fetisci, [de-
faticor], 3. v. dep., crack open.—
Fig., become exhausted.— dēfes-
sus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., exhausted:
defesso (an exhausted man).

dēficiō, -feci, -fectus, -ficere, [de-
facio], 3. v. a. and n., fail, fall away,
revolt, fall off, abandon (with ab):
animo (despond).

dēfigō, -fixi, -fixus, -figere, [de-
FIGO], 3. v. a., fix (in or down), plant,
set, fasten, drive down.

dēfinīō, -ivi, -itus, -icre, [de-finio],
4. v. a., set limits to, fix, appoint.

dēfixus, -a, -um, p.p. of dēfigo.

dēfluō, -flūxi, -fluxūrus, -fluere,
[de-fluo], 3. v. n., flow down, flow
apart, divide (of a river).

dēfore, see desum.

dēformis, -e, [de-forma, weak-
ened and decl. as adj.], adj., un-
conely, unshapely, ugly, bad-looking.

dēfugīō, -fugi, -fugītūrus, -fugere,
[de-fugio], 3. v. a. and n., fly from,
avoid, fly.

dēlieō (dēlie-), -iēci, -iectus,
icere, [de-jacio], 3. v. a., cast down,
throw down, drive off, drive out, dis-
lodge, kill (pass. fall), overthrow,
throw on shore (of ships), deprive,
reduce.

dēinceps [dein- + ceps, cf. prin-
ceps], adv., in succession.
Vocabulary.

delné (deln) [de-indé], adv., then, next.
délectus, -tūs, [de-jactus], M., a declivity, a slope.
déjicloš, see delcio.
délecto, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [de-lecto], I. v. a., delight. — Pass., take delight, delight.

délectus, -tūs, [de-lectus, cf. deligo], M., a levy, a conscription.
délectus, -a, -um, p.p. of deligo.
delēō, -lēvi, -lētus, -lēre, [de-ľeō (akin to līno)], 2. v. a., (smear out), blot out, swipe out (of a disgrace). — Fig., annihilate, destroy.
delētus, -a, -um, p.p. of deleo.
deliberō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [de-libero], perh. akin to libra], I. v. a., and n., discuss, consult, deliberate: re deliberata (after discussing the matter).
delibrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [†de-librō- (adj. de-liber)], I. v. a., peel, strip (of bark).
delictum, -ī, [N. p.p. of delinquo], N., thing left undone, failure, offence.
delīgātus, -a, -um, p.p. of deligo (-āre).
delīgō, -legi, -lectus, -ligere, [de-lego], 3. v. a., choose out, select. —
delictus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., chosen, picked.
delīgō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [deligo], 1. v. a., tie down, moor, tie.
delītescō, -litiu, no p.p., -litescere, [de-latessco], 3. v. n., hide away, hide, skulk.
demenisia, -ae, [dement + ia.], f., madness, folly.
demensus, -a, -um, p.p. of demeto.
demeto, -messui, -messus, -metere, [de-meto], 3. v. a., reap, cut down.
demigrō, -āvi, -ātūrus, -āre, [de-migrō], I. v. n., move away (change residence), move one’s effects.
dēminuō, -uī, -ūtus, -ure, [de-minuo], 3. v. a. and n., diminish, curtail, lessen, detract: de voluntate quicquam (make any diminution of): quid de legibus (disregard in any manner); de sua benevolentia (lessen his good-will).
dēminuētus, -a, -um, p.p. of deminuo.
dēmittō, -misi, -missus, -mittere, [de-mitto], 3. v. a., let go down (cf. mittō), let down, stick down (at the bottom of a ditch). — In pass. or with reflex., let one’s self down, descend, set one’s self down. — Fig., despund (se animo), be discouraged. — dēmissus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., low-hanging (bowed, of the head).
dēmō, dēmpsi, dēmpitus, dēmere, [de-emo, taker], 3. v. a., take down, take off.
dēmonsētrātus, -a, -um, p.p. of demonstrō.
dēmonsētrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [demonstro], I. v. a., point out, show, represent, mention, state, speak of.
dēmorōr, -ātus, -āri, [de-moror], 1. v. dep., delay, retard (interfere with).
dēnum [acc. of †dēmus (superl. of de), nethermost, last], adv., at last, at length (not before).
dēnegō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [denego], I. v. a. and n., deny, refuse, say not.
dēni, -ae, -a, [for decni, decem reduced + nus], adj. plur., ten each, ten (on each side), ten (in sets of ten).
dēnique [†denō- (de + nus, cf. demum) que], adv., at last: molto denique die (not till late, etc.). — Of order, finally. — Of preference, at any rate (if no better, etc.).
Vocabulary.

dēns, dentis, [? , cf. tooth (for /toθ/)] , m. , a tooth.

dēnsus, -a , -um , [? , adj. , thick , crowded , dense.

dēnuntiō , -āvi , -ātus , -āre , [de-nuntio] , 1. v. a. , announce (with notion of threat) , declare , warn.

dēpellō , -puli , -pulsus , -pellere , [de-pello] , 3. v. a. , drive off , drive (away) , dislodge , avert.

dēperdō , -didi , -ditus , -dere , [de-perdo] , 3. v. a. , lose , be deprived of : tantum opinionis (forfeit).


dēpōnō , -posui , -positus , -pōnere , [de-pono] , 3. v. a. , lay down , lay aside , deposit. — Fig. , lose , abandon (hope) , blot out (memory) , resign.

dēpopulātus , -a , -um , p.p. of depopular. 

dēpopulor , -ātus , -āri , [de-populor] , 1. v. v. dep. , ravage , lay waste.

dēportō , -āvi , -ātus , -āre , [de-porto] , 1. v. a. , carry off , carry away , remove.


dēpositus , -a , -um , pp. of depone.

dēprecātor , -ōris , [de-precator , cf. deprecor] , m. , a mediator (to beg off something for somebody) : eo deprecatore (by his mediation).

dēprecor , -ātus , -āri , [de-precor] , 1. v. dep. , pray to avert something , pray (with accessory notion of relief) , beg , beg off , pray for pardon , pray to be spared , resort to prayers.

dēprehendō , -hendi , -hensus , -hendere , [de-prehendo] , 3. v. a. , capture , catch , seize , take possession of. — As in Eng. , catch (come upon) , surprise.

dēprehēnsus , -a , -um , p.p. of deprehendo.


dēpulsus , -a , -um , p.p. of depello.

dērivātus , -a , -um , p.p. of derivo.

dērivō , -āvi , -ātus , -āre , [perh. immediately fr. de-rīvus] , prob. through adj-stem , 1. v. a. , draw off (water) , divert.

dērogō , -āvi , -ātus , -āre , [de-rogo] , in its political sense , 1. v. a. , take away , withdraw.

dēscendō , -scendi , -scēnsūrus , -scendere , [de-scendo] , 3. v. n. , climb down , descend. — Fig. , resort to , have recourse to , adopt (with ad).

dēsecō , -secui , -sectus , -secāre , [de-seco] , 1. v. a. , cut off.

dēserō , -serui , -sertus , -serere , [de-sero] , 3. v. a. , disunite. — Esp. , abandon , forsake , give up , leave in the lurch. — dēser tus , -a , -um , pp. as adj. , deserted , solitary.

dēsertor , -ōris , [de-serotor , cf. desero] , m. , a deserter.

dēser tus , -a , -um , p.p. of desero.

dēsiderātus , -a , -um , p.p. of desidero.

dēsiderō , -āvi , -ātus , -āre , [? , cf. considero] , 1. v. a. , feel the want of , desire , miss , need , desire (want to see) , lose (of soldiers) . — Pass. , be missing (lost) : perpauci desiderati quin cuncti , etc. (all with very few exceptions).

dēsidia , -ae , [desid- (stem of deses , de- /sed as stem) ] , f. , idleness , sloth.

dēsignātus , -a , -um , p.p. of designo.
Vocabulary.

dēsignō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [designo], I. v. a., mark out, indicate, mean.
dēsillō, -silui, -sultus, -silire, [desilium], 4. v. n., leap down, leap (down), jump overboard.
dēsislō, -stiti, -stiturus, -sistere, [desistere], 3. v. n., stand off, cease, stop, desist from, abandon: fuga (cease flying).
dēspectus, -a, -um, p.p. of despicio.
dēspectus, -tūs, [despectus, cf. despicio], m., a view down, view (from a height): oppidum haberet despectum (a precipice).
dēspērātiō, -ōnis, [desperatio, cf. despero], f., despair, desperation.
dēspērātus, -a, -um, p.p. of despero.
dēspērō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [despereo], Ⅰ. v. n. (but see below), cease to hope, despair. — dēspērātus, -a, -um, as passive, despairsed of. — Also as adj., (hopeless ?, perh. orig. despairsed of ), hence desperate.
dēsplicō, -spēxī, -spectus, -spicare, [de-specio], 3. v. a. and n., look down, look down upon. — Fig. (cf. Eng. equivalent), look down upon, despise.
dēspollō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [despollo], I. v. a., strip off. — With change of relation, strip (also fig., as in Eng.).
dēstinātus, -a, -um, p.p. of destino.
dēstinō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [perh. desinā- (a prop. de-ventius)], 1. v. a., fasten, make fast, make firm, get fast hold of, catch firmly. Hence, fig., fix upon, appoint, choose, destine.
dēstituō, -tui, -tūtus, -tuere, [destituere], 3. v. a., set apart (from one’s self), abandon, desert.
dēstitūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of destituuo.
dēstrictus, -a, -um, p.p. of stringo.
dēstringō, -strinxi, -strictus, -stringere, [de-stringo], I. v. a., strip off. — Also (cf. despello), strip, draw (of swords, stripping them of their scabbards).
dēsum, -fui, futūrus, esse, [de-sum], irr. v. n., (be away), be wanting, be lacking, fail. — Esp., fail to do one’s duty by, etc. — Often, lack (changing relation of subj. and following dat.), be without, not have.
dēsuper [de super], adv., from above.
dēterlor, -us, [compar. of dexter (de + terus, cf. interior)], adj., (farther down), inferior, worse: deteriora vectigalia facere (im-pair).
dēterreō, -terruī, -territus, -terreē, [de-terreo], 2. v. a., frighten off, deter, prevent (esp. by threats, but also generally).
dētestātus, -a, -um, p.p. of destestor.
dētestor, -ātus, -āri, [de-testor], I. v. a., (call the gods to witness to prevent something), entreat (from a thing). — Also, curse.
dētimeō, -tinui, -tentus, -tinēre, [de-teneo], 2. v. a., hold off, detain, delay.
dētractō (-tracto), -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [de-tracto], I. v. a., (hold off from one’s self), avoid, shun.
dētractus, -a, -um, p.p. of detraho.
dētrahō, -trāxi, -tractus, -trahere, [de-traho], 3. v. a., drag off, snatch (away). — With less violence, take away, take off, withdraw (with no violence at all).
dētrectō, see detracto.

dētrimentōsus, -a, -um, [detrimentō- (reduced) + osus], adj.,
detrimental.

dētrimentum, -i, [de-triment-um (tri- in tero + mentum), cf.
detero], N., (a rubbing off), loss, injury. — Esp., defeat, disaster.

dētrūdō, -trūsī, -trūsus, -trūdere, [de-trudo], 3. v. a., shove off, strip
off, thrust off: seclusis tegmenta
(remove the coverings in which the
metal shields of the Romans were
kept).

dēturbātus, -a, -um, p.p. of de-
turbo.

dēturbō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [de-
turbo], 1. v. a., drive off (in confu-
sion).

deūrō, -ūssī, -ūustum, -ūreere, [de-
uro], 3. v. a., burn off.

dēus, -i, [akin to divus, Jovis,
diles], m., a god.

deūstus, -a, -um, p.p. of deuro.

dēvehō, -vēxī, -vectus, -vehere,
[de-vehō], 3. v. a., carry away,
bring (away, e.g. on horseback).

dēveniō, -vēnī, -venīrūsus, -venire,
[de-venio], 4. v. n., come away, land
(come down from the sea), come
(from one place to another).

dēvexus, -a, -um, [prop. a p.p.
of deveho], adj., sloping. — Neut.
plur. as subst., slopes, hillsides.

dēvictus, -a, -um, p.p. of de-
vineo.

dēvincō, -vīcī, -victus, -vincere,
[de-vineo], 3. v. a., conquer (so as
to prostrate), subdue (entirely).

dēvocō, -āvī, -ālus, -āre, [de-
voco], 1. v. a., call down (or away).
— Esp., fig., invite, bring: fortunas
in dubium.

dēvōtus, -a, -um, p.p. of de-
voeo.

dēvoveō, -vōvī, -vōtus, -vovere,
[de-voveo], 2. v. a., vow (away). —
Less exactly, devote. — dēvōtus, -a,
-um, p.p. as subst., a devoted fol-
lower (sworn to die with his com-
panion).

dexter, -era, -erum, [unc. stem
(perh. akin to digitus? + terus),
adj., right (in the right hand). —
dextra, F., (sc. manus), the right
hand (esp. used as a pledge of faith,
as with us).

Diablintres (-tes), -um, [Celtic],
M. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of
the Aulerici.

diciō (less correctly dit-), -ōnis,
[stem akin to dico + o, cf. legio],
F., (command, cf. Eng. “say”), do-
minion, sway.

dicō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [dico-
(cf. causi-dicus)], 1. v. a., adjudge, as-
sign (in some legal manner). — Less
exactly (esp. with reflex.), assign,
make over: se in clientelam (bind
one’s self; attach one’s self); se in
servitutem (surrender).

dicō, dixi, dictus, dicere, [√dic,
in dico and -dicus], 3. v. a. and n.,
(point out?, cf. Gr. ἐλέγξωμι), say,
speak, name. — Esp., with authority,
name, appoint, fix: jus (administer,
cf. dico); sententiam (give). —
Special uses: diount (they say);
causam dicere (plead one’s cause,
hence be tried, be brought to trial).
— See also dictum.

dictiō, -ōnis, [dic (as root of
dico) + tio], F., a speaking, a plead-
ing (cf. dico): causae (pleading
one’s cause, trial).

dictum, -i, [N. p.p. of dico], N.,
a thing said, a statement, a remark,
a command: dicto audiens esse
alicui (be obedient, obey).

didūcō, -dūxi, -ductus, -ducere,
Vocabulary.

[dis-duco], 3. v. a., draw apart, lead apart, separate, divide.

diēs, -ei, [prob. for dives, √DVU + as], M. (rarely F. in some uses), a day (in all Eng. senses). — Also, time: in dies (from day to day, with idea of increase or diminution): diem ex die ducere (put off a thing day after day); dies longior (a later time).

differō, distulī, dilātus, differre, [dis-fero], irr. v. a. and n., bear apart, spread. — Also, postpone, defer, differ.

difficilis, -e, [dis-facilis], adj., not easy, difficult.

difficultās, -tātis, [difficili-(weakened) + tās], F., difficulty: magna difficultate afficiebatur (was much troubled); rei frumentarīae (difficulty of supplying grain).

dificulter [difficili-(weakened) + ter], adv., with difficulty.

diffidō, -fīsus sum, -fidere, [dis-fido], 3. v. n., distrust, not have confidence.

diffundō, -fūdī, -fīsus, -fundere, [dis-fundo], 3. v. a., spread out.

digitus, -ī, [?], M., a finger: pollex (the thumb). — As in Eng., a finger's breadth, a finger (as a measure).

dignitās, -tātis, [dignō + tās], F., worthiness, worth, dignity, prestige, position (superior); tribuere (have respect for).

dignus, -a, -um, [?, perh. root of dico + nus], adj., worthy.

dijūdicātus, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [dis-iudico], 1. v. a. and n., decide (between two).

dilēctus, -a, -um, p.p. of diligo.

diligēns, -entis, [pres. p. of diligo], adj., careful, diligent.

diligenter [diligent + ter], adv., carefully, with care, with exactness, exactly, with pains: conservavit (took pains to save).

diligentia, -ae, [diligent + ia], F., care, pains, painstaking, diligence: remittere (cease to take pains, take less care).

diligō, -lexī, -lēctus, -ligere, [dis-lege], 3. v. a., (choose out), love, be fond of. — See also diligens.

dimēnsus, -a, -um, p.p. of dimetior.

dimētior, -mēnsus, -mētīri, [dimetior], 4. v. dep., measure (in parts), measure out (esp. of camp). — dimēnsus, -a, -um, p.p. in pass. sense, measured, proportioned.

dimicō, -āvi, -āurus, -āre, [dis-mico], 1. v. n., (brandish swords to decide a contest?), fight (a decisive battle), risk an engagement.

dimidīus, -a, -um, [dis-medius], adj., (divided in the middle), half. — Neut. as subst., the half.

dimittō, -mīsi, -missus, -mittere, [dis-mitto], 3. v. a., let go away, let slip, let pass, let go, give up, relinquish, abandon: oppugnationem (raise); victoriam (let go, on purpose). — Also, send in different directions, send about, despatch, detail, disband, dismiss.

directē [abl. of directus], adv., straight: ad perpendicularum (perpendicularly).

directus, -a, -um, p.p. of dirigo.

direptus, -a, -um, p.p. of diripto.

dirigō, -rēxi, -rectus, -rigere, [dis-rego], 3. v. a., straighten out, direct: aciem (form); opera (set in order, arrange). — directus, -a, um, p.p. as adj., straight.
dirimō, -ēmi, -emptus, -emere, [dis-emo, take], 3. v. a., take apart, break up (a conference).

diripŭō, -ripui, -reptus, -ripere, [dis-rapio], 3. v. a., seize (in different directions), plunder, pillage.

dis-, di- (dir-), [akin to duo?], insep. prep. (adv.), in comp., asunder, in different directions. Cf. discedo, discerno, dirimo, diffundo.

Dis, Ditis, [akin to dives, as the earth is the source of riches], m., Pluto (the god of the under world, and so of death).

discēdō, -cessi, -cessūrus, -cēdere, [dis-cedo], 3. v. n., withdraw, depart, retire, leave (with ab), go away: locus unde discesserant (the place which they had left); ab officio (fail in one's duty); spes hostibus (forsake, fail); ab signis (leave the ranks).

discēptātor, -tōris, [disceptā- (stem of discepto) + tor], m., a judge, an arbiter.

discernō, -crēvi, -crētus, -cernere, [dis-cerno], 3. v. a., separate, distinguish.

discēssus, -sūs, [dis-cessus, cf. discedo], m., a departure, a withdrawal.

disciplina, -ae, [discipulō- (reduced) + ina, cf. rapina], f., (pillage ?), discipline, instruction, a system (of doctrine, etc.), a course of instruction.

discipulus, -i, [?, akin to disco], m., a pupil.

disclūdō, -clūsi, -clūsūs, -clūdēre, [dis-clando], 3. v. a., shut apart, keep apart, separate, divide.

discō, didicī, discītūrus, discere, [for dicisco (\sqrt{dic+sco})], 3. v. a. and n., learn: discendi causa (for instruction).

discrimen, -inis, [dis-crimen, cf. discerno], n., a separation, a decision. Hence, a moment of decision, a crisis, critical condition, danger.

discussus, -a, -um, p.p. of discutio.

discutīō, -cussi, -cussus, -cutere, [dis-quatio], 3. v. a., strike (or shake) apart, beat away, drive away, dislodge, shatter.

disciō, -jēci, -jectus, -icere, [dis-iacio], 3. v. a., hurl apart, break up (a phalanx), tear off (yards). — dis-jectus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., scattered, broken, in disorder: pabulatio (in widely scattered places).

disjectus, -a, -um, p.p. of disciō.

disiscō, see disciō.

dispar, -paris, [dis-par], adj., unequal, inferior, ill-matched.

disparō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [dis-paro], i. v. a., scatter (cf. disfundo).

dispergo, -sersi, -sersus, -spergere, [dis-spargo], 3. v. a., scatter, disperse.

dispersus, -a, -um, p.p. of disperso.

dispōnō, -posui, -positus, -pōnere, [dis-pono], 3. v. a., place about (in various places), station (variously), array (at several posts).

dispositus, -a, -um, p.p. of dispo no.

disputātiō, -onis, [dis-putto, cf. disputo], F., discussion.


disputō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [disputo], i. v. n. and a., discuss (cf. puto).


dissēnsiō, -onis, [dis-\texttt{sensio} (cf. dissentio)], F., difference of opinion, disagreement, dissension.


dissentīō, -sensi, -sensūrus, -sentire, [dis-sentio], i. v. n., differ in
opinion (cf. sentio), be at variance, disagree (ab, with).

dissimulō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [dissimulo], i. v. a. and n., (pretend something is not), conceal (what is), dissemble.

dissipātus, -a, -um, p.p. of dissipare.

dissipāre, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [dissupo, throw], i. v. a., scatter, disperse: dissipati (straggling troops).

dissuādeō, -suāsī, -suāsūs, -suādēre, [dissuadeo], 2. v. a., advise to the contrary, oppose (in argument), dissuade.

distineō, -tīnūi, -tentus, -tīnēre, [dis-teneo], 2. v. a., keep apart, hold asunder, keep from uniting, cut off (in military sense), isolate.

distāre, [dist-sto], i. v. n., stand apart: quantum junctura distabat (as far as the distance between, etc.); quantum summa labra distabant (the width [of the ditch] at the top).

distrabō, -trāxi, -trāctus, -trahere, [distraho], 3. v. a., drag asunder, separate. Hence, distract.

distribuō, -bui, -būtus, -buere, [dis-tribuo], 3. v. a., assign (to several), distribute, divide.

ditio, less correct for ditiō.

ditissimus, -a, -um, superl. of diverses.

diu [prob. acc. of stem akin to dīes], adv., for a time, a long time, for some time, long: tam diu (so long); quam diu (how long, as long); diutius (any longer).

diurnus, -a, -um, [†dius, akin to diu and dīes, + nus], adj., of the day, daily (as opposed to nightly): nocturnis diurnisque itineribus (by night and day).

diūtinus, -a, -um, [diu + minus tinus, cf. crastinus], adj., (long in time), long continued.

diūturnitās, -tātis, [diuturno + tās], f., length of time, long continuance, length (in time).

diūturnus, -a, -um, [diu + turnus, cf. hæternus], adj., long continued, long (in time).

diversus, -a, -um, p.p. of divertō.

divertō, -vertī, -versus, -vertere, [dis-vertu], 3. v. a. and n., turn aside (or apart), separate.—dversus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., separate, distant, diverse, different.

dives, -itis, [?], adj., rich.

Divicēs, ònis, [Celtic], m., a leader of the Helvetii.

dividō, -visi, -visus, -videre, [dis-vido, √VIDH(?), cf. viduus], 3.v.a., divide, separate.—divisus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., divided: Gallia divisa est.—Also, spread out.

divinus, -a, -um, [divō- (as if divi) + nus], adj., of the gods, divine: res divinae (religion, matters of religion).

Divitiacus, -i, [Celtic], m.: 1. A leader of the Hædui, brother of Dumnorix.—2. A leader of the Sueviones.

divulgō (-volgo), -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [dis-vulgo], 1. v. a., spread abroad.

1. dō, dedi, datus, dare, [√DA, give, cf. 2. do], 1. v. a., give, afford, offer, allow, concede, assign, grant: responsum (answer, reply); sibimet minus dubitationis dari (that he had less hesitation); filiam in matrimonium (marry); se vento (run before the wind); manus (submit, yield, from holding out the hands to be bound); hostes in fugam (put to flight); operam (take pains, exert one's self, see to it that, etc.); nego-
Vocabulary.

tium uti (employ one to, etc., engage one to, etc.); suspicionem (afford, make a show, but also have an appearance); arbitros (assign references, a judicial function).

2. do [√dha, place], confounded with 1. do, but appearing in comp., place, put.
doceō, docui, doctus, docēre, [unc. formation akin to diec and disco], 2. v. a., teach, show, inform, represent, state (in the text of the book).
documentum, -i, [docu- (?) (as stem of doceo) + mentum], N., a means of teaching, a proof, a warning, an example.
doleō, dolui, dolitūrus, dolère, [perh. dol- (stem of dolus)], 2.v.n., feel pain, suffer. — Esp. mentally, be pained, grieve.
dolor, -ōris, [dol- (root of doleo) + or], M., pain (physical or mental), distress, indignation, chagrın, vexation: magnō dolore ferre (be very indignant, feel much chagrın); magnō esse dolorī (to be a great annoyance or sorrow).
dolus, -i, [perh. akin to doleo, originally stroke?], M., an artifice, deceit, tricks, a stratagem.
domesticus, -a, -um, [domō- (as if domes-, cf. modestus) + ticus], adj., (of the house), of one's home, one's own, at home: bellum (domestic, internal, intestine).
domicilium, -i, [perh. domō + tciium (fr. root of colo)], N., an abode, a house, a dwelling-place, a house (as a permanent home).
dominor, -ātus, -āri, [dominō-], 1. v. dep., rule, be master.
dominus, -i, [↑domŏ- (ruling, cf. Gr. -δομος) + nus], M., a master, an owner.
Domitius, -i, [domitō- (reduced) + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul in B.C. 54.
domus, -i (-ūs), [√dom (build?) + us (-os and -us)], F., a house, a home: domi (at home); domum (home, to one's home); domo (from home); domo exire (go away, emigrate).
dōnātus, -a, -um, p.p. of dono.
Donno-taurus, -i, [Celtic], M., a Gallic name. — Esp., Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus, a chief of the Helvetii, brother of C. Valerius Procillus. The first two names of these persons are Roman, taken from the name of their patron.
dōnō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [donō-], 1. v. a., present, give (as a gift). — Also, honor with a gift, present (one with a thing); civitate aliquem donare (give one the rights of citizenship).

dōnum, -i, [√da + nus], N., a gift.
dorsum (-us), -i, [?], N. (and M.), the back. — Less exactly, a summit (a long ridge).
dorsus, -i, see dorsum.
dōs, dōtis, [√da + tis (reduced)], F., (a gift). — Esp., a marriage gift, a dowry, a portion (given at marriage).
Druides, -um, [Celtic], M., the Druids, the priests of the Gallic religion.
Dūbis, -is, [Celtic], M., the Doubs (a river of Gaul, flowing from the Jura into the Saône).
dubitātō, -onis, [dubitā- (stem of dubito) + tio], F., doubt, hesitation: aliqui minus dubitationis dari (to feel less doubt or hesitation).
dubitō, -āvi, -ātūrus, -āre, [dubitō- (partic. of lost verb dubo?), cf.
50

Vocabulary.

dubius], 1. v. n., doubt, have doubt, feel doubtful. — Also (absolutely, or with inf., rarely quin), hesitate, feel hesitation, vacillate.

dubius, -a, -um, [duo + bios, cf. superbus and dubito], adj., doubtful: est dubium (there is doubt, it is doubtful).

duenti, -ae, -a, [duo-centi (plur. of centum)], adj., two hundred.

dūcē, dūxi, ductus, dūcere,[√DUC (in dux)], 3. v. a., lead, draw, bring (of living things). — Esp. of a general, lead, march. — With (or without) in matrimonium, marry (of the man). — Fig., prolong, drag out.
— As mercantile word, and so fig., reckon, consider: fossam (run, make).

ductus, -tūs, [√DUC + tus], m., lead, command.

dum [pron. √DA, prob. acc., cf. tum], conj., at that time. — Also, while, so long as. Hence, till, until.

Dumnorix, -igis, [Celtic], m., a leader of the Hædui, brother of Divitiacus.

duō, -ae, -ē, [dual, of stem †dvō-, cf. bis], adj., two.

duodecim [duo-decem], indecl. adj., twelve.

duodecimus, -a, -um, [duo-decimus], adj., twelfth.

duodēni, -ae, -a, [doo deni], adj., twelve (in a set).

duodēviginti [duo de viginti], indecl. adj., eighteen.

duplex, -plicis, [duo-plex, cf. simplex], adj., two-fold, double: acies (in two divisions, arranged for successive attacks in the same direction, or for the same tactical purpose).

duplēcō, -āvi, -atūs, -āre, [duplēc-], 1. v. a., double, increase two-fold.

dūritia, -ae, [durō + tia], f., hardness, hardship.

dūrō, -āvi, -atūs, -āre, [durō-], 1. v. a., harden, toughen, make hardy.

Durocortorum, -i, [Celtic], N., the chief city of the Remi, now Rheims.

dūrus, -a, -um, [؟], adj., hard. — Fig., hard, severe, difficult: si quid erat durius (any severe contest): si nil esset durius (if no accident happened).

Dūrus, -i, [durus], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Quintus Laberius Dūrus, a military tribune in Cæsar's army, killed in Britain.

dux, ducis, [√DUC as stem], c., a leader, a guide, a commander.

E.

ē, see ex.

eā [instr. or abl. of ēs], adv., this way, that way, thus.

Eburōnes, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Belgian tribe, dependents of the Treviri.

Ebrovices, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of the Aulerci living in the region of modern Perche.

eceferō, see effero.

ēdicē, -dixi, -dictus, -dicere, [ex-dico], 3. v. a., issue an edict, proclaim, order.

ēdiscē, -disci, no p.p., -discere, [ex-disco], 3. v. a., learn off, learn by heart, commit to memory.

ēditus, -a, -um, p.p. of edo.

ēdō, -didi, -ditus, -dere, [ex-do], 3. v. a., put forth, give forth: exempla cruciatasque (make an example by inflicting severe torture).
— ēditus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., elevated, raised, high.
Vocabulary.

ēdoceō, -docui, -doctus, -docēre, [ex-doceo], 2. v. a., show forth, explain, inform.

ēducō, -duxi, -ductus, -ducere, [ex-duco], 3. v. a., lead out, lead forth, draw (a sword), bring out (baggage-train).

ēductus, -a, -um, p.p. of educo.

effarcēo, -farsi, -fertus, -farcire, [ex-farcio], 4. v. a., stuff out, fill in (solid).

effeminō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [ex-tfeminō, or perhaps effeminō (or -i), in either case from femīna], 1. v. a., make into a woman. — Less exactly, (make like a woman), enervate, weaken: animōs (enfeeble, debauch).

efferō, extuli, ēlatus, efferre, [ex-fero], irr. v. a., carry out, bring out, carry away. — Less exactly and fig., spread abroad, make known, publish abroad, puff up, elate (cf. Eng. “carried away”). — Also (cf. edo), raise up.

effīciō, -feci, -fectus, -ficere, [ex-facio], 3. v. a., make out, make, enable, accomplish, cause, produce, cause to be, make into, make out (furnish): ut praebērent (make them afford); ut sint laboris (make capable of); ut posset (make possible); classem (get together).

effodīō, -fōdi, -fossus, -fodere, [ex-fodio], 3. v. a., dig out, gouge out.
effossus, -a, -um, p.p. of effodio.
effugīō, -fugī, -fugītūrus, -fugere, [ex-fugio], 3. v. a., escape, flee (absolutely), fly from.

egēns, pres. p. of egeo.


egestās, -tātis, [unc. stem (perh. egent-)] + tas, F., poverty, destitution.

egō, mei, [cf. Eng. I], pron., I (me, etc.). — Plur., nos, we, us, etc.

ēgredīō, -gressus, -gredi, [ex-gradīō], 3. v. dep., march out, go out, move beyond: fines (pass beyond); navi (land, disembark); unde erant egressi (the place they had left); ex oppido (evacuate).

ēgregīō [abl. of egressus], adv., remarkably, finely, extremely well.

ēgregius, -a, -um, [e grege with adj. termination], adj., out of the common, remarkable, superior, excellent, uncomnon, special.

ēgressus, -a, -um, p.p. of egressōri.

ēgressus, -sūs, [e-gressus, cf. ingressus and egressōri], m., a landing.

elēcīō, -jēci, -jectus, -icere, [ex-jacio], 3. v. a., cast out, drive out, cast up (cf. edo). — With reflex., rush out, rush.
elēcītus, -a, -um, p.p. of elēcīō.
elēcīō, see elēcīō.
elīmusmodi [eins modi], as adj. phrase, of this kind, of such a kind, such, of such a nature, of this nature.
elābor, -lapsus, -lābi, [ex-labor], 3. v. dep., slip out, escape.
elēapsus, -a, -um, p.p. of elabor.
elātus, -a, -um, p.p. of efferō.

Elaver, -veris, [Celtic], N., a tributary of the Loire, now Allier.
elēctus, -a, -um, p.p. of eligo.
elephantus, -i, [Gr. acc. ἐλέφαντα, declined], M., an elephant.

Eleutēti, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., (a doubtful reading), a people dependent on the Arverni.

Eleutheri, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., (a doubtful reading), a supposed name of the Cadurci.
\[\text{elleciō, -licui, -licitus, -licere, [ex-}
\text{lacio], 3. v. a., entice out, draw out.}
\text{ellīgo, -lēgi, -lēctus, -ligere, [ex-}
\text{lego], 3. v. a., pick out, select. —}
\text{ellēctus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., picked}
\text{(troops).}
\]
\[\text{Elusātes, -um, [Celtic], m. plur.,}
\text{a people of Aquitania.}
\text{ēmigrō, -āvi, -ātūrus, -āre, [ex-}
\text{migro], 1. v. n., remove (permanently), emigrate. —With domo (in same}
\text{sense).}
\text{ēmineō, -nui, no p.p., -nēre, [ex-}
\text{mineō], 2. v. n., stand out, project.}
\text{ēminus [ex manu, cf. comli-}
\text{nus], adv., at a distance, at long}
\text{range.}
\text{ēmittō, -mīsī, -missus, -mittere,}
\text{[ex-mitto], 3. v. a., let go, drop,}
\text{send out, throw, hurl, discharge. —}
\text{Pass., or with reflex., rush out.}
\text{emō, ēmi, emptus, emere, [√EM?,}
\text{orig. takē], 3. v. a., (take, only in}
\text{compounds). —Esp., buy (cf. Eng.}
\text{sell, orig. give), purchase.}
\text{ēnāscor, -nātus, -nāscī, [ex-}
\text{nascor], 3. v. dep., spring out, grow}
\text{out.}
\text{ēnātus, -a, -um, p.p. of enascor.}
\text{ēnim [prob. e (in en, ecce) +}
\text{nam], adv., really. —Esp., as ex-}
\text{planatory, for, but, now: neque}
\text{ēnim (for of course . . . not).}
\text{ēnitor, -nisus (-nixus), -nītī, [ex-}
\text{nitor], 3. v. dep., struggle out (or up).}
\text{ēnuntiātus, -a, -um, p.p. of}
\text{enuntio.}
\text{ēnuntiō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [ex-}
\text{nuntio], 1. v. a., make known, re-}
\text{port, disclose.}
\text{ēō, ēvi (ii), itum, ire, [√t, cf. Gr.}
\text{elu, for AYAMI], irr. v. n., go, pass,}
\text{march.}
\text{ēō [old dat. of 1s], adv., thither,}
\text{there (in sense of thither). — Often}
\text{translated by more def. expressions}
\text{in Eng., to the place (where, etc.),}
\text{on them (it, him, etc.).}
\text{ēō, see is.}
\text{ēodem [old dat. of idem, cf. eo,}
\text{thither], adv., to the same place, in}
\text{the same place (cf. eo); there also:}
\text{eodem condūxit (to the same place}
\text{[as himself]); eodem pertinere}
\text{(look in the same direction, tend}
\text{the same way); eodem illo pertinere}
\text{. . . ut (favored the same idea . . .}
\text{that).}
\text{ēphippliātus, -a, -um, [ephippia-}
\text{(as if stem of verb) + tus, cf. aura-}
\text{tus], adj., caparisoned: equites}
\text{(riding on saddles, as a less manly}
\text{form of horsemanship).}
\text{ēphippium, -i, [Gr. ἐφήππιον (ἐφή,}
\text{upon; ἵππος, a horse)], N., a horse-}
\text{cloth, caparison, housing.}
\text{ēpistula (ēpistola), -ae, [Gr.}
\text{ἐπιστολή], F., a letter, a note, a mes-}
\text{sage (in writing), a despatch.}
\text{Eporedorix, -igis, [Celtic], m., a}
\text{nobleman of the Hædui.}
\text{ēpulum, -ī; plur. -ārum, [?],}
\text{N. (sing.), F. (plur.), a feast, a banquet.}
\text{ēques, -itis, [equō + tis (re-}
\text{duced)], m., a horseman, a rider. —}
\text{Plur., cavalry. — Esp. (as orig. serv-}
\text{ing on horseback), a knight (one of}
\text{the moneyed class at Rome, next in}
\text{rank to the senate). — So also, a}
\text{knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding}
\text{class).}
\text{ēquester, -tris, -tre, [equit + tris],}
\text{adj., of knights, of cavalry.}
\text{ēquidem [ē (in en, ecce) -quid-}
\text{dem], adv., (particle of assevera-}
\text{tion), surely, at least. — Often un-}
\text{translatable in Eng. exc. by emphasis,}
\text{change of order of words, or some}
\text{similar device.}
\text{ēquitātūs, -tūs, [equitā- (as stem}
of equito) + tus], m., cavalry, horse (troops serving on horseback).
equus, -i, [√AK + vus, swift], m., a horse.

Eratosthenēs, -is, [Greek], m., a Greek philosopher and mathematician of Alexandria, born at Cyrene B.C. 276. He was famous for his investigations in geography and astronomy.

ērectus, -a, -um, p.p. of erigo.
ēreptus, -a, -um, p.p. of eriplo.
ergā [prob. instr. of same stem as ergo], prep., towards (of feeling and conduct): benevolentia erga alium.

ergō (-ō rarely) [unc. form, perh. dat., cf. erga], adv. with gen., for the sake of. — Alone, therefore, then.
ērigo, -rīxi, -rectus, -rigere, [ex-rego], 3. v. a., set up straight (cf. rego), raise up. — With reflex., get up. — ērectus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., high, high and straight.
ēriplō, -ripi, -reptus, -ripere, [ex-rapio], 3. v. a., snatch away, wrest (a thing from), deprive (one of a thing, changing the relation in Eng.), take from, rescue: se eripere ne(save one's self from doing a thing).
errō, -āvi, -ātūrus, -āre, [ex-vocō], 1. v. a., call out, call forth, summon, challenge (ad pugnam), carry away (cupiditas longius), invite (omnes ad se spe praedae). — évocātus, -a, -um, p.p. of evocō.
ēvōcō, -āvi, -ātūrus, -āre, [ex-vocō], 1. v. a., call out, call forth, summon, challenge (ad pugnam), carry away (cupiditas longius), invite (omnes ad se spe praedae). — évocātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj. and subst., veteran (of soldiers who have served their time and are only called out in emergencies), veterans (almost equal volunteers).
ēvolō, -āvi, -ātūrus, -āre, [ex-volō], 1. v. n., fly out, rush out.
ex (ē) [?], adv. (in comp.) and prep., out of (cf. ab, away from), out. — Less exactly, from (lit. and fig.), of (made of): facilia ex difficillimis redegerat (had made easy instead of most difficult, as they were). Hence, after. — Also, on account of, in accordance with, by means of. —
— Also, above (raised from). — Also (cf. ab), in, on: una ex parte (on one side); ex itinere (on the march, starting from it); ex vinculis (in chains, doing something from them); so, ex equis (on horseback); ex
Vocabulary.

eorum corporibus; ex ea civitate (from that nation, belonging there); ex fuga (in their flight). — Other phrases: ex commutatone dolore (suffer from the change); diem ex die (day after day); magna ex parte (in a great degree, for the most part); quaerere ex (ask of, ask, cf. ab); ex eo plus doloris capere (on this account, etc.); ex cratibus (of, made of); unus e filiis (one of, etc.); ex communis consensu (by common consent); ex percontatione (by inquiry, from one which was made); ex Hispania (a man from); ex eo die quintus (from, after); ex usu (for the advantage, cf. "of use"); ex planicie editus (above, raised out of); e regione (opposite); ex litteris (in accordance with, from facts stated in, etc.); ex tertia parte aestimare (as a third, cf. heres ex asse); ex contrario (on the contrary).

exactus, -a, -um, p.p. of exigo.
exagitō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [ex-agito], i. v. a., pursue, drive, harass, persecute.

exāminātus, -a, -um, p.p. of examino.
exāmitū, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [ex-am-in- (stem of examen, tongue of the balance)], i. v. a., weigh.

examinātus, -a, -um, p.p. of examino.
exanimō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [ex-animō-], i. v. a., deprive of breath (life), kill. — exanimātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., out of breath, exhaust-us-d.
exardēscō, -arsī, no p.p., -ardēscere, [ex-ar-desco], 3. v. n., blow up. — Fig., become enraged, become excited.
exaudīō, -īvi, -itus, -īre, [ex-audio], 4.v.a., hear (from a distance).
exēdō, -ēssī, -ēssūrus, -ēdere, [ex-edo], 3. v. n., go out, leave (with abl.), withdraw, retire. — Absolutely, leave the fight.

excelsus, -a, -um, [p.p. of excello], as adj., high, elevated.
exceptō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [excepto, cf. exciplo], i. v. a., catch up.

exceptus, -a, -um, p.p. of exciplo.

excīdō, -cidī, -cisus, -cidere, [excēdo], 3. v. a., cut out, cut off, break down (gates).

excipīō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -cipere, [ex-capiō], 3. v. a., take off, take up, pick up, receive, catch (of animals). Hence, follow, come after, come next: vada (stand, of vessels); vim fluminis (break); alios alii (succeed); hunc alii (follow, take up the cry, in shouting).

exclātūs, -a, -um, p.p. of excito.
excitō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [ex-cito, cf. excleo], i. v. a., call out, rouse, stimulate (induce). — Also, raise (towers), kindle (fire).
exclūdō, -clūsi, -clūsus, -clūdere, [ex-claudo], 3. v. a., shut out, cut off (from doing a thing), prevent.
exclusūs, -a, -um, p.p. of excludo.
excīgitō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [ex-cigito], i. v. a., think out, devise.
excrucītūs, -a, -um, p.p. of excrucio.
excrucītūs, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [ex-crucio], i. v. a., torture, torment.
excubītus, -tēris, [as if ex-θeu- bitus, cf. excubo], m., a sentinē. (as lying out of the camp or tent).

excūbu, -cubui, -cubūtūrus, -cu-bāre, [ex-cubo], 1. v. n., lie outside — Esp. of camp, stand guard, keep a night-watch, watch.
Vocabulary.

excultō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [exculco], i. v. a., tread down, trample down.

excurreō, -curī (-cucurī), -currus, -currere, [excurro], 3. v. n., run out, make a sally.

excursīō, -onis, [ex-cursio, cf. excurro], F., a sally.

excūsātiō, -ōnis, [ex-τcausatio, cf. excusō], F., an excuse.

excūsusō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [ex-τcauso], i. v. a., give as an excuse.
— Also (with change of relation), excuse, exculpate.

exemplum, -i, [ex-templum, √EM (in emo) + lus (cf. querulus), with parasitic p], N., (something taken out), a sample, a copy, a precedent, an example. — See also edo (put forth).

exeo, -ivī (-īi), -itum, -ire, [ex-eo], irr. v. n., go forth, go out, emigrate, march out, remove.

exerceō, -ercui, -ercitus, -ercère, [ex-arceo], 2. v. a., train, practise, exercise.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, [exercitā- (stem of exercitō) + tio], F., practice, exercise.

exercitātus, -a, -um, p.p. of exercitō.

exercitō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [exercitō, cf. exerceo], i. v. a., train, practise. — exercitātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., trained. — Superl., very well trained.

exercitus, -tús, [as if ex-arceitus, cf. exerceo], M., (a training). — Concretely, (a body trained or in training), an army (large or small, acting independently), a force.

exhauriō, -hauși, -haustus, -haurire, [ex-haurio], 4. v. a., drain off.
— Less exactly, carry off (earth).

exigō, -ēgi, -ēctus, -igere, [ex-ago], 3. v. a., (lead out), pass, spend, finish, complete: exacta hiems (the end of winter); aestas exacta erat (was ended).

exiguē [abl. of exiguus], adv., scantily, meagrely: exigive habere frumentum (have a scanty supply of, etc.).

exiguitās, -tātis, [exiguō + tas], F., scantiness, meagreness: temporis (short time, want of time); pellium (small size); castrorum (narrowness, small size).

exiguus, -a, -um, [ex-tagius (√AG + uus), cf. exigo], adj., (exact?), narrow, scanty, small, meagre.

eximius, -a, -um, [ex-temius (√EM + ius), cf. eximo], adj., (taken out), exceptional, remarkable, very high (opinio).

existimātiō, -ōnis, [ex-aestimatio, cf. existimo], F., estimate, opinion.

existimō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [exaestimo], i. v. a. and n., estimate, believe, think, suppose, imagine.

exitus, -tús, [ex-itus, cf. exeo], M., (a going out), a passage (out, concretely). Hence, an end, the last part: quem habere exitum (what is the result of, etc.). — Fig., a result, a turn (of fortune), an issue.

expectō and compounds of ex with s-, see ex-.

expedīō, -ivi, -itus, -ire, [prob. ℶexpedi- (stem of adj. from ex-pes)], 4. v. a. and n., disentangle, disencumber, set free (cf. impedio). — Less exactly and fig., set in order, get ready, arrange, station (of troops). — expeditus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., unencumbered, easy (iter), not difficult, quick, active, light-armed (of troops), in light march-
Vocabulary.

**ing order** (of troops without baggage), **mobile** (of troops).

**expeditiō, -onis**, [as if ex-†pedi-+ tio, cf. expedio], F., *(light-armed service?)*, a getting ready, a despatching. Hence, an expedition: **misit in expeditionem** *(detached)*.

**expellēs, -puli, -pulsus, -pellere**, [ex-pello], 3. v. a., **drive out**.—Fig., dispel.

**experior, -pertus, -periō, [ex-†perior], pass. of parlo, cf. opperlor], 4. v. dep., *(get for one's self?)*, experience, try: **fortunam** *(risk, try, bear, endure)*.

**expertus, -a, -um, p.p. of experior**.

**explātus, -a, -um, p.p. of explorō**.

**explō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre**, [ex-pio], 1. v. a., *(purify)*, expiate.—Transferred to the signs of divine wrath, expiate: **incommodum** *(wipe out, i.e. make good, retrieve)*.

**explēō, -plēvi, -plētus, -plēre**, [expleo], 2. v. a., **fill out, fill up, make up** *(filling the required measure)*.

**explōrātor, -ōris, [as if ex-†plorerat, cf. exploror], m., a scout, a pioneer (as a means of reconnoitring, cf. spector, a look)**.

**explōratūs, -a, -um, p.p. of explorō**.

**explōrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre**, [ex-plorerō, prob. search by calling or crying], 1. v. a., **investigate, explore, search, examine, reconnoitre**.—**explōrātus, -a, -um, p.p., assured, certain**: **exploratā victoria** *(being assured of victory); habere omnia explorata*(know certainly).

**expōnō, -posui, -positus, -pōnere**, [ex-pono], 3. v. a., **place out, set out**: **exercitum** *(disembark, also draw up, array)*.—Fig., set forth *(in speech)*.

**exportō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre**, [exporto], 1. v. a., **carry out, carry away, export**.

**exposco, -poposcī, no p.p., -poscere**, [ex-posco], 3. v. a., **demand** *(with eagerness)*.

**exprimō, -pressi, -pressus, -primere**, [ex-premo], 3. v. a., **press out, force out: vocem (elicit, get out of one)**.—Also *(cf. edo), raise up: turre agger*(as the mound of circumvallation rose with the towers on it as it approached the city).

**expungātiō, -onis, [ex-pugnā-†tio, cf. expugno], F., a storming *(of a city), taking *(of a city by storm)*.

**expungātūs, -a, -um, p.p. of expungo**.

**expungō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre**, [ex-pungno], 1. v. a., **take (by storm), capture** *(by storming a city): sti- tendiarīis expungnatis *(the cities of their tributaries sacked)*.

**expulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of expello**.

**exquirō, -quisivi, -quisitus, -quisere**, [ex-quaero], 3. v. a., **search out, inquire, ask for**.

**exquisitus, -a, -um, p.p. of ex-quirō**.

**exsequor, -secūtus, -sequī, [ex-sequor], 3. v. dep., follow out, follow up: jus *(enforce)*.

**exserō, -serui, -sертus, -serere**, [ex-sero], 3. v. a., *(ditentangle), thrust out, uncover**.

**exsertus, -a, -um, p.p. of exsero**.

**exstitās, -stīti, -stitūrus(?), -sister, [ex-sīsto], 3. v. n., stand out, rise up, come out: malacia *(ensue)*; motus *(break out)*, cornu *(grow out)*.

**exspectā, -āvi, -ātus, -āre**, [ex-specto], 1. v. a. and n., **look out for, wait for, wait, wait to see** *(si, whether, etc.)*, expect, anticipate.
exspoliiō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [exspolio], I. v. a., strip off.—Also, strip of (cf. despolio).—Fig., deprive, rob (of, abl.).

extinctus, -a, -um, p.p. of exstinguo.

exstinguō, -stinxi, -stinctus, -stinguere, [ex-stinguo], 3. v. a., (punch out, as a fire in the woods?), extinguish (lit. and fig.), destroy, put an end to.

exstō, -stiti, -stāturus(?), -stāre, [ex-sto], I. v. n., stand out: ex aqua (be above).

exstructus, -a, -um, p.p. of exstruo.

exstruō, -struxi, -structus, -struere, [ex-struo], 3. v. a., heap up, build up, pile up.

exsus, -ulis, [ex-/sai] (of salio, cf. praesul) as stem, with some lost connection of meaning, cf. consul, c., an exile.

exter, -tera, -terum, [ex + terus (reduced)], adj., outer, outside.—extremus, -a, -um, superl., farthest, extreme, last: extremi, as subst. (the rear); in extremis linguis (at the extremity of, etc., and often in this sense); ad extremum (till the last, at last); ad extremum producta casum (to the last extremity); ab extremo parte (at the very end); in extremis spe (almost in despair); in extremis suis rebus (in the last extremity); extrema fames (the last extremity of hunger).

exterreo, -terrui, -territus, -terre, [ex-terreo], 2. v. a., frighten away, frighten greatly, terrify.

exterritus, -a, -um, p.p. of exterreo.

extimēscō, -timuī, no p.p., -timēscère, [ex-timesco], 3. v. a. and n., fear greatly, fear (much), dread.

extorqueō, -torsi, -tortus, -torquere, [ex-torqueo], 2. v. a., wrench from, wrest from, force from.

extortus, -a, -um, p.p. of extortionē.

extrā [abl. or instr. (?) of exter, cf. supra], adv. and prep., outside, out of.

extræctus, -a, -um, p.p. of extraho.

extrahō, -traxī, -trāctus, -trahere, [ex-traho], 3. v. a., drag out: multum aestas (drag out, waste).

extrūdō, -trūsi, -trūsus, -trūdere, [ex-trudo], 3. v. a., thrust out, push out.

exuō, -uí, -ūtus, -ure, [ex- unc. verb, cf. induo], 3. v. a., strip off: armis exutis (deprived of arms).—Also (cf. despolio), strip, deprive, despoil: Romanos impedimentis.

exūrō, -ūssī, -ūstus, -ūrere, [ex-uro], 3. v. a., burn up.

exūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of exuo.

F.

faber, -bri, [√fa (dha? in facio) + ber (for brus)], (m. of faber, skilful), a mechanic, an engineer (in an army).

Fabius, -i, [faba- (bean) + ins, cf. Clcero], M., a Roman gentile name.—Esp.: 1. Quintus Fabius Maximus (Allobrogicus), who conquered the Arverni in B.C. 121 on the Rhone.—2. Gaius Fabius, a legatus of Cesar in Gaul.

facilis, -e, [fac- (cf. beneficus) + lis], adj., easy (to do, cf. habillis), convenient, without difficulty, easy (generally).—facile, n. as adv., easily, conveniently, without difficulty.
Vocabulary.

facinus, -oris, [facin- (as if root of facino, longer form of facio, cf. prodino) + us], n., a deed (of any kind). — Esp. (as in English), a deed (of crime), a misdeed, a crime, guilt (referring to some particular act), criminal conduct.

faciō, faci, factus, facere, [\textipa{\textasciitilde{f}ac\textipa{\textast}} (DHA + K) + io (YA)], irr. v. a. and n., make, do, act. — Used in a great variety of senses as in Eng.: conjunctionem (form); sementes (do planting); iter (march, travel, proceed); vim (use violence, force a passage, offer resistance); rates (build); testudinem (form); ea (perform); pacem (as in Eng.); finem orandi (put an end to, stop, etc., cease, etc.); phalangem (form); fidem (give assurance, also gain belief, gain credence); gratum (do a favor); senatus consultum (make, pass); verba (speak, act as spokesman); potestatem (give an opportunity, permit, allow); satisfacere (do enough, satisfy). — Esp. with clause of result, cause (to), do (omitting in Eng. the connective that, and expressing the thing done in the indicative). — So in pass., be done, be caused, happen, result, ensue, occur, turn out, be: non sine causa fit (it is not without reason); fit ut (the result is); fieri posse (be possible); quid fit (what is going on); fit gratulatio (one is congratulated). — Often with two accs. (or with adj. corresponding to second acc.), make, render: vectigalia deteriora (make less, diminish). — Esp.: certiorem facere (inform). — So with pred. gen.: nihil reliquii ad celeritatem (leave nothing undone, leave no further possibility); sui commodi naves (make for his convenience).

— factum, -i, n. of p.p., half noun and half participle, and to be translated by either, act, thing done, etc.: id factum graviuer tulit (took this action much to heart); recte factum (good conduct, but notice the adverb); si quid opus facto (if anything was necessary to be done).
— fio, fieri, as pass. in all senses.

factō, -onis, [prob. fāctī + o, but treated as fāc + tio, cf. cohortatio], f., a business, an employment. — Also, a party, a faction.

factum, -i, see facio.

factus, -a, -um, p.p. of facio.

facultās, -ātis, [facul (for facili, cf. simul) + tas], f., ease, facility.
— So, chance, power, opportunity: quantum facultatis dari potuit (so far as opportunity was offered); sui colligendi (chance to, etc.). Hence, concretely, means, resources, supply: navium; facultates ad largiendum.

fāgus, -i, [prob. fhag, eat, + as (-us), from the fruit], f., a beech, beech (of the timber).

fallō, fefelli, falsus, fallere, [? spal, trip up], 3. v. a. and n., deceive: spes aliquem (disappoint);
fallendo (by deceit). — falsus, -a, -um, p.p., deceived. — Also (transferred to things), false, unfounded.

falsus, -a, -um, p.p. of fallō.

falx, falcis, [?], f., a sickle, a pruning-hook. — Also, a hook (of similar form for demolishing walls).

fāma, -ae, [fā (in for) + ma], f., speech, common talk, reputation.
— Concretely, a rumor, a story.

famēs, -is, [?], f., hunger, starvation: famem tolerare (keep from starving, appease hunger).

familia, -ae, [famulō- (reduced, cf. famul) + ia], f., a collection of
attendants, a household. — Applied to Gaul, a clan, retainers.

familiâris, -e, [prob. familiâ + ris, but treated as famili + aris (cf. alaris, animâlis)], adj., of the household: res (estate, property). — Esp. as subst., a friend.

familiâritâs, -tâtis, [familiaris + tas], F., intimacy (with, genitive).

fâs [ √fâs (in for) + âs], indecl. N., right (in conscience, or by divine law): non est fas (permitted, allowed).

fastigâtâ [abl. of p.p. of fastigo], adv., sloping.

fastigâtus, -âtum, p.p. of fastigo.

fastigium, -âtum, [fastigâtus], N., elevation, slope, descent (of a slope).

fastigâ, -âvus, -ârum, [fastigâtus], i. v. a., bring to a point. — Esp. fastigâtus, -âtum, p.p. as adv., inclined, sloping.

fâtum, -âtum, [N. of fastus, p.p. of fort], N., (what is spoken, cf. fas), fate, lot.

faveâr, fâvus, fautûrus, favère, [?], 2. v. n., favor.

fax, facis, [?], F., a torch, a fire-brand, fire (lighted missiles).

félicitâs, -tâtis, [félic- (as if felici-) + tas], F., good fortune, good luck, lucky star: summa (perfect success).

féliciter [félic- (as if felici-) + ter], adv., happily, fortunately, successfully.

fémina, -ae, [fem (stem of femo) + mina, cf. alumna], F., a woman, a female.

femur, -oris, [?], N., the thigh.

fera, see ferus.

ferâx, -âcis, [reduced noun-stem (akin to fero) + ax, as if †ferâ +
cis (reduced), cf. opacus], adj., fertile.

ferê [?], abl. of stem †ferô- (akin to fero, cf. Lucifer), adv., almost, about. — Also, almost always, generally, usually, for the most part. — With negatives, hardly.

ferô, tuli, lâtus (for lâtus), ferre, [√båh, bear], and √tol (tillo) in tollo, irr. a. and n., bear, carry, endure, tolerate, stand, withstand, carry off, win. — Often in a loose sense, translated by various special words in Eng., commit, offer, etc. — With reflex. or in pass., rush, pass, proceed, roll (of a river). — With advs. indicating manner of receiving anything, suffer, bear, take it, feel: acerbius ferre inopiam (suffer severely from); magno cum dolore ferre (be much pained or indignant at); molestâ (graviter) ferre (be annoyed at, take hard, be indignant at). — Special uses: responsa (carry away, receive); auxilium (carry aid, assist); arma (bear arms, fight); signa (bear on the standards, march); ventus ferrebat (carried the ships, blew); consuetudo ferrei (is); opinio fert (goes); ut natura montis ferrebat (according to the outline of the mountain).

ferramentum, -âtum, [as if ferrâ- (stem of verb from ferrum) + mentum], N., a tool (of iron).

ferrâria, -ae, [F. of ferrarius], F., an iron mine.

ferreus, -âtum, [ferrô + eus (-yas)], adj., of iron, iron (made of iron).

ferrum, -âtum, [?], N., iron, steel.

fertilis, -e, [feri + lis, (as if √feri + tilis)], adj., fertile, fruitful.

fertilitàs, -tâtis, [fertili + tas], F., fertility.
Vocabulary.

ferus, -a, -um, [\sqrt{FER} (DHVAR, rush) + us, cf. dcer], adj., wild, ferocious. — Fem. as subst., wild beast, game.

fervēfaciō, -fēci, -factus, -facere, [\textit{fervē-} (case-form akin to ferveo) + facio], irr. v. a., heat, heat red hot (jacula).

fervēfactus, -a, -um, p.p. of fervefacio.

fervē, ferbui (fervi), no p.p., fervère, [noun-stem akin to febris], 2. v. n., be hot, be red-hot.

fibula, -ae, [\sqrt{FIG} (in figo) + bula], F., a clasp, a buckle.

fictus, -a, -um, p.p. of fingo.

fidēlis, -e, [\sqrt{FID} (stem of fides) + lia], adj., faithful.

fidēs, -ei, [\sqrt{FID} (BHID, bind) + es], F., a promise, a pledge: laedere (break faith); fidem facere (give assurance). — Also, good faith, fidelity. — Transferred, confidence, faith (in); fidem facere (gain credence). — Esp. of promised protection, protection, dependence, alliance: quorun in fide erat civitas (to whom ... was subject, under whose protection); in fidem se permittere (place themselves under protection of, etc.).

fidūcia, -ae, [\textit{fiduc}- (\textit{fidu} + cus, reduced, cf. ferax) + ia], F., confidence, reliance.

figūra, -ae, [\sqrt{FIGU} (\textit{fig}, in fingo, + us) + ra, F. of rus], F., shape, form.

filla, -ae, [F. of fillus], F., a daughter.

fillus, -i, [?], M., a son.

fingō, fini, fictus, fingere, [\sqrt{FIG}, cf. figura], 3. v. a., mould. — Fig., invent, contrive. — fictus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj. and subst., N. pl., fictions: ficta respondeant (make up answers).

finiō, -ivi (-ii), -itus, -ire, [fini-], 4. v. a., set bounds to, limit, bound, measure (ending a division).

finis, -is, [?], M., a limit, an end: finem facere (put an end to, cease); quem ad finem (as far as). — Plur., boundaries, limits, territories, country.

finitimus, -a, -um, [fini- + timus], adj., on the borders, neighboring, adjacent, neighbors (of). — Plur. as subst., neighbors. — Also, finitumus.

fiō [\sqrt{FU} in ful], as passive of facio, which see.

firmiter [firmō + ter], adv., firmly, stoutly, steadily.

firmītūdō, -inis, [firmō + tudo], F., solidity, strength (of resistance).

firmō, -avi, -ātus, -āre, [firmō-], L.v.a., make strong, strengthen, fortify.

firmus, -a, -um, [\sqrt{DIAR} + mus], adj., strong (for resistance), firm, steady: pars hostium minime firma (weakest).

fistūca, -ae, [?], F., a pile-driver.

flāgītō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [as if \textit{flagēto}, p.p. of \textit{flago}, akin to flagrum], 1. v. a., ask (in heat?), demand earnestly: Haedus frumentum (grain of the Aeduans).

flamma, -ae, [\sqrt{FLAG} + ma], F., flame, fire.

flectō, flixī, flexus, flectere, [?], 3. v. a., bend, turn.

fleō, fleēvi, fleētus, fleēre, [?], 2. v. a. and n., weep: flentes (in tears).

fleūtus, -tūs, [fle- (stem of fleo as root) + tus], M., weeping, lamentation: magnō fleu (with many tears).

fiō, flāvi, flātus, flāre, [?], 1. v. n. and a., blow.

flōrens, -entis, [pres. p. of floreo], as adj., blooming. — Fig., flourishing, prosperous, influential (juve-
Vocabulary.

flos, flōris, [?], m., a flower. — Fig., the flower (of troops).

fluōnem, -inis, [√fluō (in fluo, cf. flōxium)] + men, N., a wave.

flō̄n, flōx, fluxus (fluxūrus, fluxūrus, fluxūtūrus), fluere, [√fluō (cf. fluō), cf. fluōr], 3. v. n., flow.

fodōs, fodī, fōssus, fodere, [?], 3. v. a., dig.

foedus, -cris, [√fid (in fidēs, cf. fidus)] + us, N., a treaty.

fōns, fontis, [?], m., a fountain, a spring.

fore, see sum.

forem, see sum.

foris [abl. plur. of fora], as adv., out of doors. — Less exactly, outside (beyond the siege lines).

forma, -ae, [Dhar (in firmus) + ma], F., shape, form.

fors, fortis, [√fer + tis (reduced)], F., chance. — forte, abl. as adv., by chance, perchance, accidentally, as it happened.

forte, see fors.

fortis, -e, [akin to firmus], adj., strong, brave: vir fortis (a man of courage).

fortiter [forti + ter], adv., bravely, stoutly, undauntedly: fortius factum (any deed of prowess).

fortitudo, -inis, [forti + tudo], F., bravery, prowess.

fortuitō [abl. of fortuitus, p.p. of verb in -uo, cf. fortuna], adv., by chance, accidentally, fortuitously.

fortūna, -ae, [†fortu- (√fer + tus, cf. fortuito) + na, F. of naus], F., fortune, chance, fate, lot (one's fortune), chances (belli), success (good or bad). — Plur., fortunes, resources, chances (means) of success. — Esp., good fortune, success: fortunam temptare (try one's chances).

fortūnātus, -a, -um, [p.p. of fortuno], as adj., fortunate.

forum, -i, [akin to fora], N., (an open place), a market-place. — Esp., the Forum (the great market-place of Rome).

fossa, -ae, [F. of fossus, p.p. of fodō], F., a ditch, a trench.

fovea, -ae, [?], perh. akin to foveo, as a pit for storage], F., a pitfall.

fractus, -a, -um, p.p. of frango.

frangō, frēgi, fractus, frangere, [√frag], 3. v. a., break (as a solid body). — Esp. of ships, wreck. — Fig., break down, crush.

fräter, -bris, [prob. √fer + ter, cf. pater], M., a brother.

fraternalis, -a, -um, [frater + nus], adj., of a brother, fraternal.

frater, -nis, [the name of brothers].

frustria, -ae, [frustra], F., loss. Hence, treachery, deceit.

fremitus, -tus, [fremai - stem of fremo] + tus, M., a murmur, a confused noise, a din.

frequentis, -entis, [orig. pres. p. akin to farcio], adj., crowded, numerous, in great numbers.

frētus, -a, -um, [root akin to firmus + tus], adj., relying on, confident in (on account of).

frigidus, -a, -um, [†frigō-(whence frigeo) + dus], adj., cold.

frigus, -oris, [√frig (in frigo, etc.) + us], N., cold. — Plur., cold (cold "snaps," frosts).

frōns, frontis, [?], akin to brow, F., brow, face: a media fronte (from the middle of the forehead).

—Less exactly, front, brow: a fronte (in front).
Vocabulary.

fructuōsus, -a, -um, [fructu + osus], adj., fruitful.
fructus, -ūs, [√FRU(G) + tus], m., enjoyment. Hence, (what one enjoys), fruit (of the earth, or of any kind of labor), crops, income; victoriae (advantages of victory).
frumentārius, -a, -um, [frumento- (reduced) + arius], adj., of grain: loca (fruitful in grain); res (grain supply, provisions); inopia (scarcity of grain).
frumentātiō, -onis, [frumentā- (stem of frumentor) + tio], f., foraging, gathering grain, harvesting.
frumentor, -ūs, -āri, [frumento-], 1. v. dep., forage, gather grain.
frumentum, -i, [FRU(G) + mentum], n., grain (cf. fructus).
fruor, fructus, frui, [√FRU(G), cf. frugesc], 3. v. dep., enjoy.
frūstrā [abl. or instr. of stem akin to fraus], adv., to no purpose, without effect.
Fūlius (-lius), -i, [?], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Gaius Fufius Cita, a Roman knight doing business at Cenabum, killed by the Gauls.
fuga, -ae, [√FUG + a], f., flight: fit fuga (a rout ensues); fugae mandare se (take to flight); fugam pereire (seek safety by flight, escape); ex fugā evaserat (had escaped from the flying crowd).
fugātus, -a, -um, p.p. of fugō.
fugō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [fugā-], 1. v. a., put to flight, rout.
fūmō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [fumō-], 1. v. n., smoke.
fūmus, -i, [√FU (DHU) + mus, akin to dux], m., smoke. — Plur., smoke (in several columns).
funda, -ae, [akin to fundo, perh. Gr., cf. σφαιρή, F., a sling.
funditor, -ōris, [funda (as if verb-stem) + tor, cf. viator], m., a slinger.
fundō, fūdī, fūsus, fundere, [√FUD], 3. v. a., pour. — Less exactly, scatter. — Esp. of battle, put to rout, rout.
fungor, functus, fungi, [?], 3. v. dep., perform (abl.).
fūnus, -is, [?], m., a rope.
fūnus, -eris, [unc. root (akin to Gr. φωνος + us], n., (murder?), death, a funeral.
furor, -ōris, [√FUR (cf. furo) + or], m., madness, frenzy, fury.
furtum, -i, [N. p.p. of lost verb akin to fur, thief], n., theft, a theft.
fūsillis, -e, [fuso- (p.p. of fundo) + lis, cf. flexillis], adj., (capable of being poured), molten (of metals).
Fūsius, -i, [perh. akin to fundo], m., a Roman gentile name. See Fufius.
futūrus, see sum.

G.

Gabali, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic people, dependants of the Arverni.
Gabinius, -i, [Gabinō- (cf. Gabli) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Aulus Gabinius, consul with Lucius Piso in B.C. 58.
Vocabulary.

gae sum, -i, [Celtic], n., a javelin.
Gäjus (Cäjus, C.), -i, [?], m., a Roman prenomen.
Galba, -ae, [Celtic, meaning fal], m., a Gallic and Roman family name.
galea, -ae, [?, akin to galerus], f., a helmet (of leather, worn by cavalry).
Gal l a, -ae, [F. of adj. in -ius, Gallo + ius], f., Gaul, including all the country bounded by the Po, the Alps, the Rhine, the ocean, the Pyrenees, and the Mediterranean, thus occupying all northern Italy, France, and Belgium.
Gallicus, -a, -um, [Galló + cus], adj., of the Gauls, Gallic.
gallina, -ae, [gallo- (a cock) + ina], f., a hen.
Gallus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of Gaul, Gallic. — As subst., a Gaul, the Gauls. — Also, as a Roman family name. — Esp., Marcus Trebius Gallus, a military tribune in Caesar's army.
Garumna, -ae, [Celtic], c., a river of S.W. Gaul, now the Garonne.
Garumni, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Gallic tribe in the Pyrenees, on the head waters of the Garonne.
Gates, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic people of Aquitania.
gaudeō, gāvisus, gaudêre, [tga-vidō- (?), cf. audéo], 2. v. n., be delighted, rejoice.
gāvisus, -a, -um, p.p. (neut. pass.) of gaudēo.
Geldumni (-dūni), -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Belgian tribe dependants of the Nervii.
Gēnabēnsis, see Cenabensis.
Gēnabum, see Cenabum.
Genāva, -ae, [Celtic], f., a city of the Allobroges, at the outlet of Lake Leman, now Geneva.
gener, -eri, [?], m., a son-in-law.
generātim [as if acc. of tgen era (genera + tis), adv., by tribes.
gēns, gentis, [√gen + tis (reduced)], f., a tribe, a clan, a people.
Genua, -ae, a less correct spelling for Genava.
genus, -eris, [√gen + us], n., a generation, a race, a family (stock), a nation, a tribe. — Less exactly, a kind, a sort, a class. — Also, abstractly, kind, character, nature, method (pugnae): genus hominum (the character of the inhabitants).
Gergovia, -ae, [Celtic], f., a city in the lands of the Arverni.
Germānī, see Germanus.
Germānīa, -ae, [F. of adj. in -ius, cf. Gallia], f., Germany, the whole country between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea.
Germānicus, -a, -um, [Germanō + cus], adj., of the Germans, German, Germanic.
Germānus, -a, -um, [?], adj., German (of the country of Germany or its people. The name of the people is the original, but as usual is an adjective). — Plur. as subst., the Germans.
gero, gessi, gestus, gerere, [√ges, of unc. kin.], 3. v. a., carry (indicating a more lively action than fero), carry on, manage, wage (war), hold (a magistracy), do (any business). — Pass., be done, go on (of operations): rem bene (male) (operate successfully or otherwise, carry on operations, succeed well or ill); negoti bene gerendi (of successful action); his rebus gestis (after these operations); res gestae (exploits, operations, a campaign).
gestus, -a, -um, p.p. of gero.
gladius, -i, [?], M., a sword.
glaeba (glē-), -ae, [?], F., a clod
(of earth), a lump.
glāns, glandis, [?], F., a nut, an
acorn. — Also, a ball (for shooting).
glēba, see glæba.
glōria, -ae, [?], for †celovsia, cf.
inclusus, F., fame, glory.
glōlor, -ālus, -āri, [gloriā-],
1. v. dep., glory in, boast of (abl.).

Gnaeus (Cnējus, Cn.), -i, [akin
to guerus], M., a Roman prænomen.

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M.,
one of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix.

Gorgobina (Gergovia), -ae,
[Celtic], F., a city in the territory of
the Hædui, founded by the Boii emi-
grating from Cisalpine Gaul.

Graecus, -a, -um, [Gr. Γρακός],
adj., of the Greeks, Greek. — As subst.,
a Greek, the Greeks. Cf. Germanus
for relation of noun and adj.

Grājoceli, -ōrum, [?], M. plur., a
people of the Alps, near Mont Cenis.

grandis, -e, [?], adj., large, of
great size.

grātia, -ae, [gratō- (reduced) +
ia], F., “gratefulness” (in both Eng.
senses of grateful), gratitude (that
one has from others or towards oth-
ers), good-will, favor. Hence, in-
fluence, friendship, source of influ-
ence, ground of friendship. — Esp.:
gratias agere (express gratitude,
render thanks, thank); gratias ha-
bere (feel gratitude, be grateful);
gratias [gratiam] referre (make a
grateful return, pay off an obliga-
tion, requite); gratiam inire (se-
cure the gratitude of any one, con-
ciliate). — With gen., for the sake of,
on account of, for, to (for the purpose
of): purgandi gratia (to excuse
one’s self).

gratulātiō, -ōnis, [gratulā + tio,
cf. frumentatio], F., a congratula-
tion (of others or one’s self), re-
joicing; fit gratulatio (there is
great rejoicing).
gratulor, -ātus, -āri, [†gratulō-
(gratō + ius)], i. v. dep., congratu-
late.
grātus, -a, -um, [p.p. of lost
verb], adj., pleasing, grateful: gra-
tum facere (do a favor).
gravis, -e, [for †garvis, for
†garus, cf. Gr. ἐγάρος], adj., heavy.
— Fig., serious, severe, hard: gravi-
oris aetatis (more advanced years);
si gravius quid acciderit (if any-
thing serious should occur); caeri-
monia (solemn, binding); ne quid
gravius statueret (that he would
not pass any very severe judgment).
gravitās, -tātis, [gravi + tas],
F., weight. — Fig., importance, power.
graviter [gravi + ter], adv.,
heavily, with greater weight, with
force. — Fig., severely, seriously:
graviter ferre (take to heart, suffer
from); premere (press hard); mul-
to gravius exarist (more vio-
lently).
gravō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [gravi-
as if gravā-], i. v. a., make heavy
(cf. levo). — Pass. as dep., (make
heavy for one’s self), be reluctant, be
unwilling, object.

Grudiē, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur.,
a Belgian people, dependents of the
Nervii.

gubernātor, -ōris, [gubernā +
tor], M., a pilot, a helmsman.
gustō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [†gustō-
(stem akin to gustus, Gr. γεως,
Eng. choose)], i. v. a., taste, eat.

Gutruātus, -i, [Celtic], M., a
leader of the Carnutes.
H.

habeō, habui, habitus, habère, [?, ṭhabo- (cf. habilis)], 2. v. a. and n., have, hold, keep, occupy, possess: sedes; equitatum circum se; aditum (have in itself, and so offer); castra (occupy); se habere (be); quantum in se habet (as much as there is in, etc.); secum habere or apud se (have with him, also detain); censum and the like (hold, conduct); contentiones (carry on); orationem (deliver). — Esp. with p.p. as a sort of continued perfect (w. h. the perf. of modern languages), have, hold, keep: redempta habere (buy up and hold); civitates obstrictas (keep under obligation); equitatum coactum (get and keep).

— Also, treat: pro amico. Hence, consider (cf. hold): pro explorato (consider certain).—Esp.: rationem habere, keep an account, take an account of, have regard for, consider, regard, act in view of: satis habere (be satisfied, be content); habere quemadmodum oppida defendere (have any means of, etc.).

Haeduus (Aed.-), -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Hædui, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône. — As subst., a Hæduan, the Hædui.

haesitō, -āvi, -āturus, -āre, [as if ṭhaesiō- (as if p.p. of haereo, for haeæco, cf. dictito), freq. of haereo], 1. v. n., get caught, stick, struggle (caught in a marsh).

hāmus, -i, [?], m., a hook.

harpagō, -inis, [Gr. ἄρπαγ(η) (Latinized) + ο], m., a hook (esp. for walls, like a fire-hook), a grappling-iron.

Harūdes, -um, [Teutonic], m. pl., a German tribe originally from Jut-

land, remaining from the great expedition of the Cimbri.

haud [?], adv., not (negating single words).

Helvēticus, -a, -um, [Helvetiō- (reduced) + us], adj., Helvetian (see Helvetius).

Helvētius, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Helvetii (a tribe between the Lake Leman, the Rhone, and the Rhine). Cf. Germanus for the form. — As subst. plur., the Helvetii, the people.

Helvii, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Roman province.

Hercynius (Orcyn-), -a, -um, [Teutonic], adj. (only with silva), Hercynian (the great forest embracing all the mountain country of Germany).

hērēditās, -ētis, [hered- (as if heredi-)] + tas, f., inheritance, an inheritance.

hibernācum, -i, [hibernā- (stem of hiberno) + culum], n., (place to winter). — Plur., winter quarters (esp. of the tents or camp, cf. hiberna, the general word).

Hibernia, -ae, [?], f., Ireland.

hibernus, -a, -um, [hiem + ernus, cf. nocturnus], adj., of winter, winter (as adj.). — Neut. pl. (sc. castra), winter quarters, a winter encampment.

hīc [ṭhi- (loc. of hi-e) ce], adv., here (cf. hic), in this place, there (of a place just mentioned).

hīc, haec, hoc, hū jus, [hi- (pron. stem) + ce, cf. eccē, cetera], pron., (pointing to something near the speaker in place, time, or interest), this, these, he, they, this man (woman or thing). — Referring to things before mentioned (but with more emphasis than is): hīc pagīs unitas
(this one canton); ex his qui arma ferre possent (of these [before enumerated], those who, etc.). — Less commonly, of what follows: his mandatis (the following, as follows, these). — Esp.: haec memoria (the present generation): tempus (the present); his paucis diebus (within a few days). — hoc, neut. abl., used adverbially, in this respect, on this account, by so much. — Often where a more definite word is used in Eng.: his ita respondit (to this embassy). — Often hic . . . ille, the one . . . the other, this (near by) . . . the other (farther off), this last (nearer on the page) . . . the other, the latter . . . the former.

hiemō, -āvi, -ārurus, -āre, [hiem-(as if hiema-)], i. v. n.
hiemps, -emis, f., winter.

hic [ṭhim (loc. of ṭhi) + ce], adv., from here, hence.

Hispānia, -ae, [Hispanō + ia (f. of -ius)], F. (of adj., cf. Gallia), Spain.

Hispānus, -a, -um, [?], adj., Spanish.

hodie [ho (abl. of hi-c, wh. see) die], adv., to-day, now.

homō, -inis, [prob. humō + o], c., a human being (cf. vir, a man, as a male), a man (including women).

honestus, -a, -um, [honos (orig. stem of honor)+tus], adj., esteemed, respected, worthy, honorable.

honor(-ōs), -ōris, [unc. root + or], m., honor, respect: honoris causa (out of respect). — Also, honorable position.

honōrificus, -a, -um, [honor (as if honori) + ficus (cf. beneficus)], adj., honorable (giving honor).

honōs, see honor.

hōra, -ae, [Gr. ὄρα, orig. season], v., an hour (of the day). — The Romans divided their day into twelve hours from sunrise to sunset, which were not of equal length at all times of the year, but were always so many twelfths of the solar day.

horreō, horruit, no p.p., horrēre, [ṭhorō- (ḥhor, orig. hōrs) + us], prob. used orig. of the sensation called “goose pimples,” where the hair seems to stand on end. In Sk. the root is used of intense delight, which is sometimes accompanied by the same sensation], 2. v. n. and a., bristle (see above). Hence, shudder at, dread.

horribils, -e, [ḥorō- (as if stem of horreo, but prob. stem of ṭhorrus, see above) + bilis], adj., to be shuddered at, frightful, dreadful.

horridus, -a, -um, [ṭhorō- (wh. horreo)+dua], adj., horrible, dreadful.

hortātus, -a, -um, p.p. of hortor.

hortor, -tātus, -tāri, [for horitor, freq. of old ṭhorlor], i. v. dep., encourage, urge on, urge, address. — Less exactly, of things, urge, move, prompt.

hospes, -itis, [prob. Ghas-patis, orig. host (lord of eating)], m., a host.

Also, a guest, a stranger. Hence, a guest friend (in the peculiar relation of hospitium, which was a kind of hereditary friendship between persons of different countries, not personal, but of a family or state), a friend (of the kind above mentioned): familiaris et hospes (a personal and family friend).

hospitium, -i, [hospit + ium], n., the relation of host (or guest). Hence (cf. hospes), friendship: hospitium atque amicitia (alliance and friendship, family and personal friendship); hospitio Ariovisti utebatur (was in friendly relations with, etc.).
Vocabulary.

hostis, -is, [√GHAS (cf. hospes) + tis], c., (orig. guest), a stranger, an enemy (of the state), the enemy (collectively, either sing. or plur.).

huc [ho- (dat. of hi- see híc) + ee], adv., hither, here (in sense of híther), to this (place, and so forth, cf. eo): huc accedebant (to these [ships before mentioned] were added, cf. accedo); accedebat huc (in addition to this fact there was, etc.).

hújamodí, see híc and módis.

húmanítas, -táis, [humanó + tas], F., humanity (as opposed to brutishness), civilization, cultivation, refinement, courtesy.

húmanus, -a, -um, [stem akin to Homo and humus(?)] + nus], adj., civilized, cultivated, refined.

humerus, see umerus.

humilis, -e, [humó + lis], adj., low, shallow (cf. altus, deep).—Fig., low, humble, poor: Ubios humiliores redegerunt (humbled, rendered less important).

humilitas, -táis, [humíli + tas], F., lowness, shallowness.—Fig., humble position.

idem, eadem, idem, [is dem, cf. dum], adj. pron., the same.—Often as subst., the same thing (things), the same: eadem quaerit (makes the same inquiries); idem castellum (this very fort).

identidem [prob. iden+tadem (case-form of √TA, in tam + dem)], adv., repeatedly, again and again.

ideó [id eo, this for this reason], adv., therefore, for this reason.

idóneus, -a, -um, [?, akin to idem(?)], adj., fit, suitable, adapted: homo (capable); tempestas (favorable).

ídus, -uum, [?], perh. akin to aestus], F. plur., the Ides (a day of the lunar month falling at the full moon, conventionally on the 15th of March, May, July, October, and the 13th of the other months, and used by the Romans to reckon dates).

ignis, -is, [unc., same word as Sk. agnis, the God of fire], M., fire: igni necari (to be burned to death).—Plur., cæmp-fires.

ignobilis, -e, [in-(g)nobilis], adj., not famous, obscure.

ignominia, -ae, [ignomin- (in-g)nomé] + ia], F., want of fame, disgrace.—Almost concretely, disgraceful defeat.

ignóro, -ávi, -átus, -äre, [ignaró-], 1. v. a., fail to notice, not know, be ignorant of.—Pass., be unobserved: non ignorans (not unaware of).

ignóscé, -nóvi, -nótus, -noscere, [in- (unc. which meaning) (g)nosc-0], 3 v. n. and a., pardon.

ignótus, -a, -um, [in-(g)notus], adj., unknown, strange.

illátus, see inlatus.

ille, -a, -ud, [old ollus, fr. √AN + lus(?)], pron., that (of some-
thing remote, cf. hie). — Often as subst. (opposed to some other emphatic word) he, she, it, they: hie... ille (this... that, the other, the latter... the former).

ille (loc. of ille + ce, cf. hie), adv., there (more remote, opposed to hie, near by), in that place (nation, country, etc.): ilie... quo (in the place to which, but with more emphasis than ibi... quo).

illigatus, -a, -um, p.p., attached.

illos [dat. of ille, cf. eo], adv., thither, there (in sense of thither).

illustris, see industris.

Illyricum, -i, [-?, N. of adj.], N., Illyria (the country east of Venetia and the Adriatic, and west of Macedonia and Thrace. It belonged to Caesar's province along with the two Gauls).

imbecillitas, -tis, [imbecilló + tis], f., weakness, feebleness: animi (feebleness of purpose, pusillanimity).

imber, imbris, (?, cf. Gr. ὄμβρος], m., a rain-storm, a rain.

imitor, -tis, -tir, [timitó, p.p. of tímō (cf. imago)], 1. v. dep., imitate, copy.

inmunis, -e, [in-munus, good ?], adj. ("uncanny"?), monstrous, huge, enormous.

immineō (inm-), no perf., no p.p., -minère, [in-mineo], 2. v. n., overhang, project. — Fig., threaten.

immissus, -a, -um, p.p. of immitto.

immittō (inm-), -misi, -missus, -mittere, [in-mitto], 3. v. a., let in, let down (into), insert, throw (upon).

immolō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [timmola- (in-mola)], 1. v. a., (sprinkle with the sacred meal), sacrifice.

immortalis, -e, [in-mortalis], adj., immortal.

immūnis, -e, [in-+munis, cf. communis and munia], adj., free from tribute.

immūnitās, -tis, [immuni + tas], f., freedom from public burdens.

imparātus, -a, -um, [in-paratus], adj., unprepared, not ready.

impedimentum, -i, [impedi + mentum], N., a hindrance: esse impedimento (to hinder). — Esp. in plur., baggage, a baggage train (including the beasts of burden), pack-horses.

impediō, -ivī, -itus, -ire, [timped-(in-pes, as if impedi-)], 4. v. a., entangle, hamper, interfere with. — Fig., hinder, embarrass, impede: in iure (hinder in exercise of). — Impeditus, -a, -um, p.p., hampered, entangled, occupied, difficult (navigatio), impassable (loca): esse victoribus nihil impeditum (there is no obstacle in the way of, etc.); prospectus (interrupted).

impellō, -puli, -pulsus, -pellere, [in-pello], 3. v. a., drive on. — Fig., instigate.

impendeō, -ēre, [in-pendeo], 2. v. n., overhang.

impěnsus, -a, -um, [p.p. of impendō], adj., expensive, very high (of price).

imperātor, -tōris, [imperā+tor], M., commander (in chief).

imperātum, -i, [N. p.p. of impero], N., an order, a command: ad imperatum (at one's command).

imperātus, -a, -um, p.p. of impero.

imperfectus, -a, -um, [in-perfectus], adj., unfinished: re imperfecta (without accomplishing one's purpose, unsuccessful.)
imperitus, -a, -um, [in-peritus], adj., ignorant, unacquainted with, unversed in.

imperium, -i, [ti-mperō-(whence impero, cf. opiparus) + ium], N., command, supreme authority, control, supremacy, supreme power, power (military), rule, sway (both sing. and plur.). — Concrete, an order, a command. — Esp.: novis imperiis studere (new forms of government); nullo certo imperio (command of any particular person); imperii aut potestatis (military or civil authority).

imperō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [timp-erō (in-†parus, cf. opiparus)], 1. v. a. and n., demand (make requisition for, prob. orig. meaning), require (in same sense). Hence, order (in military sense), rule, command, give orders: illo imperante (under his command).

impetrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [in-patro], 1. v. a., accomplish (anything by a request), succeed in (obtaining), obtain (a request): impetra a (prevail upon, persuade); ab iis impetrari ut (they be persuaded to); eam re impetrata (this being granted); si non impetraret (if his request was not complied with); impetrare ut, etc. (obtain a request, be allowed to, etc., succeed in having); impetra ri posse (could be granted).

impetus, -tūs, [in-†petus (√PET + us), cf. impeto], M., a rush, an attack, an onset, a charge, an assault, violence, fury: facere (inroad, charge, invasion); is impetus (such fury, etc.); impetus gladiorum excepertunt (received the charge of the enemy with drawn swords).

implō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [in-plōro], 1. v. a., implore, beseech.

implōnō, -posui, -positus, -pōnere, [in-pono], 3. v. a., place upon, mount (men on horses), place, impose (fig.).

importātus, -a, -um, p.p. of importo.

importō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [in-porto], 1. v. a., import.

impositus, -a, -um, p.p. of impono.

imprimis [in primis], adv., among the first, especially, particularly (more than anything else).

improbus, -a, -um, [in-probus], adj., bad, wicked, unprincipled.

imprōvisus, -a, -um, [in-provisus], adj., unforeseen: improviso (de improviso) (on a sudden, unexpectedly, unawares).

imprudēns, -entis, [in-prudens], adj., not expecting, incautious, unsuspecting, off one’s guard, unguarded, not being aware.

imprudentia, -ae, [imprudent + ia], F., ignorance, want of consideration, want of forethought.

impūbēs, -cris (-is), [in-pubes], adj., beardless, immature. Hence, chaste, unmarried.

impūgnō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [in-pugno], 1. v. a. and n., attack, invade, charge, fight (in an offensive warfare).

impulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of impello.

impulsus, -sūs, [in-pulsus, cf. impello], M., impulse. — Fig., instigation.
impune [N. of impuulis (inpoena, weakened and decl. as adj.)], adv., with impunity.

impunitatis, -tatis, [impuni + tas], f., freedom from punishment, impunity.

imus, -a, -um, sup. of inferus.
1. in- [cf. Gr. α-, άν-, Eng. un-], neg. particle, only in composition.
2. in [-?, cf. Gr. ἀνδρό, Eng. on; cf. also inde], prep. a. With acc., of motion, having its terminus within or on (cf. ad, with terminus at or near), into, upon, within, to, against, among: in volgus elatum est (spread abroad among). — Of time, for, to, till. — Fig., without actual motion, but only direction, towards, against, upon: in eos exempla edere (visit upon); in se voluntas (good will towards). — Often where Eng. has a different conception, in, on: abdere in silvas (hide in the woods); in civitates collocasse (had married in, etc.); in utram partem fluat (in which direction, etc.); in conspectum venire (in sight). — In adverbial expressions where no motion appears, in, according to, with, to: mirum in modum (cf. quem ad modum); in eam sententiam (to this purport); in speciem (with the appearance); in altitudinem (in height, cf. to the height of). — Esp.: in Caesarem incidit (happened to meet Caesar, etc.); in perpetuum (for ever); in Morinos (into the country of, etc.); in catenas conicere (throw into prison); in fugam conicere (put to flight).

b. With abl., of rest (lit. and fig.), in, on, among, within: in tanta propinquitate (under circumstances of, in a case of); in tanto imperio

P. R. (when the R. people had such dominion). — Often, in the case of, in respect to: if eo (in his case, in regard to him). — Esp.: in Meldis (in the country of); in anchor (at anchor); in eo manere (abide by, etc.); in praesentia (for the present); in potestate (under the power); in opere esse (to be engaged in the work); in illo vestigio temporis positum (depending on, etc.); in eo constare (depend upon, etc.). — In comp. as adv., in, upon, towards, and the like.

inānis, -ēs, [-?], adj., empty. — Fig., empty, vain, idle, mere, bare.

incautē [abl. of incautus], adv., incautiously, carelessly.

incautus, -a, -um, [in-cautus], adj., incautious, off one’s guard.

incendium, -i, [in-+candium, cf. incendo], n., a burning, a fire: incendia aeōsculorum (the burning of buildings, each one being conceived as a separate burning, as is usual in Latin).

incendō, -endi, -ēnsus, -en- dere,[in-+cando, cf. candeo], 3. v. a., set fire to, burn. — Fig., rouse, excite, fire.

incēnsus, -a, -um, p.p. of incendo.

inceptus, -a, -um, p.p. of incloplo.

incertus, -a, -um, [in-certus], adj., uncertain, dubious, untrustworthy (rumors): itinerata (obscure, blind).

incidō, -cidi, -cāsurus, -cidere, [in-cado], 3. v. n., fall upon. — Less exactly and fig., fall in with, meet, occur, happen.

incidō, -cidi, -cissus, -cidere, [in-cado], 3. v. a., cut into, half cut down (trees).
incipī,-cēpi,-ceptus,-cipere,
[in-capio], 3. v. a. and n., begin,
undertake.

incitātus,-a,-um, p.p. of In-
cito.

incitō,-āvi,-ātus,-āre,[in-cito],
1. v. a., set in motion (in some par-
ticular direction) (lit. and fig.), urge
on, drive, impel, excite, rouse.—in-
citātus,-a,-um, p.p., excited to
anger, angered, spurred on: inci-
tato equo (at full gallop); incitato
cursu (at full speed).—Esp.: se
aestus incitare (rush in); se mai-
or vis aquae incitare (rush more vi-
olently).

incognitus,-a,-um,[in-cogni-
tus], adj., unknown.

incolō,-colui, no p.p., -colere,
[in-colō], 3. v. a. and n., inhabit,
live, dwell: incolendi causa (for a
permanent abode).

incolumīs,-e, [?], adj., un-
harmed, unhurt, preserved, safe,
safe and sound, uninjured.

incommode [abl. of incommo-
dus], adv., inconveniently, unfortu-
nately, badly, ill.

incommodus,-a,-um,[in-com-
modus], adj., inconvenient, unfortu-
nate. —Esp., incommodum, n.
as subst, disadvantage, misfortune
(euphemism for defeat, loss, disas-
ter), harm.

incrēdibilis,-e,[in-credibilis],
adj., incredible, marvellous, extra-
ordinary.

increpītō,-āvi,-ātus,-āre,[as if
increpītō-(p.p. of increpo)], 1. v. a.,
upbraid, taunt, revile.

incumbō,-cubui,-cubitūrus,
cumbere,[in-cumbo], 3. v. n., lie
upon. —Esp., fig., bend to, exert
one’s self: animo et opibus in (bend
one’s mind and energies to).

incursō,-ōnis,[in-tēursio,cf.
incurro], F., an inroad, an attack,
an invasion, a raid.

incursus,-sūs,[in-cursus,cf.
incurro], M., an inroad, an attack.

incūsō,-āvi,-ātus,-āre,[in-
tēauso, cf. excusō], 1. v. a., up-
braid, rebuke, chide.

inde[†im (loc. of Is, cf.interim,
hinc)-de (form akin to -dem, dum,
 cf. indù, old form of in)], adv.,
from there, hence, from the place
(which, etc.).

indicium,-i,[indic + ium], n.,
information: per indicium (through
an informer).

indicō,-dīxi,-dictus,-dicere,[in-
dico].3.v.a.,order,proclaim,appoint.
1. indictus,-a,-um, p.p. of in-
dico.

2. indictus,-a,-um,[1. indi-
cetus], adj., unpleaded (causa, cf.
dico), untried, unheard.

indignē [abl. of indignus], adv.,
unworthy, shamefully (unworthy of
one’s self or of the circumstances).

indignitās,-tātis,[indigno +
tas], F., unworthiness, disgrace (cf.
indigne), outrage, an indignity.

indignor,-ātus,-āri,[indignō-],
1. v. dep., be indignant (deem un-
worthy of one’s self).

indignus,-a,-um,[1. indignus],
adj., worthy.

indillēns,-entis,[1. indiligens],
adj., negligent, careless, heedless.

indilligent[ in-diligenter,cf.
indiligens], adv., carelessly, negli-
gently.

indilligentia,-ae,[indiligent +
ia], F., carelessness, want of care,
want of energy (application).

indūclae,-ārum, see inductiae.

indūcō,-dūxi,-ductus,-ducere,
[in-duco], 3. v. a., draw on. Hence,
Vocabulary.

cover: scuta pellibus. — Also, lead on. Hence, induce, instigate, impel.  
Inductus, -a, -um, p.p. of induco.  
Indulgenta, -ae, [indulgent- (pres. p. of indulgeo) + ia], F., indulgence, favor, clemency.  
Indulgeo, -dulsi, -dultus, -dulgère, [?, perh. stem compounded of in-dulcis, pleasant towards], 2. v. n., favor, treat with indulgence.  
Induō, -duī, -dūtus, -dure, [?, cf. exuo], 3. v. a., put on. Hence, fig. with reflex., pierce, impale (one's self): se vallis; se stimuliis (be pierced by).  
Industriē [abl. of industrius], adv., actively, promptly, with energy.  
Indūtiae (Indūc-), -ārum, [?], F. plur., a truce, an armistice.  
Indutiomarus, -i, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Treviri.  
Ineō, -ivi (-ii), -itus, -ire, [in-eo], irr. v. a., enter upon, go into. — Fig., adopt, make, begin, gain, secure. — Esp.: inita aestate (at the beginning of summer); inire rationem (take an account).  
Inermis, -e (-us, etc.), [in-arma], adj., unarmed, defenseless.  
Iners, -ertis, [in-ars], adj., shiftless, cowardly, sluggish, unwmanly.  
Infāmia, -ae, [infami + ia], F., dishonor, disgrace: latrocinia nul- lam habent infamiam (bring no dishonor, are not held dishonorable); infamia et indiginitas (shame and disgrace).  
Infāns, -antis, [in-fans, pres. p. of for], c., a child!, an infant, an infant child.  
Infectus, -a, -um, [1. in-factus], adj., not done. — Esp.: re infecta (without success, cf. imperfectus); re infecta discedere (without accomplishing one's purpose).  
Infērō, -tuli, -lātus, -fērre, [infēro], irr. v. a., bring in, import, put upon: in equum (mount one on horseback); bellum (make, of offensive war); signa (make a charge, advance); vulnera (infect). — Fig., cause, infect, commit: periculum (create, cause); spem (inspire); causam (adduce, assign, allege).  
Inferus, -a, -um, [unc. stem (akin to Sk. adhas, down) + rus (cf. superus)], adj., low: inferior pars (the lower end); ab inferiore parte (down below, of a river). — Superl., infimus (imus), lowest, the bottom of, at the bottom: infimus collis (the foot of the hill); ad infimum (at the bottom). — Neut. as subst., the bottom.  
Infestus, -a, -um, [infestus, fr. fendo], adj., hostile, in hostile ar-ray: infestis signis (arrayed for fight, in a charge, in order of attack).  
Inficiō, -feci, -fectus, -ficere, [? in-facio], 3. v. a., (work into?), dye, stain.  
Infidēlis, -e, [1. in-fidelis], adj., unfaithful, wavering in faith.  
Infigō, -fixi, -fixus, -figere, [2. in-figo], 3. v. a., fasten in, fix in, fix on.  
Infimus, see Inferus.  
Infinitus, -a, -um, [infinitus], adj., unbounded, countless, endless, numberless, infinite.  
Infirmitās, -tātis, [infirmō + tas], F., feebleness, unsteadiness, inconstancy.  
Infirmus, -a, -um, [in-firmus], adj., weak, feeble: animus (feeble courage, want of courage); abores (unsound, weakened); infirmior (less powerful); naves (unseaworthy).  
Infixus, -a, -um, p.p. of infigo.
inflectō, -flectō, -flectum, -flectere, [in-flectō], 3. v. a., bend down. — Pass., or with reflex., become bent.

inflexus, -a, -um, p.p. of inflectō.

influo, -flūxu, -flūxūris, -fluere, [in-fluo], 3. v. n., flow into, empty into.

infodiō, -fodiō, -fossam, -fodere, [in-fodio], 3. v. a., dig in, bury.

infra [instr. (?) of inferus], adv. and prep., below, farther down, less than.

infumus, -a, -um, see infimus.

ingēns, -entis, [in-gēns, not belonging to the kind(?)], adj., huge, enormous, very large.

ingrātus, -a, -um, [in-gratus], adj., unpleasing.

ingredior, -gressus, -gredi, [ingrādior], 3. v. dep., march into, enter, march in.

iniciō (iniciō), -jēcī, -jēctus, -icere, [in-jacīo], 3. v. a., throw into, throw upon. — Less exactly, place in, put on, embark. — Fig., inspire.

inimicītia, -ae, [inimicō + tia], F., enmity.

inimicus, -a, -um, [i. in-amicus], adj., unfriendly, hostile. — As subst., an enemy (personal, or not in war, cf. hostis, an enemy of the state, or an enemy at war), a rival, an opponent.

iniquitās, -ātis, [iniquō + tās], F., inequality, irregularity, unevenness. — Fig., unfairness, unequal nature.

iniquus, -a, -um, [in-aequus], adj., uneven. — Fig., unjust (of persons and things), unfavorable, unfair, disadvantageous. — Comp., iniquīlor locus, less favorable position.

initium, -i, [in-initium (initō + ium), cf. inaequus], N., a beginning, the first of: initium capere, facere (begin, start); transundī (the initiative, the first steps, the first attempt to, etc.); initium fit ab (the start is first made); fugae factum (the first tendency to fly was shown); retinēndi (the first detention); silvarum (the edge); Remorum (boundary); artificiorum initia (the first principles, the first knowledge of, etc.).

injectus, -a, -um, p.p. of inicīo.

iniciō, see inicīo.

injungō, -jungi, -junctus, -jungere, [in-iungō], 3. v. a., attach to. — Fig., impose upon (his . . . servitutem).

injūria, -ae, [in-jus + ia, cf. injūrius], F., injustice, outrage, wrong, violence (as opposed to right), abuse.

injussū [in-jussu, abl. of iussus], adv., without orders.

innāscor, -nātus, -nāscī, [innāscor], 3. v. dep., grow in, spring up in. — Fig., be inspired, be excited. — Innātus, p.p., natural, innate.

innātus, -a, -um, p.p. of innascer.

innītōr, -nīsus (-nīxus), -nītī, [innītōr], 3. v. dep., lean upon, support one's self on. — Innīxus, p.p. in present sense.

innocēns, -entis, [in-nocēns, p.p. of nocēo], adj., harmless, guiltless, innocent.

innocentia, -ae, [innocentī + ia], F., blamelessness.

inopla, -ae, [inop + ia], F., scarcity, dearth, destitution, want, privation, want of supplies.

inopīnāns, -antis, [in-opīnāns], adj., unsuspecting, not expecting.

inquam, [?], irr. v. n., say.

inridēō, -risi, -risum, -ridēre, [in-rideō], 2. v. n., ridicule.

inridiculē [old abl. of inridiculus], adv., without humor.
Vocabulary.

Inrumpē, -rūpi, -ruptus, -rumpere, [in-rumpo], 3. v. n. and a., break in, break into, storm.

Inruptō, -ōnis, [in-ruptio, cf. eruptio and inrumpo], F., a breaking in, an attack (on a fortified place).

Insiciēns, -entis, [in-sciens], adj., not knowing, unaware: insciente Caesare (without C.’s knowledge).

Inscius, -a, -um, [in-isciens, cf. conscius], adj., not knowing, unaware.

Insecūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of inset

Insequor, -secūtus, -sequi, [insequor], 3. v. dep., follow up, pursue.

Inserō, -seriū, -seritus, -serere, [in-sero], 3. v. a., insert, stick in.

Insidia, -ērum, [†insid- (cf. praesēs) + ia], F. plur., an ambush, a stratagem, a trick, a plot, a trap, treachery: per insidiās (with deception, treacherously (cf. per)).

Insidēlor, -ātus, -āri, [insidiā-], 1. v. dep., lie in wait, make treacherous attacks.

Insignis, -e, [in-signō, - decl. as adj.], adj., marked, memorable, signal. — Insigne, N. as subst., signal, sign, decoration (of soldiers).

Insiliō, -silui, -sultus, -silire, [insalio], 4. v. a., leap upon.

Insimulātus, -a, -um, p.p. of insimulo.

Insimulō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [insimulo], 1. v. a., charge, accuse.

Insinuō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [insinuo], 1. v. a. and n., wind in. — With reflex., work one’s way into, slip in.

Insistō, -stiti, no p.p., -sistere, [in-sisto], 1. v. a. and n., stand upon, set foot upon, stand, keep one’s footing. — Fig., adopt (rationem pugnae), devote one’s self (in bello).

Insolenter [insolent-ter], adv., (in an unusual manner), insultingly.

Inspectō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [inspecto], 1. v. a. and n., look upon, look on: inspectantibus nobis (before our eyes).

Instābilis, -e, [in-stabilis], adj., unstable. — Fig., changeable, uncertain.

Instar [instā + ris (?), reduced], N. indecl., (an image), in the likeness of (with gen.), like, in the manner of.

Instigō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [instigō] (√stig + us), 1. v. a., goad, stimulate, drive on, urge on.

Instītuō, -tui, -tūtus, -tuere, [instituō], 3. v. a., set up, set in order, array: opus (qsnik). — Also, provide, procure, get ready. — Also, set about, undertake, begin to practise, adopt (a plan, etc.), set on foot. — So, teach, train, habituate.

Institūtum, -i, [N. p.p. of instituō], N., a habit, a practice, an institution, a custom.

Instō, -stiti, -stātūrus, -stāre, [instō], 1. v. n., be at hand, press on. — Fig., threaten, impend, menace: tempus instantis belli (time of active immediate war).

Instructus, -a, -um, p.p. of instruo.

Instrumemptum, -i, [instru + mentum], N., furniture, equipment, tools and stores (of soldiers).

Instruō, -struxi, -structus, -struere, [in-struō], 3. v. a., build, fit up, array, draw up (of troops).

Vocabulary.

insula, -a, -um, [in-sueto], adj., unacquainted, unused.
insula, -ac, [akin to in-salio?], F., an island.
insuper [in-super], adv., on the top, above, at the top.
integer, -gra, -grum, [in-TEGR- (TAG, in tango, + rus)], adj., untouched, unimpaired, unworn, fresh (as subst., fresh troops).—Esp., not entered upon (of business); re integra (before anything was done, before being committed to any course of action).
integre, -læxi, -læctus, -lægere, [in-teg-o], 3. v. a., cover over, face (turre coriis).
integre, -læxi, -læctus, -lægere, [inter-lego], 3. v. a., (pick out [distinguish] between), learn, know, find out, discover, see plainly, be aware.
intendere, -tendi, -tentus, -tendere, [in-tendo], 3. v. a., stretch, strain.—Esp. of the mind or eyes, be intent, be absorbed: oculis intentis (with eyes intent); animis intentis in ea re (with their minds absorbed in this business).
inter [in + ter, cf. alter], prep. (adv. in comp.), between, among: arbitros inter civitates dat (to decide between); inter aciem (in the line).—Of time, within, for.—Often in a reciprocal sense: inter se (with, to, from, etc., each other); cohortati inter se (encouraging each other); obsideas inter eos dandos curavit (caused them to exchange hostages).
intervenere, [in-tecedo], -cessi, -cessurus, -cessere, [inter-cedo], 3. v. n., come between, go between, lie between, intervene, exist between, occur between, be, pass (of time): ipsis cum Hæduis intercedere (exist between them and the Hædui).
interceptus, -a, -um, p.p. of intercepto.
intercepto, -cæpi, -ceptus, -cipere, [inter-capio], 3. v. a., intercept, cut off.
interclaudo, -cluši, -clušus, -clu-dere, [inter-clando], 3. v. a., cut off, shut off, block (roads): fugam (stop, cut off).
interdicere, -dixi, -dictus, -dicere, [inter-dico], 3. v. a., (intervene by an order), forbid, prohibit: Gallia Romanis interdici (exclude the Romans, etc., by order); aqua atque igni (expel, by forbidding fire and water, the regular form of exile); interdicere ne (forbid to, order not to).
interdictum [inter-diu (acc. or abl.?), akin to dies], adv., in the daytime, by day.
interdum [inter dum (orig. acc.)], adv., for a time, sometimes.
terrestre [inter ea (prob. abl.)], adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.
terreo, -iv-i, -ituros, -ire, [inter-eo (go into pieces, cf. interfere)], irr. v. n., perish, die, be killed.
interfectus, -a, -um, p.p. of interfere.
terfici, -ficæ, -fectus, -ficere, [inter-facio], 3. v. a., (cut to pieces, cf. interfere), kill, put to death.
termin [loc. of interus, cf. inter, interior], adv., meanwhile.
terminus, -us, [comp. of interus (in-erus, cf. alter)], adj., inner, interior.—Masc. as subst.: interiores (men in the interior, men in the town).
terficio (-ficio), -feci, -fectus, -ficere, [inter-facio], 3. v. a., throw in (between).—Pass., lie between, intervene: spatio interjecto (in-
Vocabulary.

tervening, i.e. leaving a short interval; *portus* interjectus (lying at intervals); *sagittarius* (thrown in at intervals, internixed).

_interjectus_, -a, -um, p.p. of intercio.

_intermissus_, -a, -um, p.p. of intermitto.

_intermittō_, -misi, -missus, -mittere, [inter-mitto], 3. v. a. and n., (let go between), leave off, discontinue, stop, interrupt, cease: neque diem neque noctem (not cease day nor night); opus erat intermissum (was discontinued, leaving a gap); itinere intermisso (stopping their march); spatii intermissis (leaving intervals); brevi tempore intermisso (waiting a short time); spatio intermisso (after a time); triduo intermisso (leaving an interval of, etc.); nocte intermissa (a night intervening); flumen intermittit (discontinue, leave a vacant place); subuentes non internisse-runt (did not cease, etc.); dare (stop giving); intermissa profectione (delaying); vento intermisso (ceasing, failing); nocturnis temporibus ad laborem intermissis (ceasing their toil in the night time); tempus ab opere (at any time cease the work); intermittere nullum tempus quin, etc. (at no time cease); diem quin, etc. (let a day pass without, etc.); intermissae trubes (separated); intermissis magistratibus (passed over for a year); pars oppidi intermissa a flumine (left unprotected); planities intermissa collibus (broken by, lying between).

_inter necio_, -onis, [inter-nectio, same root as neco], F., extermination, annihilation (exercitus).

_interpellō_, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [inter- pellet, cf. appello, āre], 1. v. a., interrupt, interfere with.

_interponē_, -posui, -positus, -pōnere, [inter-pono], 3. v. a., put in between (lit. and fig.), interpose, allege (an excuse to break off something): nulla suspicione belli interposita (no suspicion, etc., appearing to hinder); fidem reliquis interponere (give a promise not to do something); decretum (put in, introduce, into the affairs of the Gauls); nulla dubitatione interposita (with no hesitation to prevent, etc.).

_interpres_, -pretis, [inter- λ pres (akin to pretium?)], c., a mediator, an interpreter.

_interpretor_, -ātus, -āri, [interpret-], 1. v. dep., interpret, explain.

_interrogātus_, -a, -um, p.p. of interrogo.

_interrogō_, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [interrogo], 1. v. a., (ask at intervals), question, interrogate.

_interrumpō_, -rupi, -ruptus, -rumperre, [inter-rumpo], 3. v. a., break off (between two points), break down (bridges).

_interseindō_, -scidi, -scissus, -scindere, [inter-seindo], 3. v. a., cut off (between two points), break down, tear down.

_intersum_, -sui, - futūr us, -esse, [inter-sum], irr. v. n., be between, be among, be in, be engaged in: non amplius intersit (there is an interval of not more than, etc.); proelio, divinis rebus (be engaged in, take part in). — Esp. in third person, it is of importance, it interests, it concerns.

_intervallum_, -i, [inter-vallus, distance between stakes in a rampart], N., distance (between two things), distance apart, interval.
Vocabulary.

interveniō, -vēni, -ventūrus, -venire, [inter-venio], 4. v. n., come between, come up (at a particular juncture), arrive.

interventus, -tūs, [inter-ven tus, cf. eventus and intervenio], m., a coming (to interrupt something).

intexō, -texui, -textus, -texere, [in-texo], 3. v. a., weave in, weave together.

intextus, -a, -um, p.p. of intexo.

intoleranter [intolerant + ter], adv., (with no patience or restraint over one’s self), fiercely, violently.

intrā [instr. (?) of interus, cf. inter and extra], adv. and prep., into, within, together.

intritus, -a, -um, [in-tritus (p.p. of tero)], adj., unexhausted. — Fig., unexhausted.

intró [dat. of interus, cf. intra], adv., inside.

intrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [intéro-], 1. v. a., enter.

intrōducō, -dūxi, -ductus, -ducere, [intro-duco], 3. v. a., lead in, bring in, march in (troops).

intrōeō, -ivi (-ii), -itus, -ire, [intro-eo], irr. v. a. and n., enter, come in.

introtitus, -tūs, [intro-itus], m., an entrance, an approach (means of entrance).

intrömittō, -misi, -missus, -mittere, [intro-mitto], 3. v. a., let go in, send in. — With reflex. or in pass., rush in: intromissus (rushing in).

intrōrsus [intro-vorsus (petrified nom., p.p. of verto)], adv., into the interior, inside.

intrōrumpō, -rūpi, -ruptūrus, -rumpere, [intro-rumpo], 3. v. n., break in, burst in.

intueor, -tuitus (-tūtus), -tuēri, [in-tueor], 2. v. dep., gaze upon, gaze at, cast one’s eyes upon.

intus [in + tus (an abl. ending, cf. divinitus)], adv., within.

inūsitātus, -a, -um, [in-usitatus], adj., unaccustomed, accustomed: inusitator (less familiar).

inūtīlis, -c, [in-utilis], adj., of no use, unserviceable. — In a pregnant sense, unfavorable (positively disadvantageous).

inveniō, -vēni, -ventus, -venire, [in-venio], 4. v. a., find (come upon, cf. reperio, find by search), learn.

inventor, -tōris, [int-ventor, cf. invenio], m., a discoverer.

inventus, -a, -um, p.p. of invenio.

inveterāsco, -rāvi, -rātūrus, -rāscere, [in-veterasco], 3. v. n., grow old in, become established in.

invicem [in vicem], adv., in turn.

invictus, -a, -um, [in-victus], adj., unconquered. — Also, unconquerable, invincible.

invideo, -vidi, -visus, -vidēre, [in-video], 2. v. a. and n., envy, be jealous of, grudge.

invidia, -ae, [invidō + ia], f., envy, odium.

inviolātus, -a, -um, [in-violatus], adj., inviolate. — Also (cf. invictus), inviolable.

invisus, -a, -um, p.p. of invisus. invitātus, -a, -um, p.p. of invito.

invitō, -āvi, -ātu, -āre, [?], 1. v. a., invite.

invitus, -a, -um, [?], adj., unwilling. — Often rendered as adv., against one’s will.

ipse, -a, -um, [is-potis(?)], intens. pron., self, himself, etc. (as opp. to
some one else, cf. super, reflex. referring to the subject), he, etc. (emph.), he himself, etc.: hoc ipso tempore (at this very time); ipse per se (in and of itself); inter se (regular reciprocal, each other, with each other, by each other, etc.).

iracundia, ae, [iracundō + iā], f., wrath (as a permanent quality, cf. ira, a temporary feeling), irascibility, anger.

iracundus, -a, -um, [ira + cundus], adj., of a violent temper, passionate, irascible.

irrideō, see inrideo.

irridiculē, see inridicule.

irrumptō, see inrumpo.

irruptō, see inruptio.

is, ea, id, [pron. /ɪ/], pron., this (less emph. than hic), that (unemph.), these, those, etc., the, a, he, she, it: quae pars ea, etc. (the part which, etc.); eo deceptus quod, etc. (by the fact that, etc.); et id (and that too); ea quae (the things which, what); Rhodanum inuitet et is transiuitur (and this river, etc.); cum ea ita sint (since this is so); is locus quo (a place where); neque eam plenissimam et non uno (and not a very full one); manere in eo quod, etc. (abide by what).—Abl., N., eo, the (old Eng. instrumental), so much, on that account, therefore: eo magis (all the more); eo gravius (so much the more severely).

ita [ɪt(ə)] (instr. (?) of śūta), adv., so, in such a way, in this way, thus, as follows: u...ita, ita...ut (in proportion as, as).

Italia, -ae, [†Italō (reduced) + ia (f. of ius)], f., Italy (not including the country north of the Rubicon).

itaque [ita que], adv., and so, accordingly, therefore.

Item [ʃɪˈtem (acc. ?), cf. śudem}], adv., in like manner, so also, in the same way (before mentioned).

 iter, itinerary, [stem fr. śɪ (go) + unc. term.], N., a road, a march, a way, a route, a course, a journey: in itinere (on the road); in eo itinere (on the way); iter facere (march, travel); iter dare (allow to pass); itinere prohibere (forbid to pass, keep from passing); magnis itinereibus (by forced marches); tutum iter (a safe passage).

iterum [ɪˈtem (acc. ?), cf. śalter], adv., a second time, again: semel atque iterum (again and again).

Itius [Celtic], adj. (with portus), the port where Caesar embarked for Britain the second time; either Calais or Boulogne.

J.

jaceō, -cui, -citūrus, -cere, [?, cf. jactum], 2. v. n., lie, lie dead: jacentes (the slain).

jactō, jēcī, jactus, jacere, [?, cf. jaceō], 3. v. a., throw, hurl, cast: aggerem (throw up).

jactō, āvi, ātus, āre, [jactī-], 1. v. a., (req. of jactō), toss, toss about, bandy about (of talk).

jactūra, -ae, [jactu + ræ (f. of rus)], f., a throwing away, a loss, a sacrifice (of men in war), an offer (of reward).

jactus, -a, -um, p.p. of jactō.

jaculum, -i, [†jacēō (cf. jaceō)], N., a javelin.

jam [acc. of pron. śYA], adv., now (of progressive time, cf. nunc, emphatic and instantaneous), by this time, at last, already, at length: jam non (no longer); jam ante
**Vocabulary.**

(some time before, even before); jam utebatur (was getting to use); jam reverti (was at last, etc.; was beginning to, etc.); nihil jam (no longer).

Juba, -ae, [?], F., the name.

Jubēō, jūssi, jūssus, jūbere, [prob. ius-habeo, cf. praebeo], 2. v. a., order, command, bid.

Jūdicium, -i, [judic + ium], N., a judgment (judicial), a trial, an opinion (expressed officially); an opinion (generally), advice: optimum judicium facere (express [by some act] a very high opinion); judicio (from design).

Jūdicō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [judic-], 1. v. a., formally decide, decide, judge, adjudge, think, consider: nihil gravius de civitate (think nothing harsh about, etc.).

Jugum, -i, [√jug (in jungo) + um], N., a yoke. Hence, a ridge, a crest (of a row of hills); sub jugum mittere (an insult inflicted on a conquered army, consisting in making them pass under a horizontal bar set upon two uprights).

Jūmentum, -i, [√jug(-)? + mentum], N., a beast of burden, a pack-horse, a horse.

Junctūra, -ae, [junctu + ra (F. of -rus)], F., a joining, a joint: quantum distabat junctura (as far as the distance apart, of two things joined).

Junctus, -a, -um, p.p. of jungo.

Jungō, junxi, junctus, jungere, [√jug], 3. v. a., join, unite, attach together. — In pass. or with reflex., unite with, attach one's self to.

Jūnior, comp. of Juvēō.

Jūnius, -i, [?], prob. juveni + ius, but cf. Juno], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Decimus Ju-

nius Brutus, see Brutus.— Also, Quintus Jūnius, a Spaniard in Cesar's service.

Juppiter, Jovis, [Jovis-pater], M., the god of the visible heavens and the atmosphere, who was regarded as the supreme divinity of the Romans, cf. Zeus.

Jūra, -ae, [Celtic], M., a chain of mountains in Gaul, running N.E. from the Rhone to the Rhine, separating the Sequani and the Helvetii.

Jūrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [jur- (stem of jus)], 1. v. n., swear, take an oath.

Jūs, jūris, [for ḫavas, √yu (akin to √jug) + us], N., justice, right, rights (collectively), rights over (anything, claims).

Jūsārandum, jūris jūrāndi, [see the two words], N., an oath.

Jūssū [abl. of jussus], used as adv., by order.

Jūstitia, -ae, [justo + tia], F., justice (just behavior), sense of justice.

Jūstus, -a, -um, [jus + tua], adj., just, lawful.— Also, complete, perfect, regular: populi Romani justissimum esse imperium (that the Romans were best entitled to dominion).

Juvenis, -e, [?], adj., young.— As subst., a young man (not over 45), a youth: jūniōres (the younger soldiers).

Juventūs, -tūtis, [juven (orig. stem of juvenis) + tuas], F., youth. — Concretely, the youth, the young men.

Juvō, jūvi, jūtus, jūvāre, [?], 1. v. a., help, aid, assist.

Juxtā [instr.(?) of juxtus, sup. of jugis (√jug + is)], adv. and prep., next, near, near by.
K.

Kal., abbrev. for Kalendae and its cases (wh. see).

Kalendae (Cal.), -ārum, [F. pl. of kalendus, p. of verb akin to calō], F. plur., the Calends (the first day of the Roman month, when, as it would seem, the times of the moon were announced to the assembled people).

L.

L., abbrev. for Lucius.

L (L), [a corrupt form of the Greek letter ψ (prop. χ), originally used for 50, and retained in the later notation], a sign for fifty.

Laberius, -i, [?, cf. Labeo], m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., Quintus Laberius Durus, a tribune in Cæsar’s army.

Labiēnus, -i, [?, perh. labia + enus], m., a Roman family name.—Esp., Titus Atilius Labienus, a violent partisan of Cæsar, a legatus under him in Gaul, but afterwards in the civil war on the side of Pompey.

Labor, -ōris, [√rabh + or (for -os)], m., toil, exertion (in its disagreeable aspect), labor (as painful), trouble.

Lābor, lāpus, lābi, [unc., cf. labo, labēs], 3. v. dep., slip, slide, fall.—Fig., commit an impropriety, go wrong, be disappointed.

Labōrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [labor-], 1. v. n., toil, exert one’s self: id contendere et laborare ne (strive and be anxious not to have, etc.); animo laborare (contrive, revolve in one’s mind anxiously).—Also, suffer, labor, be hard pressed.

Labrum, -i, [√lab (in lambo, cf. labia) + rum], n., the lip.—Less exactly, the edge (of a horn, of a ditch).

Lāc, lactis, [?], n., milk.

Lacessō, -cessivi, -cessitus, -cessere, [stem akin to lacelo + unc. term.], 3. v. n., irritate, provoke.—Esp., attack, harass, assail, skirmish with: injuria Haeduos (wantonly harass).

Lacrima, -ae, [√dakru- (cf. Gr. ὀκρός) + ma], f., a tear.

Lacrīmō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [lacrima-], 1. v. a. and n., weep.

Lacus, -ūs, [?, cf. lacem, lacuna], m., a reservoir, a lake.

Laedō, laesi, laesus, laedere, [perh. for lavido, √lu (increased) + do (cf. tendo)], 3. v. a., wound, injure.—Fig., esp., break (one’s word, etc.), violate.

Laesus, -a, -um, p.p. of laedo.

Laetātīō, -ōnis, [laetā + tio], F., rejoicing.

Laetitia, -ae, [laetō + tia], F., joy, gladness (cf. laetus).

Laetus, -a, -um, [unc. root (perh. akin to glad) + tus], adj., joyful (of the inner feeling), rejoicing.

Langulō [old abl. of langulus], adv., with little energy.

Langulus, -a, -um, [√languo- (whence languoeo + dus), adj., spiritless, listless, languid: languidor (with less spirit).

Languor, -ōris, [√lango- (in languo) + or], m., want of spirit, listlessness.

Lapis, -idis, [?], m., a stone (to throw, etc.).—Collectively, stone, stones.

Lāpus, -a, -um, p.p. of labor.

Laqueus, -i, [√lac (in lacelo) + eus (? avas)], m., a slip-nose.

Largior, -itus, -iri, [largō-], 4. v. dep., give lavishly, bestow upon, sup-
Vocabulary.

ploy with. — Also, give bribes, give presents.

largiter [largō + ter], adv., lavishly: largiter posse (possess abundant influence).

largitiō, -onis, [largī- (stem of larglor) + tio], F., lavish giving, bribery.

lassitūdō, -dinis, [lassō- + tudo, cf. fortitudo], F., weariness, exhaustion.

lātē [old abl. of latus], adv., widely: latus (too far).

lātēbra, -ae, [lātē + bra], F., a hiding-place.

lāteō, latui, no p.p., lātere, [?], 2. v. n., lie concealed, lurk, be concealed, pass unnoticed.

lātitūdō, -dinis, [latō + tudo], F., breadth, width.

Latobrigi, -orum, reading for Latobriici, wh. see.

Latobriici, -orum, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii.

lātō, -onis, [prob. stem borrowed fr. Greek -o], M., a mercenary(?), a robber.

latricinium, -i, [latron + cinium, cf. raticcinor], N., freebooting, robbery, highway robbery.

lātus, -a, -um, [prob. for ἐπιτάτου, cf. Gr. ἐπιτάτες], adj., broad, wide, extensive.

latus, lateris, [prob. latō + rus (reduced)], N., the side (of the body).
—Also, generally, a side, a flank, an end (of a hill).

lātus, -a, -um, [for tlaitus, √tla (cf. tollo, tuli) + tus], p.p. of fero.

laudō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [laud-], 1. v. a., praise, commend.

laus, laudis, [?], F., praise, credit, glory, merit (thing deserving praise).

lavō, -āvi (lavī), -ātus (lautus, lōtus), -āre (-ere), [?], i. v. a., wash.
—In pass., bathe.

laxō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [laxō-], i. v. a., loosen, open out.

lēgātiō, -onis, [legā + tio], F., (a sending or commission), an embassy, an embassy (message of ambassadors).

lēgātus, -i, [prop. p.p. of lēgo, commission, despatch], M., an ambassador. — Also, a lieutenant, a legatus. To a Roman commander were assigned (legare) one or more subordinate officers capable of taking command in his absence or engaging in independent operations under his general direction. These were the legati, and with the questor composed a kind of staff.

legiō, -onis, [√leg + iō], F., (a levy); hence, a legion (originally the whole levy, later the unit of army organization, numbering from 3000 to 6000 men, divided into ten cohorts).

legiōnārius, -a, -um, [legion + arius], adj., of a legion, of the line (the Roman heavy infantry of the legion as opposed to all kinds of auxiliary troops).

Lemannus, -i, [?], M., (with lacus either expressed or implied), the Lake of Geneva, Lake Leman.


lēnis, -e, [?], adj., gentle.

lēnitās, -tātis, [leni + tas], F., gentleness, gentle current (of a river).

lēniter [leni + ter], adv., gently: lenius (with less vigor).

Lepontii, -orum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Alps on the Italian side of St. Gothard.
Vocabulary.

lepūs, -oris, [?] m., a hare.

Lēucī (Lēvacī), -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Gallic tribe on the Moselle.

Lēvacī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Belgian Gaul, dependents of the Nervii.

levis, -e, [for †łeghvis, ʎAGH + us (with inserted i, cf. brevis), cf. Gr. ἔλαχις, Eng. light], adj., light, slight, unimportant, of no weight: audītio (mere hearsay without foundation). — Also (cf. grāvis), inconstant, fickle, wanting in character: quod esset levius (less dignified).

levītās, -ētās, [levi + tas], f., lightness. — Also (cf. levis), inconstancy, fickleness.

levō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [levi- (as if levō-)], i. v. a., lighten. Hence, free from a burden, relieve.

lēx, lēgis, [√LEG (in lego)], f., a statute, a law.

Lēxovī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Normandy.

libēnter [libent + ter], adv., willingly, with pleasure. — With a verb, be glad to, etc.

liber, -bera, -berum, [†libō- (whence libet) + rus (reduced)], adj., free (of persons and things), unrestricted, undisturbed, un incumb ered.

liberālitās, -ētās, [liberali + tas], f., generosity.

liberāliter [liberali + ter], adv., generously, kindly (respondit): oratione prosecentus (addressing in generous language).

liberātus, a, -um, p.p. of libero.

liberō [old abl. of liber], adv., freely, without restraint: liberius (with too little restraint).

liberi, -ōrum, [prob. m. plur. of liber, the free members of the household], m. plur., children.

liberō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [liberō-], i. v. a., free, set free, relieve (from some bond); liberare se (secure one's freedom).

libertās, -ētās, [liberō- (reduced) + τas], f., liberty, freedom, independence.

librillus, -e, [libra + ilis], adj., of a pound weight: fundae (heavy missiles from sling).

licentia, -ae, [licent-ia], f., lawlessness, want of discipline.

licēor, licuitus, licēri, [prob. pass. of licet], 2. v. dep., bid (at an auction).

licet, licuit (licitum est), licēre, [†licē-, cf. delicēus, reliquus], 2. v. n., be allowed: id sibi, etc. (that they be allowed); per te licet (you do not hinder); licet conspiciari (one can see); quibus eas licet (who may be, who have a chance to be).

Līger, -eris, [Celtic], m., a river of Gaul between the Hāeduī and the Bituriges, the Loire.

lignātiō, -onis, [lignā + tio], f., getting wood.

lignātor, -tōris, [lignā + tor], m., wood-forager, wood-cutter.

lignum, -i, [?], n., wood.

ligula, see lingula.

Līgures, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., the Ligurians, a people in the north of Italy, between the Apennines and the sea.

lillum, -i, [?], n., a lily. The name is applied jocosely to a peculiar kind of chevaux de frise.

lineā, -ae, [linō + ea (f. of -ens)], f., line.

Līngones, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Vosges Mts.

lingua, -ae, [?], f., tongue. Hence, language.
Vocabulary.  

lingula, -ae, [lingua + la (F. of -laus)], F., a little tongue, a tongue of land.

linter (lunt-), -tris, [?], F. (?), a trough, a skiff, a boat.

linum, -i, [prob. borr. fr. Gr. λινων], N., flax.

lis, litis, [for †stlis, √stla + tis (reduced) ?], cf. locus and Eng. strife], F., a suit at law. — Also, the amount in dispute, damages.

Liscus, -i, [Celtic], M., a Hæduan, brother of Divitianus.

Litavicus, -i, [Celtic], M., a Hæduan chief.

litera (litt-), -ae, [?], akin to lino], F., a letter (of the alphabet). — Plur., letters, writing, an alphabet, a letter (an epistle).

litus (litt-), -oris, [?], N., a shore.

locus, -i, [for †stlocus, √stla + cus], M. (sing.), N. (generally pl.), a place, a spot, a position, a region (esp. in plur.), a point, the ground (in military language), space, extent (of space), room. — Fig., position, rank, a point, place (light, position, character), an opportunity, a chance: obsidum loco (as hostages).

locütus, -a, -um, p.p. of loquor.

longē [old abl. of longus], adv., far, too far, absent, far away, distant: non longius mille (not more than); longe futurum (would be far from helping); longius prodire (any distance); longius aberat (was rather far away); longe nobilissemus (far, altogether).

longinquus, -a, -um, [case-form of longus (perh. loc.) + cus], adj., long (of time and space), distant, long-continued.

longitudō, -dinis, [longō + tudo], F., length.

longuitar, -i, [longō + urius], M., a long pole.

longus, -a, -um, [?], adj., long (of space and time); in longiorum diem (to a more distant day); navis longa (a ship of war, a war galley, opposed to the broader naves one-rariae); longum est expectare (it is too long to wait, it would take too long to, etc.).

loquor, locütus, loqui, [?], 3. v. dep., speak, talk, converse.

lorica, -ae, [lorō + ica], F., a coat of mail (orig. of leather thongs).

Lucanius, -i, [Lucanō + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus Lucanius, a centurion in Caesar’s army.

Lucius, -i, [luc- (in lux) + ius], M., a Roman prénom.

Lucterius, -i, [?], perh. Celtic], M., a Gallic name, perh. borrowed from the Romans. — Esp., Lucterius Cadurcus, a commander under Vercingetorix.

Lugotorix, -igans, [Celtic], M., a British prince.

lūna, -ae, [√luc (in lucеo) + na], F., the moon.

lunter, see linter.

Lutētia, -ae, [?], F., a city of the Parisii, on the site of modern Paris.

lūx, lūcis, [√luc as stem], F., light, daylight: prima luce (at daybreak); orta luce (at daybreak).

luxūria, -ae, [†luxūrō (luxu + rus) + iā], F., luxury, riotous living.

M.

M., abbreviation of Marcus.

M [corruption of CIC (orig. Φ) through influence of mille], 1000.
māceria, -ae, [†mācerī (wh. mācerī) + ia], F., (mortar ?), a wall.

māchīnātiō, -onis, [machīnā + tīō], F., contrivance (mechanical).
— Concretely, a contrivance, an engine, a derrick.

māestus, -a, -um, [p.p. of māreo, √MIS (in miser) + tus], adj., sad, sorrowful, dejected.

Magetobri(g)a, see Admagentobriga.

magis [√MAG (in magnus) + ius (N. comp. suffix)], adv., more, rather.—See also maxime.

magistrātus, -tūs, [magistrā- (as if stem of †magistro) + tus], M., a magistracy (office of a magistrate).—Concretely, a magistracy (cf. ‘the powers that be’).

māgnificus, -a, -um, [magnificus (√fāc + us)], adj., splendid, grand, magnificent.

māgnitūdō, -dinus, [magnō + tundo], F., greatness, great size, size, extent, stature, force (venti), severity (supplici): silvarum (immemse woods); corporum (size, stature).

māgnopere, see opus.

māgnus, -a, -um, [√MAG (increase) + nus, cf. magis], adj., great (in any sense, of size, quantity, or degree), large, extensive, important, serious (motus), heavy (portoria), high (aestus): magni habere (to value highly, make much account of); magni interest (it is of great importance). — mājor, comparative, in usual sense.—Also, mājor (with or without natu), elder, older.—In plur. as subst., elders, ancestors.—maximus, superl., largest, very large, greatest, very great, etc.: maximis itineribus (by forced marches).—See also Maximus.

mājestās, -tātis, [majos- (orig. stem of majōr) + tās], F., (superiority), majesty, dignity.

malaclia, -ae, [borr. fr. Greek], F., (soft weather), a calm.

male [old abl. of malus], adv., badly, ill.—See also pejus.

maleficium, -i, [maleficō + ium], N., harm, mischief.

Mallius (Manlius, Mānillus), -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name.
— Esp., Lūcius Mallius, as consul, beaten by the Aquitanis in B.C. 78.

mālō, māli, no p.p., malle, [mage- (for magis) volō], irr. v. a. and n., wish more, wish rather, prefer.

malus, -a, -um, [?], adj., bad (in all senses), ill.—pējor, comp. —pesimum, superl.

mālus, -i, [Gr. μῆλος], M., (apple-tree), mast, beam (upright).

mandātum, -i, [N. p.p. of man- do], N., a trust (given to one), instructions (given), a message (given to some one to deliver).

mandō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [?, †man- dō (manu-do)], I. v. a., put into one’s hands, entrust, instruct (give instructions to), commit: se fugae (take to); quibus mandatum est (who had been instructed).

Mandubii, -orum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe north of the Hædui.

Mandubratius (Mandobius), -cius, -i, [Celtic], M., a Briton, prince of the Trinobantes.

mānē [abl. of †manis (?), ma + nis, cf. matuta, maturus], adv., in the morning.

manēō, mānsī, mānsūrus, mānērē, [unc. stem akin to Gr. μήν], 2. v. n., stay, remain, stay at home (absolutely, opp. to proficiscor).
Vocabulary.

— Fig., continue, stand by (in eo quod).

**manipularis**, -is, [manipulō + aris, prop. adj.], M., conrade (of the same maniple or company).

**manipulus**, -i, [manu- + pulus ( = -ple + us)], M., (a handful, esp. of hay, used as an ensign), a maniple (two centuries, a third of a cohort).

mānsuēfacē, -fēcī, -factus, -facēre, [†mānsuē- (cf. mānsuesco, and calefacio) -facio], 3.v. a., tame.

— Pass., mānsuēfītō, be tamed.

mānsuētūdō, -dinis, [†mānsuē- (cf. mānsuescatio) + ūdō], F., tameness, gentle disposition.

manus, -ūs, [?], F., the hand: in manibus nostris (just at hand, within reach); manu defendere (by arms); dat manus (hold out the hands to be bound, acknowledge one’s self conquered, give in). — Also (cf. manipulus), a company, a band, a troop.

Marcobonni, -ōrum, [Teutonic, akin to march and man, “the men of the marches”?], M. plur., a supposed German tribe in the army of Ariovistus.

Mārcus, -i, [?], M., a Roman prenomen.

mare, -is, [?], N., the sea: mare oceanum (the ocean).

maritimus, -a, -um, [mari + timus, cf. finitimus], adj., of the sea, sea-, maritime, naval, on the sea: aestus (in the sea); ora (the seashore); nostrum (i.e. the Mediterranean). — Also, maritimus.

Marius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caius Marius, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 101) and freed Rome from the fear of a Northern invasion.

Mars, Martis, [?], perh. √mar (in morior) + tis, the slayer, but more probably of wolves than of men in battle], M., Mars, originally probably a god of husbandry defending the sheep, but afterwards identified with the Greek Ἀπόσ and worshipped as the god of war. Cæsar again identifies him with the Celtic Hesus.

— Phrase: apōs Marte (with equal success).

mās, maris, [?], adj., male. — Subst., a male.

matarā, -ae, [Celtic], F., a fawellin (of a peculiar kind, used by the Gauls).

māter, -tris, [?], prob. √ma (create) + ter], F., a mother, a matron.

māter familiās [see the words], F., a matron.

māteria, -ae (-es, -ēi), [?], prob. mater + ia (F. of īus), F., wood (cut, for material), timber (cf. lignum, wood for fuel).

māterlor, -ātus, -āri, [materiā-], I. v. dep., get timber, bring wood.

Matiscō, -onis, [Celtic], F., a city of the Hēduī, now Mācon.

mātrimōnium, -i, [mater- (as if mātrī) + monium], N., (motherhood), marriage, matrimony: in matrimonium ducere (marry).

Mātrona, -ae, [Celtic], M., a river of Gaul, joining the Seine near Paris, the Marne.

māturē [old abl. of maturus], adv., early, speedily.

māturēscō, -tūris, no p.p., -tūrēscere, [maturē- (cf. matureo) + scō], 3. v. n., get ripe, ripen.

māturū, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [maturū-], I. v. a. and n., hasten, make haste.
mātūrus, -a, -um, [†matu- (√MA, in mane, + tus) + rus], adj., early.
— Also (by unc. conn. of ideas), ripe, mature.
maximē [old abl. of maximus], adv., in the greatest degree, most, very, in the highest degree, especially: ea maxime ratione (in that way more than any other); maxime con-
sidebat (had the greatest confidence).
Māximus [sup. of magnus, as subst.], m., a Roman family name.
medeōr, -ēri, no p.p., [†medē- (whence medicus, remedium),
root unc., cf. Gr. μενθής, but also meditor], 2. v. dep., attend (as a
physician), heal. — Fig., remedy, relieve.
mediocris, -cre, [mediō + cris,
cf. ludicre], adj., middling, moderate: spatum (a little, no great); non mediocris (no little, no small
degree of).
mediocriter [mediocri + ter],
adv., moderately: non mediocriter
(in no small degree).
Mediomatriči, -ōrum (-um),
[Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe be-
tween the Meuse and the Rhine,
about Mezz.
mediterrāneus, -a, -um, [mediō-
terra + aneus], adj., inland.
medius, -a, -um, [√MED (cf.
Eng. mid) + ius], adj., the middle
of (as noun in Eng.), mid-: in colle
medio (half way up); locus medius
utriusque (half way between); de
media nocte (about midnight).
Meldi, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a
tribe of Gaul.
mellor, sec bonus.
Melodūnum, -i, [Celtic], n., a
city of the Senones, on an island in
the Seine, now Melun.
membrum, -i, [?], prob. formed
with suffix -rum (N. of -rus)], n., a
limb, a part of the body.
memini, -is, [perf. of √MAN, in
mens, etc.], def. verb a., remember.
memoria, -ae, [memor + is], f.,
mindfulness, memory, recollection,
power of memory: memoria tenere
(remember); memoriam prodere
(hand down the memory, of some-
thing just mentioned); memoriam
deponeere (cease to remember); me-
oria proditum (handed down by
tradition); supra hance memoriam
(beyond the memory of this genera-
tion); dignum memoria (worthy of
remembrance).
Menapli, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur.,
a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and
the Scheldt.
mendāctum, -i, [mendac+ium],
n., falsehood, a falsehood.
mēns, mentis, [√MAN + tis (re-
duced)], f., (a thought ?), the intel-
lect (as opposed to the moral powers,
cf. animus), the mind, a state of
mind: mentes animosus (minds
and hearts); oculis mentibusque
eyes and thoughts).
mēnsis, -is, [unc. form fr. √MA
(cf. Gr. μήν, moon, month)], m., a
month.
mēnsūra, -ae, [†mensu- (√MA,
as if man, + tu) + ra (f. of -ras)],
f., measure: ex aqua mensurae
(measures by the water-clock); iti-
nerum (accurate length).
mentīō, -ōnis, [as if √MAN (in
memini)+ tio (prob. †menti+tio)],
f., mention.
mercātor, -ōris, [†mercā+tor],
m., a trader (who carries his own
wares abroad).
mercātūra, -ae, [†mercatu + ra
(f. of rus)], f., traffic, trade, com-
mercial enterprise.
Vocabulary.

mercēs, -ēdis, [mercē + dus (reduced)], F., hire, pay, wages.

Mercurius, -i, [unc. form, akin to merces, etc.], M., Mercury, the Roman god of gain, traffic, etc. Afterwards, identified with the Greek Hermes, he was considered also the god of eloquence as well as of trade, the messenger of the gods, and the god of roads, etc. He is identified by Cæsar with a Celtic divinity, probably Teutates.

merere, -itus, -ēri, (also merēo, active), [†merēō (akin to Gr. μελεηωμαι)], 2. v. dep., win, deserve, gain. — Also (from earning pay), serve: mereri de (serve the interests of).

meridiānus, -a, -um, [meridie + anus], adj., of midday: tempus (noon).

meridēs, -ēi, [prob. medio- (reduced) -deia], M., midday, noon. — Also, the South.

meritum, -i, [N. of p.p. of merēo], N., desert, service. — meritō (abl. as adv.), deservedly: minus merito (without the fault); magis quam merito eorum (more than by any act of theirs); merito ejus a se fieri (that he deserved that he should do it).

Messēla, -ae, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Marcus Valerius Messala, consul, b.c. 61, with Marcus Piso.

mētior, mēnsus, mērii, [†mētiō (ʃMA + ūs?)], 4. v. dep., measure, measure out, deal out (rations, distribute).

Metio sedum, reading for Meliodunum.

Mētius (Metius), -ī, [?], M., a Gaul in relations of hospitality (see hospes) with Ariovistus.

metō, messuī, messus, metere, [?], 3. v. a., cut, crop, gather.

metus, -ūs, [unc. root (perh. ʃMA, think) + ūs], M., fear. — Often superfluous with other words of fearing: metu territare (terrify). — Esp.: hoc metu (fear of this).

mus, -a, -um, [ʃMA (in mo) + ius], adj. pron., my, mine.

miles, -itis, [unc. stem akin to mille as root + ūs (reduced)], C., a soldier, a common soldier (as opposed to officers), a legionary soldier (heavy infantry, as opposed to other arms of the service). — Collectively, the soldiers, the soldiery.

militāris, -e, [milit + aris], adj., of the soldiers, military: signa (battle-standards).

militia, -ae, [milit + ia], F., military service, service (in the army).

mille, ind. milia, -ium, [akin to miles], adj. in sing., subst. in plur., a thousand: mille passuum (a thousand paces, a mile).

Minerva, -ae, [unc. form akin to memini, etc.], F., Minerva, the goddess of intellectual activity, and so of skill and the arts, identified with the Greek Athene.

minimē [old abl. of minimus], adv., in the smallest degree, least, very little, not at all.

minimus, -a, -um, [lost stem (wh. minuo) + imus (cf. infimus, superl. of parvus)], adj., smallest, least. — Neut. as subst. and adv., the least, least, very little.

minor, -us, [lost stem (cf. minimus) + ior (compar. ending)], adj., smaller, less: dimidio minor (half as large). — Neut. as subst. and adv., less, not much, not very, not so much, not so: quo minus (in that... not); si minus (if not); minus valebat
Vocabulary.

(not so s:rong, less, etc.); minus uti (not so well); minus magnus fluctus (less violent, smaller).

Minucius (Minut-), -i, [perh. akin to minus], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esph., Lucius Minucius Basilius, a commander of cavalry under Caesar.

minuō, -ui, -uus, -uere, [†ominu- (cf. minus)], 3. v. a. and n., lessen, weaken, diminish: aestus (ebb); vim (break the force, etc.); controversias (settle); desidiam (cure, correct); ostentationem (humble).

miror, -ātus, -āri, [mirō-], 1. v. dep., wonder, wonder at, be surprised. — mirātus, -a, -um, p.p. in pres. sense, surprised.

mirus, -a, -um, [?, √smi (cf. smile) + rus], adj., surprising, marvellous, wonderful.

miser, -era, -erum, [√mis (cf. maereo) + rus], adj., wretched, pitiable, miserable, poor.

misericordia, -ae, [misericord + ia], f., mercy, pity, clemency.

miseror, -ātus, -āri, [†miserō-], 1. v. dep., bewail, complain of.

missus, -a, -um, p.p. of mittō.

missus, -sūs, [√mit (?, root of mittō) + tus], m., a sending: missus Caesaris (despatched by Caesar, under orders of Caesar).

mitissimē [old abl. of mitissimus], adv., superl. of mite (N. of mitis), very gently, very mildly, in very gentle terms.

mittō, misi, missus, mittere, [?], 3. v. a., let go (cf. omitto), send, despatch, discharge, shoot: sub jugum mittere (send under the yoke, an act of humiliation inflicted upon a conquered army. See jugum).

möbilis, -e, [prob. movi- (as if stem of moveo, or a kindred stem) + bilis], adj., easily moved, movab; mobile, fickle, hasty.

möbilītās, -tās, [mobili + tas], f., mobility, activity (of troops), inconstancy, fickleness.

möbilīter [mobili + ter (prob. terum, reduced)], adv., easily (of motion), readily.

moderor, -ātus, -āri, [†moder- (akin to modus, cf. genus, genero)], 1. v. dep., control, regulate, restrain.

modestia, -ae, [modestō + ia], f., moderation, self-control, subordination (of soldiers).

modo [abl. of modus], adv., (with measure?), only, merely, just, even, just now, lately: paulum modo (just, a very); non ... modo (not only); aspectum modo (the mere sight).

modus, -i, [√mod (cf. moder-)] + us], m., measure, quantity. Hence, manner, fashion, style.

moenlia, -ium, [√mi (distribute?) + nis (cf. communis) (orig. shares of work done by citizens?)], n. plur., fortifications.

moestus, see spelling maestus.

möleō, -is, [?, cf. moleustus], f., a mass. — Esph., a dike, a dam.

molestē [old abl. of molestus], adv., heavily, severely: molestē ferre (take hardly, be vexed at).

mōlimentum, -i, [moli- (stem of molior) + mentum], n., trouble, difficulty.

molitus, -a, -um, p.p. of molo.

molliō, -ivi, -itus, -ire, [mollī-], 4. v. a., soften. — Fig., make easy: clivum.

mollis, -e, [?], adj., soft, tender.

— Fig., weak, feeble, not hard, not firm: animus ad resistendum; litus (gently sloping).
mollitēs, -ēi, [molli + ties (cf. -tia)], f., softness. — Fig., weakness: animi (fearlessness of purpose, want of persistence).

molō, -ui, -itus, -ere, [?], 3. v. a., grind.

mōmentum, -i, [movi- (as stem of moveo) + mentum], n., means of motion, cause of motion. — Fig., weight, importance, influence: habere (be of importance).

Mona, -ae, [Celtic], F., the Isle of Anglesey, off the coast of Britain.

moneō, -ui, -itus, -ère, [causative of √MAN (in memlini) or denominative fr. a kindred stem], 2. v. a., remind, warn, advise, urge.

mōns, montis, [√MAN (in MILEO) + tis (reduced)], m., a mountain.

mora, -ae, [prob. root of memor + a], F., delay, grounds of delay.

morātus, -a, -um, p.p. of moror.

morbus, -i, [√MAR (in morior) + bus (cf. turbus)], m., sickness, illness.

Morini, -ēorum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of the Belgae on the coast of Picardy.

mortor, mortuus (moritūrus), mori (moriri), [√MAR (cf. mors)], but prob. in part denominative, 3. v. dep., die.

Moritasgus, -ī, [Celtic], m., a chief of the Senones.

moror, -ātus, -āri, [mora-], 1. v. dep., retard, hinder, check (the advance of), delay, wait, stay.

mors, mortis, [√MAR + tis], F., death: sibi mortem consciscere (commit suicide).

mortus, -a, -um, p.p. of morior.

mōs, mōris, [?], m., a custom, a usage, a way (of acting). — Plur., customs, habits, character (as consisting of habits, cf. ingenium and indoles, of native qualities).

Mosa, -ae, [Celtic], M., a river in Belgic Gaul, now the Meuse.

mōtus, -a, -um, p.p. of moveo.

mōtus, -tus, [movi- (as stem of moveo) + tus], m., a movement, a disturbance, an uprising: expeditior (movement of ships); celer atque instabilis (change, of the passage of events in maritime warfare); siderum (revolutions).

moveō, mōvī, mōtus, movēre, [?], prob. denominative], 2. v. a., set in motion, move, stir: castra (move from a place to another; also, absolutely, break camp).

mulctō, see multō.

mulier, -cris, [?], f., a woman.

müllō, -ōnis, [mulō + o], m., a muleteer, a driver.

multātus, -a, -um, p.p. of multō.

multītūdō, -dinis, [multō + tūdo], F., a great number, great numbers, number (generally). — Esp., the multitude, the common people.

multō, see multus.

multō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [for mulctō, freq. of mucceo, multa-], 1. v. a., punish (by fine), deprive (one of a thing as a punishment).

multum, see multus.

multus, -a, -um, [?], poss. root of mille, miles, + tus], adj., much, many: multō die (late in the day); ad multam noctem (till late at night). — multum, neut. as subst. and adv., much. — Also, plur., multa, much. — Abl., multō, much, far: multō facilius. — As compar., plūs, plūris, n. subst. and adv.; plur. as adj., more, much, very. — As superl., plūrimus, -a, -um, most, very many, very much: quam plürimi (as many as possible); quam
Vocabulary.

plurimos possunt (the most they can); plurimum posse (have most power, be very strong or influential); plurimum valere (have very great weight).

mūlus, -i, [?,?, perh. akin to molo, the mill-beast], M., a mule.

Mūnätius, -i, [prob. akin to munus], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Munatius Plancus, a legatus in Cæsar's army.

mundus, -i, [?], M. (orig. adj., well ordered, a translation of Gr. κόσμος, the universe, the world.

munimentum, -i, [munī + mentum], N., a fortification. — Plur., a defence.

mūniō, -ivi (-ii), -itus, -īre, [munī- (stem of moenia)], 4. v. a. and n., fortify. — Less exactly, protect, defend, furnish (by way of protection). — Esp. (prob. original meaning), make (by embankment): castrum, iter.

mūnitiō, -onis, [munī + tio], f., fortification (abstractly). — Concretely, a fortification, works, fortifications, defences: munitio operis (building works of defence); munitionis causa (to build works, etc.).

mūnitus, -a,-um, p.p. of munio.

mūnus, -eris, [min (as if root of moenia)] + us, orig. share (cf. moenia)], N., a duty, a service, a task. — Also, (a contribution), a tribute, a gift, a present.

mūrālās, -e, [murō + alia], adj., of a wall, wall-: pilā (heavy javelins for service in siege operations).

mūrus, -i, [?], M., a wall (in itself considered, cf. moenia, defences).

musculus, -i, [mus + culus, dimin.], M., (little mouse), a shed (small, for covering besieging soldiers).

mutilus, -a, -um, [?], adj., mutilated: cornūbus (with short broken horns, of the elk).

mutūō, -avi, -ātus, -āre, [prob. same as moto, for movitō-], i. v. a., change, change for the better (remedy).

N.

nactus, -a, -um, p.p. of nanciscor.

nam [case-form of √NA, cf. tam, quam], conj., for.

Nammē dus, -i, [Celtic], M., a Helvetian sent as ambassador to Caesar.

Namnētes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a Gallic tribe on the Loire around Nantes.

namque [nam-que], conj., for (a little more emphatic than nam).

nanciscor, nactus (nancitus), cisci, [√NAC, cf. nactus], 3. v. dep., find, get, procure, light upon, get hold of, obtain.

nactus, -a, -um, p.p. of nanciscor.

Nantuētes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of Gaul of uncertain position, probably in Savoy.

Narbō, -onis, [Celtic], M., a city of the Roman province of Gaul, early made a Roman colony, now Narbonne.

nāscor, nātus, nāsci, [√GNA, cf. gigno], 3. v. dep., be born, arise, be produced, spring up, be raised (of beasts), be found (plumbum). — nātus, p.p., sprung, born.

Nasua, -ae, [Celtic], M., a nobleman of the Treviri.
nātālis, -e, [natu- (reduced) + alis], adj., of birth: dies (a birthday).

nātīs, -onis, [√GNA + tio, perh. through intermediate stem], F., (a birth), a race, a nation, a tribe, a clan.

nātivus, -a, -um, [natu- (reduced) + ivus], adj., native, natural.

nātūra, -ae, [natu + ra (f. of -rus)], F., (birth), nature (of living creature), character, nature (of inanimate things); ea rerum natura (such the state of the case); secundum naturam fluminis (down stream); natura triquetra (in form); natura cogebat (must necessarily); de rerum natura (physical science); eadem feminae marisque (form, organization); naturam vincere (human nature); natura loci (nature of the ground).

nātus, -tus, [√GNA + tus], M., birth: majores nati (elders).

nauta, -ae, [perh. Gr. vabyns], M., a sailor, a boatman.

nauticus, -a, -um, [nauta + cns], adj., of a sailor (or sailors), naval.

nāvāllis, -e, [navi- (reduced) + alis], adj., of ships, naval.

nāvicula, -ae, [navi + cula], F., boat, small vessel.

nāvigātō, -onis, [navigā + tio], F., a sailing, a voyage, travelling by sea, a trip (by sea).

nāvigium, -i, [navigō- (→, navi + tagnus) + ium], N., a vessel (general), “a craft.”

nāvigō, -avi, -ātus, -āre, [navigō- (see navigium)], I. v. n., sail.

nāvis, -is, [√(s)nu (increased), with added i, cf. Gr. vavis], F., a ship, a vessel, a boat: oneraria (a transport); longa (a war galley); navi egredi (land).

nāvō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [(g)navō-], I. v. a., do one’s best: operam (do one’s best).

nē [√NA, unc. case-form], conj., lest, that . . . not, not to (do anything), from (doing anything), so that . . . not, for fear that. — After verbs of fearing, that: ne . . . quidem (not . . . even, not . . . either); ne Vorenus quidem (nor Vorenus either, Vorenus too did not, etc.).

-ne (enclitic) [prob. same as nē, orig. = nonne], conj., not? (as a question, cf. nonne), whether, did (as question in Eng.), do, etc.— See also necne, nec (see neque).

necātus, -a, -um, p.p. of neco.

necēssārius, -a, -um, [†necessō- (reduced) + arius], adj., (closely bound?), necessary: tempus (critical); causa (pressing, unavoidable); res (absolutely necessary, needful, indispensable). — Also, as subst., a connection (a person bound by any tie), a close friend. — Abl. as adv., necēssāriō, of necessity, necessarily.

necēsse [?, ne-cessō], indecl. adj., necessary. — With est, one must, one cannot but, one must inevitably.

necēssitās, -tātis, [†necessō + tas], F., necessity (constraint, compulsion): temporis (exigency); suarum necessitatum causa (interests).

necēssitūdō, -dinis, [†necessō + tudo], F., close connection (cf. necessarius), intimacy (close relations).

necne [nec ne], conj., or not (in double questions).

necō, -āvi (-ui), -ātus (-tus), -āre, [nec- (stem of nex)], I. v. a., put to death, kill, murder (in cold blood).

necubī [ne cubi (?), for quobli,
see ubi)], conj., that nowhere, lest anywhere, that not . . . anywhere.
nefālius, -a, -um, [nefas + ius], adj., wicked, infamous, abominable.
nefās [ne-fas], n. indecl., a crime (against divine law).
neglegō (necl-), -lexi, -lectus, -legere, [nec (= ne) -lego], 3. v. a., not regard, disregard, neglect: injuriās (leave unavenged, leave unpunished); hac parte neglecta (leave unnoticed); metu mortis neglecto (careless of, etc.).
negō, -avi, -ātus, -āre, [?, poss. ne-aio], 1. v. a. and n., say no, say . . . not, refuse.
negotiōr, -ātus, -āri, [negotiō-], 1. v. dep., do business (on a large scale, as in money, etc.).
negotium, -i, [neg-o-tium], n., business, occupation, an undertaking.
— Less definitely, a matter, a thing.
— Also, difficulty, trouble: in ipso negotio (at the moment of action); negotium conficere (make a thorough business of a thing, finish a thing up); quid negotiō (what business? cf. Eng. “what business have you here?”); dare negotium alicui (employ one, give in charge to).
Nemētes, -um, [Teutonic], m. pl., a German tribe on the Rhine.
nēmō, īnēminis, [ne-homo], c., no one, nobody.
nēquaquam [ne-quaquam (cf. eā, quā)], adv., in no way, by no means.
neque (nec) [ne-que], adv., and not, nor: neque . . . neque (neither . . . nor).
nē . . . quidem, see ne.
nēquī(d)quam (nēquic-), [ne . . . qui(d)quam], adv., to no purpose, in vain, not without reason.
nēquis(-qui), -qua, -quid (-quod), [ne-quis], pron., that no, that nothing, lest any, etc. (see ne).
Nervicus, -a, -um, [Nerviō- (reduced) + cus], adj., of the Nervii, Nervian.
Nervius, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., Nervian.— Plur., Nervī, the Nervii, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.
nervus, -i, [prob. for *nevrus, cf. Gr. νέυρον], m., a sinew.— Fig., in plur., strength, vigor.
neuter, -trā, -trum, [ne-uter], pron., neither.— Plur., neither party, neither side.
nēve (neu) [ne-ve], conj., or not, and not, nor.
nex, necis, [?], F., death.
nihilum, -i (nihil), [ne-hilum?], n. and indecl., nothing: nihil reliqui (nothing left); nihil respondere (make no answer).— nihilō, abl. as adv., none, no.— nihil, acc. as adv., not at all: nonnihil (somewhat).
nimis [?], adv., too, too much: non nimis (not very).
nimius, -a, -um, [nimi- (?, stem of nimis) + ius], adj., too much, too great.
nisi [ne-si], conj., (not . . . if), unless, except: nisi si (except in case, unless); nisi cum (until); nisi rogatus (without being asked).
nisus, -a, -um, p.p. of nitor.
Nitiobroges (-briges), -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Aquitania, on the Garonne.
nitor, nisus, (nixus), niti, [prob. genu], 3. v. dep., (strain with the knee against something), struggle, strive, exert one’s self: niti insidiis (rely upon).
nix, nivis, [?], F., snow.
nōbilis, -i, [as if (g)nō (root of nosco) + bilis], adj., famous, noble, well-born (cf. “notable”).
Vocabulary.

nobilitās, -tātis, [nobili + tas], F., nobility. — Concretely, the nobility, the nobles.

nocēns, see noceo.

noceō, -ui, no p.p., nocère, [akin to nex], 2. v. n., do harm to, injure, harm, harass. — nocēns, -entis, p.p. as adj., hurtful, guilty (of some harm).

noctū [abl. of †noctus (nosc + tus)], as adv., by night.

nocturnus, -a, -um, [nosc + turnus, cf. diurnus], adj., of the night, nightly, nocturnal, in the night, by night.

nōdus, -i, [?], m., a knot, a joint: nodi et articuli (protuberant joints).

nōlō, nōlui, nōlle, [ne-volo], irr. v. a. and n., not wish, be unwilling, wish not, not like to have.

nōmen, -minis, [√(G)NO (root of nosco) + men], N., a name (what one is known by), name (fame, prestige). — As a name represents an account, an account: nomine dotis (on account of, as); suo nomine (on his own account); nomine obsidum (under pretense of hostages).

nōminātim [acc. of real or supposed †nominatīs (nominā + tis)], adv., by name (individually).

nōminūs, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [nomin-], 1. v. a., name, mention, call by name.

nōn [ne-oenum (unum)], adv., not: non est dubium (there is no doubt); non mediocrum (in no small degree); non magnum (rather small).

nōndum (see dum), not yet.

nōnnihil (see nihil), something.

nōnnullus (see nullus), some.

nōnnumquam, sometimes.

nōnus, -a, -um, [novi- (?) + nus (mus)], adj., ninth.

Nōreja, -ae, [Teutonic], F., a city of the Norici, in modern Styria.

Nōricus, -a, -um, [stem akin to Noreja + cus], adj., of the Norici (see Noreja).

nōscō, nōvi, nōtus, nōscere, [√(G)NA], 3. v. a., learn, become acquainted with. — In perfect tenses, know. — nōtus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., known, familiar, well-known: notis vadis (being acquainted with, etc.).

noster, -tra, -trum, [prob. nos (plur. nom.) + ter], adj., pron., our, ours. — In plur., our men (the Romans), our forces.

nūtita, -ae, [notō + tia], F., acquaintance with.

novem [unc. reduced case-form], ind. num. adj., nine.


novītās, -tātis, [novō + tas], F., novelty, strangeness, strange character: rei (novelty, unexpected occurrence).

novus, -a, -um, [?, cf. Eng. new], adj., new, novel, fresh: res novae (a change of government, revolution). — novissimus, -a, -um, sup., latest, last: agmen (the rear).

nox, noctis, [akin to noceo], F., night.

noxia, -ae, [√NOC (in noceo) + unc. term.], F., crime, guilt.

nūbō, nūpsi, nūptus, nūbere, [akin to nubes], 3. v. n., veil one’s self (of the bride), marry (of the woman).

nūdātus, -a, -um, p.p. of nudo.

nūdō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [nudō-], 1. v. a., lay bare, expose. — Less exactly, clear (murum defensoribus).

nūdus, -a, -um, [?, root (akin to
naked), a messenger. Hence, news: nuntium mittere (send word); per eorum nuntios (agents).

nūper [for novi-per, cf. parum per], adv., lately, recently, not long ago.
nusquam [ne-usquam], adv., nowhere, in no case (almost equal never).
nūtus, -tūs, [√nu + tus], m., a nod, a sign: ad nutum (at one's beck, at one's command); nutu (by signs).

O.

ob [unc. case-form akin to Gr. ἐμ], prep. (adv. in composition), (near), against. Hence, on account of, for: ob eam rem (for this reason, on this account).—In comp., towards, to, against.

obae-rātus, -a, -um, [ob-√aera-tus, as if p.p. of √aero], adj., bound in debt (to some one).—As subst., a debtor, a servant for debt.

obdūcē, -dūxī, -ductus, -dūcere, [ob-duceo], 3. v. a., lead towards, lead against: fossam (throw out, in a military sense, carry along).

obeō, -ii, -itus, -ire, [ob-eo], irr. v. a., go to, go about, attend to.

obiciō, -jēcī, -jectus, -icerē, [ob-jiangio], 3. v. a., throw against, throw in the way, throw up (against the enemy, etc.), set up, expose.—Objectus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., lying opposite, lying in the way.

obitus, -ītus, [ob-itus], m., a going to.—Esp., a going to death (cf. ob-lire mortem), destruction, annihilation.

objectus, -a, -um, p.p. of ob-jectō, see obiciō.
oblatus, -a, -um, p.p. of offero.

oblique [old abl. of obliquus],
adv., obliquely, slanting.

obliquus, -a, -um, [ob+liquus,
cf. limus], adj., slanting.

obliviscor, -litis, -livisci, [obl-
livio], cf. liveo], 3. v. dep., (grow
dark against ?), forget.

obsecro, -avi, -atus, -are, [manu-
factured from ob sacrum (near or
by some sacred object)], 1. v. a., en-
treat, adjure.

obsequentia, -ae, [obsequent +
ias], F., compliance: obsequentia
niumia (too ready compliance).

observatus, -a, -um, p.p of ob-
servo.

observo, -avi, -atus, -are, [ob-
servo], 1. v. a., (be on the watch
towards?), guard, maintain, keep:
judicium (follow); dies natales
(keep, celebrate).

obses, -idis, [ob+ses, cf. praeses
and obsidio], c., (a person under
guard), a hostage.

ob sessio, -onis, [ob+ sessio], F.,
a blockade, a siege, a state of siege
(cf. oppugnatio, of actual siege
operations).

obessus, -a, -um, p.p of ob-
sideo.

obsideo, -sedii, -sessus, -sidere,
[ob-sedeo], 2. v. a., (sit down
against), blockade, beset, guard.

obsidio, -onis, [obsidio- (re-
duced) + o], F., a siege (cf. obses-
sio), a blockade. — Also, the art of
siege.

obsignatus, -a, -um, p.p of ob-
signo.

obsigno, -avi, -atus, -are, [ob-
signo], 1. v. a., seal up, seal.

obsistio, -stiti, no p.p., -istere,
[ob-sisto], 3. v. n., withstand.

obstinatē [old abl. of obstina-
tus], adv., persistently.

obstrictus, -a, -um, p.p of ob-
stringo.

obstringō, -struxi, -strictus, -strin-
gere, [ob-stringo], 3. v. a., bind
(lit. and fig.).

obstructus, -a, -um, p.p of ob-
struo.

obstruo, -struxi, -structus, -stru-
ere, [ob-struo], 3. v. a., block up,
barricade.

obtemperō, -āvi, -āturus, -āre,
[ob-tempero], 1. v. n., (conform
to), comply with, submit to.

obtester, -atus, -ari, [ob-testor],
1. v. dep., implore (calling some-
thing to witness).

obtineō, -tinui, -tentus, -tinere,
[ob-teneo]. 2. v. a., hold (against
something or somebody), retain,
maintain, occupy, possess: provin-
ciam (have control of as prætor);
justissimam apud eum causam ob-
tinere (be entirely free from obli-
gation towards him, as having a perfect
right to benefits conferred).

obtuli, perf of offero.

obvenio, -veni, -venturus, -venire,
[ob-venio], 4. v. n., come to, come in
one's way, fall to one (by lot).

obviam [ob-viam], adv., in the
way of, to meet (any one): obviam
venire (come to meet).

occāstitā, -onis, [ob-casio, cf.
occido], F., opportunity: occasio
brevis (a short time).

occāsus, -sūs, [ob-casus, cf. oc-
cido], M., a falling, a setting (of
the sun): solis (the sunset, the
west).

occidō, -cidi, -cāsurus, -cidere,
[ob-cado], 3. v. n., fall, set, be slain:
ol occidenta (the west).

occidō, -cidi, -cussus, -cidere, [ob-
caedo], 3. v. a., kill, massacre:
occisī (the slain).
occulta-tītō, -onis, [occulta + tio],
F., concealment.
occultātus, -a, -um, p.p. of oc-
culto.
occultē [old abl. of occultus],
adv., secretly.
occultō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [occul-
tō-], i. v. a., conceal, hide.
occultūs, -a, -um, [p.p. of oc-
culo], as adj., concealed: in occulto (in secret); ex occulto (from an
ambush, in ambush); in occulto
sese continere (keep themselves hid-
den); insidiandi ex occulto (of at-
tacking from an ambushade).
occupātīō, -onis, [occupā + tio],
F., occupation (engagement in busi-
ness), business, affairs (of business):
occupationes tantularum rerum
(engagement in such trifling mat-
ters).
occupātus, -a, -um, p.p. of oc-
cupo.
occupās, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [occupā-
or occup-, (cf. aiceps), ob and
stem akin to capio], i. v. a., seize,
take possession of, seize upon, occupy
(only in military sense): regna (usu-
lp); in opere occupati (en-
gaged).
occurreō, -curri (-cucurri?), -cur-
sūrus, -currere, [ob-curro], 3. v.n.,
run to meet, meet, come upon, find,
fall in with: eo (run, to meet an
enemy); ad animum (occur).
occurrōs, -āvi, no p.p., -āre, [oc-
curros-, p.p. of occurreo], i. v. n.,
rush (to meet).
Óceanus, -i, [Gr. Ὄκεανός], M.,
the ocean (with or without mare).
Ocelum, -i, [Celtic], N., a town
of the Graioceli in Cisalpine Gaul
(Oules in Piedmont).
duty. — Transf., a duty, allegiance, an obligation: discedere ab officio (fail of one's duty).

Ollovicō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., a king of the Nitiobriges.

ommittō, -misi, -missus, -mittere, [ob-mitto], 3. v. a., let go by: consilium (leave untried); omnibus omissis rebus (leaving everything else).

omnīnō[abl. of omninimus(omni + nus)], adv., altogether, entirely, only, utterly, in all, at any, any way, only just, whatever (with negatives).

omnis, -e, [?] adj., all, the whole of (as divisible or divided, cf. totus as indivisible or not divided). — In sing., every (without emphasis on the individuals, cf. quisque, each, emphatically); celerius omni opinione (of any one); omni tempore (on all occasions, always); omnes preces (every form of prayers); omnibus rebus (everything, everything else); per omnia, etc. (through nothing but, etc.). — In plur. as a short expression for, all others.

onerārius, -a, -um, [oner- (as stem of onus) + arius], adj., for burdens: naves (transports).

onerō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [oner- (as stem of onus)], i. v. a., load: celeritas onerandi (of ships, facility of loading).

onus, -eris, [unc. root + us], N., a burden, a load, a freight, a cargo. — Abstr., weight. — Esp.: tanta onera navium (of such weight).

opera, -ae, [oper- (as stem of opus) + a (f. of -us)], F., work, pains, attention: operam navare (do one's best); operam dare (devote one's self, exert one's self, take pains). — With ut, try, take care: opera uti (services, help, etc.); quorum opera interfectus (through whose means, agency).

opinīō, -ōnis, [opinō- (cf. nec-opinus) + o], F., notion, expectation: celerius omni opinione (quicker than any one would suppose); opinio virtutis (reputation for, etc.); tanta opinio hujus belli (impression); tantam opinionem timoris praebuat (gave such an idea, impression); also, opinio timoris (display, cause for an impression); speciem atque opinionem pugnantium praebere (make a show and give an impression of being combatants); nomen atque opinio (reputation); ut fert illorum opinio (as their notion is); ad opinionem Galliae (for an impression on the Gauls); opinione praecipere (to anticipate).

opportet, -uit, no p.p., -ēre, [noun-stem from ob and stem akin to porto, cf. opportūnus], 2. v. imp., it behoves, it ought: poenam sequi (the punishment was to follow); frumentum metiri (he ought, etc.); alio tempore atque opportuit (than it should have been).

oppidānus, -a, -um, [oppidō- (reduced) + anus], adj., of a (the) town. — Plur. as subst., the townspeople.

oppidum, -i, [ob-tpedum (a plain ?, cf. Gr. τρῆβοι)], N., (the fortified place which, according to ancient usage, commanded the territories of a little state), a stronghold, a town (usually fortified).

oppōnē, -posui, -positus, -pōnere, [ob-pono], 3. v. a., set against, oppose (something to something else): novem oppositis legionibus (with nine legions opposed to the enemy).

— oppositus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., opposed, lying in the way, opposite.
Vocabulary.

opportūnē [old abl. of opportū

nus], adv., opportunely.

opportūnītās, -tās, [oppor
tūnō + ĭa], F., timeliness, fitness (of time or circumstance), good luck (in time or circumstance), convenience (of a means of fortification).

opportūnus, -a, -um, [ob-portu

nus, cf. importunus, and Portu

nus], adj., (coming to harbor?), opportune, advantageous, lucky.

opposītus, -a, -um, p.p. of oppon

no.

oppressus, -a, -um, p.p. of op

primō.

opprīmō, -pressī, -pressus, -prim

ere, [ob-premo], 3. v. a., (press against), overwhelm, crush, overpower, overtake (surprise).

oppūgnātīō, -ōnis, [oppugnā + tio], F., a siege (of actual operations, cf. obsidio, blockade), besieging, an attack (in a formal manner against a defended position).

oppūgnō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [ob

pugno], 1. v. a., attack (formally, but without blockade), lay siege to, carry on a siege, assail (a defended position).

ops, opis, [?], F., help, aid. — Plur., resources. — Also, help (of several gods).

optātus, -a, -um, [p.p. of opto (wish)], as adj., desired, desirable, wished for.

optimē, see bene.

optimus, -a, -um, [op (cf. ops?) + timus (cf. finītīmus)], superl. of bonus.

opus, operis, [√op + us], N., work, labor (as accomplishing its purpose, cf. labor, as tiresome). — In military sense, a work, works, fortifications: natura et opere munitus (by nature and art); operum

atque artificiorum (trades, handi

crafts). — In abl., quanto-(tanto-) opere, how much, so much, so: magnopere (very much, very).

opus [same word as preceding], N. indecl., need, necessary: si quid ipai a Caesare opus esset (if he needed anything of Cesar); si quid opus facto, etc. (if anything needs to be done).

ōra, -ae, [?], F., a shore, a coast.

ōrātīō, -ōnis, [orā + tio], F., speech, words, talk, address, discourse, argument.

ōrātor, -ōris, [orā + tor], M., a speaker, an ambassador.

orbis, -is, [?], M., a circle (a circular plane); orbis terrarum (the circle of lands, the whole world). — Less exactly, a hollow square (in military language).

Or cynia, -ae, [Teutonic], F., (with silva), the Herculian forest (a vast extent of forest in the interior of Europe, see vi. 25).

ordō, -inis, [akin to ordior], M., a series, a row, a tier, a rank (of soldiers), a grade (of centurions, as commanding special ordines of soldiers, also the centurions themselves), an arrangement, an order: nullo certo ordine (with no fixed order); perturbatis ordinibus (the ranks being broken); ratio ordoque ag

minis (the plan and arrangement of the march); ordines servare (to keep their places, of soldiers, also of anything laid in rows or tiers, preserve the arrangement, not deviating from it).

Orgetorix, -igis,[Celtic, cf. Dum

norix, etc.], M., a nobleman of the Helvetii.

orīor, oritus, orīrī, [?], 3. (and 4.) v. n., arise, spring up: orta ince
Vocabulary.

(at daybreak). — Fig., begin, start, spring from, arise, be started, have its source. — orlēns, -entis, p. as adj., rising: sol (sunrise, the east).

ornamentum, -i, [ornā + mentum], N., an adornment. — Fig., an honor (an addition to one's dignity), a source of dignity.

ornātus, -a, -um, p.p. of ornamentum.

ornō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [unc. noun stem], i. v. a., adorn, equip, furnish. — Fig., honor. — ornātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., furnished, well-equipped, honored.

ōrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [or- (as stem of os)], i. v. a. and n., speak. — Esp., pray, entreat.

ortus, -a, -um, p.p. of orlor.

ortus, -tūs, [vīōr (in orlor) + tus], M., a rising: solis (sunrise, the East).

ōs, ōris, [?], N., the mouth, the face: ora convértere (turn the eyes).

Osismi, -orum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Gaul (in Brittany).

ostendō, -tendi, -tendus, -tendere, [obstante, obstante, (stretch towards)], present, show, point out, make known, state, declare: copias (discover, unmask).

ostentātīō, -ōnis, [ostentā + tō], F., a showing, a display: ostentātionis causa (for display); ostentātionem comminuere (humble the pride).

ostentō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [ostentō-], I. v. a., display, exhibit.

ōtīum, -i, [?], N., repose, inactivity, quiet (free from disturbance).

ōvum, -i, [perh. āvī + um], (belonging to a bird?), N., an egg.

pābulātīō, -ōnis, [pabulā + tīo], F., a foraging: pabulationis causa (for forage).

pābulātor, -tōris, [pabulā + tor], M., a forager.

pābulor, -ātus, -āri, [pabulō-], I. v. dep., forage (gather fodder).

pābulum, -i, [vā (in pasco) + bulum (but prob. through *pabulus or the like)], N., fodder (for animals, including the stalk as well as the grain), green fodder.

pācātus, -a, -um, p.p. of pacō.

pācō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [pāc- (in pax)], I. v. a., pacify, subdue. — pācātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., peaceable, quiet, subject (as reduced to peace): insigne pacatum [·orum] (a token of submission).

pactum, -i, [p.p. of paciscor, pango?], N., (a thing agreed), an agreement, an arrangement. Hence, a method, a way (of doing anything): quo pacto (how).

Pādus, -i, [Celtic], M., the Po, the great river of Northern Italy (Cisalpine Gaul).

Paemāni, -orum, [Celtic], M. pl., a people of the Belgians.

paene [?], adv., almost, nearly.

paenitet (poenitet), -uit, -ēre, [poenitō- (perh. p.p. of verb akin to punio)], 2. v. a. (impers.), it repents (one), one repents, one regrets.

pāgus, -i, [vā (in pango) + us (with unc. conn. of ideas)], M., a district, a canton (cf. vicus, a smaller collection of dwellings).

palam [unc. case-form, cf. clam], adv., openly, publicly, without concealment.

palma, -ae, [borrowed fr. Gr. πάλαμη], F., the palm (of the hand).
Vocabulary.

palūs, -ūdis, [ʔ], F., a marsh.
palūster, -tris, -tre, [palud + tris], adj., marshy.
pandō, pandi, passus, pandere, [akin to pandus], 3. v. a., spread out (perh. orig. of the hands, bending back the wrist): passis manibus (with outstretched hands); passis capillis (with dishevelled hair).

pār, paris, [perh. akin to paro, parlo (through the idea of barter or exchange)], adj., equal, alike, like: intervallum (the same). — Esp., equal in power, a match for.

parātus, -a, -um, p.p. of paro.
parce [old abl. of parcus], adv., sparingly, frugally.

parēcō, pepercī (parsi), parsūrus (parciturus), parcere, [akin to parcus (\(\sqrt{\text{par} + \text{cus}}\), acquisitive, and so frugal ?)], 3. v. n., spare. — Esp., save alive: parendo (by economy, by frugality).

parēns, -entis, [\(\sqrt{\text{par}}\) (in parlo) + ens (cf. Gr. ἄγων)], C., a parent.

parentō, -āvi, -āitus, -āre, [parent-], 1. v. n., make a funeral offering (to deceased relatives, esp. parents). Hence, avenge (making an offering of the wrong-doer).

pāreō, pāreui, pāritūrus, pāreere, [parō- (cf. opilparus)], 2. v. n., be prepared, appear, obey.

parilō, peperi, partus (paritūrus), parere, [\(\sqrt{\text{par}}\), procure (perh. orig. by barter, cf. par)], 3. v. a., procure, acquire, secure.

Parisli, -orum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic tribe around modern Paris, whose town Lutetia takes its modern name from them, cf. Rheims (Remi), Treves (Treveri).

parō, -āvi, -āitus, -āre, [parō-], cf. opilparus, and pareo], 1. v. a., procure, provide, prepare, get ready for (bellum used concretely for the means of war), arrange. — paratūs, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., ready, prepared: animo parato (with mind resolved, resolute, determined): paratus in armis (armed for war).

pars, partis, [\(\sqrt{\text{par} + \text{tis}}\) (reduced), akin to portio, and perh. to par through idea of barter], F., (a dividing), a portion, a part, a share.

— Often of position or direction merely, side, direction, region: una ex parte (on one side); in utram partem (in which direction); ex utroque parte (on both sides); sinistra pars (the left flank); pars fluminis (bank); major pars (the majority). — Fig.: qua ex parte (in which respect); omnibus partibus (in all respects); in utramque partem (in both respects, both ways, of a plan); in utramque partem (on both sides, of a discussion). — Esp.: tres partes (three quarters, three parts out of four); ex parte (in part); ad inferiorem partem fluminis (down the river); ab inferiore parte fluminis (further down, etc.). — partim, acc. as adv., in part, some . . . others.

partim, see pars.

partior, -itus, -iri, [parti-], 4. v. dep., divide: partitis temporibus (alternately).

partitus, -a, -um, p.p. of partior.

partus, -a, -um, p.p. of pario.

parum [akin to parvus, perh. for parvum], adv., not very, not much, not sufficiently: parum diligenter (too carelessly).

parvulus, -a, -um, [parvō + lus], adj., small, slight, insignificant: ab parvulis (from infancy).
Vocabulary.

parvus, -a, -um, [perh. for paulus, cf. paucus, and Gr. παχύς], adj., small, slight, little.

passim [acc. of τπασσίς (pad + tis)], adv., in all directions, all about.

passus, -a, -um, p.p. of pando.

passus, -a, -um, p.p. of patior.

passus, -sūs, [√PAD (in pando) + tus], m., (a spreading of the legs), a stride, a step, a pace (esp. as a measure, about five Roman feet): mille passuum (a Roman mile, five thousand feet).

patēfaciō, -fēcī, -fectus, -facere, [noun-stem akin to pateo + facio], 3. v. a., lay open, open.

patēfectus, -a, -um, p.p. of patēfacio.

patēficio, pass. of patēfacio.

pateō, -ui, no p.p., -ēre, [patē- (noun-stem akin to Gr. πέταω), 2. v. n., be extended, lie open, spread, extend, be wide, be open. — patēns, -entis, p. as adj., open, exposed.

pater, -tris, [√PA (in pasco?) + ter], m., a father. — Plur., ancestors.

patienter [patient + ter], adv., patiently.

patientia, -ae, [patient + ia], F., patience, endurance, forbearance (in refraining from fighting).

patior, passus, patī, [?], 3. v. dep., suffer, endure, allow, permit: vim tempestatis (endure, stand).

patrīus, -a, -um, [pater + ius], adj., of a father, ancestral, of one's fathers.

patrōnus, -i, [patrō- (as if stem of patroo, cf. colonus, aegrōtus) + nus], m., a patron, a protector.

patruus, -i, [pat(e)r + vus?], m., an uncle (on the father's side, cf. avunculus, on the mother's).

paucitās, -tātis, [pauco + tās], F., small number.

paucus, -a, -um, [√PAU-(cf. paulus and parvus) + cus], adj., almost always in plur., few, some few (but with implied only in a semi-negative sense): paucis (paucus) respondit (in a few words, briefly).

paualētim [paualē- (reduced) + atim, as if acc. of paualētis (paualē + tis)], adv., little by little, a little at a time, gradually.

paullisper [paullis (abl. plur. of paulus?) per], adv., a little while.

paullō [abl. of paulus], as adv., a little, slightly.

paullulum [acc. of paulus], as adv., a very little.

paulum [acc. of paulus (√PAU. + lus, cf. paucus)], as adv., a little, a short distance.

pāx, pācis, [√PAC, as stem], F., (a treaty?), peace.

peccō, -āvi, -āturus, -āre, [?], i. v. n., go wrong, commit a fault.

Pectones, see Plectones.

pectus, -oris, [perh. pect (as root of pecto) + us], from the rounded shape of the breast, cf. pectinatus, N., the breast.

pecūnia, -ae, [pecunō- (pecu + nus, cf. Vacuna) + ia], F., money (originally cattle), wealth.

pecus, -oris, [√PEC (tie?) + us], N., cattle (especially sheep and goats): pecore vivere (flesh of cattle). — Pl., cattle, flocks and herds.

pedālis, -e, [ped + alis], adj., of a foot (in thickness), a foot thick.

pedes, -itis, [ped (as if pédī) + tīs (reduced)], c., a footman, a footsoldier. — Collectively, the infantry.

pedester, -tris, -tre, [pedēt+iās], adj., of infantry, of persons on foot: itinera (journeys on foot, marches, land routes); copiae (the foot, the infantry)
Vocabulary.

peditātus, -tūs, [pedit + atus, cf. consulatus], m., foot, infantry.
Pedius, -i, [7], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus Pedius, a nephew of Caesar and a legatus under him in Gaul. He sided with Augustus, and was afterwards made consul by Augustus’s patronage.

pētor, see malus.
pēius, see malus.
pellis, -is, [?], v., a hide, a skin (either on or off the body of an animal): sub pellibus (in tents, i.e. in the field).
pellō, pepuli, pulsus, pellere, [?], 3. v. a., strike, beat, drive, defeat, repulse.

pendō, pependī, pēnusus, pendere, [?], 3. v. a., hang, weigh, weigh out. Hence (since money was earlier weighed, not counted), pay, pay out. — Esp. with words of punishment, pay (a penalty), suffer (punishment, cf. dare and capere).

penes [prob. acc. of stem in -ōs akin to penitus], prep., in the power of.

penitus [stem akin to penes, penus, etc., + itus, cf. divinitus], adv., far within, deeply, entirely, utterly: penitus ad externos fines (clear to, all the way to).

penna, see pinna.

1. per [unc. case-form of stem akin to Gr. περί], adv. (in composition) and prep., through. — Fig., through, by means of (cf. ab, by, directly), by the agency of. — Often accompanied by the idea of hindrance: per anni tempus potuit (the time of the year would allow); per te licere (you do not prevent, you allow); per aetatem non poterant (on account of). — Often in adv. expressions: per fidem (in good faith, in consequence of a deception on the other side); per concilium (in council); per insidias (treacherously); per cruciatum (with torture); per vim (forcibly); ipse per se (in and of itself).

2. per [prob. a different case of the same stem as 1. per], adv. in comp., very, exceedingly.

perāctus, -a, -um, p.p. of perago.
perago, -ēgi, -āctus, agere, [1. perago], 3. v. a., conduct through, finish, accomplish: concilium (hold to the end); conventus (finish holding).

perangustus, -a, -um, [2. perangustus], adj., very narrow.

perceptus, -a, -um, p.p. of percipio.

perciplō, -cēpi, -ceptus, -cipere, [1. per-capio], 3. v. a., take in (completely), learn, acquire, hear. — Esp. of harvests, gather. Hence, fig., reaþ: fructus victoriae.

percontātīō, -ōnis, [percontā + tio], r., inquiry, inquiries (though sing. in Latin).

percurrō, -cucurri (-curri), -currere, [1. per-curro], 3. v. n. and a., run along.

percussus, -a, -um, p.p. of percutio.

percutō, -cussi, -cussus, -cutere, [1. per-quatio], 3. v. a., hit, strike, run through.

perdicō, -didici, no p.p., -disce-re, [1. per-discō], 3. v. a., learn thoroughly, get by heart.

perdītus, -a, -um, p.p. of perdīo.

perdīō, perdīdi, perdītus, perdere, [1. per-do], 3. v. a., destroy (cf. interficio), ruin. — perdītus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., ruined, desperate, abandoned.

perdūcō, -dūxi, -ductus, -dūcere,
Vocabulary.

[1. per-duco], 3. v. a., lead through, lead along, bring over, carry along (fossam), march (legionem). — Fig., prolong, win over, bring: rem ad extremum casum (reduce).

perductus, -a, -um, p.p. of per-
duco.

perendinus, -a, -um, [perendie (†peren-die, cf. pōstridie) + inus], adj., (of the day beyond, cf. per and Gr. πέραν), of day after to-morrow: perendino die (day after to-morrow, in two days).

pereō, -ii (-ivi), itūrus, -ire,[1. per-
eo], irr. v. n., perish, be killed (in battle).

perequitō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre,[1. per-
quito], i.v. a. and n., ride over (or around).

perexiguus, -a, -um, [2. per-
exiguus], adj., very small.

perfacillis, -ī,-ē, [2. per-facilis],
adj., very easy.

perfectus, -a, -um, p.p. of per-
ficio.

perferō, -tuli, -lātus, -ferre,[1. per-
fero], irr. v. a., carry through (or over); opinionem (spread among); consilium (carry over); famam (bring). — Also, bear through (to the end), endure, suffer, submit to.

perficiō, -feci, -fectus, -ficere,
[1. per-facio], 3. v. a., accomplish, complete, finish, make (complete). — With ut (utī), succeed (in doing or having done).

perfidia, -ae, [perfidō + ia], F., perfidity, treachery, faithlessness.

perfidus, -a, -um, [1. per (or perch. a third case-form of same stem) -fidus], adj., perfidious.

perfringō, -frēgi, -fractus, -frin-
gere,[1. per-frango], 3. v. a., break through.

perfuga, -ae,[1. per-†fuga

(√FUG + a, cf. scriba)], m., a ref-
ugee, a fugitive, a deserter.

perfugīō, -fugi, no p.p., -fugere,
[1. per-fugio], 3. v. n., run away, flee (to a place), escape to.

perfugium, -ī, [1. per-†fugium, cf. refugium], N., a place of refuge, refuge.

pergō, pergēxi, perrectus(?), per-
gere,[1. per-rego], 3. v. n., (keep one’s direction?), keep on, continue to advance, advance.

periclitōr, -ātus, -āri,[†periclitō-
as if p.p. of periculor]), i.v. dep., try, make a trial, be exposed, be put in peril.

periculum, see periculum.

periculōsus, -a, -um, [periculō + osus], adj., dangerous.

periculum (-clum), -i,[†peri-
(cf. experior) + culum], N., a trial. Hence, peril, danger.

peritus, -a, -um, [†peri-
(cf. experior) + tus], p.p. as adj., (ried), experienced, skilled, skilful.

perlātus, -a, -um, p.p. of perfero.

perlēctus, -a, -um, p.p. of perlego.

perlegō, -legi, -lectus, -legere,
[1. per-lego], 3. v. a., read through, read (a letter aloud).

perlūō, -lūi, -lūtus, -luere,[1. per-
luo], 3. v. a., wash all over. — Pass. (as middle), bathe.

permāgnus, -a, -um, [2. per-
magnus], adj., very great, very large.

permaneō, -mānsi, -mānsūrus, -manère,[1. per-maneo], 2. v. n., remain (to the end), continue, hold out, persist: in eadem libertate (continue to live, etc.).

permiscēō, -miscui, -mixtus (-mis-
tus), -miscère, [1. per-misceo],
2. v. a., mix (thoroughly), mingle.

permīssus, -a, -um, p.p. of per-
mitto.
Vocabulary.

permittō, -misi,-missus,-mittere, [1. per-mitto], 3. v. a., (give over), grant, allow, give up, entrust: fortunas (trust); summan imperi (place in the hands of, etc.); suffragii rem (leave the matter to, etc).

permixtus, -a, -um, p.p. of permisceo.

permoneō, -ui,-itus,-ère, [I. per-moneo], 2. v. a., warn (doubtful reading in vii. 38).

permūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of permoveo.

permoveō, -mōvī,-mōitus,-movēre, [I. per-moveo], 2. v. a., move (thoroughly), influence, affect. — permūtus, -a, -um, p.p., much affected, much influenced, overcome.

permulceō, -mulsi,-mulsus,-mulcere, [I. per-mulceo], 2. v. a., smooth over. Hence, soothe, pacify.

permiciēs, -ēci, [?; akin to nesciō], F., destruction, ruin.

perpaucus, -a, -um, [2. per-paucus], adj. Plur., very few, but very few, only a very few.

perpendiculum, -i, [perpendicular (stem of perpendō, hang down) + culum], n., a plumb line: ad perpendiculum (perpendicular).

perpetior, -cussus,-peti, [I. perpetuar], 3. v. dep., suffer, endure.

perpetuus, -a, -um, [I. perpetuus (√pet + -vus)], adj., (keeping on through), continuing, continued, continuous, without interruption, lasting, permanent: vita (whole); paludes (continuous); in perpetuum (forever, permanently). — Abl. as adv., perpetuo (for ever, constantly).

perquirō, -quisivi,-quisitus,-quirere, [I. per-quāero], 3. v. a., search for, inquire about.

perrumpō, -rūpī,-ruptus,-rumpe, [I. per-rumpō], 3. v. a. and n., break through, force one's way through, break, force a passage.

perruptus, -a, -um, p.p. of per-rumpo.

perscribō,-scripsi,-scriptus,-scribere, [I. per-scribo], 3. v. a., write out (in full).

persequor,-secūtus,-sequi,[I. per-sequor], 3. v. dep., follow up, pursue: mortem (avenge).

perseverō, -āvi,-ātūrus,-āre, [perseverō], 1. v. n., persist.

persolvō,-solvi,-solūtus,-solevere, [I. per-solvo], 3. v. a., pay (fully). — Esp. (cf. pendo) of penalties, pay, suffer (punishment).

perspectus, -a, -um, p.p. of perspicio.

perspicīō,-spēxi,-spectus,-spicer, [I. per-spicere], 3. v. a., see through, see, inspect, examine. — Also, see thoroughly. — Fig., see clearly; see, understand, learn, observe, find, discover.

persīō, -stiti,-stātūrus,-stāre, [I. per-sto], 1. v. n., persist, remain firm, be firm.

persuādeō,-suāsi,-suāsus,-suādere, [I. per-suadeo], 2. v. a. and n., induce, persuade: howe volunt persuadere (make people believe). — Pass. (impers.), be persuaded (/dat. of person), be satisfied, believe.

perterreō,-terruī,-territus,-terrēre, [I. per-terreo], 2. v. a., terrify, alarm: perterritus equitatus (put in a panic); timore perterritus (struck with terror): quos perterritos (panic-stricken, flying in terror).

pertimēscō,-timi, no p.p., -timēscere, [I. per-timē + sco], 3. v. a. and n., fear much, fear greatly.
Vocabulary.

pettinacía, -ae, [pertinace + ia], F., obstinacy.

petineó, -tinui, no p.p., -tiñère, [i. per-ťeneo], 3. v. n., (hold a course towards), tend, extend. — Fig., have to do with, tend: eodem illo ut, etc. (have the same purpose, look in the same direction); res ad plures pertinet (more are implicated in, etc.).

pertuli, see perfero.

perturbātiō, -ōnis, [perturbā + tio], F., disturbance, alarm, panic.

perturbātus, -a, -um, p.p. of perturbo.

perturbō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [i. perturbo], 1. v. a., disturb, throw into confusion, confuse, throw into disorder, alarm, terrify.

perversor, -ātus, -āri, [i. perv-\textit{\textsc{v}}\textit{o}r], 1. v. dep., roam, scatter.

pervenitō, -ēni, -ēnus, -ēnire, [i. pervenio], 4. v. n., (come through to), arrive at, get as far as, reach, come. — Fig., arrive: ad hunc locum (come to this point); pars (of property, come, fall).

perventus, -a, -um, p.p. of pervenio.

pēs, pedis, [\textsc{v}pad as stem], M., the foot. — Also, as a measure, a foot. — Esp.: pedem referre (draw back, retreat); pedibus proeliari (on foot); ad pedes desilire (to the ground, from on horseback, etc.); pedibus aditus (approach by land).

petō, petivi, petitus, petere, [\textsc{v}pet], 3. v. a. and n., (fall?; fall?), aim at, attack, make for, try to get, seek, go to get, go to. Hence, ask, request, look for, get: petentibus Haeduis (at the request of, etc.); fugam (take to).

Petrocori, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe on the Garonne (Perigord).

Petrōnius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Marcus Petrōnius, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Petrosidius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Petrosidius, a standard-bearer in Caesar's army.

phalanx, -angis, [Gr. φάλανξ], F., a phalanx (properly an arrangement of troops in a solid mass from eight to twenty-four deep, but applied also to other bodies of troops), an array.

Pictones (Pect-), -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic tribe south of the Loire (Poitou).

pletās, -tās, [piō + tas], F., filial affection, affection (for the gods, or one's country, etc.), patriotism.

pilum, -i, [?], N., a pestle. — Also, a javelin (the peculiar weapon of the Roman legion, with a heavy shaft 2 or 3 in. thick and 4 ft. long, and an iron head, making a missile more than 6 ft. long, and weighing over 10 lbs.): pilum murale, a still heavier missile for use in siege works.

pilus, -i, [pilm], M., a century (of soldiers, a name applied in indication of the rank of centurions, see centurio). — Also, a centurion (of a particular rank). — Phrases: primipili centurio (of the first century or rank); primum pilum duxerat (had commanded in the first century of the first cohort).

pinna, -ae, [= penna (\textsc{v}pet + na)], F., an artificial parapet (of osier or the like run along the top of a wall).

Pirustae, -ārum, [?], M. plur., a tribe of Illyria.

piscis, -is, [?], M., a fish. — Collectively, fish.
Vocabulary.

Pisō, -onis, [pisō + o], m., (a man with a wart like a pea?, cf. Cicero), a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. Lucius Calpurnius Piso, a legatus in the army of Cassius which was defeated by the Helvetii B.C. 107, and grandfather of No. 2. — 2. Lucius Calpurnius Piso Cæsaronius, father of Calpurnia, Cæsar’s wife. — 3. Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus, consul with M. Messala in B.C. 61. — 4. Piso, an Aquitanian (probably enfranchised by one of the above named).

plx, picis, [?], F., pitch.

placeō, -ui, -itus, -ère, [†placeō-(cf. Viriplaca, placio, and placi-dus)], 2. v. n., please. — Esp. in third person, it pleases (one), one likes, one determines.

placidē [old abk of placidus], adv., quietly.

plācō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [†placa-(cf. Viriplaca)?, or placō- (cf. placi-dus)], i. v. a., pacify, appease.

Plancus, -i, [perh. akin to planus], m., (Flat-foot), a Roman family name. — Esp., Lucius Mun-atius Plancus, a legatus of Cæsar.

plāné [old abl. of planus], adv., flatly, clearly.

plāniciēs, see planities.

plānitiēs, -ēī, [planō + ties, cf. -tia], F., a plain.

plānus, -a, -um, [unc. root + nus], adj., flat, level: carinae planioreas (less deep, less rounding).

plēbs (plēbēs), -is (-ēī), [⊥ple (in plenus) + unc. term. (cf. turb-a)], F., the populace, the multitude, the common people.

plēnē [old abl. of plenus], adv., fully, entirely.

plēnus, -a, -um, [ple (in pleo) + nus], adj., full.: luna; legio.
Vocabulary.

pondus, -eris, [\sqrt{pend} (in pendo) + us], N., weight.

pŏnŏ, posuí, positus, pŏnere, [prob. \*por-sino (cf. polliceor)], 3. v. a., lay down, place: posita tollere (things laid up, consecrated); ponere custodeae (set); castra (pitch); praesidium (station, but see below). — Fig., place, lay, make depend on: in fuga praesidium; spem salutis in virtute (find, found, seek). — positus, -a, -um, p.p., situated, lying, depending on: posita est (lies); positum est in, etc. (depends on, etc.).

pŏns, pontis, [?], M., a bridge.

populātio, -ōnis, [populā + tio], F., a plundering, a raid.

populor, -ātus, -āri, [populō-], 1. v. dep., (strip, of people?, cf. Eng. skin, shell, bark a tree), ravage, devastate.

populus, -ī, [\sqrt{pal} ? (in pleo) reduplicated + us], M., (the full number, the mass), a people (in its collective capacity), a nation, a tribe (as opposed to individuals): populus Romanus (the official designation of the Roman state).

porrectus, -a, -um, p.p. of porrigo.

porrigō, -rēxi, -rectus, -rigere, [\*por- (cf. polliceor) -rego], 3. v. a., stretch forth: porrecta loca pertinent (stretch out in extent).

porrō [?], akin to \*por (cf. porrigo), adv., furthermore, further, then (in narration).

porta, -ae, [\sqrt{por} (cf. Gr. πός) + ta], F., (way of traffic?), a gate.

portō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [porta-?], 1. v. a., carry (perh. orig. by way of traffic), bring.

portōrīulum, -i, [?], porta (reduced) + orium (N. of -orius), perh. orig. \*portor + ius], N., (gate-money? or carrier’s money?), a duty (an impost), a toll.

portus, -tūs, [\sqrt{por} (cf. porta) + tus], M., (a place of access), a harbor, a haven, a port.

posco, poposci, no p.p., poscere, [perh. akin to prex], 3. v. a., demand (with some idea of claim, stronger than peto, weaker than flagtto), require, claim.

positus, -a, -um, p.p. of pono.

possessio, -ōnis, [\*por-\*sessio (cf. obsessio)], F., possession, occupation. — Concretely (as in Eng.), possessions, lands (possessed).

possidēō, -sēdi, -sessus, -sidēre, [\*por-sdeo], 2. v. a., (settle farther on?), occupy (in a military sense), possess (lands, of a people), hold possession of.

possum, potui, posse, [pote (for potis) -sum], irr. v. n., be able, can (etc.): plurimum posse (be most powerful, have very great influence); tantum potest (has so much weight, power, influence); largiter posse (have great influence); multitudine posse (be strong in numbers); equitatu nihil posse (have no strength in cavalry); quicquid possunt (whatever power they have); quid virtute possent (what they could do by valor); fieri posse (be possible); ut spatum intercedere posset (might intervene); quam maximum potest (the greatest possible).

post [?], prob. abl. of stem akin to postis (cf. ante, antes, rows, and antae, pilasters), adv. and prep., behind, after: post diem tertium (three days after); post se (in their rear); post hunc (next to him).

postea [post ea], adv., afterwards.
posteāquam [postea quam], conjunctive adv., (later than), after (only with clause).

posterus, -a, -um, [post- (or stem akin) + terus (orig. compar.)], adj., the next, later: postero die (the next day); in posterum (the next day).—postrēmus, -a, -um, superl., last.—postrēmō, abl., last, finally.

postpōnō, -posui, -positus, -pōnere, [post-pono], 3. v. a., place behind, postpone: omnibus rebus postpositis (disregarding everything else).

postpositus, -a, -um, p.p. of postpono.

postquam [post quam], conjunctive adv., (later than), after.

postrēmō, see posterus.

postrēmus, see posterus.

postridē [†posteri (loc. of posterus) -die], adv., the next day: postridie ejus diei (the next day after that).

postulātum, -i, [N. p.p. of postulo], n., a demand, a requirement, a request.

postulō, -avi, -ātus, -āre, [?], 1. v. a., claim (with idea of right, less urgent than posco), ask, request, require: tempus anni (require, make necessary).

potēns, -entis, [p. of possum as adj.], adj., powerful: homo (influential); potentiores (men of influence).

potentātus, -tūs, [potent + atus, cf. consulatus], m., the chief power.

potentia, -ae, [potent + iā], f., power (political influence), authority (not official or legal).

potestās, -tātis, [potent + tas], f., power (official, cf. potentia, and civil, not military, cf. imperium), power (generally), control, ability, opportunity, chance: sui potestatem facere (give a chance at them, give an opportunity to fight them); se potestati alicujus permittere (surrender, etc.); consistendi potestas erat nulli (chance, possibility); discedendi potestatem facere (give permission, etc.); facta potestate (having obtained permission); imperium aut potestas (military or civil power); deorum vis ac potestas (the power and dominion).

potior, potitus, potiri, [poti-, cf. potis], 4. v. dep., become master of, possess one's self of, get the control of: imperio (secure); castris (capture).

potior, -us, -oris, [compar. of potis], adj., preferable.—potius, acc. as adv., rather.

potitus, -a, -um, p.p. of potior.

praen [unc. case-form of same stem as pro], adv. (in composition) and prep., before, in comparison with.—Esp. with words implying hindrance, for, on account of (some obstacle).—In composition, before others, very, before, at the head of.

praecātus, -a, -um, [praec-aetus (p.p. of acuo)], p.p. as adj., sharpened to a point, pointed.

praebēō, praebuit, praebitus, praebère, [praehabeo], 2. v. a., (hold before one), offer, present, furnish: munimenta (furnish, and so afford, make).

praeceveō, -cāvī, -cavitus, -cavère, [praecaveo], 2. v. n., take care beforehand, take precaution, be on one's guard.

praecēdō, -cessi, -cessus, -cedere, [praecedo], 3. v. a., go before.—Fig., excels.

praecēps, -cipitis, [praecaput],
**Vocabulary.**

adx., headlong, in haste: locus prae-ceptitior (a steep incline).

praecunctum, -i, [p.p. of praec-ceptio], N., an instruction, an order.
praecunctus, -a, -um, p.p. of praec-ceptio.

praecipio, -cēpi, -ceptus, -cipere, [praec-capio], 3. v. a., take beforehand, anticipate. — Also, order, give instructions.

praecipitō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [praecipit-], 1. v. a., throw headlong: se (plunge headlong).

praecipue [old abl. of praec-ipuus], adv., especially.

praecipuus, -a, -um, [praec-icapuus (CAPlus + VUS)], adj., (taking the first place), special.

praeclustō, -clūsi, -clusus, -clūdere, [praec-claudo], 3. v. a., (close in front of some one or something), shut off, barricade.

praecūs, -ōnis, [?], M., a herald.

praecōninus, -i, [praecōn + inus], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Marcus Valerius Praecōninus, a legatus in the army of Crassus.

praecurrō, -cūrūri (-curri), -cūrūrus, -currere, [praec-currō], 3. v. n., run on before, hasten on before, hasten in advance, hurry on before: equites (ride on in advance); cel-eritate (get the start of, etc.).

praeda, -ae, [prob. praec- gehida (root of -hendo + a)], F., booty, prey.

praedicō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [†praed- dicō] (or similar stem from praed with DIC), 1. v. a. and n., make known (before one), proclaim, describe, boast, vaunt one's self.

praedō, -ātus, -āri, [praeda], 1. v. dep., plunder, take booty.

praedūco, -dūxi, -ductus, -dūcere, [praed-duco], 3. v. a., lead, etc.

(see duco) before: murum (carry out, draw round).

praefectus, -a, -um, p.p. of praef-ectio. — As subst., see praefectio.

praefector, -tuli, -lātus, -ferre, [praef-fero], irr. v. a., place before, esteem above, prefer to (with quam); se alicui (show one's self better than).

praefectō, -fēci, -fectus, -ficere, [praef-facio], 3. v. a., put before, place in command of, set over. — praefectus, p.p. as subst., a captain (esp. of cavalry), a commander.

praefigō, -fixi, -fixus, -figere, [praef-figo], 3. v. a., fix in front, set on the edge (of something).

praefigus, -a, -um, p.p. of praef- figō.


praemittō, -misī, -missus, -mit- tere, [praem-mitto], 3. v. a., send forward, send on.

praemium, -i, [?, perh. praem- temium (EM, in emo, + ium)], (taken before the general distribution or disposal of booty?), N., a reward, a prize, distinction (as a reward or prize): magnō praemio remunerari (a great price).

praecoccūm, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [praec- occupo], 1. v. a., take in oppo- sition or beforehand: timor animōs (take complete possession of, to the exclusion of everything else); vias (close against one).

praecoptō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [praec- opto], 1. v. a., wish in preference, choose rather.

praeparō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [pra- paro], 1. v. a., prepare beforehand.

praepōnō, -posui, -positus, -pōnere, [praep-pono], 3. v. a., put in command.
praerumpē, -rūpi, -ruptus, -rumpere, [praerumpō], 3. v. a., break off (at the end or in front). — praeruptus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., precipituous.
praeruptus, -a, -um, p.p. of praerumpō.
praesaepiō (-sēp-), -saepsi, -saepsus, -saepire, [praesaepio], 4. v. a., hedge in, wall off.
praesaepius, -a, -um, p.p. of praesaepio.
praescribō, -scripsi, -scriptus, -scribere, [praescribō], 3. v. a., (write down beforehand), prescribe, order, direct.
praescriptum, -i, [N. p.p. of praescribō], N., an order, orders.
praescriptus, -a, -um, p.p. of praescribō.
praesaēns, -entis, p. of praesum.
praesaentia, -ae, [praesent + ia], F., presence, the present moment: in praesaentia (for the moment, at the moment).
praesaentīō, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, -sentiōre, [praesaentio], 4. v. a., see beforehand, find out in time, find out (beforehand).
praesaepiō, see praesaepio.
praesertim [as if acc. of praesertis (√sēr, in sero, + tis)], adv., especially.
praesidium, -i, [praesidium (√sed + ium), cf. obsidium], N., (a sitting down before), a guard, a garrison, a force (detached for occupation or guard). — Fig., protection, assistance, support: praesidio literarum (with the assistance of; etc.); in fuga praesidium ponere (seek safety in flight).
praestō, -stitis, -stātus (-stitus), -stāre,[praesto], i.v. a. and n., stand before, be at the head, excel, be superior: praestat (it is better). — Also, causatively, (bring before), furnish, display: officium (discharge, perform); stabilitatem (afford, possess); fidem (keep, perform one's duty).
praesum, -fui, -esse,[praesum], irr. v. n., be in front, be at the head of, be in command: magistratūr (hold). — praesēns, -entis, p., present, immediate: pluribus praesentibus (in the presence of many); praesens adesse (be present in person).
praeter [conpar. of prae (cf. inter)], adv. and prep., along by, past, beyond. — Fig., except, beside, contrary to.
praeterea [praeter-ea (abl.??)], adv., furthermore, besides: si nemo praeterea (if no one else).
praeterēō, -ii,-itus,-ire,[praeterēo], irr. v. a. and n., go by, pass by.
— praeteritus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., past. — Esp. N. plur., praeterita, the past (cf. "bygones").
praetermittō, -misi, -missus, -mittere, [praetermitto], 3. v. a., let go by, let slip, omit, neglect.
praeterquam [praeter-quam], conjunctive adv., except.
praetor, -tōris, [praetōr(√1 + tor)], m., (a leader), a commander. — Esp., a prætor, one of a class of magistrates at Rome. In early times two had judicial powers and the others regular commands abroad. Later all during their year of office had judicial powers, but like the consuls (who were originally called prætors) they had a year abroad as prōprætors: legatus pro prætore.
Vocabulary.

(legatus in command, acting as a preceptor).

praetorius, -a, -um, [praetor + ius], adj., of a preceptor (in all its senses); praetoria cohors (the body guard, of the commander, see praetor).

praesūrō, -īsī, -ūstus, -ūrere, [praes-uro], 3 v. a., burn at the end (in front); praestae sudes (burnt at the point, to harden them).

praesūstus, -a, -um, p.p. of praesuro.

praerūrtō, -vertī, -versus, -vertere, [praer-erto], 3 v. a., anticipate, forestall, attend to first.

prāvus, -a, -um, [??], adj., crooked.
— Fig., wrong, vicious.

prehendō (prendō), -hendi, -hensus, -hendere, [praehendō], 3 v. a., seize (against some one else?), seize (generally), take.

premō, pressus, pressus, premere, [??], 3 v. a., press.— Esp., press hard, attack fiercely, harass, oppress: se ipsi (crowd, impede, embarrass each other).

prendō, see prehendo.

prelīum, -i, [??], N., a price, cost.

†prex, precis (dat., acc., and abl. only; plur. entire), [??], F., a prayer, an entreaty.

pridīē [loc. of stem of pro (praee?) -die, cf. postridile], adv., the day before.

primilius [primō-pilus], M., the first century (see centurio and pilus).

primō [abl. of primus], adv., at first (opposed to afterwards, cf. primum).

primum [acc. of primus], adv., first (in order of incidents, opposed to next, etc), in the first place: cum primum (as soon as); quam primum (as soon as possible).

primum, -a, -um, see prior.

princeps, -ipis, [primō-reduced] -cēps (cap as stem), adj., (taking the lead), first, chief, foremost: principes beli inferendi (leaders in, etc.); locus (chief, highest); ea princeps persolvit (chiefly).— Often as subst., leading man, leader, chief man, chief: legationis (head).

principātus, -ītūs, [princīp + atus, cf. consulātus], M., foremost position, first place, highest place, the lead (in power and influence among states).

prior, -us, -ōris, [compar. of stem of pro], adj., former, before: prior(es) (those in front); non priores inferre (not the first to, etc.).— prīlus, N. as adv., before (see also prīlusquam).— primus, -a, -um, superl., first: agmen (front); prīmos civitātis (the best men); a prīma obsidione (from the beginning of the siege): in primis (especially).— See primo and primum.

prīstinus, -a, -um, [prīus-tinus, cf. dilūtinus], adj., (of former times), old, former: prīstinus dies (the day before).

prīus, see prior.

prīlusquam [prīus-quam], conj. adv., (earlier than), before.

privātim [as if acc. of †privātis (privā + tis)], adv., privately, as private persons (opp. to magistrate): de suis privatim rebus (their own private affairs); plus posse privatim (in their own name, opposed to official action).

privātus, -a, -um, [p.p. of privo], adj., (destitute of official character), private, personal.

prō [for prod, abl. of stem akin
to prae, prior, etc., adv. (in comp.) and prep., in front of, before. Hence, in place of, instead of, for, as, on behalf of: nihil pro sano (nothing prudent). — Also, in view of, in accordance with, in proportion to, according to, considering, in return for, for. — In comp., before, forth, away, for, down (as falling forward).

probatus, -a, -um, p.p. of probo.
probēi, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [probē-].
1. v. a., (make good, find good), approve, test, prove, show, be satisfied with, favor (a plan), adopt (a measure).
procedō, -cessi, -cessus, -cēdere, [pro-cedo], 3. v. n., go forward, advance, proceed: longius (go to a distance).

Procillus, -i, [Proculō + lus], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Caius Valerius Procillus, a Gaul sent by Caesar as ambassador to Ariovistus.

probōlinētus, -a, -um, p.p. of procino.
probōlinēō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [procino], 1. v. a., (bend forward), throw down: res proclina (falling, ruined).

probōsuns, -ulis, [probō-consul, on account of the phrase pro consule], m., a proconsul, an ex-consul (during his term of service abroad).

procul [?], †proco- (pro + eus) + lus (reduced, cf. simul), adv., at a distance (not necessarily great), at some distance.

procedēbō, -cubuii, no p.p., -cumbere, [pro-cumbo], 3. v. n., fall (forward), fall (generally), sink down, lie down (for rest), become lodged (of grain). — Less exactly, incline, slope, lean.

prōcūrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [procuro], 1. v. a., care for, have charge of, attend to.

prōcurreō, -curī (-cucurri), -cur- sūrus, -currere, [pro-curreo], 3. v. n., run forward, charge, rush out.

prōdeo, -ivi (-ii), -itus, -īre, [prod (see pro) -eo], irr. v. n., go forth, come forth, come out, go forward: longius (go to any distance).

prōdesse, see prōsum.

prōditīō, -onis, [prō-dītio, cf. prodо], F., (a giving away), treason.

prōditor, -tōris, [prō-dōtor (cf. prodо)], m., a traitor.

prōditus, -a, -um, p.p. of prodо.

prōdō, -didī, -ditus, -dere, [prodо], 3. v. a., (give forward), give forth, publish, betray (give away), transmit, hand down: memoriam (preserve, by handing down to posterity); memoria proditum (told in tradition, handed down).

prōducō, -dūxi, -ductus, -ducere, [pro-duco], 3. v. a., lead forth, lead out, bring out (jumenta), draw up (troops). — Fig., protract.

prōducēntus, -a, -um, p.p. of-produco.

proelior, -ātus, -āri, [proelē-], 1. v. dep., fight (in war).

proellum, -i, [?], n., a battle (a single encounter, great or small), a contest, an engagement, a general engagement, a skirmish: committere (engage, join battle, risk a battle, begin an engagement, begin the fight, fight); suos a proelio continere (from battle).

prōfectīō, -onis, [prō-factio (cf. proficiscor)], F., a setting out, a departure, retreat (the special idea coming from the context), starting, evacuation.

prōfectus, -a, -um, p.p. of proficiscor and proficio.
profectus, -a, -um, p.p. of proficiscor.
prōferō, -tuli, -tātus, -ferre, [prōfero], irr. v. a., bring forth, bring out.
proficīō, -fēci, -fēctūrus, -ficere, [pro-fācio], 3. v. n., (make way forward), advance (cf. proficiscor).
—Fig., gain advantage ("get on"), gain (much or little), accomplish (something): satis ad laudem profectum est (enough has been done for glory); ad pacem parum profici (not much was doing towards peace); plus multitudine telorum proficere (have the advantage in).
proficiscor, -fectus, -ficisci, [pro-fāciscor (cf. proficio)], 3. v. dep., (make way forward).—Esp., start, leave, depart, set out, withdraw, march out, go out, come out, sail out: quo proficiscimur (whither we are going); unde erant profecti (whence they had come); ad proficiscendum pertinere (to a journey, etc.).
profiteor, -fessus, -fītēri, [pro-fateor], 2. v. dep., declare publicly: se (offer one's self; volunteer as, declare one's self).
profēligātus, -a, -um, p.p. of profilgo.
profēligō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [†profēligō- (pro-fāligus, √FLIG + us)], 1. v. a., (dash to the ground).—Esp., put to rout, rout.
profugīō, -fugi, -fugitūrus, -fuge, [pro-fugio], 3. v. n., flee forth, flee, escape, make one's escape.
prōgnātus, -a, -um, [pro-(gn) natus], p.p. as adj., sprung from: prognati ex (descendants of).
prōgredior, -gressus, -gregi, [pro-gradior], 3. v. dep., go forward, march forward, march out, come out.—Also, fig., proceed, go: amentia longius (go).
prōgressus, -a, -um, p.p. of progresdior.
prohibēō, -hibui, -hibitus, -hibēre, [pro-habeo], 2. v. a., hold off, keep off, repel, stop, prevent, restrain, hinder from, forbid.—Also, protect (by a change of relation of the two things concerned): aliquem ab omnī militum injuria (keeping the thing protected from the assailant).
prohibitus, -a, -um, p.p. of prohibeo.
prōjiciō (-iclō), -jeci, -jectus, -icere, [pro-iacio], 3. v. a., throw forward, throw away, cast (down, cf. pro), abandon: aquilam intra vallum (throw over); projectae (casting themselves); se ex navi (leap).
proinde [pro-inde], adv., (from there forward), therefore.
prōjiciō, see proicio.
prōlātus, -a, -um, p.p. of profero.
prōminēns, -entis, p. of promineo.
prōmineō, -minui, no p.p., -minēre, [pro-tmineo (cf. minor)], 2. v. n., lean forward, lean over.
prōmiscuē [old abl. of promiscuus], adv., in common.
prōmissus, -a, -um, p.p. of promitto.
prōmittō, -misi, -missus, -mittere, [pro-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go forward), let grow (of the hair): promissio capillo sunt (they wear long hair).
prōmontōrīum (promuntūs), -i, [akin to promineo], N., a headland.
prōmōtus, -a, -um, p.p. of promoveo.
Vocabulary.

prōmoveō, -mōvi, -mōtus, -mo-vēre, [pro-moveo], 2. v. a., move forward, advance, push forward.


prōnē [old abl. of pronus], adv., with a slope.

prōnāntiō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [pro-nuntio], 1. v. a., (publish forth), make known, communicate, declare, give orders, make proclamation.

prope [?, akin to pro, cf. procul and proximus], adv. and prep., near. — Fig., almost, nearly. — Compar., proplus, nearer: propius tumulum (as prep.). — Superl., proximē, lately, last.

propellō, -puli, -pulsus, -pellere, [pro-pello], 3. v. a., drive away (cf. pro), repulse, rout, dislodge, force back (changing the point of view).

properō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [pro-perō-], 1. v. a. and n., hasten, be in haste, make haste.

propinquītās, -tātis, [propinquō + tas], F., vicinity, a being near, a position near: propinquitates fluminum (positions near, etc.). — Esp., nearness in blood, a relation (by blood).

propinquus, -a, -um, [stem akin to prope (or case-form) + us], adj., near at hand, near. — Esp. by blood, related. — As subst. in plur., relatives.

proplor, -us, -ōris, [compar. of stem of prope], adj., nearer. — Proximus [?], perh. ὑπροκό (see procul) + timus], superl., nearest, next, neighboring: bellum (last). — With force of prep. (cf. prope): proximi Rhenum (nearest the Rhine).

prōpōnē, -posui, -positus, -pō-nere, [pro-pono], 3. v. a., place before, set before, lay before: vexillum (hang out). — Less exactly, offer, put in the way, present (difficulty), make known, state, represent.

propositus, -a, -um, p.p. of propono.

propīlus, -a, -um, [?, akin to prope?], adj., of one’s own: fines (particular); hoc proprium virtutis (a peculiar property, a mark).

propter [prope + ter, cf. aliter, praeter], adv. and prep., near by.
— Also, on account of (cf. “all along of”).

proptereā [propter-ea (prob. abl. or instr. of ls)], adv., on this account. — With quod, because, inasmuch as.

prōpuagnātor, -tōris, [pro-pugnator (cf. propugno)], M., a defender.

prōpuagnō, -āvi, -ātūrus, -āre, [pro-pugno], 1. v. n., (rush forward to fight, or fight in front), rush out (fighting), discharge missiles (ex silvis).

prōpuulsō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [propulso (cf. propello)], 1. v. a., repel, keep off, drive off, defend one’s self against.

prōra, -ae, [Gr. ἀρά], F., the prow (of a ship).

prōruo, -ruī, -rutus, -ruere, [pro-ruo], 3. v. a., dash down, overthrow, demolish.

prōrutos, -a, -um, p.p. of prōruo.

prōsecūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of prosequor.

prōsequor, -secūtus, -sequi, [prosequor], 3. v. dep., pursue, follow (on one’s way), escort. — Fig. (from escorting), address, take leave of one (with some kind of attention).
Vocabulary.

prospectus, -tūs, [pro-spectus
(cf. prospeclio)], m., outlook, view:
in prospectu (in sight); prospectu
tenebris adempto (the view cut off
by the darkness).

prospiciō, -spēxi, -spectus, -spici-
cere, [pro-ṣpecio], 3. v. a., look for-
ward, look out. — Fig., provide for,
take care, look out.

prosternō, -strāvi, -strātus, -ster-
nere, [pro-sterno], 3. v. a., dash to
the ground, overthow (lit. and fig.).

prōsum, prōfiūi, prōfūtūrus, prōd-
esse, [pron(d)-sum], irr. v. n., be for
the advantage of, benefit: quod alici-
cui prodest (by which one profits).

prōtegō, -tēxi, -tectus, -tegere,
[pro-tēgo], 3. v. a., (cover in front),
protect, cover.

prōtenus, see prótinus.

prōterreō, -terrui, -territis, -terri-
ère, [pro-terreo], 2. v. a., frighten
away, drive away in fright.

prōterritus, -a, -um, p.p. of pro-
terro.

prōtinus (-tenus), [pro-tenus],
adv., forward, straight on. Hence,
straightway, forthwith, at once, in-
stantly (keeping right on).

prōturbātus, -a, -um, p.p. of pro-
turbo.

prōturbō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [pro-
turbo], 1. v. a., drive in confusion,
drive off, dislodge.

prōvēctus, -a, -um, p.p. of pro-
veho.

prōvehō, -vēxi, -vectus, -vehere,
[pro-vehō], 3. v. a., carry forward.
— In pass., be carried forth, sail
out, set sail: leni Africo provectus
(sail with, be driven by).

prōvenīō, -vēni, -ventūrus, -venire,
[pro-venire], 4. v. n., come forward.
— Esp. of fruits, come up, grow.

prōventus, -tūs, [pro-ventus,
cf. eventus and provenio], m., an
issue (a coming forth), success, a result.

prōvideō, -vidi, -visus, -videre,
[pro-video], 2. v. a., foresee, see be-
forehand, take care, make provision,
provide, arrange beforehand.

prōvinciā, -ae, [prōvinčiō-(pro-
vincus, vinc- as root of vinco + us
+ ia], f., (office of one extending
the frontier by conquest in the field),
office (of a commander or governor),
a province (in general), a function.
— Transferred, a province (governed
by a Roman magistrate). — Esp., The
Province (of Gaul); so with nostra,
ulterior, ceterior (the province, as
opposed to the unconquered parts of
Gaul).

prōvinciālēs, -e, [provinčia +
lis], adj., of a province. — Esp., of
the province (of Gaul).

prōvolō, -āvi, -ātūrus, -āre, [pro-
volo], 1. v. n., fly forth. — Less ex-
actly, rush forth, rush out, fly out
(of cavalry, etc.).

proximē, see prope.

proximus, see proplor.

prōdentia, -ae, [prudent + ia],
F., foresight, discretion.

Pītaniī, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur.,
a people of Aquitania.

pūbēs (pūber), -eris, [?, prob.
same root as puer], adj., adult. —
As subst., adults, grown men, young
men of age.

publicē [old abl. of publicus],
adv., publicly, in the name of the state,
as a state, on behalf of the state: pub-
līce jurare (for the people, making
the oath bind them).

publicē, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [public-
cē-], 1. v. a., (make belong to the
people), confiscate.

publicus, -a, -um, [populō +
cus], adj., of the people (as a state),
of the state, public: consilium (a state measure, a public measure, action by the state, action by general consent); res publica (the commonwealth, the state, the interests of state, public business); in publico (in public); relatis in publicum cornibus (publicly displayed); mulieres in publicum procurrere (abroad into the streets).

Publius, -i, [prob. populō + ins, cf. publicus], M., a Roman prænomen.

pudet, puduit (puditum est), pudére, [?], 2. v. imper., (it shames), one is ashamed (translating the accusative as subject).

pudor, -ōris, [√pud (in pudet) + or], M., shame, a sense of shame, a sense of honor.

puer, -i, [?], M., a boy. — Plur., children (of either sex); a pueris (from childhood).

puerīlis, -e, [puerō (reduced) + ilis], adj., of a child: aetas (of childhood).

pūgna, -ae, [√pug (in pugno) + na], F., a fight (less formal than proelium) : ad pugnam (for fighting); genus pugnae (of fighting).

pūgnō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [pugna-], 1. v. n., fight, engage. — Often imper. in pass., pugnatum est, etc., an engagement took place, they fought, the fighting continued. — Esp.: pugnandi potestatem faciē (offered battle); pugnantes (engaged).

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, [?], adj., beautiful, handsome, fine.

Pullō (Pulfio?), -ōnis, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Titus Pulio, a centurion in César’s army.

pulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of pello.

pulsus, -ūs, [√pel (in pello) + tus], M., a stroke, a beat: pulsus re-
morum praestare (the working, etc.).

pulvis, -eris, [?], M., dust.

puppis, -is, [?], F., the stern (of a ship).

purgātus, -a, -um, p.p. of purgo.

purgo, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [purīgō (purō + ōgas, cf. prodigus)], 1. v. a., clean, clear. — Fig., excuse, exonerate, free from suspicion, excultate.

putō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [putō (stem of putus, clean)], 1. v. a., clean up, clear up. — Esp.: rationes (clear up accounts). Hence, reckon, think, suppose.

Pyrenaeus, -a, -um, [?], adj., only with montes, the Pyrenees mountains, between France and Spain.

Q.

Q., abbrev. for Quintus.

qua [abl. or instr.(?) of qui], rel. adv., by which (way), where.

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, [quadrāgintā (reduced) + nas], num. adj., forty each, forty (each, often omitted in Eng.).

quadrāgintā [akin to quattuor], indecl. num. adj., forty.

quadringenti, -ae, -a, [akin to quattuor], num. adj., four hundred.

quaerō, quaesīvī, quaestūsus, quaere, [?, with r for original s], 3. v. a., search for, look for, inquire about, inquire, ask: eadem (make the same inquiries).

quaestūlō, -ōnis, [quaes (as root of quaero) + tio], F., an investigation: habere de aliquo (examine, as witnesses, usually by torture).
quaecontor, -tiris, [quaes-(as root of quaero) + tor], m., (investigator, or acquirer, perh. both). — Esp., a quaeantor (the Roman officer who had charge of the finances of an army).

quaeustus, -tus, [quaes (as root of quaero) + tus], m., acquisition.

qualiis, -c, [quō- (stem of quis) + alis], interr. adj., of what sort: qualis ascensus (what is the nature of, etc.).

quam [case-form of quis and qui, cf. tam, nam], adv. and conj.: 1. Interrog., how? — 2. Relative, as, than: praestare quam (rather than). — Often with superlatives, as much as possible: quam maximas (the greatest possible); quam maxime (very much). — See also postquam, priusquam, which are often separated, but are best represented in Eng. together.

quam diū [quam, diu], adv., as long as.

quam ob rem (often found together), adv. phrase: 1. Interrog., why? — 2. Relative, on which account, for which reason.

quamvis [quam vis], adv., as you please, however, no matter how.


quantō, see quantus.

quantopere, see opus.

quantus, -a, -um, [prob. for ka-(root of qua) + vani + us], adj.: 1. Interrog., how great? how much? quantum boni (how much good?); quantae civitates (how important?). — 2. Relative, as great, as: quanta . . . tanta pecunia (whatever . . . the same amount of, etc.): quantae-

vis (or separate) copiae (any however great, cf. quamvis).

quāre [qua-re], adv., by which thing, wherefore, therefore, on account of which (circumstance, etc.), why. — The relative and interrogative senses are not always distinguishable; neque commissum quare (nothing had been done for which, etc.); res hortabantur quare, etc. (many reasons for doing so urged, etc., to, etc.).

quartus, -a, -um, [quattuor-reduced] + tus], adj., fourth: quartus decimus (fourteenth).

quasi [quam (or quà) -si], conj., as if: quasi vero (as if forsooth, ironical).

quattuor [?, reduced pl.], indecl. num. adj., four.

quattuordecim [quattuor-decem], indecl. num. adj., fourteen.

-que (always appended to the word or to some part of the phrase which it connects) [unc. case-form of qui], conj., and. — Sometimes connecting the general with the particular, and in general, and other.

quem ad modum, phrase as adv., how, just as, as.

quero, questus, qui, [?, with r for original s], 3. v. dep., complain, complain of, find fault, find fault with, bewail.

questus, -a, -um, p.p. of quero.

qui, quae, quod, cūjus, [prob. quō+i (demonstrative)], rel. pron., who, which, that. — Often where a demonstrative is used in Eng., this, that. — Often implying an antecedent, he who, etc.: ea quae (things which, whatever); qua de causa (for this reason); qui patebant (though they, etc.); qui videant (men to see, scouts); qui (and they);
habere sese quae, with subj. (something to, etc.); qui potuissent (men who); qui postularent (to demand); haec esse quae (this was what); qui faceret (in that he, etc.); paucis diebus quibus (after); idem quod (the same as). — quō, abl. of degree of difference as adv., the (more, less, etc.). — See also quis, quod, 2. quo, and 3. quo.

quicunque, quae-, quod-, [quicumque (cf. quisque)], indef. rel., whoever, whichever, whatever.

quidam, quae-, quod- (quid-), [qui-dam (case of √DA, cf. nam, tam)], indef. pron., a (possibly known, but not identified), a certain, certain, a kind of (referred to as belonging to the class but not exactly the thing spoken of): artificio quodam (a kind of trick); quidam ex militibus (one).

quidem [unc. case-form of qui + dem (from √DA, cf. tandem, idem)], conj., giving emphasis but with no regular English equivalent: ne...quidem (not...even, not...either); vestrae quidem certe (yours at least, with emphasis).

quiēs, -ētis, [quiē- (stem of quiesco, etc.) + tis (reduced)], f., rest, sleep, repose.

quiētus, -a, -um, [quiē- (stem of quiesco) + tis], p.p. as adj., at rest, quiet, peaceable, settled, at peace, free from disturbance.

quin [qui (abl. or instr. of quīl) + ne], conj., interrog., how not? and relative, by which not: quin etiam (nay even, in fact). — After negative verbs of hindrance and doubt, so but what, but what, but that, that, from (doing a thing), to (do a thing); non dubito quin (I doubt not that); also, rarely, I do not hesi-
tate to); non aliter sentio quin (I have no other idea than that); non expecto quin (I do not delay doing, etc.); nec abest ab eo quin possint (it is not far from being the case that, etc.); non longius abest quin (it is not farther than, etc., that).

quinam (quis-), quae-, quod- (quid-), cūjus-, [qui-nam], interr. pron., who, etc. (emph.): quibusnam manibus (with what possible, etc.).

quinuncx, -uncis, [quinunque-uncia], f. (an arrangement of dots in the form marked on the five-ounce piece of copper, *); a quinuncx: in quincuncem dispositis (in quincuncial or alternate order).

quindecim [quinque-decem], indecl. num. adj., fifteen.

quincenti, -ae, -a, [quinque-centum], num. adj., five hundred.

quinī, -ae, -a, [quinque + nus]; adj., five at a time, five (at a time, though not so expressed in Eng.).

quinquāgintā [quinque + unc. stem], indecl., fifty.

quinque [?], indecl. num. adj., five.

quintus, -ā, -um, [quinque + tus], adj., fifth. — Esp. as a Roman prænomen (orig. the fifth-born?).

Quintus, -i, see quintus.

quis (qui), quae, quid (quod), cūjus [stem qui- and quō-]: 1. Interrog. pron., who, which, what. — 2. Indef., one, any one, any thing: ne quid (that nothing); ubi quis (when any one).

quisnam, see quinam.

quisplam, quae-, quid- (quod-), cūjus-, [quis-plam (pe-jam, cf. quippe, nempe)], indef. pron., any, any one, any thing.

quisquam, quae-, quid-, cūjus-, [quis-quam], indef. pron. used sub-
Vocabulary.

stantively (cf. ullus), only with negatives and words implying a negative, making a universal negative, any one, any thing.

quisque, quae-, quid- (quad-), cuius-, [quis-que], indef. pron. (distributive universal), each, each one, every. — Esp. with superlatives, implying that things are taken in the order of their quality: nobilissimus quisque (all the noblest, one after the other in the order of their nobility); antiquissimum quoque tempus (the most ancient times in their order); decimus quisque (every tenth, the tenth part of, one in ten). — With ut and ita, a proposition is indicated, in proportion as ... so, the more ... the more.

quisquis, quaeeae, quidquid, cuiuscuius, [quis, doubled], indef. rel. pron., whoever, whatever, every one who, all who.

quivis, quae-, quid- (quad-), cuius-, [qui-vis], indef. pron., who you please, any one, any whatever (affirmative), any (whatever).

1. quo, see qui.

2. quō [old dat. of qui], adv.: 1. Interrog., whither? — 2. Relative, whither, into which, as far as (i.e., to what end): quo intrare (which); habere quo (have any place to go to, or the like). — See also quoad.

3. quo [abl. of qui], as conj., in order that (with comparatives), that: magis eo quam quo (than that, than because). — Esp., quōminus, that not, so that not: recusare quomimus (refuse to).

quoad [quo-ad], conj., (up to which point), as far as, until, as long as.

quod [N. of qui], conj., (as to which), because, inasmuch as, in that, as for the fact that, the fact that, that, as for (with clause expressing the action): quod si (now if, but if).

quam, see cum.

quōminus, see 3. quo.

quoniam [quam (cum) -jam], conj., (when now), inasmuch as, since, as.

quoque [?], conj., following the word it affects, (by all means?), also, as well. Cf. etiam (usually preceding).

quoqueversus (-versum), (also quoquō-), as adv., (turned in every direction), in every direction, all about.

quot [quō + ti (unc. form fr. √TA, cf. tam ?)], pron. indecl.: 1. Interrog., how many? — 2. Relative, as many, as many as (with implied antecedent).

quotannis [quot-annis], adv., (as many years as there are), every year, yearly.

quotidius (cotid-), -a, -um, [quotidie (reduced) + anus], adj., daily.

quotidiē (cotid-), [quot dies (in unc. form)], adv., daily.

quotītēs [quot + iens, cf. quinquiens], adv.: 1. Interrog., how often? how many times? — 2. Relative, as often, as often as (with implied antecedent).

quum, late spelling for cum, which see.

R.

rādix, -icis, [?], f., a root. — Plur., the roots (of a tree), the foot (of a mountain).

rādō, rāsi, rāsus, rādere, [?]

3. v. a., shave.
Vocabulary.

rămus, -i, [?] M., a branch, a bough, a prong (of antlers).

rapiditàs, -tātis, [rapidō + tas], F., swiftness.

rapina, -ae, [rapī- (as if stem of rapīo) + na (F. of -nus)], F., plunder. — Plur., plundering.

rārus, -a, -um, [?], adj., thin, scattered, singly, in small bodies (of soldiers), a few at a time, few (as being wide apart).

rāsus, -a, -um, p.p. of rado.

ratīō, -ōnis, [trati- (ra, in reor, + ti) + o], F., a reckoning, an account, a roll. — Also, calculation, reason, prudence, terms, a plan, science (or art, or knowledge, as systematic), a reason (as consisting in a calculation), a manner, a method: rationem habere (take an account, take account of, have regard to, take into consideration, take care of, a mercantile term, cf. account); rei militaris (art, also nature); omnibus rationibus (in all ways, in all respects); proelii (character); reposere (demand an account, make one responsible); rationem habere ut (take care that, etc.); rationem habere frumentandi (take measures for, etc.).

ratis, -is, [?], F., a raft.

Rauraci (Rauricī), -orum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe on the upper Rhine.

re-, red-, [abl. of unc. stem, perh. akin to -rūs], insep. prep., back, again, away, out, un-. — Esp. implying a giving or taking something which is due, or which creates an obligation by the taking, see recipio, refero.

rebellīō, -ōnis, [rebellī + o], F., a renewal of war.

Reblīus, -i, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Caius Caninius Reblīus, a legatus of Cesar.

recēdō, -cessi, -cessūrus, -cēdere, [re-cedo], 3. v. n., make way back, retire, withdraw.

recēns, -entis, [prob. p. of lost verb *treceo (formed from recē-, cf. recipero)], adj., (?, just coming back ?), new, fresh, late.

recēnseō, -cēnsui, -cēnsūs, -cēn-seīre, [re-censeo], 2. v. a., review, inspect (of troops).

receptāculum, -i, [receptā + culum], N., a retreat, a place of refuge.

receptus, -a, -um, p.p. of recipio.

receptus, -tūs, [re-captus, cf. recipio], M., a retreat, a way of retreat, a refuge: receptui canare (to sound a retreat).

recēssus, -sūs, [re-cessus (cf. recedo)], M., a retreat: recessum dare (a chance to retreat).

recidēs, -cidi, -cāsūrus, -cidere, [re-cado], 3. v. n., fall again, fall back, fall upon (one after some one else).

recipīō, -cēpi, -ceptus, -cipere, [re-capio], 3. v. a., take back, get back, recover, take in, receive, admit: misericordiam (admit of); tela recipi (be exposed to missiles); ad se (attack). — With reflexive, retreat, fly, return, retire, get off, withdraw, resort.

recitō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [re-cito], 1. v. a., read (aloud).

reclīnātus, -a, -um, p.p. of reclino.

reclīnō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [re-clino], 1. v. a. and n., lean back, lean over, lean: reclīnātus (leaning).

rectē [old abl. of rectus], adv., straight.
rectus, -a, -um, [p.p. of rego], adj., (directed), straight: recta regione (in a straight direction, parallel with).

recipere (superer); -avi, -atus, -are, [†recipere-, from rec- (cf. recens, reciprocus) + parus (cf. opiparum)], i. v. a., get back, recover, regain.

recusō, -avi, -atus, -are, [recusō (cf. excusō)], i. v. a. and n., (give an excuse for drawing back), refuse, reject, repudiate, object to: de stipendio (refuse to pay, etc.); quin (refuse to); quominus (refuse to); periculum (refuse to incur).

rēda (rheda), -ae, [perh. Celtic form akin to rota], F., a wagon (with four wheels).

redactus, -a, -um, p.p. of redigo.

reddō, -didi, -ditus, -dere, [re (red-) do], 3. v. a., give back, restore, pay (something due, cf. re), render.

redemptus, -a, -um, p.p. of redimo.

redeō, -ii (-ivi), -itūrus, -ire, [re (red-) eo], irr. v. n., go back, return, come down again (collis ad planitiem): eodem unde redierat (come).

redigō, -egi, -actus, -igere, [re (red-) ago], 3. v. a., bring back, reduce, render, bring (sub imperium Galliam), make one thing out of another.

redimō, -ēmi, -emptus, -imere, [re (red-) emo], 3. v. a., buy back, redeem, purchase, buy.

redintegrātus, -a, -um, p.p. of redintegro.

redintegrō, -avi, -atūs, -āre, [re (red-) integro], i. v. a., renew (again), restore, revive (spem).

reditus, -tus, [re (red-) titus], M., a return.

Redones, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Brittany.

redūcō, -dūxi, -ductus, -dūcere, [re-duco], 3. v. a., lead back, bring back, draw back, draw in.

reflectus, -a, -um, p.p. of reflecto.

referō, -tuli, -lātus, -ferre, [refero], irr. v. a., bring back, return, bring (where something belongs), report. — Esp.: ad senatum (lay before for action); de republica (consult in regard to); gratiam (make return, show one's gratitude); pedem (retreat, draw back).

relictō, -feci, -fectus, -ficere, [re-facio], irr. v. a., repair, refresh, se ex labore (rest); exercitum (allow to recover).

refractus, -a, -um, p.p. of refringo.

refringō, -frēgi, -fractus, -fringere, [re-frango], 3. v. a., break away, break in (portas): vim fluminis (break, opposite to its direction).

refugīō, -fugī, -fugitūrus, -fugere, [re-fugio], 3. v. n., run away, escape.

Rēgnus, -i, [akin to rex], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Caius Antistius Rēginus, a legatus of Caesar.

regiō, -onis, [√REG + io, but cf. ratio], F., a direction, a part (of the country, etc.), a region, a country, a district: recta regione (straight, along, parallel); e regione (opposite).

rēgīus, -a, -um, [reg + ius], adj., of a king, regal, royal.

rēgnō, -āvi, -ātūrus, -āre, [regnō-], 1. v. n., rule, be in power.

rēgnum, -i, [√REG + num (N. of nus)], N., a kingdom, royal power, a throne. — Plur., the royal power (of several cases).

regō, rēxi, rectus, regere, [akin to
rex], 3. v. a, direct, manage, rule, have control of.

regredior, -gressus, -redni, [re-gradir], 3. v. dep, go back, return.

relictō (rejictō), -jecī, -jectus, -icere, [re-jacio], 3. v. a, throw back, hurl back, drive back, throw away, drive off.

relanguēscō, -langui, no p.p., -languēscere, [re-langueesco], 3.v. n., languish away, be relaxed, be weakened, be deadened.

relātus, -a, -um, p.p. of refero.

relēgātus, -a, -um, p.p. of relego.

relēgō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [re-lēgo], 1. v. a, remove, separate.

relēctus, -a, -um, p.p. of reliquo.

religiō, -onis, [?), re-legio (cf. relegō), F., (the original meaning uncertain), a religious scruple, a religious observance, the service of the gods, a superstition, a superstitious terror. — Plur., religious matters (of all kinds).

relinquō, -liqui, -lictus, -linquere, [re-linquo], 3. v. a, leave behind, leave, abandon, obsidionem (raise).

— Pass., be left, remain.

reliquus, -a, -um, [re-tiquus (\sqrt{105} + us)], adj, left, remaining, the rest, the other, other (meaning all other), the others, all other, future (of time, remaining); nihil est reliqui (there is nothing left); nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt (made the greatest possible speed).

remaneō, -mānsi, -mansūrus, -manère, [re-maneo], 2. v. n, remain behind, remain, stay.

rēmex, -igis, [remō- with unc. term. (perh. tagus)], M., an oarsman, a rower.

Rēmi, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Belgae about Rheims, which was their capital.

rēmigō, -āvi, -ātūrus, -āre, [remig-], 1. v. n, row.

remigrō, -āvi, -ātūrus, -āre, [remigro], 1. v. n, move back.

reminiscor, -minisci, [re-mi-niscor (√MAN, in memini, +isco)], 3. v. dep., remember.

remissus, -a, -um, p.p. of remitto.

remittō, -misi, -missus, -mittere, [re-mitto], 3. v. a, let go back, send back, throw back. — Fig., relax, cease to use, give up; remissoribus frigoris (less intense).

remollēscō, -mollēscere, [remollesco], 3. v. n, soften away, soften, become feeble.

remōtus, -a, -um, p.p. of removeo.

removeō, -mövi, -mōtus, -movère, [re-moveo], 2. v. a, move back, move away, send away, remove, draw away, get out of the way.

remūneror, -ātus, -āri, [re-muneror], 1. v. dep., repay, requite.

1. Rēmus, -i, [?], M., one of the Remi (which see).

2. rēmus, -i, [?], M., an oar.

rēnū, -ōnis, [?], M., a reindeer.

renovō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [re-novo], 1. v. a, renew.

renuuntiātus, -a, -um, p.p. of renuntio.

renuuntiō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [renuntio], 1. v. a, bring back word, report, proclaim.

repellō, -puli, -pulsus, -pellere, [re-pello], 3. v. a, drive back, repel, repulse: ab hac spe repulsī (disappointed in this hope).

repente [abl. of repens], adv., (creeping on so as to appear suddenly), suddenly.

repentinō, see repentinus.

repentinus, -a, -um, [repente +
Vocabulary.

inus], adj., sudden, hasty. — repen-
tinō, abl. as adv., suddenly.

reperiēs, repperi, repertus, repere-
rire, [re-(red-)pario], 4. v. a., find
out, discover, find (by inquiry, cf.
invento) : reperti sunt multi (there
were many).

repertus, -a, -um, p.p. of re-
perlo.

repetēs, -petivi, -petitus, -petere,
[re-peto], 3. v. a., try to get back,
demand back, ask for : poenas (in-
flict, cf. sumo).

repleōēs, -plēvi, -plētus, -plēre, [re-
pleo], 2. v. a., fill up, supply well.

replēitus, -a, -um, p.p. of repleo.
reportēs, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [re-
porto], 1. v. a., carry back.

reposcōēs, -poscere, [re-posco],
3. v. a., demand back, demand (som-
thing due).

repraesentēs, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [re-
praesento], 1. v. a., make present,
do at once.

reprehendōēs, -hendi, -hēnsus,
hendere, [re-prehendo], 3. v. a.,
drag back, seize hold of, find fault
with, blame, censure.

repressus, -a, -um, p.p. of re-
primo.

reprimōēs, -pressi, -pressus, -prim
mere, [re-premo], 3. v. a., check.

repudiōēs, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [re-
pudiō-], 1. v. a., (spurn with the
foot, cf. tripudium), spurn, refuse,
reject.

repūgnōēs, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [re-
pugno], 1. v. n., resist. — Fig., be in
opposition.

repulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of re-
pello.

requīrōēs, -quisivi, -quisitus, -qui-
rere, [re-quiero], 3. v. a., search
out. Hence, request, require, de-
mand, need.
Vocabulary.

— Esp.: res secundae, or adversae (success, prosperity or adversity, want of success); res publica (the commonwealth, the state, the general interests, public business); res communis (the common interest); de republica (in regard to the welfare of the state); res divinae (divine worship, and everything pertaining to it; religion); res familiaris (property); res militaris (warfare, the art of war); res frumentaria (grain supply, grain); res aliqui est (one has business with, has to do with, and the like; one’s affair is); res est (it is a fact, it is so); novae res (a new form of government, revolution).

resarcio, no perf., -sartus, -sarcire, [re-sarcio], 4. v. a., patch up again, repair (lit. and fig.).

rescindō, -scidi, -scissus, -scindere, [re-scindo], 3. v. a., cut away, tear down, break down, destroy.

resciscō, -scivi, -scitus, -sciscere, [re-scisco], 3. v. a., find out, learn, discover.

rescribō, -scripsi, scriptus, -scribere, [re-scribo], 3. v. a., transfer (by writing).

reservātus, -a, -um, p.p. of reservo.

reservō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [reservo], 1. v. a., keep back, reserve, hold in reserve.

resideō, -sēdi, no p.p., -sidēre, [re-sedeo], 2. v. n., sit back, sit down, remain behind, remain.

residō, -sēdi, no p.p., -sidere, [re-sido], 3. v. n., sink down, become calm.


respicio, -spēxi, spectus, -spicere, [re-śpecio], 3. v. a. and n., look back, look back at, look behind one, see behind one.

respondeō, -spondī, -spōnsus, -spondēre, [re-spondeo], 2. v. n., reply, answer.

respōnsum, -i, [N. p.p. of respondeo], n., a reply. — Plur., a reply (of several parts).

respublica, see res.

respuō, -spui, no p.p., -spuere, [re-spuo], 3. v. a., spit out. — Fig., spurn, reject.

restimctus, -a, -um, p.p. of restingo.

restinguō, -stinxi, -stinctus, -stinguere, [re-stinguo], 3. v. a., extinguish.

restituō, -stitui, -stitūtus, -stituere, [re-statuo], 3. v. a., set if again, replace, restore, make anew.

restitūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of restituuo.

retentus, -a, -um, p.p. of retineo.

retineō, -tinui, -tentus, -tinère, [re-teneo], 2. v. a., hold back, restrain (quim, from doing something), detain, retain: memoriam (preserve); Gallos (arrest).

retrahō, -träxi, -träctus, -trahere, [re-traho], 3. v. a., drag back, bring back (a person).

revelō, -vellī, -vulsus, -vellere, [re-vello], 3. v. a., tear away, pull away.

reversus, -a, -um, p.p. of reverto.

revertō, -verti, -versus, -vertere, [re-verteo], 3. v. n., return (in perf. tenses). — Pass. as deponent in pres. tenses, return.

revingō, -vinxi, -vincitus, -vincire, [re-vincio], 4. v. a., bind back (to something), make fast, fasten, bind.
Vocabulary. 125

revinctus, -a, -um, p.p. of revinio.

revocātus, -a, -um, p.p. of revocō.

revocō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [re-vocō],
i. v. a., call back, call away, call off.

rēx, rēgis, [√REG as stem], m., a king.

rhēda, see reda.

Rhēnus, -i, [Celtic ?], m., the Rhine.

Rhodanus, -i, [Celtic ?], m., the Rhone.

ripa, -ae, [?], f., a bank.

rivus, -i, [akin to Gr. πῶos], m., a brook, a stream (not so large as flumen).

rōbur, -oris, [?], n., oak.

rogātus, -a, -um, p.p. of rogo.

rogō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [?], i. v. a.

and n., ask, request, ask for: sacramento rogare milites (bind by an oath, enlist under oath).

Rōma, -ae, [?], perh. akin to Gr. ἤρω, the river city], f., Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, [Roma+nus], m., Roman. — As subst., a Roman.

Roscius, -i, [?], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Lucius Roscius, a legatus of Cæsar.

rostrum, -i, [√ROD- (in rodo) + trum], n., a beak. — Esp. of a ship, the beak, the ram (used as in modern naval fighting).

rota, -ae, [?], f., a wheel.

rubus, -i, [?], perh. rub- (in ruber) + us], m., (red?), a bramble.

Rābus, -i, [prob. dialectic form = rubus, red?], m., a Roman prænomen.

rūmor, -ōris, [?], m., a rumor (confused report), report.

rūpēs, -is, [√RUP + unc. term.], f., a cliff, a rock (in position).

rūrsus [for reversus], adv., back again, back, again.

Rutēni, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur.,
a tribe on the borders of Provence.

Rutilus, -i, [prob. akin to ruber], m., red.— As a Roman family name.

— Esp., Marcus Sempronius Rutilus, a commander of cavalry under Cæsar.

S.

Sabinus, -i, [unc. stem (cf. sabulus, sand?) + inus], m., (Sabine).

— As a Roman family name. — Esp., Quintus Titurius Sabinus, a legatus of Cæsar.

Sabis, -is, [Celtic], m., a river of Gaul flowing into the Meuse, now Sambre.

sacerdōs, -dōtis, [sacro-dos (√DA + tis)], c., (arranger of sacred rites ?), a priest.

sacrāmentum, -i, [sacrā + mentum], n., an oath.

sacrificium, -i, [†sacrificō- (sacrō-†faeus, cf. beneficus) + ium], n., a sacrifice.

saepe [N. of †saepla (perh. same as saepes)], adv., often: minime saepe (most rarely). — saeplus, compar., many times, repeatedly.

saepenumerō [saepe-numero], adv., oftentimes, many times.

saepēs (sēpēs), -is, [akin to saepe, saeplo], f., a hedge.

saevō, -ii, -iūris, -ire, [saevō- (as if saevi-)], 4. v. n., be angry, rage, be violent.

sagitta, -ae, [?], f., an arrow.

sagittārīlus, -i, [sagitta + arius], m., an archer.

sagulum, -i, [sagō + lum], n., a cloak (military).
Vocabulary.

saltus, -tūs, [?, perh. √SAL (in salto) + tus], m., a wooded height, a glade, a pass (in the mountains).

salūs, -ūtis, [salvō (?) + tis (cf. virtus, Carmentis)], f., health, well-being, welfare, safety, preservation, deliverance, life (as saved or lost); salute desperata (despairing of saving one's self); salutis suae causa (to protect one's self); ad saltem contendere (a place of safety).

Samarobrīva, -ae, [Celtic], f., a city of the Ambiani, now Amiens.

sanctō, sanxiō, sanctus, sacriēre, [√SAC (in sacer)], 4. v. a., bind (in some religious manner), make sacred, solemnly establish (by law).—sanctus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., holy, sacred, solemn, inviolable.

sanguis (ен), -inis, [?], m., blood (as the vital fluid, generally in the body, cf. crūor).

sānitās, -tātis, [sanō + tas], f., soundness, sound mind.

sāno, -ivi, -ītus, -āre, [sanō-], 1. v. a., make sound, make good, repair.

Santones, -um, [Celtic], m. plur. (also -i, -ōrum), a tribe between the Loire and the Garonne.

Santoni, see Santones.

sānus, -a, -um, [√SA- (akin to salvus) + nus], adj., sound (in body or mind), ēane, discreet: nihil pro sano facere (nothing discreet).

sapiō, -ii (-iī), no p.p., -ere, [?, √SAP (akin to Gr. σφός)], 3. v. a. and n., taste (actively or passively). Hence, be wise.

sarcina, -ae, [sarcī- (as if stem of sārcio, or a kindred noun-stem) + na (f. of nus)], f., a pack (sewed up?).—Plur., baggage (soldiers' packs, cf. impedimenta, baggage not carried).

sarcīo, sarsi, sartus, sacrīre, [?], 4. v. a., mend, patch.—Fig., restore, repair.

sarmēntum, -i, [perh. √SARP.- (but cf. sarcina) + mentum], n., (either prunings or tied fagots), only in plur., fagots, fascines.

satis [?], adv., enough, sufficiently.—Often with participial, equivalent to a noun or adj., enough, sufficient: satis habere (consider sufficient, be satisfied); satis facere (do enough); neque ... satis commode (not very, etc.); satis grandis (rather large, tolerably large).

satisfacīō, -feci, -factūrus, -facere, [satis facio], irr. v. n., do enough for, satisfy, make amends, excuse one's self, apologize.

satisfactiō, -onis, [satis-factio (cf. satisfacīo)], f., amends, excuses, an apology.

satus, -a, -um, p.p. of sero.

saucus, -a, -um, [?], adj., wounded.

saxum, -i, [?], n., a rock (as movable).

scālā, -ae, [perh. scad- (in scando) + la], f., a ladder, a scaling ladder.

Scaldis, -is, [?], m., a river of Gaul, the Scheldt (perh. put in vi. 33 for the Sambre by mistake).

scapha, -ae, [Gr. σκάφη, orig. a "dug-out"], f., a skiff, a boat.

scelerātus, -a, -um, [as if (perh. really) p.p. of scelēro (stain with crime?)], adj., villainous, accursed.


scelenter [scient + ter], adv., knowingly, skilfully.
Vocabulary.

scientia, -ae, [scient + ia], F., knowledge, acquaintance with (thing in the genitive).

scindō, scidi, scissus, scindere, [√SCID, cf. Gr. σχίζω], 3. v. a., tear, tear down.

sció, sci, scītus, scīre, [?], 4. v. a., (separate?), distinguishing, know.

scorpiō, -onis, [?], M., a scorpion; a machine for throwing darts. Hence, a shot from an engine (of that kind).

scribō, scripsi, scriptus, scribere, [?], 3. v. a. and n., write, give an account (in writing).

scrobis, -is, [prob. akin to scribo], M. and F., a ditch.

scūtum, -i, [?], N., a shield, of the Roman legion, made of wood, convex, oblong (2½ by 4 ft.), covered with leather.

secō, secui, sectus, secāre, [prob. causative of √SEC], 1. v. a., cut, reap.

secrētō [abl. of secretus, p.p. of secerno], adv., in private, privately.

sectiō, -onis, [√SEC (in seco) + tio], F., a cutting. Hence (probably from dividing in lots), a lot of booty, booty.

sector, -ātus, -āri, [prob. sectā (√SEQU + ta, cf. moneta)], 1. v. dep., pursue, chase after.

sectūra, -ae, [prob. sectu- (√SEC + tus) + ra, F. of rasus], F., a cutting, a mine, a shaft, a gallery.

sequendus, see secundus.

secundus, -a, -um, [part. in -dus of sequor], adj., following. Hence, second. — Also (as not opposing), favorable, successful: secundiores res (greater prosperity); proelium secundum nostris (in favor of); secundo flumine (down the stream); secunda aces (the second line of battle, the second division). — Neut. acc. as prep., along, in the direction of, in accordance with.

secūris, -is, [√SEC + unc. term.], F., an axe. — Esp., the axe of the licitor (as a symbol of the power of life and death).

secus [√SEQ (in sequor) + unc. term.], adv., (inferior), otherwise. — Compar., sectus, less: nihilo secius (none the less, nevertheless).

secūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of sequor.

sed [abl. of unc. stem, cf. rei], conj., apart (cf. sedītio, and securus), but (stronger than autem or at).

sēdecim [sex-decem], indecl. num. adj., sixteen.

sēdēs, -is, [SED + es (M. and F. term. corresponding to N. -us)], F., a seat. Hence, an abode (both in sing. and plur.): locus ac sedes (a place of abode).

sēditio, -onis, [sed- + tio (√1 + tio)], F., a secession, a mutiny, an uprising.

sēditōsus, -a, -um, [sedition + osus], adj., seditious, factious.

Sedulius, -i, [?], M., a leader of the Lemovices.

Sēdunī, -orum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Alps.

Sedusli, -orum, [Teut.], M. plur., a tribe of Germans.

seges, -etis, [unc. stem + tis], F., a crop of grain (growing), a field (of grain).

Sēgni, -orum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Belgic Gaul.

Segonax (-ovax), -actis, [Celtic], M., a British king.

Segontiaci, -orum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Britain.

Seguslāvi (-āni), -orum, [Celtic],
m. plur., a people west of the Rhone, near modern Lyons.

\textit{semel} [prob. n. of adj., akin to similis], adv., once: semel atque iterum (more than once, again and again); ut semel (when once, as soon as).

\textit{sēmentis}, -tis, [sēmen + tis, cf. Carmentis, virtus], f., a sowing: sementis (-es) facere (sow grain).
\textit{sēmita}, -ae, [sē (sed) -mita (\textit{Mi}, in meo, cf. comes)], f., a side path, a by path, a path (over the mountains).

\textit{semper} [\textit{fsemō} (\textit{?}) (in semel) -per (cf. parumper)], adv., through all time, always.

\textit{Semprōnīus}, -i, [\textit{?}], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Marcus Sempronius Rutilus; see Rutilus.

\textit{senātor}, -ōris, [\textit{fsenā} (as if verb-stem akin to senex, perh. really so, cf. senatus) + tor], m., (an elder). Hence, a senator (esp. of Rome), a senator (of a similar person in Gaul).

\textit{senātus}, -tūs, [\textit{fsenā} (as if, perh. really, verb-stem akin to senex)], m., a senate (council of old men). — Esp., the senate (of Rome, the great body of nobles acting as an administrative council).

\textit{senex} [seni + cus (reduced)]. — Gen., senis ['\textit{?}, cf. seneschal'], adj. (only m.), old. — Esp. as subst., an old man (above forty-five).

\textit{sēnī}, -ae, -a, [sēc(s) + nī], adj., six each, six (where each is implied in Eng. by the context).

\textit{Senones}, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Seine, near Sens (their chief town, anciently Agedinicum).

\textit{sententia}, -ae, [\textit{fsentent} (p. of simpler pres. of sentto) + ia], f., (feeling, thinking). Hence, a way of thinking, an opinion, a view, a determination, a sentiment, a feeling, a purpose, a design. — Esp., officially, a judgment, an opinion, a sentence, a vote: in ea sententia permanere (of that mind); in ea sententiam (to this purport).

\textit{sentīō}, -sens, sensūsentire, [\textit{?}], 4. v. a., perceive (by the senses), know, see, think (of an opinion made up), learn about, learn: unum sentiunt ac probant (hold the same opinion, etc.).

\textit{sentīs}, -is, [\textit{?}], m., a briar.

\textit{sēparātīm} [as if acc. of \textit{fseparatis} (separā + tis)], adv., separately, privately (apart from others).

\textit{sēparātus}, -a, -um, p.p. of separō.

\textit{sēparō}, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [se (sed)-paro], i. v. a., (get apart?), separate. — Esp. p.p., sēparātus, -a, -um, as adj., separate.

\textit{sēpēs}, see saepes.

\textit{septem} [\textit{?}], indecl. num. adj., seven.

\textit{septemtriōnēs} (septen-), -um, [see trio], m. plur., the seven plough oxen (the stars of the Great Bear). Hence, the north. — Also (by an error) in the sing., septentriō, -ōnis, the north: ad septentriones (to the north); a septentrionibus (in the north); sub septentrionibus (in the north, towards the north); in septentrionem (to the north).

\textit{septimus}, -a, -um, [septem + mus, cf. prīmus], adj., the seventh.

\textit{septingenti}, -ae, -a, [septem (in some form) -centum(?)], num. adj., seven hundred.

\textit{septuāgintā} [from septem, in some unc. manner], indecl. num. adj., seventy.
septılıus, -ae, [†septulu (sepel, prob. compound, + tus) + ra (f. of rus)], F., burial, burying.

Sequana, -ae, [Celtic], F., the Seine.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Sequani (a tribe of Gaul, on the Rhone, N. of Macon). — Masc. plur., the nation itself, the Sequani. — Masc. sing., one of the Sequani.

sequor, secūtus, sequi, [√SEQU], 3. v. dep., follow, accompany: damna-
tum poena (be inflicted upon, the penalty following the condemnation); eventus (ensue); hiema quae secu-
ta est (the following); fidem populi Romani (hold to, remain under, etc.); aestus commutationem (take advantage of); fidem Caesaris (come under, surrender one's self to).

sermō, -onis, [√SER (in sero, twine) + mo (prob. -mō- + o)], M., (series?). Hence, conversation (continuous series of speech), talk, inter-
course, conversation with (genitive).

serō, sēvi, satus, serere, [√SA, redupl.], 3. v. a., plant, sow.

sērō [abl. of serus], adv., too late.

Sertōrius, -i, [sertor (?) + ius], M., (garland-maker?), a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Q. Sertorius, a partisan of Marius, who held a command in Spain against the party of Sulla from B.C. 80 to B.C. 72.

servilis, -e, [servi (as if stem of servus or akin, cf. servio) + lis], adj., of slaves, of a slave, servile: in servilem modum (as with slaves, i.e. by torture); tumultus (the servile war, the revolt of the slaves under Spartacus in B.C. 73).

serviō, -ii (-ivi), -itūrus, -āre, [servi- (as if stem of servus or akin)], 4. v. n., be a slave (to some one or something); rumoribus (be blindly guided by, follow); bello (devote one's self to).

servītūs, -ā-tis, [†servitu (servō + tus) + tis, cf. luventus, semen-
tis], F., slavery, servitude.

Servius, -i, [servī + ius], M., a Roman prænomen.

servō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [servō-], I. v. a., watch, guard, keep, preserve: praesidium (hold, maintain); ordi-
nes (keep); fidem (keep one's word).

servus, -i, [unc. root (√SER, bind?) + vus], M., a slave.

sescenti, see sexcenti.

sēsē, see sūl.

sēquipedallis, -e, [†sesquiped-
(a foot and a half) + alis], adj., of a foot and a half, eighteen-inch (beams, etc.).

Sesvili, see Esuvili.

setius, see secus.

see, see sīve.

severītās, -ātis, [severō + tas], F., strictness, harshness.

sēvocō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [se (sed) -vocō], I. v. a., call aside, call out (aside).

sēvum (sēbum), [?], N., tallow.

sex [?], indecl. num. adj., six.

sexāgintā [sex + unc. term.], indecl. num. adj., sixty.

sexcenti (ses-), -ae, -a, [sex-
centum], num. adj., six hundred.

sexdecim (sēdecim), [sex-de-
cem], indecl. num. adj., sixteen.

Sextius, -i, [sēxtō + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: 1. Titus Sextius, a legatus of Cæsar. — 2. Pū-
lius Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Cæsar's army.

si [locative, prob. akin to se], conj., (in this way, in this case, so, cf. stc), if, in case. — Esp., to see if, whether: id sī fieret (should this happen, etc.). — See also sīcubī.
Vocabulary.

slībī, see sulī.
Slūtēzāēs, -um, [Celtic], m. pl., a people of Aquitania, near the Pyrenees.
sic [si-ce, cf. hīc], adv., so, in this manner, in such a manner, thus: sic... ut (so... that, so well... that); sic reperiebat (this).—sicuti, as conj., just as, just as if.
siccitās, -tāsis, [sicē + tāsa], F., dryness, drought, dry weather.—Plur. in same sense, of different occasions.
sicubī [perh. si-tqobi (old form of ubi?)], but cf. sic], conj., if anywhere.
sicut (sicuti), see sic.
sidus, -eris, [sed + us], N., (position?), a heavenly body.
Sigambri (Sug-), -orum, [Teutonic], m., a German tribe.
signifer, -feri, [signo-fer (?+fer + us)], M., a standard-bearer.
significatio, -onis, [significā + tio], F., a making of signs, a signal, an intimation, a warning.
significō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [significō (signō-fūcus)], I. v. n., make signs, indicate, make known, spread news, give an intimation, give information: hac re significari (this is an indication); de fuga; deditio nem (make signs of).
signum, -i, [unc. root + num (N. of -nus)], N., (a device?), a sign, a signal.—Esp., a standard (for military purposes, carried by each body of men, consisting of some device in metal on a pole).—Phrases: signa convertere (wheel, change front, face about); signa inferre (advance to attack, charge); conversa signa inferre (change front and charge); infestis signis (for an attack, at charge); signa ferre (move, move on, march); signa subsequi (keep the line of march); signa reliquere (leave the ranks); se continere ad signa (keep the ranks); a signis discedere (desert, leave the ranks); ad signa convenire (join the army); ad signa consistere (rally around the standard); signa constituerae (halt).
Sillānus, -i, [?], M., a Roman family name.—Esp., Marcus Sillānus, a legatus of Cæsar.
silentium, -i, [silent + ium], N., silence.—silentīō, abl., in silence, silently.
Sillius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., Titus Silius, a military tribune in Cæsar’s army.
silva, -ae, [?], F., a forest, woods, forests.—Plur. in same sense.
silvester(-tris), -tris, -trec, [silva- (as if silvis-, cf. palustris) + tris], adj., woody, wooded.
simīlis, -e, [simō- (cf. simplex, semper, sīmitu) + lia], adj., like, similar.
similitūdō, -inis, [simili + tudo], F., likeness, resemblance (to, genitive).
simul [N. of simillus, cf. facul], adv., at the same time, as soon as: simul atque (as soon as).
simulācrum,-i, [simulā+crum], N., an image.
simulātiō, -onis, [simulā + tio], F., a pretense, a show.
simulātus, -a, -um, p.p. of simulō.
simulō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [simili- (as if, perh. orig., tсимоло)], I. v. a., pretend, make a show of (something).
simultās, -tāsis, [simili- (cf. simul + tāsa)], F., (likeness?, equality?), rivalry.
sin [si-ne], conj., (if not), but if.
Vocabulary

sincērē [old abl. of sincerus], adv., honestly, truly.
sine [?], prep., without.
singulāris, -ē, [singulō + aris], adj., solitary, single. Hence, unique, extraordinary, unparalleled, unequalled, marvellous.
singulātim (singill-), [as if singulā- (singulus) + tim (acc. of tis)], adv., singly, one by one, individually.
singuli, -ae, -a, [sim (in similis) + unc. term.], adj., one at a time, single, each, one by one, several (severally). — Often to denote distribution, one to each: singuli singulos (with verb, one...each); singulis legionibus singulos legatos (one over each); ab singulis legionibus singulos legatos discedere (each from his); inter singulas legiones (between each two, one to each); naves singulas Romanis equitibus (severally, separately, one to each); sevocare singulos (individuals, one by one).
sinister, -tra, -trum, [?], adj., left: sub sinistra (on the left).
sinistrōrsus [sinistro-vorsus (versus)], adv., to the left.
sinō, sivi, situs, sinere, [√sti (of unc. meaning)], 3. v. a., (lay down, cf. pono), leave. Hence, permit, allow.

si quandō, if ever, whenever.
Cf. si and quando.

si quidem, if at least, in so far as, since. Cf. si and quidem.

si quis, if any. Cf. si and quis.

si quō, if anywhere (whither).
Cf. si and quo.

sistō, see circumsisto.
situs, -tūs, [√st + tus], m., (a laying, a leaving), situation, position.

sive, seu, [si-ve], conj., if either, or if: sive...sive (either...or).
socer, -eri, [?], m., a father-in-law.
socletās, -tātis, [sociō + tas], f., an alliance.
socius, -i, [√sequi + ius], m., a companion, an ally.
sōl, solis, [?], m., the sun. — See also oriens, occidens.
sōläciōn, see solatium.
sōlätium (sōläc-), -i, [solutō + ium], n., a consolation.
sōldurius, -i, [Teutonic], m., a retainer.
solēō, solitus sum, solēre, [?], 2. v. n., be wont.
sōlertia, see solertia.
sōlītūdō, -inis, [solō + tudo], f., loneliness. Hence, a wilderness. solertia (sōler)-, -ae, [sollert-

solum, see solus.
solum, -i, [?], n., the soil, the foundation: sōlum agri (the bare ground); ab infimo solo (from the very bottom).
sōlus, -a, -um, [?], adj., alone, only.—sōlum, n. as adv., alone, only.
solātus, -a, -um, p.p. of solvo.
solvō, solvi, solūtus, solvere, [prob. se-luo], 3. v. a., unbind, loose.
—Esp. with navis, weigh anchor,
Vocabulary.

set sail. — Also without navis, absolutely, set sail.

sonitus, -tūs, [soni- (as stem of sono) + tus], M., a sound, noise.

Sontlātes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a people of Aquitania.

sonus, -i, [√son + us], M., a sound.

soror, -ōris, [?], F., a sister; soror ex matre (a half sister).

sors, sortis, [perh. √ser (in sero) + tis, but the orig. sense is unc.], F., a lot (for divination).

spatium, -i, [?], N., space, extent, a space, a distance. — Transf., time, space of time, lapse of time.

Phrases: quantum fuit diei spatium (as much as there was time for); intermissa spatio (after an interval); spatia omnis temporis (the whole course of time).

specēs, -iī, [√spec + ias (akin to -ia)], F., (a sight, prob. both act. and pass.). — Passively, a sight, a show, an appearance: summa species earum stantium (a perfect appearance of standing trees).

spectō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [spectō-].

1. v. a. and n., look at, regard, have regard to, lie towards (of a country).

speculātor, -ōris, [speculā + tor], M., a spy, a scout.

speculātorius, -a, -um, [speculator + ius], adj., (of a scout), scouting, reconnoitring (navigia).

speculor, -ātus, -āri, [speculō-],

1. v. dep., spy, reconnoitre: speculandi causa (as a spy).

spērātus, -a, -um, p.p. of spero.

spērō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [spes- (prob. orig. stem of spes) with r for s], 1. v. a. and n., hope, hope for, expect.

spēs, -ei, [?], F., hope, expectation: summam in spem venire (have the greatest hope).

spiritus, -tūs, [spiri- (as stem of spiro) + tus], M., breath. — Also, spirit. Hence, in plur., pride.

spōllō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [spoliō-], 1. v. a., despoli, strip. — Fig., rob, deprive, despoil.

spontis (gen.), sponte (abl.), [prob. akin to spondeo], F., only with pers. pron. or (poetic) genitive, of one's own accord, voluntarily.

stabilīs, -īvi (-ii), -ītus, -īre, [stabilī-], 4. v. a., make firm.

stabilitās, -tātis, [stabilī + tas], F., steadiness, firmness.

statim [acc. of †statis (sta + tis)], adv., (as one stands, on the spot), at once, forthwith, immediately.

statiō, ōnis, [apparently √sta + tio, prob. †stati + o, wh. the common -tio used as ending without regard to its origin], F., (a standing), a position, a post, a picket: in statione (on guard).

statuō, -uī, -ūtus, -uere, [statu-], 3. v. a., set up. Hence, establish, resolve upon, determine, consider (make up one's mind), take measures. — Euphemistic for, punish (de eo causa cognita).

statūra, -ae, [statu + ra, F. of -rus], F., (a standing), stature, size.

status, -tūs, [√sta + tus], M., (a standing), a position, a condition, a state.

st Trainus, -i, [†stigmō- (√stig + mus) + lus], M., a goad, a spur.

— As name of a calthrop or instrument of defence, "spurs."

stipendiārius, -a, -um, [stipendiō + arius], adj., tributary, under tribute, subject to tribute.

stipendium, -i, [stipi- and stem akin to pendo (perh. †pendus, cf. pendulus) + ium], N., a tribute.
Vocabulary.

stipes, stipitis, [?], M., a trunk (of a tree).

stirps, stirpis, [?], M. and F., a stock. — Fig., a race: stirpem homi- num interfici (men to be killed root and branch).

stō, steti, statūris, stāre, [√sta], i. v. n., stand: decreto (stand by, abide by).

strāmentum, -ī, [√stra (form of root of sternum) + mentum], N., (something straw), straw, thatch. — Also plur., saddle-cloths.

strepitus, -tūs, [strepi- (as stem of strepto) + tus], M., a noise, a rattling.

structūra, -ae, [structu- + ra (cf. figura)], F., a structure: aerariae structurae (galleries, a doubtful reading in vi. 34).

studēō, studuī, no p.p., studēre, [†studō (or †studa-), cf. studium], 2. v. n., be eager for, be devoted to, pay attention to, attend to, desire (a thing in the dat.).

studēōsē [old abl. of studiosus], adv., eagerly.

studium, -ī, [prob. †studō + ium, cf. studēo], N., eagerness, zeal, devotion, fondness (for a thing), enthusiasm. Hence, a pursuit (to which one is devoted), an occupation.

stultītia, -ae, [stultō + tia], F., folly.

sub (in comp. subs), [unc. case, prob. abl. (cf. subs) akin to super], adv. (in comp.) and prep.:

a. With abl. (of rest in a place), under: sub oculis (before the eyes). — Also, just by: sub monte (at the foot of); sub sinistra (at the left); sub vallo (just under the wall).

b. With acc. (of motion towards a place), under, close to. — Of time, just at, just before: sub vesperum.

c. In comp., under, up (from under), away (from beneath), se-cretly (underhand), in succession, a little, slightly.

subāctus, -a, -um, p.p. of subigo.

sube-, see succ-.

subdolus, -a, -um, [sub-dolus], adj., cunning, wily.

subdūcō, -düxi, -ductus, -dücere, [sub-duco], 3. v. a., draw up, lead up: naves (beach, draw up).

subductīō, -onis, [sub-ductio, cf. subduco], r., a drawing up, a beaching (of ships).

subductus, -a, -um, p.p. of subduco.

subeō, -ii, -itus, -ire, [sub-eo], irr. v. a., go under, undergo, encounter, come up.

sub-, see suff.

sublicō (subi-), -jēcī, -jectus, -icer, [sub-jacio], 3. v. a., throw under, place below, place under, subject, expose to. — Also, throw up.

subigitō, -ēgi, -actus, -igere, [sub-ago], 3. v. a., bring under, subject.

subito, see subitus.

subitus, -a, -um, [p.p. of subeo], adj., (coming up secretly from under), sudden, suddenly (as if adv. taken with the verb), quick, hasty. — subitō, abl. as adv., suddenly, of a sudden.

subjectus, -a, -um, p.p. of sublico.

sublicō, see sublico.

sublātus, -a, -um, [sub-(t)atus], p.p. of tollo.

sublevātus, -a, -um, p.p. of sublevo.

sublevō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [sub-levō], i. v. a., lighten up, lighten, raise, raise up, assist, render assistance. — With reflexive, rise up. — suble- vātus, p.p., supporting one's self.

sublinc, -ae, [?], r., a pile.

subluō, no perf., -lūtus, -luere,
Vocabulary.

[sub-luo], 3. v. a., wash underneath, wash: flumen collis radices.

subministrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [sub-ministro], 1. v. a., supply (as needed), furnish (from time to time).

submittō (sum-), -mīsī, -mīsus, -mittere, [sub-mitto], 3. v. a., send up, send to one's assistance, send as reinforcements, send (as help), reinforce.

submōtus, -a, -um, p.p. of submoveo.

submoveō (sum-), -movēi, -mōtus, -movère, [sub-moveo], 2. v. a., drive off, dislodge.

[...], see supp-.

subruō, -ruī, -rutus, -ruere, [sub-ruo], 3. v. a., dig under, undermine.

subsequor, -secūtus, -sequī, [subsequor], 3. v. dep., follow up, follow on, follow, succeed to.

subsidiō, -i, [sub-þsediō (√sed + ium)], N., (a sitting in reserve), a reserve, a reinforcement, help, relief, support, assistance: sub sidio mittere (send assistance); subsidium ferre (rescue).

subsidiō, -sēdi, -sessūrus, -sidere, [sub-sido], 3. v. n., sit down, remain behind.

subsistō, -stī, no p.p., -sistere, [sub-sisto], 3. v. n., stop behind, halt, make a stand: ancorae (hold).

subsum, -suī, -sūtus, -esse, [subsum], irr. v. n., be under, be near, be close by (a certain distance off), be near at hand, approach.

subtrahō, -trāxi, -tractus, -trahere, [sub-traho], 3. v. a., take away (underneath), carry away, take away (generally).

subvectīō, -ōnis, [sub-vectio, cf. subveho], v., bringing up, transportation.

subvehō, -vēxi, -vectus, -vehere, [sub-veho], 3. v. a., bring up.

subvenīō, -vēni, -ventūrus, -venire, [sub-venio], 4. v. n., come under, come to the support of, come to the assistance of.

succēdō, -cessi, -cessūrus, -cede re, [sub-cedo], 3. v. n., come up, advance, come in place of, succeed to, take the place of, come next. — Also, be successful, prosper.

succeedō, -cendi, -census, -cenderē, [sub-þcando (cf. cando)], 3. v. a., set on fire (as if beneath).

succeedus, -a, -um, p.p. of succeedo.

succeesus, -uīs, [sub-cessus (cf. suceedo)], M., a coming up, an advance.

succidō, -cidi, -cisus, -cidere, [sub-caedo], 3. v. a., cut under, cut down.

succidus, -a, -um, p.p. of succido.

succumbō, -cubui, -cubitūrus, -cumbere, [sub-cumbo], 3. v. n., lie down (under), give way, succumb.

succurrō, -currī, -cursūrus, -currere, [sub-curro], 3. v. n., rush to support, rush to one's rescue.

sudis, -is, [?], F., a stake.

sudōr, -ōris, [√sud + or], M., sweat. Hence, toil.

Suēbī, see Suēvī.

Suessīones, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of the Belgians between the Marne and the Isère. Their town Noviodunum was later called from them Soissons.

Suēvī (Suēbī), -ōrum, [Teutonic], M. plur., name of the tribes inhabiting a large part of Germany, Swabians.

Suēvus, -a, -um, [see Suevi], adj., Swabians. — As subst., a Swa-
bian (man or woman). — Plur., see above.

sufficiō, -feci, -fectus, -ficere, [sub-facio], 3. v. a., make in place of, supply the place of. Hence, suffice, be sufficient, be adequate.

suffodiō, -fodi, -ossus, -odere, [sub-fodi], 3. v. a., dig under, stab (underneath).

suffossus, -a, -um, p.p. of suffodiō.

suffragium, -i, [sub-†fragium, i.e. prob. suffragō + ium (cf. suffragor and suffrīngō)], N., (a) pastern bone, cf. suffrago; or a polsherd, cf. Gr. βοῦρακος; either used as a ballot, a ballot, vote.

suggestus, -tis, [sub-gestus, cf. sugerō], M., (earth brought up), a raised mound, a tribunal (whence the Roman commander addressed his troops).

sul (prop. gen. n. of suus), sibi, se, [√sva], pron. reflexive, himself, etc. — Often to be translated by the personal, he, etc., also each other. — Esp.: inter se (from, with, by, etc., each other); inter sese dant (give each other, exchange); per se (of himself, etc., without outside influence or excitement); ipse per se (in and of himself).

Sulla, ae, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Lucius Cornelius Sulla, the great partisan of the nobility and opponent of Marius, called the Dictator Sulla.


sum, fui, futūrus, esse, [√as, cf. am, is], irr. v. n., be (exist). — Also, with weakened force, be (as a mere copula). — Phrases: erant duo itinerā (there were); sibi esse in animo (that he had in mind, intended); pars quaē est ad Hispaniam (lies); eorum est (they have); multum sunt in venationibus (much engaged).

summa, -ae, [f. of summus as noun], F., (the top), the sum, the total, the main part: summa omnium rerum (the whole amount); bellī (the general management, the chief control); imperi (the chief command); imperī bellique administrandi (the chief management, etc.); rerum consiliorumque (chief control); summa exercitūs (the main body, etc.).

summinstrō, see subministro.

summittō, see submitto.

summoveō, see summoveo.

summus, see superus.

sūmō, sūmpsi, sūmpstus, -sūmere, [sub-emo (take)], 3. v. a., take away, take, get, assume; supplicium (inflct, cf. capere); laborem (spend).

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, [sumptu + osus], adj., expensive, costly.

sūmpstus, -tus, [sub-emptus, cf. sumo], M., (a taking out of the stock on hand), expense.

superātus, -a, -um, p.p. of supero.

superbē [old abl. of superbus], adv., haughtily, arrogantly, with arrogance.

superlor, see superus.

superō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre,[superō-], 1. v. a. and n., overtop. Hence, get the upper hand of, overcome, conquer, defeat, be superior to, prevail, overmatch, survive (vita).

supersedeō, -sēdī, -sessurus, -sedēre, [super-sedeō], 2. v. n., sit
above. Hence, be above, decline, refrain from.

supersum, -fui, -futūrus, -esse, [super-sum], irr. v. n., be over and above, remain, survive.

superus, -a, -um, [†supe- (stem akin to sub, perh. same). + rus (cf. inferus)], higher, being above: de supero (as subst., from above). — Compar., superior, higher, upper, preceding (of time), past, before, superior. — Superl., suprēmus [supra-(?) + imus(?)], highest. — Also, summus [sup + mus], highest, the highest part of, the top of. — Fig., greatest, most important, very great, most perfect, perfect, supreme, most violent: ab summō (from the top); summis copiis (with all the forces, in force, with all one's might).

suppetō, -petivī, -petitūrus, -petere, [sub-peto], 3. v. n., (? but cf. sufficio and subvenio), be on hand, be supplied, be to be found.

supplēmentum, -i, [supplē- (as stem of supplio) + mentum], N., a supply (to fill up), a reinforcement.

supplex, -icis, [sub-†plex (\sqrt{pl}ic as stem, cf. duplex)], c., a suppliant.

supplicātō, -ōnis, [supplicā + tio], f.; a supplication. — Esp., a thanksgiving (prayer to the gods upon any signal success, decreed by the senate).

suppliciter [supplici- (as stem of supplex) + ter], adv., in the guise of suppliants, as suppliants.

supplicium, -i, [supplic- (stem of supplex) + ium], N., (a kneeling). Hence, a supplication. — Also, esp., a punishment (usually of death).

supportō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [sub-}

portō], 1. v. a., bring up, supply, furnish.

suprā [instr. (?) of superus], adv. and prep., above, before.

susceptus, -a, -um, p.p. of suscipio.

suscipīō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -cipere, [sub-capio], 3. v. a., take up, take upon one's self (sibi), undertake, engage in, undergo.

suspectus, -a, -um, p.p. of suspicio.

suspicātus, -a, -um, p.p. of suspicor.

suspicīō, -spēxi, -spectus, -spicere, [sub-specio], 3. v. a. and n., look up, look up at, look askance at. Hence, suspect: suspecta nobis (an object of suspicion to us).

suspicō, -spēs, -āris, [sub-†specio, cf. suspicio], F., suspicion, an impulsion (timoria), an indication: dabat . . . fugae (endeavored to excite a suspicion); neque abest suspicio (and there is a suspicion abroad, not without suspicion).

suspicō, -spēs, -āris, [sub-†specio, cf. suspicio], 3. v. a. and n., look up, look up at, look askance at. Hence, suspect: suspecta nobis (an object of suspicion to us).

suspicō, -spēs, -āris, [sub-†specio, cf. suspicio], 3. v. a. and n., look up, look up at, look askance at. Hence, suspect: suspecta nobis (an object of suspicion to us).
Vocabulary.

back to subject), his, hers, its, theirs, etc.—Sometimes emphatic, his own, etc.—Often without subst., sui, their men, their countrymen, their friends; sua, their (his) possessions, their property: se suaque omnia (themselves and all they had).

tametsi [tamen (or tam?)-etsi], adv., (still although, anticipating the thought to which tamen properly belongs), although.

tandem [tam-dem, cf. idem], adv., (just so, even so?), at last.—In questions, to add emphasis, pray, tell me, or translated only by emphasis.

tangō, tetigī, tactus, tangere, [√TAG], 3. v. a., touch, border on.

tantopere, see opus.

tantulus, -a, -um, [tanto + lus], adj., so small, so little, so trifling.

tantum, see tantus.

tantummodo [tantum modo], adv., (so much only), only, merely, only just.

tantundem (tantum-dem, cf. idem), adv., just so far.

tantus, -a, -um, [prob. √TA + VANT + us], adj., so much, so great, such (of magnitude): tanti est (is of so much weight); tanta exiguitas temporis (so brief time).—Esp., so much (and no more), only so much: tantum progresi (so far as).

—tantum, N. as adv., only, merely.

Tarbelli, -orum, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of Aquitania.

tardātus, -a, -um, p.p. of tardō.

tardē [old abl. of tardus], adv., slowly, tardily, with delay.

tardō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [tardō-], I. v. a., retard, check, hinder: Romans ad insequendum (hinder from pursuing, retard the pursuit of, etc.).

tardus, -a, -um, [?], adj., slow.

Tarusātes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of Aquitania.

Tasgetius, -i, [Celtic], M., a prince of the Carnutes.

taurus, -i, [perh. √STAV- + rus, akin to steer], M., a bull.
Taximagulus, -i, [Celtic], m., a prince of Britain.
taxus, -i, [?], F., a yew-tree. — Also, yew (the berries used as poison).

Tectosages, -um, [Celtic], m. pl., a branch of the Volcae, which see.
tectum, -i, [N. p.p. of tego], N., a roof, a house.
tectus, -a, -um, p.p. of tego.
tegimentum (tegu-), -i, [tegi- (stem of tego) + mentum], N., a covering.
tegō, tēxi, tectus, tegere, [√TEG], 3. v. a., cover, thatch, hide.
tegumentum, see tegimentum.
tēlum, -i, [?], N., a weapon (of offence), a missile, a javelin.
temerārius, -a, -um, [temerō + arius], adj., reckless, rash, hasty.
temerē [old abl. of †temerus], adv., blindly, without reason, without cause. Hence, recklessly, hastily.
temerītās, -tātis, [†temerō- (perhaps akin to temulentus) + tas], F., blindness, thoughtlessness, recklessness, heedlessness, hasty temper.
tēmō, -onis, [?], m., a pole (of a wagon, etc.).
temperantia, -ae, [temperant- + ia], F., self-control, prudence.
temperātus, -a, -um, p.p. of tempero, which see.
temperō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [temper- (stem of tempus)], I. v. a., (divide), mix properly. Hence, control, control one's self, refrain, restrain one's self from (quin). — Esp., temperātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., temperate, mild.
tempestrās, -tātis, [tempes- (stem of tempus) + tas], F., a season, weather. — Esp., bad weather, a storm, a tempest.
temptō (tentō), -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [tentō-, p.p. of teneō], I. v. a., handle. Hence, try: iter (try to force).
tempus, -oris, [√TEM (cut, with root determinative or accidental p) + us], N., (a cutting). — Esp., a division of time, a time, time (in general), a season, an occasion, an emergency, a crisis: tam necessario tempore (at so critical a moment); omni tempore (at all times, always); in reliquum tempus (for the future); uno tempore (at once); tempore exclusus (cut off by the want of time).

Tencēri (-thēri), -orum, [Teuto- nico], m. plur., a branch of the Usipetes, which see.
tendō, tetendi, tēnsus (tensus), tendere, [√ten + do (of unc. origin)], 3. v. a., stretch, stretch out. — Esp., stretch a tent, encamp.
tenebrae, -ārum, [?], perh. akin to temere], F. plur., darkness.
teneō, tenuī, tenuēs, tenuere, [†tenō- (√ten + us)], 2. v. a., hold, retain, keep, possess, occupy: circuitus militus (occupy, extend). — Also, restrain, detain: tenere obсидibus (bind); se tenere (remain).
tener, -era, -erum, [√ten + rus], adj., (stretched, thin), delicate, tender, young.
tentō, see temptō.
tenula, -e, [√ten + us, with accidental i, cf. gravis], adj., thin, delicate, feeble, meagre, poor.
tenuitās, -tātis, [tenui + tas], F., thinness, poverty.
tenuitūs, -tūtis, [tenui + tas], adv., very.
tenuitūter [tenui + ter], adv., thinly, slightly.
ter [prob. mutilated case of tres], adv., three times.
teres, -etis, [tere- (as stem of
Vocabulary.

terō) + tis], adj., (rubbed), smooth and round, tapering.

tergum, -ī, [?] N., the back: terga vertere (turn and fly); a tergo (in the rear).

ternī, -ae, -a, [tri + nus], adj., three each, three at once.

terra, -ae, [∇ters(?)] + a, cf. torreo], F., (the dry land), the earth, the land.— Also, a land, a region.— Also, the ground.— Plur., the world.

Terrasidius, -i, [Celtic], m., a Roman gentile (?) name.— Esp., Titus Terrasidius, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

terrenus, -a, -um, [terra- (as if terreī) + nus], adj., of earth.

terreō, terrui, territus, terrēre, [†terrō- (?)], 2. v. a., frighten, alarm.

territō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [territō-], i. v. a., frighten: metu (alarm with fears, keep alarmed).

terror, -ōris, [∇terr + or], m., fright, alarm, terror, dread, panic.

tertiōs, -a, -um, [prob. tri + tiōs], adj., third (in order); pars (the third part).

testāmentum, -i, [testā + mentum], n., a will.

testimōnium, -i, [testi + monium], n., proof, evidence.

testis, -is, [?], c., a witness.

testūdō, -inis, [†testu- (akin to testa) + do], F., a tortoise.— Esp., a covered column (made by lapping the shields of one rank over those of another).— Also, a shelter (a small roof over attacking soldiers).

Teutomatus, -i, [Celtic], m., a king of the Nitrobriges.

Teutońes, -um, [Teutoni, -ōrum], [Teutonic], m. plur., a great German people in Jutland who overran Gaul in B.C. 113 along with the Cimbri. They were defeated by Marius in B.C. 102 at Aquae Sextiae (Aix).

tignum, -i, [?], n., a log, a timber.

Tigurini, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a canton or division of the Helvetii.

timēdī, -ui, no sup., -ere, [†timē- (cf. timidus)], 2. v. a. and n., be afraid, fear.— With dat., be anxious for, be anxious about: nihil (have nothing to fear).

timidē [old abl. of timidus], adv., with timidity: non timide (fearlessly).

timidus, -a, -um, [†timō- (cf. timeō)], adj., cowardly, frightened, timid.

timor, -ōris, [tim- (as root of timeō) + or], m., alarm, fear.

Titurius, -ī, [?], m., a Roman gentile name.— Esp., Quintus Titurius Sabinus, a legatus of Caesar.

Titus, -ī, [?], m., a Roman praenomen.

tolerō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [†toler- (√tol + us)], 1. v. a. and n., (raise up), bear, endure, hold out: famem (keep from starvation).

tollō, sustuli, sublātus, tollere, [√tol (with va)], 3. v. a., raise, carry, carry off. Hence, remove, take away, destroy: colloquium (break off).— Esp., sublātus, -a, -um, p.p., elated.

Tolōsa, -ae, [Celtic], F., Toulouse, a city of the Volcae Tectosages.

Tolōsātēs, -um, [Tolosa + tis], m. plur., the people of Toulouse.

tormentum, -ī, [√torō + mentum], n., (means of twisting), torture.— Also, an engine (for throwing missiles by twisted ropes). Hence, a shot from an engine, a missile.

torreō, torrui, tostus, torrēre,
Vocabulary.

[torrō- (cf. torrus, firebrand)], 2. v. a., scorch.

tot [√TA + ti], indecl. adj., so many.

totidem [toti + dem], indecl. adj., just as many, as many, the same number.

totus, -a, -um [√TA + tus], adj., the whole, the whole of, all, entire. — Often translated by an adverb, entirely, throughout.

trab(s) (trabēs), trabis, [?], F., a beam.

tractus, -a, -um, p.p. of traho.

trāditus, -a, -um, p.p. of trado.

trādō, -didi, -ditus, -dere, [trans-do], 3. v. a., hand over, give up, give over, deliver up, surrender. — Also, pass along, hand down, teach, communicate.

trādūcō, see transducē.

trāgula, -ae, [?], F., a javelin (of a large, heavy kind, used by the Gauls).

trahō, traxi, tractus, trahere, [√TRAH (for TRAGH)], 3. v. a., drag, drag along, drag in, draw in.

trāclō (trāclō), -jēci, -jectus, -icerē, [trans-jacio], 3. v. a., throw across, throw through, transfix, pierce.

trājectus, -ūs, [trans-jactus, cf. trāclō], M., (a throwing across), a passage, a route.

trāclēō, see trāclō.

transō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [trans-ano], I. v. a. and n., swim across.

tranquillītās, -ītalīs, [tranquillō + tās], F., stillness, calm.

trans [?], akin to terminus, tererebra], adv. (in comp.) and prep., across, over. Hence, on the other side of. — In comp., over, across, through.

Trānsalpinus, -a, -um, [trans-]

Alpes + inus], adj., Transalpine (lying beyond the Alps from Rome).

trānscedō, -scendi, -scensūrus, -scendere, [trans-scando], 3. v. n., climb across, board (ships).

trānsducē, -dūxi, -dūctus, -du-cere, [trans-duco], 3. v. a., lead over (with two accusatives), lead across, bring over, lead through, transport, draw over, win over, transfer, lead (along).

trānseō, -iī,-itus,-ire, [trans-eo], irr. v. a. and n., go across, cross, pass over, go over, pass through, pass, migrate, pass by.

trānsferō, -tuli, -lātus, -ferre, [trans-ferō], irr. v. a., carry over, transfer, change the place of: ad se bellum (direct against, transferring from somewhere else).

trānsfigō, -fixi, -fixus, -figere, [trans-figo], 3. v. a., pierce through.

trānsfodiō, -fodi, -fossus, -fodere, [trans-fodio], 3. v. a., dig through.

— Also, pierce through, wound (by stabbing).

trānsgridior, -gressus, -gredi, [trans-gradiō], 3. v. dep., step across, step over, cross.

trānsgressus, -a, -um, p.p. of transgridor.

trānsclō, see trāclō.

trānsitus, -tūs, [trans-itus, cf. transeo], M., a crossing: difficili transitu (of difficult passage, difficult to cross).

trānslātus, -a, -um, p.p. of transferō.

trānsmarinus, -a, -um, [trans-mare + inus], adj., foreign.

trānsmissus, -ūs, [trans-missus, cf. transmitto], M., a crossing, a distance across: pari spatio transmissus (with a passage of the same length).
transmissus, -a, -um, p.p. of transmitto.

transmittō, -mīsi, -missus, -mittere, [transmitter], 3. v. a., send over.

transportātus, -a, -um, p.p. of transportō.

transportō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [transportō], 1. v. a., bring over (with two accusatives), transport, carry over: milites navibus transportari (were crossing, being taken over).

Trānsrhenānus, -a, -um, [trans-Rhenum + anus], adj., living across the Rhine. — Plur. as subst., the people across the Rhine.

trānstrum, -i, [trans (rant-?) + trum], n., a thwart.

transversus, -a, -um, [p.p. of transverto], as adj., across, athwart.

Trebius, -i, [-], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Marcus Trebius Gallus, a military tribune in Caesar’s army.

Trebonius, -i, [-], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caius Trebonius: 1, a Roman knight; 2, a legatus in Caesar’s army.

trecentī, -ae, -a, [tri-centum], num. adj., three hundred.

trecedēm [tre-aecem], indecl. num. adj., thirteenth.

trepidō, -āvi, -āturus, -āre, [trepidō-], 1. v. n., bustle about, hurry: totis trepidatur castris (there is a bustle throughout the camp).

tres, tria, gen. trium, [stem tri-], num. adj., three.

Treveri (-viri), -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a people in Gaul, originally German, on the Moselle.

Trevir, -iri, [sing. of Treveri], m., one of the Treveri.

Trībōces, -um (-i, -orum), [Celtic], m. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine, about Strasburg.

tribūnus, -i, [tribu-nus], m., (a chief of a tribe). With or without plebis, a tribune (one of several magistrates elected in the assembly of the plebs voting by tribes, to watch over the interests of the commons). — With millitum or militaryis, a tribune of the soldiers, a military tribune (one of six officers of each legion who had charge of the internal administration of the legion, and were also employed in various staff duties by the commander).

tribūdo, -ui, -útus, -ure, [tribu-], 3. v. a., (distribute by tribes), distribute. Hence, grant, render, assign, attribute: tantum dignitatis (pay such respect); magnopere virtuti (attribute it so very much to valor); reipublicae (grant out of regard to); plus libertati (have more regard for).

tribūtum, -i, [N.p.p. of tribuo], n., a tribute.

triduum, -i, [tri + stem akin to dies, cf. biduum], n., three days’ time, three days.

triennium, -i, [trienni (tri-annus) + ium], n., three years’ time, three years.

trīni, -ae, -a, [tri + nus], adj., three each, three sets of, three (of things in sets).

Trinobantes, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a people of southern Britain, in the region of Colchester.

trīpartitus (tripert-), -a, -um, [tri-partitus, p.p. of partio], adj., divided in three. — Esp., trīpartītō, abl. as adv., in three divisions.

trīplex, -icis, [tri-plex (√PLIC as stem)], adj., threefold: acies (in three divisions, or lines).
Vocabulary.


tristis, -e, [unc. root + tis], adj., sad, gloomy, dejected.

tristitia, -ae, [tristi + tia], F., sadness, a gloomy state (of mind).

truncus, -i, [?], M., a trunk.

tā, tui, [√TVA], plur. vōs [√VA], pron. 2d person, you (sing.), you (plur.).

tuba, -ae, [?], F., a trumpet (a straight instrument for infantry).

tueur, tútus (tuitus), tuēri, [?], 2. v. dep., watch, guard, protect. See also tūtus.

Tulgingi, -ōrum, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe.

Tullius, -i, [Tullo + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus Tullius Cicero, see Cicero.

Tullus, -i, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Caius Volcatius Tullus, a young man in Caesar’s suite.

tum [prob. acc. of √TA], adv., then (at a time indicated by the context), at this time: cum ... tum, see cum; tum vero (then, with emphasis, of the decisive point of a narrative); tum maxime (just then, but especially).

tumultuo- [tumultus], i. v. dep., make an uproar. — As impersonal, there is an uproar.

tumultuo-ūsē [old abl. of tumultuosus], adv., with disorder, noisily.

Tumultus, -ūs, [tumulō- (perh. reduced) + tus], M., (a swelling, an uprising?), an uproar, confusion, a commotion. — Esp., an uprising, a commotion (of revolt, or a war not regularly declared): servillis (the servile war, see servillis).

tumulus, -i, [†tumō- (wh. tumeo) + lus], M., (a swelling?), a hill, a mound.

tunc [tun-ce, cf. hic], adj., just then, then.

turma, -ae, [√TUR (cf. turba, turbo) + ma], F., (a throng?), a squadron (of horse, consisting of thirty men).

Turiones, -um (‑i, -ōrum), [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Loire. Their city became afterwards Tours.

turpis, -e, [?], adj., ugly (in appearance). Hence, unbecoming, disgraceful, base.

turpiter [turpi + ter], adv., dishonorably: turpiter factum (an inglorious deed).

turpītūdō, -inis, [turpi + tudo], F., baseness. Hence, disgrace.

turris, -is, [?], F., a tower.

tūtō, see tūtus.

tūtus, -a, -um, [p.p. of tueor], as adj., protected, safe, secure: victis nihil tum (no safety for the conquered). — tūtō, abl. as adv., in safety, safely.

tūus, -a, -um, [√TVA + ius], adj. pron., your, yours.

U.

ubi [supposed to be quō + bi, dat. of quō-], adv., where, in which: ibi ubi (in the place where). — Also, of time, when: ubi primum (as soon as).

ubicumque [ubi-cumque (cum + que, cf. quisque)], adv., wherever, whenever.

Ublī, -ōrum, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine, opposite Cologne, near which city they were afterwards settled.
ubique [ubi-que, cf. quisque], adv., everywhere.
ulciscor, ultus, ulcisci, [?], 3. v. dep., punish (an injury, or the doer), avenge (an injury).
ullus, -a, -um; gen. -lus, [unō + lus], adj., a single (with negatives), any. — As subst. (less common), anybody.
ulterior, -ōris, [comp. of ulterō, cf. ultra], adj., farther: ulteriores (those farther off). — Superl., ultimus, -a, -um, [ul + timus], farthest.
ultrā [unc. case, perh. instr. of āulti], adv. and prep., beyond.
ultrō [dat. of āulti (us)], adv., to the farther side, beyond: ultro citroque (this way and that). — Esp. beyond what is expected or required, voluntarily, without provocation, besides: bellum inferre (make an offensive war, make war without provocation); sibi parere coqui (in spite of himself); ad se venire (without his asking it).
ультus, -a, -um, p.p. of ulciscor.
ululātus, -lus, [ululā + tus], m., a yell.
umerus (humerus), -i, [?], m., the shoulder.
unquam, see unquam.
ūnā [instr. (or abl.?) of unus], adv., together, along, with them, etc., also.
unde [supposed to be for tēunde (cuncti,cf.unquam,+de, cf.inde)], adv., whence, from which.
undecim [unus-decēm], indecl. num. adj., eleven.
undecimus, -a, -um, [unus-decimus], adj., eleventh.
undique [unde-que, cf. quique], adv., from every side, from all quarters. — Also (cf. ab), on every side.
Unelli, see Venelli, the more approved spelling.
universus, -a, -um, [unō-versus], adj., all together, all (in a mass), entire.
unquam (unquam), [supposed to be for cum-quam (cf. quisquam)], adv. (with negatives), ever: neque . . . unquam (and never).
ūnus, -a, -um; gen. -lus, [?], old oenus], adj., one, a single, the same: una celeritate (alone); unum de esse (that he was the only one).
urbānus, -a, -um, [urbi- (reduced) + anus], adj., of a city. — Esp., of the city (Rome), in the city.
urbs, urbis, [?], f., a city. — Esp., the city (Rome).
ūrus, -i, [Teutonic], m., a wild ox.
Usipetes, -um, [Teutonic], m.pl., a German tribe who migrated from eastern Germany to the lower Rhine.
ūstitātus, -a, -um, p.p. of usitor.
usque [unc. case of quō (cf. ubi, and usquam)-que (cf. quisque)], adv., (everywhere), all the way, even to, to that degree (with eo ut), all the time, till, even till.
ūsus, -a, -um, p.p. of ātor.
ūsus, -ūs, [ √ut (in ātor)+ tus], m., use, experience. Hence, advantage, service. — Esp.: usus est, it is necessary, there is need, is necessary
Vocabulary.

(with personal subject); also, ex usu, usui, of advantage, of service, advantageous; usu venire, happen, occur, turn out (on trial, in practice); usum navium eripi, be deprived of all use of the ships; quae sunt usui, which are serviceable, are needed, are of use.

ut (uti), [supposed to be for quoti (quō + ti?)], adv. and conj.: a. Interrog., how. — b. Relat., as, so as, when, inasmuch as. — Esp. with subj., that, in order that, to, so that, so as to. — Often with object-clause compressed in Eng. into some other form of speech: poenam ut, etc., of being, etc.; id facere ut, do this (to wit, without “that”). — Esp.: ut semel, when once, as soon as; timere ut, fear that not: ut quisque est . . . ita, in proportion as.

uter, -tra, -trum; gen. trius [quō (cf. ubi) + terus (reduced), cf. alter], adj.: a. Interrog., which (of two): uter utri (which to the other). — b. Relative, whichever (of two), the one who (of two). — Neut., utrum, adv., (which of the two), whether.

uterque, utra-, utrum-, utrius-, [uter-que, cf. quisque], adj., both: medium utriusque (between the two). — Plur., of sets: utraque castra (both camps); utrique (both parties). — Rarely of single things: utraeque (both women).

uti, see ut.

utilis, -e, [uti- (stem akin to utor) + -is], adj., useful, of use.

utilitās, -tātis, [utili + -tas], f., advantage.

ūtor, ūsus, ētūt, [?, old oetor, akin to aveo ?], 3. v. dep., avail one’s self of, use, exercise, practise, enjoy, adopt, employ, have (in sense of enjoy), possess, show (qualities which one exercises), occupy (a town), navigate (a sea). — Esp. with two nouns, employ as: aliquo adjutori (have one’s services).

utrimque [unc. case of uter (cf. interim) + que (cf. quisque)], adv., on both sides.

utrum, see uter.

uxor, -ōris, [?], F., a wife.

V.

V, numeral for five.

Vacaulus, -i, [?], M., the west branch of the Rhine, at its mouth.

vacātīō, -onis, [vacā + tīo], F., freedom (from something), exemption.

vacā, -āvi, -ātūrus, -āre, [prob. vacō- (cf. vacuus and Vacūna)], 1. v. n., be vacant, be free from, be unoccupied, lie waste.

vacuus, -a, -um, [prob. vac (cf. vaco + vēs)], adj., free, unoccupied, vacant, destitute of (ab or abl.).

vadum, -i, [VAD (in vado) + um], N., a ford. — Plur., a ford, shallows, shallow: vado (by fording).

vagātus, -a, -um, p.p. of vagor.

vāgina, -ae, [?], F., a sheath.

vagor, -ātus, -āri, [vagō-], 1. v. dep., roam about, roam, wander.

Vahalls, -is, [?], M., another form for Vacaulus, which see.

valeō, valuī, valitūrus, valēre, [?, prob. denominative, cf. validus], 2. v. n., be strong, have weight, have influence, be powerful. — Often with N. pron. or adj. as cog. acc.: plurimum valet (be very strong, have great weight, have great influence); quiequid possunt pedestribus copiius valent (whatever strength they
Vocabulary.

have is in infantry); tantum valebat (had such weight that, etc.); pudor valet (self-respect controls).


Valetiacus, -i, [?], M., a noble of the Hœdui.

valētūdō, -inis, [prob. valent + tūdo], F., health. — Also, ill health.

vallēs (valls), -is, [?], F., a valley.

vallum, -i, [N. of vallus], N., a palisade, a rampart (the regular fortification of the Romans, made of stakes and built up with earth), a wall.

vallus, -i, [?], M., a stake.

Vangiones, -um, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine, about modern Worms.

varietās, -tātis, [variō + tās], F., diversity: pellium (different colors).

variās, -a, -um, [prob. akin to vārus], adj., various, diverse.

vastātūs, -a, -um, p.p. of vasto.

vastō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre, [vastō-], I. v. a., lay waste, devastate, ravage.

vastus, -a, -um, [?], adj., waste.

— Also, immense.

vaticinātiō, -ōnis, [vaticinā + tīo], F., divination.

vectigal, -ālis, [N. of vectigalīs], N., an impost, tribute. — Plur., revenues (of a state).

vectigālis, -ēs, [vectigō-(vectis, akin to veho, + unc. term., cf. castigo) + alis], adj., tributary: vectigales habent (make tributary).

vectōrius, -a, -um, [vector + ius], adj., carrying: navigia (transports).

vehemēns, -entis, [akin to veho], adj., violent.

vehementer [vehement + ter], adv., violently, severely, strongly, hotly, exceedingly.

vehō, vēxi, vectus, vehere, [√VAGH], 3. v. a., carry: legionem equis vhere (bring on horseback).

vel [prob. imperative of volo], conj., or.: vel...vel (either...or).

Velānius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentle name. — Esp., Quintus Velainius, a tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar’s army.

Vellocasses (Velo-, Vello-), -um (-i, -ōrum), [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe of Normandy, about Rouen.

Vellaunodūnum, -i, [Celtic], N., a town of the Senones.

Vellāvi, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a tribe in the Cevennes mountains.

vēlōcitās, -tātis, [veloci + tās], F., swiftness, fleetness.

vēlōciter [veloci + ter], adv., swiftly, quickly.

vēlōx, -ōcis, [stem akin to volo (cf. colonus) + cus (reduced?)], adj., swift.

vēlum, -i, [?, cf. vexillum], N., a curtain, a veil. — Also, a sail.

velut [vel-ut], adv., (even as), just as: velut si (just as if).

vēnātiō, -ōnis, [venā + tīo], F.,
hunting.—Plur., hunting, hunting excursions.

vēnātor, -tōris, [venā- + tor], m., a hunter.

vendō, -didi, -ditus, -dere, [venum do], 3. v. a., put to sale, sell.

Venelli (Unelli), -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul in modern Normandy.

Veneti, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul in modern Brittany.

Venetia, -ae, [venetō + ia (F. of -ius)], F., the territory of the Veneti.

Veneticus, -a, -um, [Venetō + cus], adj., of the Veneti.

venila, -ac, [?], F., indulgence, favor, pardon; petentibus veniam dare (grant their request).

veniō, vēni, ventūrus, venire, [√GAM (for gvenio)], 4. v. n., come, go; in spem (enjoy the hope).

ventītō, -āvī, -ātūrus, -āre, [as if ventitō- (from vento, old freq. of venio)], I. v. n., come often, visit.

ventus, -i, [?], m., the wind: vento se dare (run before the wind).

vēr, vēris, [for †vasar, √VAS, cf. uro], n., spring.

Veragri, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Gallic people of the Alps, on the upper Rhone.

Verbgēnus, -i, [Celtic], m., a canton of the Helvetii.

verbum, -i, [?; cf. morbus], n., a word: pluribus verbis (at great length); animos verbis confirmavit (with encouraging words); facit verba (speak for, etc.); magna contumelias verborum (with most insulting words).

Vercassivellaunus, -i, [Celtic], m., one of the Arverni, the uncle of Vercingetorix.

Vercingetorix, -īgis, [Celtic], m., a noble of the Arverni. Being chosen king, he made a stout resistance to Cæsar, but was finally overpowered by the Romans and surrendered by his followers.

verēor, -itus, -ēri, [prob. †verō- (akin to wary)], 2. v. dep., fear, be afraid.—veritus, p.p. in present tense, fearing.

vergō, -ere, [?], 3. v. n., incline, slope, look towards (of an exposure), lie towards.

Vergobretus, -i, [Celtic], m., Celtic title of the chief magistrate among the Arverni.

vērisimilis, -e, [veri similis], adj., (like the truth), probable, likely.

veritus, -a, -um, p.p. of verēor.

vērō [abl. of vērus], adv., in truth, in fact.—With weakened force, but, on the other hand.—Often untranslatable, expressing an intensive (emphatic) opposition, or pointing to the main time, circumstance, fact, or agent in a narrative.

Veromandui (Viro-), [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Picardy.

versō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [versō-], 1. v. a., turn (this way and that), deal with (some one or some thing).—Esp. in pass. as dep., turn one’s self, engage in, be, fight (as indicated by the context).

versus, -a, -um, p.p. of verto.

versus (versum), [orig. p.p. of verto], adv. and prep., towards, in the direction of.

versus, -ūs, [√VERT + tus], m., a turning.—Esp., a verse (of poetry, where the rhythm turns and begins anew), a line.

Verticō, -ōnis, [Celtic], m., one of the Nervii.
Vocabulary.

vertō, verti, versus, vertere, [√vert], 3. v. a., turn: terga (turn and flee).

Verudoctus, -i, [Celtic], m., a noble of the Helvetii.

vērus, -a, -um, [ʔ, √ver (in vereor) + us], adj., (ʔ, seen, visible), true. — Neut. as subst., the truth: repperit esse vera (found the truth to be). — Also, just, right.
— See also vero.

verūtum, -i, [veru + tum], n., a spear (of a light kind), a dart.

Vesontīō, -onis, [Celtic], F., the chief town of the Sequani, now Besançon.

vesper, -erī, [ʔ, cf. Gr."έσωπος", m., the evening.

vester, -tra, -trum, [ves + ter (us)], adj. pron., your, yours.

vestigium, -i, [†vestigō- (cf. vestīgō) + ium], n., the footstep, the footprint, a track. — Esp.: e vestigio (forthwith, from one's tracks?); oedem vestigio (in the same spot); in illo vestigio temporis (at that instant of time).

vestīū, -īvī(-ii), -ītus, -īre, [vestī-], 4. v. a., clothe, cover. — Pass., clothe one's self with (with thing in abl.), wear.

vestis, -is, [√ves + tis], F., clothing, garments.

vestitus, -tūs, [vestī + tus], m., clothing, garments.

vēterānus, -a, -um, [vēterā- (as if stem of vetero) + nus], adj., veteran (long in service).

vētō, vetui, vetitus, vētāre, [stem akin to vetus, cf. antiquo], i. v. a., forbid.

vētus, -eris, [ʔ, cf. Gr. ἔτος], adj., old, former: milites (old soldiers, veterans).

vexātus, -a, -um, p.p. of vexō.

vexillum, -i, [ʔ, apparently a diminutive of velum], n., a flag: sub vexillo (in a detachment, without any sigmata, which were only carried in the regular corps).

vexō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [†vexō (as if p.p. of veho)], i. v. a., (carry this way and that), harass, annoy, commit depredations on, overrun (a country), ravage (lands).

via, -ae, [for veha? (veh + a.)], F., a road, a way, a route: tridui viam (three days' journey).

viātor, -tōris, [†viā- (as stem of †vio) + tor], m., a traveller.

vicēni, -ae, -a, [akin to vigintī], num. adj., twenty (apiece).

vicēsimus, -a, -um, [akin to vigintī], num. adj., twentieth.

viciēs (-ēns), [akin to vigintī], adv., twenty times: vicies centum milia (two million).

vicinitās, -tātis, [vicino + tas], F., neighborhood, vicinity. — Plur., neighbors.

vicīs, gen. (nom. not found), change, turn: invicem (in turn).

victima, -ae, [akin to vineo, perh. going back to the sacrifice of prisoners], F., a victim.

victor, -tōris, [√vic (in vineo) + tor], m., a victor. — Often as adj., victorious, cf. victrix.

victōria, -ae, [victor + ia], F., victory, success (in war).

victus, -a, -um, p.p. of vineo.

viciōs, -tūs, [√vicō (?), (cf. vixi) + tus], m., living, life. — Also, means of living, food: domus victuæque (intercourse, life in common).

viceus, -i, [√vic + us, cf. Gr. οίκος], m., (a dwelling), a village (a collection of dwellings).

videō, vidi, visus, vidēre, [√vid, perh. through a noun-stem], 2. v. a,
see, examine (reconnoître), take care (see that). — In pass., be seen, seem, seem best.

Vienna, -ae, [Celtic], F., a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone, now Vienne.

vigilia, -ae, [vigil + ia], F., a watch, watching. The Romans divided the night into four watches, and reckoned the time thereby.

viginti [dvi] (stem of duo) + form akin to centum (perh. the same), indecl., twenty.

vinnen, -inis, [root (or stem) vi + men (cf. vico)], N., a twig (flexible, for weaving), osier.

vincēō, vinxī, vincētus, vincērē, [perh. akin to vincō], 4. v. a., bind, fetter.

vinculum, see vinculum.

vincō, vici, victus, vincere, [vincō], 3. v. a. and n., conquer, defeat, prevail: naturam (outdo).

vincetus,-a,-um, p.p. of vincēō.

vinculum (vinculum), -i, [vincēō] (stem akin to vincō, perh. primitive of it) + lum (N. of lus), N., a chain: ex vinculis (in chains, see ex): in vincula (into prison).

vindicāō,-āvi,-ātus,-āre,[vindicā-], 1. v. a., claim, claim one's rights against, defend: in aliquem (punish); Galliam in libertatem (establish the liberty of a phrase derived from the formal defence of freedom in a Roman court).

vinea, -ae, [vinō + ea (F. of -ens)], F., a vineyard, a vine arbor. Hence, a shed (defence, for a besieging party, made like an arbor).

vinum, -i, [?, cf. Gr. olivos], N., wine.

violō, -āvi,-ātus,-āre, [?], i. v. a., abuse, violate (a sacred object): hospites (injure, a guest being held sacred).

vir, viri, [?], M., a man, a husband.

virēs, see vis.

virgō, -inis, [?], F., a maiden, a maid.

virkultum, -i, [virgula (?) + tum, cf. tumultus], N., only in pl., shrubbery, a thicket, bushes (cut for military purposes).

Viridomarīs, -ī, [Celtic], M., a noble of the Hædui.

Viridovīx, -icis, [Celtic], M., a prince of the Venelli.

virītim [vir + itim, as if acc. of verbal in-tis], adv., man by man (of distribution), to each individual.

Viromandui, see Veromandui.

virtūs, -tūtis, [virō- (reduced) + tus], F., manliness, valor, prowess, courage. — Also, merit (generally), noble conduct, virtue. — Plur., virtues, merits, good qualities.

vis, vis (?), [?], F., force, might, violence. — Esp.: vi cogere (forcibly); vim facere (use violence); vim hostium prohibere (violent attack); vi fluminis oppressi (overcome by the violent current). — Plur., strength, force, powers, bodily vigor.

visus, -a, -um, p.p. of video.

vita, -ae, [root of vivo + ta], F., life, the course of life.

vītō, -āvi,-ātus,-āre, [?, vita-?], 1. v. a., (escape with life, live through?), escape, avoid, dodge.

vītrum, -i, [?], N., wood (a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue).

vivō, vixi, victus, vivere, [vīg (vigor?), cf. victus], 3. v. n., live: lacte (live on).

vivus, -a, -um, [vīg (in vivō)], adj., alive, living.

vix [poss. vīc (in vincō)], adv., with difficulty, hardly. — Also, of time, hardly (... when).
Vocabulary.

Vocătes, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a people of Aquitania, on the Garonne.

Voctiō (Voctīō), -onis, [Celtic], m., a king of Noricum.

vocō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [voc- (stem of vox)], i. v. a., call by name, call, summon, invite.

Vocontī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a tribe between the Isère and the Durance.

Voctīō, see Voceo.

Volcae, -ārum, [Celtic], m. plur., a people of Gaul in the Roman province, see Tectosages and Arecomici.

Volcātius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., Caius Volcatius Tullus, a young man in Cesar’s suite.

volgō, see volgus.

volgus (vulgus), -ī, [vulgus + us], n., the crowd, the common people, the mass: in volgus efferrī (be spread abroad); militum (the common soldiers, the army).—volgō, abl. as adv., commonly, generally, everywhere.

volnerō (vuln.), -āvi, -ātus, -āre, [volnere-], i. v. a., wound.

vulnus (vulnus), -eris, [prob. akin to vello], n., a wound.

volō, volui, velle, [vulō], irr. v. a. and n., wish, be willing, want: velle aliquaem aliquid (want one for anything, want anything of one); quid sibi vellent (what they wanted, or meant, or intended to do, what business they had).

voltus (vultus), -tūs, [vulō + tus], m., (wish, expression of countenance), look, countenance, face: vultus fingere (compose one's countenance), conceal one's feelings; alicujus voltum ferre (bear the glance of one's eye).

voluntārius, -a, -um, [volent + arius], adj., voluntary. — As subst., a volunteer.

voluntās, -tātis, [volent + tas], F., willingness, good-will, consent, desire, will, approval, an inclination: voluntates alienare (good-will).

voluptās, -tātis, [volup- (akin to volo) + tas], F., pleasure.

Volusēnus, -i, [?], m., a Roman family name.—Esp., Caius Volusenus Quadratus, a military tribune in Cesar's army.

Vorēnus, -i, [?], m., a Roman family name.—Esp., Lucius Vorēnus, a centurion of Cesar’s army.

Vosegus, -i, [Celtic], m., the Vosges Mountains, running northerly from the Jura along the Rhine.

voveō, vovi, vōtus, vovere, [?], 2. v. a., vow, make a vow.

vōx, vocis, [voc as stem], F., a voice, a word, an expression, a shout.—Collectively, cries, words, talk.—Plur., talk, reports: nulla vox audita (not a word); militum vocibus carpi (taunts); concursus ac vocibus cogi (outcries).

Vulcānus (Vole-), -i, [?], m., Vulcan (the god of fire and metals).

vulnerātus, -a, -um, see vulnus.

vulgus, see volgus.

vulnerō, see vulnus.

vulnus, see vulnus.

vultus, see volitus.

X.

X, numeral for ten.

XX, numeral for twenty.
## Latin Text-Books.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publisher</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Intro. Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Allen &amp; Greenough</strong></td>
<td>Latin Grammar</td>
<td>$1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Latin Composition</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Caesar (7 books, with vocabulary; illustrated)</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sallust's Catiline</td>
<td>.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cicero (13 orations, with vocabulary; illustrated)</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cicero de Senectute</td>
<td>.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ovid (with vocabulary)</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Virgil (Bucolics, and 6 Books of the Æneid)</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Preparatory Course of Latin Prose</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Allen</strong></td>
<td>Latin Primer</td>
<td>.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>New Latin Method</td>
<td>.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Introduction to Latin Composition</td>
<td>.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Latin Reader</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Latin Lexicon</td>
<td>.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Remnants of Early Latin</td>
<td>.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Germania and Agricola of Tacitus</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Blackburn</strong></td>
<td>Essentials of Latin Grammar</td>
<td>.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Latin Exercises</td>
<td>.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Latin Grammar and Exercises (in one volume)</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Collar &amp; Daniell</strong></td>
<td>Beginners' Book in Latin</td>
<td>.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>College Series of Latin Authors</strong></td>
<td>Selections from the Latin Poets</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Crowell</strong></td>
<td>Classical Atlas and Geography (cloth)</td>
<td>2.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Crowell &amp; Richardson</strong></td>
<td>Brief History of Roman Lit. (Bender)</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Greenough</strong></td>
<td>Virgil:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bucolics and 6 Books of Æneid (with vocab.)</td>
<td>1.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bucolics and 6 Books of Æneid (without vocab.)</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Last 6 Books of Æneid, and Georgics (with notes)</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bucolics, Æneid, and Georgics (complete, with notes)</td>
<td>1.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Text of Virgil (complete)</td>
<td>.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vocabulary to the whole of Virgil</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ginn &amp; Co.</strong></td>
<td>Classical Wall Maps (three or more), each</td>
<td>3.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Halsey</strong></td>
<td>Etymology of Latin and Greek</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Keep</strong></td>
<td>Essential Uses of the Moods in Greek and Latin</td>
<td>.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>King</strong></td>
<td>Latin Pronunciation</td>
<td>.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Leighton</strong></td>
<td>Latin Lessons</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>First Steps in Latin</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Madvig</strong></td>
<td>Latin Grammar (by Thacher)</td>
<td>2.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parkhurst</strong></td>
<td>Latin Verb</td>
<td>.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parker &amp; Preble</strong></td>
<td>Handbook of Latin Writing</td>
<td>.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shumway</strong></td>
<td>Latin Synonymes</td>
<td>.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stickney</strong></td>
<td>Cicero de Natura Deorum</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tetlow</strong></td>
<td>Inductive Latin Lessons</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tomlinson</strong></td>
<td>Manual for the Study of Latin Grammar</td>
<td>.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Latin for Sight Reading</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>White (J. W.)</strong></td>
<td>Schmidt's Rhythmic and Metric</td>
<td>2.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>White (J. T.)</strong></td>
<td>Junior Students' Latin-English Lexicon (mor.)</td>
<td>1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>English-Latin Lexicon (sheep)</td>
<td>1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Latin-English and English-Latin Lexicon (sheep)</td>
<td>3.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Whiton</strong></td>
<td>Auxilia Vergillana; or, First Steps in Latin Prosody</td>
<td>.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Six Weeks' Preparation for Reading Caesar</td>
<td>.40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Copies sent to Teachers for Examination, with a view to Introduction, on receipt of Introduction Price.

**GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,**

**Boston, New York, and Chicago.**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author/Title</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allen Medea of Euripides</td>
<td>$1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>College Series of Greek Authors D'Ooge, Dyer, Humphreys</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D'Ooge Sophocles' Antigone: Text and Notes</td>
<td>$.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D'Ooge Text only</td>
<td>$.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyer Plato's Apology and Crito: Text and Notes</td>
<td>$.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyer Text only</td>
<td>$.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flagg Hellenic Orations of Demosthenes</td>
<td>$1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flagg Anacreontics</td>
<td>$.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flagg Seven against Thebes</td>
<td>$1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodwin Greek Grammar</td>
<td>$1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodwin Greek Reader</td>
<td>$1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodwin Greek Moods and Tenses</td>
<td>$1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodwin Selections from Xenophon and Herodotus</td>
<td>$1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodwin &amp; White: Anabasis</td>
<td>$1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodwin &amp; White: Anabasis (with Vocabulary)</td>
<td>$1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humphreys Aristophanes' Clouds: Text and Notes</td>
<td>$.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humphreys Text only</td>
<td>$.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keep Essential Uses of the Moods</td>
<td>$.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kendrick Greek at Sight</td>
<td>$.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leighton New Greek Lessons</td>
<td>$1.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liddell &amp; Scott. Abridged Greek-English Lexicon</td>
<td>$1.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liddell &amp; Scott. Unabridged Greek-English Lexicon</td>
<td>$9.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seymour Selected Odes of Pindar</td>
<td>$1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sidgwick Greek Prose Composition</td>
<td>$1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarbell Philippics of Demosthenes</td>
<td>$1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyler Selections from Greek Lyric Poets</td>
<td>$1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White First Lessons in Greek</td>
<td>$1.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Schmidt's Rhythmic and Metric of the Classical Languages</td>
<td>$2.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Oedipus Tyrannus of Sophocles</td>
<td>$1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Stein's Dialect of Herodotus</td>
<td>$.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whiton Orations of Lysias</td>
<td>$1.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Copies sent to teachers for examination, with a view to Introduction, on receipt of Introduction Price given above.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers.

BOSTON. NEW YORK. CHICAGO.
# Mathematics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Byerly</td>
<td>Differential Calculus</td>
<td>$2.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Integral Calculus</td>
<td>2.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginn</td>
<td>Addition Manual</td>
<td>.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halsted</td>
<td>Mensuration</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardy</td>
<td>Quaternions</td>
<td>2.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hill</td>
<td>Geometry for Beginners</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprague</td>
<td>Rapid Addition</td>
<td>.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taylor</td>
<td>Elements of the Calculus</td>
<td>1.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wentworth</td>
<td>Grammar School Arithmetic</td>
<td>.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shorter Course in Algebra</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Elements of Algebra</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Complete Algebra</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plane Geometry</td>
<td>.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plane and Solid Geometry</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plane and Solid Geometry, and Trigonometry</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plane Trigonometry and Tables. Paper</td>
<td>.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pl. and Sph. Trig., Surv., and Navigation</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pl. and Sph. Trig., Surv., and Tables</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trigonometric Formulas</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wentworth &amp; Hill</td>
<td>Practical Arithmetic</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abridged Practical Arithmetic</td>
<td>.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exercises in Arithmetic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part I. Exercise Manual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part II. Examination Manual</td>
<td>.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Answers (to both Parts)</td>
<td>.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exercises in Algebra</td>
<td>.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part I. Exercise Manual</td>
<td>.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part II. Examination Manual</td>
<td>.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Answers (to both Parts)</td>
<td>.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exercises in Geometry</td>
<td>.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Five-place Log. and Trig. Tables (7 Tables)</td>
<td>.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Five-place Log. and Trig. Tables (Comp. Ed.)</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wentworth &amp; Reed</td>
<td>First Steps in Number, Pupils' Edition</td>
<td>.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Teachers' Edition, complete</td>
<td>.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parts I., II., and III.  (separate), each</td>
<td>.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheeler</td>
<td>Plane and Spherical Trig. and Tables</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Copies sent to Teachers for examination, with a view to Introduction, on receipt of Introduction Price.*

---

**GINN & COMPANY, Publishers.**

BOSTON. NEW YORK. CHICAGO.
Books on English Literature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Intro. Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allen</td>
<td>Reader's Guide to English History</td>
<td>$ .25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>History Topics</td>
<td>.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arnold</td>
<td>English Literature</td>
<td>1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carpenter</td>
<td>Anglo-Saxon Grammar</td>
<td>.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>English of the XIVth Century</td>
<td>.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Church</td>
<td>Stories of the Old World</td>
<td>.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Classics for Children.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Craik</td>
<td>English of Shakespeare</td>
<td>.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garnett</td>
<td>Beowulf (Translation)</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harrison &amp; Sharp</td>
<td>Beowulf (Text and Glossary)</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hudson</td>
<td>Harvard Edition of Shakespeare:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Life, Art, and Characters of Shakespeare.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 vols. Cloth, retail</td>
<td>4.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>New School Shakespeare. Cloth. Each play</td>
<td>.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Old School Shakespeare, per play</td>
<td>.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Expurgated Family Shakespeare</td>
<td>10.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Essays on Education, English Studies, etc.</td>
<td>.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Three Vol. Shakespeare, per vol.</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Text-Book of Poetry</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Text-Book of Prose</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pamphlet Selections, Prose and Poetry</td>
<td>.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Classical English Reader</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hudson &amp; Lamb</td>
<td>Merchant of Venice</td>
<td>.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Classics for Children.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hunt</td>
<td>Exodus and Daniel</td>
<td>.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lambert</td>
<td>Robinson Crusoe</td>
<td>.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Classics for Children.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Memory Gems</td>
<td>.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lounsbury</td>
<td>Chaucer's Parlament of Foules</td>
<td>.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minto</td>
<td>Manual of English Prose Literature</td>
<td>2.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprague</td>
<td>Selections from Irving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ Cloth</td>
<td>.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ Boards</td>
<td>.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Two Books of Paradise Lost, and Lycidas</td>
<td>.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thom</td>
<td>Two Shakespeare Examinations</td>
<td>.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yonge</td>
<td>Scott's Quentin Durward</td>
<td>.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Classics for Children.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Copies sent to Teachers for Examination, with a view to Introduction, on receipt of Introduction Price.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,
BOSTON, NEW YORK, AND CHICAGO.
This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.